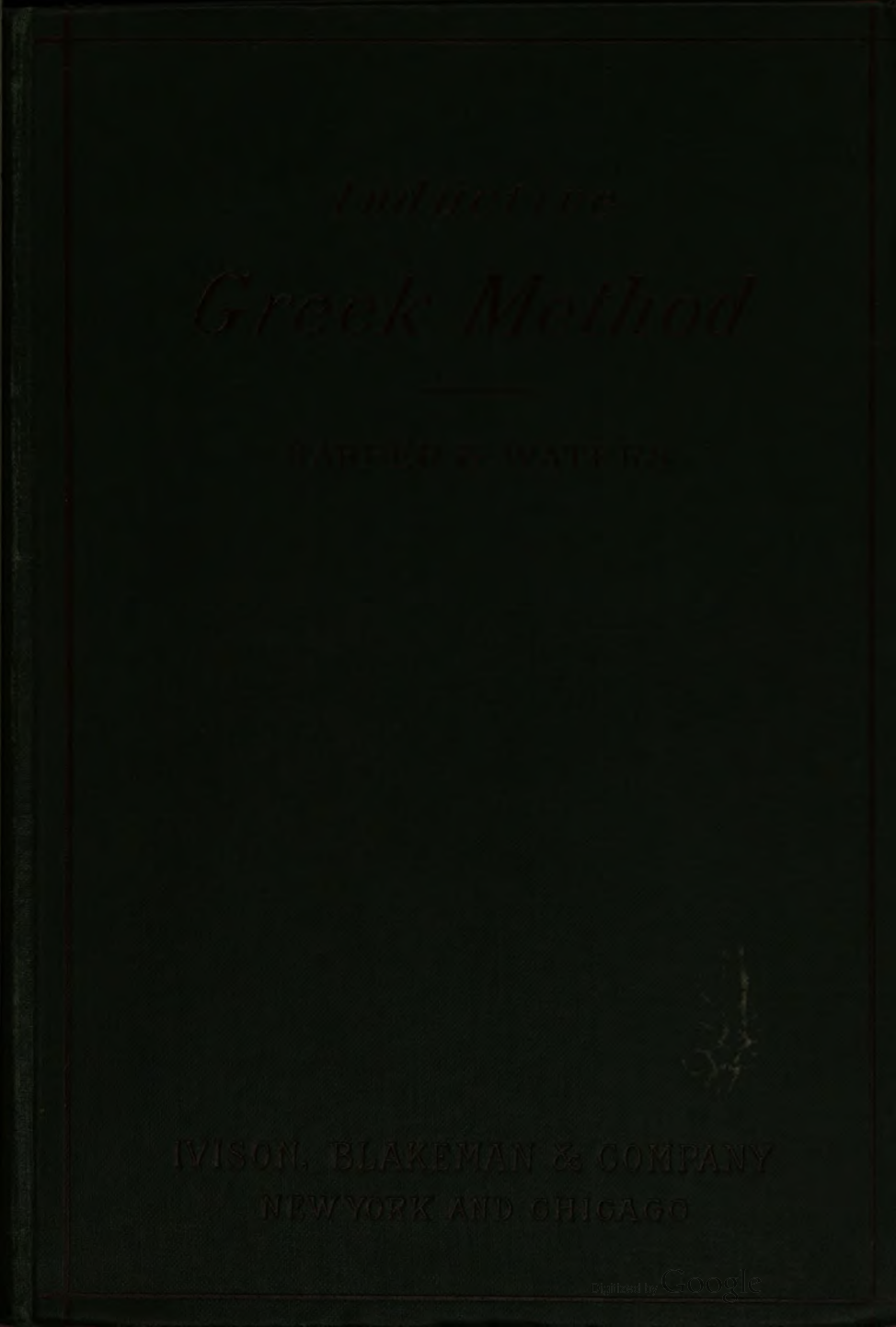
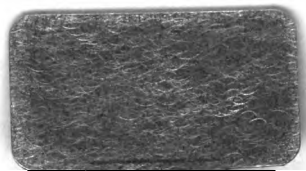
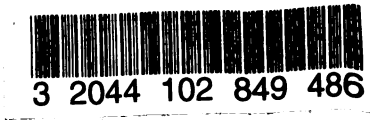

Grammar
Grammar
Grammar

HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY

GIFT OF THE
GRADUATE SCHOOL
OF EDUCATION



Digitized by Google


3 2044 102 849 486

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

AN INDUCTIVE GREEK METHOD

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

AN INDUCTIVE

GREEK METHOD

BY

WILLIAM R. HARPER, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

WILLIAM E. WATERS, PH.D.

CINCINNATI, OHIO

IVISON, BLAKEMAN, AND COMPANY

PUBLISHERS

NEW YORK AND CHICAGO

Digitized by Google

Educ T 111.9.22.41 c

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF THE
GRADUATE SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
DEC. 16, 1926

Copyright, 1888,
BY IVISON, BLAKEMAN, AND COMPANY.

Digitized by Google

PREFACE.

CORRECTIONS.

Page 52, topics for Study; omit first half of No. 12.
Pages 52 and 76, Vocabulary, No. 20; for *ὁ φύλαξ*, read *ἡ φυλακή*.
" 60, note 10; 61, Exercises, line 3; 71, line 7 from bottom; and 87, line 8; remove long mark from *α* in all forms of *φυγάς*.
Page 86, line 1; for *κατανοήσαντες* read *κατανοήσας*.
" 95, line 8; for All those women were, read Each woman was.
" 98, Exercises, line 13; for *ἤσθοντο*, read *ᾔσθοντο*.
" 109, Exercises, line 3; for *ἐχούσην*, read *ἔχουσαν*.
" 113, line 6; for depth, read width.
" 227, line 4 from bottom; for *Δαρείος*, read *Δαρεῖος*.
" 231, line 5; for *παραγγελλει*, read *παραγγέλλει*.
" 233, line 6 from bottom; for *ἀπῆτουν*, read *ἀπήτουν*.

based.

1. A sentence of the original text, or part of a sentence (in later work, even a section), is placed before the pupil. The pronunciation and exact translation of each word are furnished him. By the aid which the teacher gives him in advance, and with the material given in the book, he thoroughly masters the words and

Digitized by Google

Educ T 111.9.22.442

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF THE
GRADUATE SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
DEC. 16, 1926

Digitized by Google

PREFACE.

THERE is clearly no demand for a new Introductory Greek book, unless it is one which differs essentially from those which are already in use. The score or more of methods which have appeared in this country are constructed according to the same idea. Though many of them are scholarly and progressive, all are merely companions to the grammar, and not guides to the language.

The existence of so many "methods" indicates a feeling that, thus far, an entirely satisfactory introductory book has not been found. If anything additional were needed to justify the existence of this feeling, it would be found in the lack of interest which characterizes the average student of Greek, and in the confessedly small results accomplished in college.

The method presented in this book claims to overcome both of these difficulties. It will arouse enthusiasm; it will increase results. It is not supposed that this claim will be accepted until the merits of the method have been tested in the class-room, but the following outline of the *plan of work* which it advocates may, perhaps, show the value of the principles on which the claim is based.

1. A sentence of the original text, or part of a sentence (in later work, even a section), is placed before the pupil. The pronunciation and exact translation of each word are furnished him. By the aid which the teacher gives him in advance, and with the material given in the book, he thoroughly masters the words and

Digitized by Google

phrases of this sentence or section. His knowledge is tested by requiring him to recite or write the Greek sentence with only the translation before his eye.

2. In connection with this mastery of the words and phrases of the sentence assigned, the pupil reads and digests the contents of the "Notes" on these words. This study accomplishes two things, — first, the careful examination of each remark, with its application to the work in hand, aids in fixing more firmly in mind the word sought to be mastered; second, grammatical material from the very beginning is being collected.

3. The "Text" and "Notes" having been learned, the next step is one of a more general character. Out of the material which has thus far been mastered, those principles which are of most importance, and which the pupil himself will be most likely to recognize, are pointed out under the head of "Observations." The pupil may be brought to see these points himself before having his attention called to them in the Lesson.

4. The grammatical material obtained in the Lesson is now systematized and arranged with reference to the two leading grammars. This not only furnishes a review of what already has been done, but also enables the pupil to see the connection of each new fact or principle with the others to which it stands related.

5. The words of the sentence or section are now separated from their context and placed in alphabetical order. Thus separated, they form the basis of additional study. In some cases words similar in form and meaning to familiar English words are inserted in order to allow a greater variety in the exercise.

6. In order to prevent the memorizing of the Greek text without a clear idea of the force of each word, to impress more firmly on the mind the words and phrases of the text, and to drill the pupil in prose composition, "Exercises," Greek into English and English into Greek, are given. These are always based upon the sentence or section which furnishes the basis of the Lesson. Prose composition taught in this manner ceases

Digitized by Google

to be dreaded by the pupil, and becomes, indeed, a source of delight.

7. Once more the leading points of the entire Lesson, whether suggested in the "Notes," the "Observations," or the "Grammar Lesson," come up for consideration under the head of "Topics for Study." Upon each topic the student is expected to make a statement of what *he knows* (not of what has been said in the book). If his statement is not sufficiently full, it will be criticised by the class.

From this outline the idea of the method will be apparent. It proposes, first, to gain an accurate and thorough knowledge of some of the facts of the language; second, to learn from these facts the principles which they illustrate, and by which they are regulated; third, to apply these principles in the further progress of the work. A few words in explanation of this statement are needed.

1. The method employed is inductive, and yet a slight departure is made at times to allow a more complete treatment of a subject, in order to elucidate some detail of which an example has not occurred.

2. The term "facts," as used, includes data from every source. Special emphasis is laid upon the collecting of facts from the living page of the original text; but paradigms and vocabularies are also to be used for this purpose.

3. It is not to be supposed that a long time must elapse before the beginner is ready to take hold of principles. As a matter of fact, he is taught important principles, and that, too, inductively, during the first hour's work. The three processes are all the while going on together. He is increasing the store of facts at his command, learning from the facts thus acquired new principles, and applying these principles to the new forms continually coming to his notice.

4. The memorizing of the facts of a language before a knowledge of the principles has been acquired is, indeed, a piece of drudgery, and yet not so great as is the memorizing of grammar

Digitized by Google

without a knowledge of the facts. Nor will it long remain drudgery; for very soon the student begins to see analogies, and to compare this word with that, and, in short, to make his own grammar.

The Lessons cover Book I. of Xenophon's Anabasis, and include a formal study of almost every portion of the grammar. Special attention is given to review, lessons for the purpose being frequently inserted. Some additional items of interest to teachers will be found elsewhere.

To Professor W. R. Crabbe, of Shadyside Academy, Pittsburgh, the authors are under obligation for his kindness in consenting to examine the proof-sheets. and for the very valuable suggestions and criticisms which have been received from him.

The List of Words arranged in the order of their first occurrence has been prepared by Professor James Wallace, of Macalister College, Minn., who is engaged in the preparation of a second book upon the Anabasis to accompany the present volume.

Suggestions, corrections, and criticisms will gladly be received, and in each case proper acknowledgment will be made. It is the hope of those engaged in the preparation of this method, that by its publication a greater interest in the study of the Greek language may be awakened.

WILLIAM R. HARPER,
WILLIAM E. WATERS.

August 18, 1888.

Digitized by Google

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

1. Use twenty minutes of every hour in explaining to the class the new points of the advance-lesson; and in no case ask a class to prepare a lesson which has not thus been explained.

2. Do not fail to require the pupil so to master the text that, with the English translation before his eye, he can repeat or write the original with accuracy and without hesitation; and with every advance-lesson let the text of the ten or twelve preceding lessons be reviewed.

3. Let every point referred to in the "Notes" be called up in one form or another in the class-room.

4. In teaching the "Observations," let the words or phrases which serve as the basis of the "Observations" be written upon the board.

5. Insist upon the thorough mastery of the "Vocabularies," not only from the Greek into English, but also from the English into Greek.

6. In the translation of the English sentences into Greek, the following order is suggested: (1) The pupil will write the exercise in a blank-book; (2) He will copy it upon the blackboard; (3) The instructor will read and correct the work on the board, the pupil at the same time incorporating the corrections in his blank book; (4) The instructor will examine the book and mark all words which contain an error; (5) The pupil will take the book and correct all words so marked. To carry out this plan two blank books are required.

7. The Review lessons are very important, and should be dwelt upon until thoroughly mastered.

8. Much time can be saved and much good accomplished by having the class do a portion of the work in concert. This is especially helpful in reproducing the original text from the English translation and in reviewing the "English Exercises into Greek."

9. It is unnecessary, indeed harmful, to tell the pupil everything that may be said concerning a word or form, when it first occurs. Nor should one feel obliged, when a general statement is made concerning a given point, to indicate all the exceptions which exist.

10. Require the mastery of the paradigms, but not merely that they may be recited by rote. The pupil should study and compare them, with a view to ascertaining the principles in accordance with which they are constructed. As paradigms are commonly studied, they work more injury than benefit.

11. Introduce conversation in Greek upon the text if possible; it relieves the monotony of a recitation; it fixes the text more firmly in mind; it teaches the pupil to think in the language which he is studying. Every teacher knows the common stock of interrogative words and phrases, or can get them from a grammar.

12. It is not supposed that an ordinary class will learn *one* lesson a day. If the seventy lessons can be covered in one hundred or one hundred and twenty recitations, the progress should be regarded as satisfactory.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	Page
Preface	v
Suggestions to Teachers	ix
Lessons I.–LXXII.	13–226
Text of Anabasis Book I.	227–277
A Literal Translation of Chapters I.–III.	279–288
A Free Translation of Chapters I.–II.	289–294
Words of Anabasis Book I. in order of First Occurrence	295–327
Vocabulary	329–355

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

INDUCTIVE GREEK METHOD.

LESSON I.

ANABASIS, I. I. 1.

NOTE. — In studying the "Text" and "Notes" the pupil will observe the following suggestions: —

(1) Take up first the word Δα-ρεί-ου, and notice the form of each letter, the marks of accent, the transliteration given below it, the number of syllables, and the translation. After reading carefully what is said about it in Note 1, (*a*), (*b*), (*c*), copy it on paper two or three times, each time pronouncing it aloud; write it from memory two or three times, comparing the result with the printed form; pronounce it (always aloud) until it can be uttered without hesitation, and in pronouncing associate the meaning with the sound.

(2) Treat in the same manner the remaining words of the lesson, but in no case take up a new word until the word preceding it has been thoroughly mastered.

(3) Having mastered the words separately, study the sentence as a whole, pronouncing the Greek, and writing it out from the English translation (p. 279).

(4) Understand from the beginning that every sentence of the Greek text is to be *mastered*. Nothing short of absolute mastery will answer the purpose.

1. TEXT.

[For the first few lessons the words will be divided into syllables, to facilitate reading.]

Δᾰ-ρεί-ου	καὶ	Πᾰ-ρῠ-σᾰ́-τῐ-δῐ̆ς	γῐ́-γνŏν-ται	παῖ-δες
Da-rei-ou	kai	Pa-ry-sa-ti-dos	gi-gnon-tai	pai-des
Of-Darius	*and*	*of-Parysatis*	*are-born*	*boys*

Digitized by Google

δύ-ο, πρε-σβύ-τε-ρος μὲν Ἀρ-τα-ξέρ-ξης, νε-ώ-τε-ρος
dy-o, pre-sby-te-ros men Ar-ta-xer-xēs, ne-ō-te-ros
two *elder* *indeed* *Artaxerxes,* *younger*

δὲ Κῦ-ρος.
de Cy-ros.
however *Cyrus.*

2. NOTES.

1. Δᾱ-ρεῖ-ος, *of Darius:* (*a*) three vowel sounds: $a = a$ in *father*, $\epsilon\iota = ei$ in *pine*, $ov = ou$ in *uncouth;* (*b*) the mark (´) over the second syllable from the end, or penult, is the *acute accent*, indicating where the vocal stress is to be laid ;[1] (*c*) ending *ov* indicates gen. sing.

2. καὶ, *and:* (*a*) one vowel sound, $= ai$ in *aisle;* (*b*) the mark (`) drawn from left to right is called the *grave accent*, indicating an absence of vocal stress.

3. Πᾰρῠσᾰ̈τῐδ-ŏς *of Parýsatis:* (*a*) five vowel sounds: $a = a$ in *art*, $\upsilon = y$, made by placing the lips for *oo* in *moot* and sounding *ee* in *thee* (like the Germ. *ü*), $\iota = i$ in *pit*, $o = o$ in *obey;* (*b*) two characters, *σ* and *ς* for *s*, the latter being used at the end of the word; (*c*) end. *ος* indicates gen. sing.; *cf.* also *ου* in Δᾱρεῖ**ου**.

4. γίγνῠνται, *(they) are born;* for γι-γέν-ονται *cf. gen-esis*, birth, creation: (*a*) $\gamma = g$ in *give;* (*b*) *ντ* indicates 3d plur., *they; cf.* Lat. **incolu-nt**; (*c*) *νται* indicates 3d plur. pass., *cf.* **nascu-ntur**.

5. παῐ̂δ-ες, *boys; cf.* Eng. *ped-agogue:* (*a*) two vowel sounds: $a\iota = ai$ in *aisle*, $\epsilon = e$ in *met;* $\epsilon\varsigma = es$ in *yes*, never *ez;* (*b*) the accent (^) over the penult is called *circumflex*, practically the same as the acute so far as concerns pronunciation; (*c*) *cf.* Δᾱρεῖου and note that either the acute or the circumflex accent may stand over the penult; and that when a diphthong is accented, the mark is over the second vowel; (*d*) end. *ες* indicates nom. plur., *cf.* Lat. **honor-es**, Eng. *box-es.*

6. δύ̆ŏ, *two;* Lat. **duo.**

7. πρε-σβύ-τε-ρος, *elder; cf. presbyter, presbyterian:* (*a*) end. *ος* (Lat. **us** as in **servus**) indicates nom. sing. masc.; but note different use of the

[1] In reality the acute accent indicated a higher pitch of the voice. The matter of accent is, however, no more important than that of quantity; the pupil should never fail to give to long vowels and diphthongs their full, complete value.

Digitized by Google

same end. in Παρυσάτιδος (3 *c*); (*b*) *cf.* place of accent in this and the preceding words, and note that the accent does not go before the third syllable from the end, or *antepenult.*

8. μὲν, *on the one hand, indeed:* followed immediately by another word, hence μὲν, not μέν; *cf.* καὶ (2 *b*).

9. Ἀρτᾰξέρξῃς, *Artaxerxes:* (*a*) ξ = *x* in *exert, ks* in *barks;* (*b*) η = *ey* in *prey;* (*c*) two *e* characters: ε = *e* in *met,* η = *ey* in *prey;* (*d*) end. ης indicates nom. sing. mas., *cf.* similar use of ος in πρεσβύτερος (7 *a*).

10. νĕώτĕρŏς, *younger:* (*a*) one new vowel: ω, = *o* in *prone;* (*b*) two *o* characters, — ο = *o* in *obey,* ω = *o* in *prone; cf.* Παρυσάτιδος, γίγνονται, πρεσβύτερος; (*c*) note that the accent over the antepenult is the acute; (*d*) ος indicates nom. sing. mas., *cf.* πρεσβύτερος (7 *a*).

11. δὲ, *on the other hand, but:* (*a*) in contrast with μέν, *indeed;* (*b*) why δὲ and not δέ? see **8.**

12. Κῦρος, *Cyrus:* the accent over the penult is circumflex, *cf.* παῖδες (5 *b*); note that in these two words the circumflex stands over a full vowel sound (a long vowel or a diphthong).

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The vowels in this lesson are: Α *a,* ε, η, ι, ο, υ, ω; the diphthongs: αι, ει, ου.

2. The consonants are: β, γ, Δ δ, Κ κ, μ, ν, ξ, Π π, ρ, σ ς, τ.

3. To be carefully distinguished are ε and η, ο and ω.

4. σ stands for the *s*-sound except at the end of words.

5. The three kinds of accent are, acute, grave, and circumflex.

6. The acute stands over one of the last three syllables.

7. The acute or circumflex may stand over the penult.

8. The circumflex stands only over long vowels or diphthongs; while the acute stands over short and long.

9. καί, μέν, δέ become καὶ, μὲν, δὲ (grave accent) when words immediately follow in the same clause.

10. -ου indicates gen. sing., so also -ος in some nouns (like **is** in Lat. **honor-is,** *of honor*); but -ος also indicates nom. sing. (like **us** in Lat. **servus,** *a slave*).

11. Ending -ες indicates nom. plural.

12. In Greek, as in Latin, there are different declensions, and the same ending may have different uses.

13. μέν . . . δέ indicate a contrast; they do not stand first in their clauses.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. γίγνονται, *they are born.*
2. γίγνεται, *he is born.*
3. δύο, *two.*
4. δέ, *but, on the other hand.*
5. καί, *and.*
6. μέν, *indeed, on the one hand.*
7. νεώτερος, *younger.*
8. παῖδες, *boys.*
9. πρεσβύτερος, *older.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) [1] Καὶ Ἀρταξέρξης γίγνεται. (*b*) Δύο δὲ παῖδες γίγνονται. (*c*) Κῦρος μὲν Παρυσάτιδος γίγνεται. (*d*) Γίγνονται δὲ παῖδες Παρυσάτιδος καὶ Δαρείου. (*e*) Γίγνεται δέ. (*f*) Γίγνονται δὲ παῖδες δύο.

2. Translate: (*a*) He is born. (*b*) Artaxerxes indeed is born. (*c*) But Artaxerxes and Cyrus are born of Darius and Parysatis. (*d*) Cyrus indeed [was] younger, Artaxerxes, however, [was] older. (*e*) And two boys are born.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Endings *-ου, -ος, -ες.* 2. Place of the accent for diphthongs. 3. Use of grave accent for the acute. 4. End. *-ντ, -νται.* 5. Sound of vowel *υ.* 6. Long and short *e* and *o* sounds. 7. Uses of *ς* and *σ.* 8. Use of *μέν* and *δέ.* 9. Accent of the antepenult, of the penult. 10. Length of vowel over which the circumflex stands.

LESSON II.

ANABASIS I. I. 1.

1. TEXT.

[In the study of the "text" and "notes," follow closely the directions given with Lesson I.]

ἐ-πεὶ	δὲ	ἠ-σθέ-νει	Δᾱρεῖος	καὶ	ὑ̓-πώπ-τευ-ε
e-pei	de	ē-sthe-nei	Dāreios	kai	hy-pōp-teu-e
When	*however*	*was-sick*	*Darius*	*and*	*was-suspecting*

[1] Be prepared to pronounce these Greek exercises in the class room. This direction applies to subsequent exercises also.

Digitized by Google

τε-λευ-τὴν	τοῦ	βί-ου,	ἐ-βού-λε-το	τὼ	παῖ-δε
te-leu-tēn	tou	bi-ou,	e-bou-le-to	tō	pai-de
an-end	*of-the*	*(of)-life,*	*he-was-wishing*	*the-two*	*two-boys*

ἀμ-φο-τέ-ρω	παρ-εῖ-ναι.
am-pho-te-rō	par-ei-nai.
both	*to-be-present.*

Note that the quantities of ε, η, ο, ω, are no longer indicated.

2. NOTES.

1. ἐπεί, *when:* (*a*) becomes ἐπεὶ when followed immediately by another word; (*b*) ει = *i* in *pine, cf.* Δᾱρείου I.[1] N. **1.**

2. δέ, *but: cf.* μέν, δέ I. N. **8, 11**; note that these words do not stand first in their clauses. *Cf.* Lat. **cum autem,** *but when.*

3. Δᾱρεῖος, *Darius:* (*a*) end. -ος indicates nom. sing., *cf.* **us** in Lat. **servus**; (*b*) -ς is case end. nom., ο- being the stem end.; in Greek as in Latin, nouns whose stem ends in *o* belong to the *o*, or 2d, declens.; (*c*) *cf.* Δᾱρείου, παῖδες I. N. **1** and **5**; note, when the penult has the circumflex accent, the ultima is short.

4. ἠσθένει, (*he*) *was sick:* (*a*) θ = *th* in *thin;* (*b*) from ἀσθενέ-ω, *I am sick;* (*c*) initial ᾰ has been lengthened or augmented to η, ē; (*d*) this augment of a short initial vowel to a long one increases the *time* of pronouncing it; such augment is called a *temporal* augment; (*e*) -ει is a contraction of ε-ε.

5. ὑπ-ώπτευ-ε, *he was suspecting:* (*a*) the apostrophe mark turning to the *right* is written with an initial vowel to indicate that it is pronounced with an introductory *h* sound; it is called the *rough breathing;* turning to the *left,* it indicates that the vowel is not thus pronounced, and is called the *smooth breathing, cf.* ἐπεί, ἠσθένει; (*b*) ευ = *eu* in *feud;* (*c*) from ὑπ-οπτεύ-ω, *I suspect;* (*d*) ὑπ shortened from ὑπό, *hypo,* is a prepositional prefix; *cf.* **sub** in **suspicio,** *I look under, suspect;* (*e*) ο has been augmented to ω; this augment of a short initial vowel to a long one increases the *time* of pronouncing it, and is called *temporal augment, cf.* η in ἠσθένει (**4** *c, d*); (*f*) -ε indicates 3d sing.; *cf.* ει in ἠσθένει (= ε-ε).

[1] This and similar references are to preceding Lessons.

Digitized by Google

6. *τελευτή-ν, end:* (*a*) nom. *τελευτή*; (*b*) *-η* is here the stem end., just as *o* in *Δᾱρεῖος, Δᾱρείου*; (*c*) as nouns whose stem ends in *o* belong to the *o*, or 2d, decl. in both Greek and Latin, so those whose stem ends in *η* (in Lat. *a*) belong to the *a*, or 1st, decl.; (*d*) end. *-ν* indicates acc. sing., *cf.* **-m** in Lat. **mensa-m**.

7. *τοῦ, of the:* (*a*) the end. *-ου* as in *Δαρείου* indicates gen. sing.; (*b*) in *-ου* note stem end. *o*, which indicates 2d decl.

8. *βίου, of life; cf. bio-logy, bio-graphy:* (*a*) ending *-ου* indicates gen. sing. 2d decl., *cf.* *τοῦ, Δαρείου*; (*b*) gen. *Δαρείου*, nom. *Δαρεῖος*; gen. *βίου*, nom. *βίος*.

9. *ἐ-βούλ-ετο, he was wishing:* (*a*) from *βούλ-ομαι, I wish*; Lat. **vol-o**; (*b*) the syllable *ε-* is an augment; since it makes an additional syllable it is called the *syllubic augment*, *cf.* *ἠσθένει, ὑπώπτευε*; note that the augment indicates past time; (*c*) end. *-ετο*[1] indicates 3d sing. passive, *cf.* active end. *-ε* in *ὑπώπτευ-ε, ἠσθένει*.

10. *τώ, the two:* this form of the art., indicating *two*, is dual; *cf.* singular, plural.

11. *παῖδε, two boys:* (*a*) end. *-ε* also indicates dual number; (*b*) *cf.* *Δᾱρείου, παῖδες, Κῦρος, Δᾱρεῖος*; note, when the penult has the circumflex accent the ultima is short, *cf.* **3** *c.*

12. *ἀμφοτέρω, both;* Lat. **ambo** : end. *ω* indicates dual number, *cf.* *τώ, παῖδε*.

13. *παρ-εῖναι, to be present:* (*a*) *παρ*, for *παρά*, prepos. prefix, *by the side of, present; cf. par-allel;* (*b*) accent circumflex over the penult, *cf.* *παῖδε* (**11** *b*); as regards accent the final *αι* is treated as short.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Two new consonants, *θ* and *λ*; new diphthong, *ευ*.

2. A breathing is placed over every initial vowel or diphthong.

3. The Greek has two breathings, called rough and smooth.

4. The Greek has a definite article, but no indefinite article.

5. The augment indicates past time; there are two kinds, temporal and syllabic.

6. Endings *-ε* (active) and *-ετο* (passive) indicate 3d sing. past time.

[1] This passive ending does not make the meaning of *βούλομαι* passive; the subject of deponents is reserved for a later lesson.

Digitized by Google

7. With verbs having prepositional prefix, the augment comes between prefix and verb.

8. The Greek has a dual number.

9. Ending *-ν* indicates accus. sing.

10. Final *-αι* treated as short so far as regards accent.

11. When the penult has the circumflex accent, the ultima is short.

12. *ε-ε* contracts to *ει*.

13. *μέν* and *δέ* do not stand first in their clauses.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Breathings.	H. 17.	G. 4.
2. Accent[1] .	H. 96 and *a*, 99, 100 *a* and *b*, 102, *a*, 108.	G. 21, 22 N. 1, 23.
3. Augment .	H. 354, 355, 356, 360.	G. 99 *a* and *b*, 100, 105.
4. Number .	H. 123.	G. 33.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. *ἀμφοτέρω*, *both*.
2. *ἀσθενέ-ω*, *I am sick*.
3. *βίος*, *life*.
4. *βούλ-ομαι*, *I wish*.
5. *ἐπεί*, *when*.
6. *παῖδ-ε*, *two boys*.
7. *παρά*, *beside*.
8. *παρ-εῖναι*, *to be present*.
9. *τελευτή*, *end*.
10. *τοῦ*, *of the* (masc. sing.).
11. *τώ*, *the two*.
12. *ὑπό*, *under*.
13. *ὑπ-οπτεύω*, *I suspect*.
14. *ποιέ-ω*, *I make*.

PRESENT.

βούλομαι,[2] *I wish*.	*βούλεται*, *he wishes*.	*βούλονται*, *they wish*.
γίγνομαι, *I am born*.	*γίγνεται*, *he is born*.	*γίγνονται*, *they are born*.

[1] The pupil meeting the word *oxytone* in the grammar will understand by it *accented acute on the last syllable*.

[2] Remember that this word, though passive in form, is *active* in signification.

Digitized by Google

IMPERFECT.

ἐβούλετο, *he was wishing.*	ἐβούλοντο, *they were wishing.*
ἐγίγνετο, *he was born.*	ἐγίγνοντο, *they were born.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγίγνοντο παῖδες δύο. (*b*) Τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου βούλομαι. (*c*) Βίου τελευτή. (*d*) Παρεῖναι τῷ παῖδε ἐβούλετο. (*e*) Καὶ ἠσθένει Ἀρταξέρξης. (*f*) Γίγνομαι δὲ Δαρείου. (*g*) Ὑποπτεύω τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου Κύρου. (*h*) Ἐβούλετο, ὑπώπτευε, ἠσθένει, ἐποίει. (Explain each augment and personal ending.)

2. Translate: (*a*) But when they wished to be present, Darius was sick. (*b*) And Darius suspected [the] end of his (= of the) life to be near (= present). (*c*) I wish the two boys to be present. (*d*) Cyrus indeed is born of Parysatis. (*e*) But when I suspect an end of life, I wish my two (= the-two) boys (= two-boys) to be present.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Place of the augment. 2. The augment and prepositional prefix. 3. Terms *augment, syllabic augment, temporal augment.* 4. Number. 5. Augment of *a, o.* 6. Contraction of *ε-ε.* 7. Noun endings *-ος, -ν, -ου, -ω, -ε.* 8. The marks ' and ‘. 9. The verb endings *-ο-μαι, -ε-ται, -ο-νται, -ε-το, -ο-ντο, -ε*; which belong to the present tense? 10. Position of *μέν* and *δέ.* 11. Meaning of *oxytone.*

LESSON III.

ANABASIS I. I. 2.

1. TEXT.

[Easy words are no longer divided into syllables.]

ὁ	μὲν	οὖν	πρεσβύτερος	πάρων
ho	men	oun	presbyteros	parōn
The	*on-the-one-hand*	*now*	*elder*	*being-present*

Digitized by Google

ἐ-τύγ-χᾰ-νε· Κῦρον δὲ με-τᾰ-πέμ-πε-ται ἀπὸ τῆς
e-tyng-cha-ne· Cyron de me-ta-pem-pe-tai apo tēs
happened; *Cyrus however he-sends-after from the*

ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σᾰ-τρᾰ́-πην ἐ-ποίη-σε.
archēs hēs auton sa-tra-pēn e-poiē-se.
government of-which him satrap he-(had)-made.

2. NOTES.

1. ὁ, ho, *the:* (*a*) the article, nom. sing. masc.; what is the genitive? (*b*) ὁ has no accent; it is read as if part of the following word.

2. μὲν, *indeed, on the one hand:* *cf.* πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρτ. I.; μέν stands second in its clause or sentence; *cf.* δέ II.

3. οὖν, *accordingly, now* (logical, not temporal): the circumflex accent stands over the breathing when they are written together; on accented diphthongs, *cf.* παῖδες I. N. **5.**

4. πρεσβύτερος: accent on the antepenult, *cf.* Παρυσάτιδος, νεώτερος, ὑπώπτευε, ἐβούλετο; when the *acute* accent stands over the *antepenult*, the *final* syllable is *short.*

5. παρ-ών, *being present:* (*a*) παρ for παρά, prepositional prefix, *by the side of; cf.* παρ-εῖναι II. N. **13**; (*b*) ὤν, participle, *being: cf.* εἶναι in παρ-εῖναι, *to be present.*

6. ἐ-τύγχαν-ε, (*he*) *happened:* (*a*) from τυγχάν-ω, *I happen;* (*b*) ἐ-, syllabic augment; *cf.* ἐβούλετο, ἠσθένει II. N. **9**; (*c*) χ = *ch* in Scotch *loch*, γχ = *nch* in *anchor;* (*d*) final -ε indicates 3d sing., past tense; *cf.* ὑπώπτευε, ἠσθένει II. N. **5**; (*e*) the English is "happened *to be* present," the Greek, "happened *being* present."

7. Κῦρον, *Cyrus:* end. ο-ν indicates accus. sing. 2d declension, *cf.* **um** in Lat. **servum**; gen. and acc. sing. of βίος?

8. μετα-πέμπ-εται, *he sends after:*[1] (*a*) from πέμπω, *I send,* with prepositional prefix μετά, *after;* (*b*) on the accent, *cf.* πρεσβύτερος **4**, and παρεῖναι II. N. **13** *b.*

[1] *He sends* would really be πέμπ-ει, not πέμπ-εται; but the ending -εται, though a passive ending, may represent the actor as acting for his own benefit; thus, πέμπεται, *he is sent,* or *he sends for his own sake* or *benefit.* This latter use is technically called the *Middle Voice.*

Digitized by Google

9. *ἀπό, from, away from; cf.* Lat. **ab** : (*a*) may be used as a prepositional prefix; thus, *ἀπ-ών, being away (absent)*; (*b*) what would *ἀπ-εῖναι, ἀποπέμπω* mean?

10 *τῆς, of the:* (*a*) *-ης* indicates fem. gen. sing. 1st declension; (*b*) *cf. -ου*, which indicates gen. sing. 2d declension.

11. *ἀρχῆς, of [the] province, government; cf.* Eng. *an-archy, mon-archy:* (*a*) nom. *ἀρχή, cf. τελευτήν* II. N. **6**; (*b*) genitive governed by, or following *ἀπό*; (*c*) *cf. -ης* in *τῆς* **10.**

12. *ἧς, of which:* (*a*) fem. gen. sing., *cf. τῆς, ἀρχῆς*; (*b*) corresponding masculine form is *οὗ, cf. τοῦ, Δᾱρείου.*

13. *αὐτόν, him:* (*a*) *-ο-ν* indicates masc. sing. acc. 2d declension, *cf.* Κῦρον **7.**

14. *σατράπην, satrap:*[1] acc. sing.; *cf. τελευτήν*, 1st declension, *βίον*, 2d declension; the acc. sing. 1st and 2d declensions ends in *ν*. *Cf.* Lat. **mensa-m, servu-m.**

15. *ἐ-ποίη-σ-ε, he made, had made:* (*a*) *οι* = *oi* in *oil*; (*b*) from *ποιέ-ω, I make, cf.* English *poet*; (*c*) note the augment, the ending *-ε*, the verb stem *ποιε*, and that *σ* has been inserted after the stem, the *ε* of which has at the same time been lengthened to *η*; (*d*) this *σ* (representing *-σα-*), when added to a simple verb stem, forms a new stem, called *First Aorist*, and denotes *past* time.

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The new consonants *χ, γχ*; the diphthong *οι*.

2. The circumflex accent stands over the breathing when they are written together.

3. The article and relative are declined: *e. g. ὁ, τοῦ, τῆς*; *οὗ, ἧς.*

4. Nouns whose stem ends in *a* (nom. *η*) are feminine; those whose stem ends in *o* (nom. *ος*) are masculine.

5. *-η, -ης, -ην* are endings of 1st declension; *-ος, -ου, -ον* are endings of 2d declension.

6. The participle with *τυγχάνω* has the force of an English infinitive.

7. Many prepositions, *e. g. ἀπό, μετά, παρά, ὑπό*, are found prefixed to verbal forms.

8. Besides the imperfect, there is an aorist which denotes past time.

9. *ε* of *ποιέω* becomes *η* before *σ* of the aorist.

[1] A kind of lord-lieutenant who represented the interests of the Persian monarch in his dependent provinces.

Digitized by Google

10. The acute accent stands over the antepenult only when the ultima is short.

11. *μέν* and *δέ* do not stand first in their clauses or sentences.

12. *οὖν* does not stand first in its clause or sentence.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Gamma nasal	H. 20.	G. 6, 1.
2. Accent	H. 99, 100, 108.	G. 21, 22, 23.
3. Declension	H. 131, 132, 134.	G. 34, 35.
4. The Article	H. 270, 272.	G. 78 (read).
5. Adjective and Relative Agreement	H. 620, 627.	G. 138, 151.
6. Compound Verbs . .	H. 580.	G. 131, 3.
7. Imperf. and Aor. Tenses	H. 829, 836, 837.	G. 200 and N. 5.

5. VOCABULARY. A.

1. *ἀπό, from.*
2. *ἀρχή, government.*
3. *αὐτόν, him.*
4. *ἧς, of which* (fem. sing).
5. *μετά, after.*
6. *πέμπω, I send.*
7. *μεταπέμπομαι, I send after.*
8. *οὗ, of which* (masc. sing.).
9. *ὁ, the* (nom. masc. sing.).
10. *οὖν, accordingly.*
11. *παρά, by the side of.*
12. *παρών, being present.*
13. *σατράπης, satrap.*
14. *τῆς, of the* (fem. sing.).
15. *τοῦ, of the* (masc. sing.).
16. *τυγχάνω, I happen.*

VOCABULARY. B.

Masculine Singular. — Second Declension.

Nominative.	Genitive.	Accusative.
ὁ, the.	*τοῦ, of the.*	*τόν, the.*
Δᾱρεῖος, Darius.	*Δαρείου, of Darius.*	*Δαρεῖον, Darius.*
πρεσβύτερος, elder.	*πρεσβυτέρου, of an elder.*	*πρεσβύτερον, elder.*
νεώτερος, younger.	*νεωτέρου, of a younger.*	*νεώτερον, younger.*
βίος, life.	*βίου, of life.*	*βίον, life.*
Κῦρος, Cyrus.	*Κύρου, of Cyrus.*	*Κῦρον, Cyrus.*
αὐτός, he himself.	*αὐτοῦ, of him, his.*	*αὐτόν, him.*

Digitized by Google

6. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Τυγχάνω ὤν. (*b*) Τυγχάνω οὖν παρών. (*c*) Ἐτύγχανε δὲ ἀπών. (*d*) Βούλομαι αὐτὸν σατράπην εἶναι. (*e*) Αὐτὸς[1] δὲ ἐβούλετο τὸν νεώτερον παρεῖναι. (*f*) Καὶ ἐβούλοντο ἀπεῖναι Δαρεῖον, οὗ γίγνεται Κῦρος. (*g*) Ὁ σατράπης τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐποίει τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου τοῦ νεωτέρου Κύρου.

2. Translate: (*a*) Being. (*b*) Being absent. (*c*) To be present. (*d*) To be. (*e*) But I happen to be absent. (*f*) The two boys accordingly were wishing to be absent. (*g*) Darius on the one hand sent after Artaxerxes. (*h*) He himself (*αὐτός*) on the other hand happened to be (= being) absent. (*i*) And Cyrus indeed wished to be older. (*j*) But Cyrus happened to be satrap of the government, from which Darius sent-after him.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Analysis[2] of *ἐποίει*, of *ἐποίησε*. 2. Participle with *τυγχάνω*. 3. Position of *μέν* and *δέ*. 4. Nom., gen., acc., sing. endings 1st and 2d declensions. 5. Augment in compound verbs. 6. Accent of antepenult; of penult. 7. Gender of stems in *-a*, in *-o*. 8. Formation of aorist. 9. *ε-* before *-σ* of the aorist. 10. Difference between signification of aorist and imperfect tenses. 11. Pronunciation of *χ*, *γχ*. 12. Meaning of the augment; tenses which have it.

LESSON IV.

ANABASIS I. I. 2.

1. TEXT.

[Only the more difficult words will be divided into syllables or transliterated.]

καὶ στρᾰτηγὸν	*δὲ αὐτὸν*	*ἀ-πέ-δει-ξε*	*πάντων,*
		stratēgon		a-pe-dei-xe
also general	*and him*	*he-(had)-appointed*	*of-all,*

[1] *αὐτός* (in nom.) does not mean *he*, but *he himself*, Lat. **ipse**.

[2] That is, the distinguishing of the various elements of which each word is made up.

Digitized by Google

ὅσοι	εἰς	Κασ-τω-λοῦ	πεδίον	ἀ-θροί-ζον-ται.
hosoi		Cas-tō-lou		ath-roi-zon-tai.
as-many-as	*into*	*Castolus's*	*plain*	*assemble-themselves.*

2. NOTES.

1. καί, *and, also:* *cf.* Lat. **et**, *and, also;* like **et**, καί most frequently means *and.*

2. στρατηγόν, *general;* *cf.* Eng. *strat-egy:* nominative, genitive, gender, declension? It is here one of the objects of ἀπέδειξε, *he appointed him* (αὐτόν) *general*, etc.

3. δέ, *and:* *cf.* νεώτερος δέ I., ἐπεὶ δέ II.; note, δέ may be connective as well as adversative.

4. ἀπ-έδειξε, *he appointed:* (*a*) from ἀπο-δείκ-νῡμι; (*b*) ἀπ for ἀπό, *cf.* ἀπ-ών III. N. **9**; (*c*) ξ not only pronounced like *ks*, but actually made up of κ and *s*, *cf.* Lat. **vox** = **voc-s**; note therefore ἀπέδειξε = ἀπέδεικσε; (*d*) σ in ξ indicates the aorist, *cf.* ἐποίησε III. N. **15** *d*; (*e*) ε before δ as in ἐβούλετο II. N. **9**; ε after ξ as in ὑπώπτευε II. N. **5** *f.*

5. πάντων, *of all;* *cf.* Eng. *panto-mime:* end. -ων indicates gen. plur.

6. ὅσοι, **quanti**, *as many as, who:* (*a*) end. -οι indicates nom. plur. masc. 2d declension, *cf.* **ī** in Lat. **serv-ī**; meaning of πρεσβύτεροι, πρεσβυτέρων? (*b*) the acute accent stands after the breathing when written over the same vowel, *cf.* however οὗν III. N. **3.**

7. εἰς, *into:* εἰς has no accent, and is read as if part of the following word, *cf.* ὁ III. N. **1** *b;* such words are called *proclitics.*

8. πεδίον, *plain;* acc. sing.: (*a*) nom. πεδίον, neut.; if masc., it would have been πεδίος; (*b*) -ον, like **-um** in Lat. **regnum**, indicates neuter nom., acc., voc., sing., 2d declension.

9. ἀθροίζονται, *they collect themselves:* (*a*) ζ = *z*, or *ds* in *avoids*, not *z* in *azure;* (*b*) from ἀθροίζω, *I collect;* (*c*) -ντ- indicates 3d plur., as in γίγνονται I. N. **4**; (*d*) ο-νται is a significant ending; *cf.* γίγνονται, *they are born*, βούλονται, *they wish* (*for themselves*), ἀθροίζονται, *they collect themselves.* In the first the subject is acted upon, in the second and third it acts *for* or *upon* itself (reflexive); (*e*) the Greek has, besides the active and passive voices, also a reflexive, called *Middle*, *cf.* μεταπέμπεται III. N. **8.**

Digitized by Google

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. One new consonant, — **ζ**, = *ds* in *avoids*. **ξ** in **ἀπέδειξε** is a double consonant.

2. **καί** and **δέ** have each two different significations.

3. Verbs meaning "to appoint" govern two accusatives.

4. The circumflex accent stands over the breathing, the acute behind it, when accent and breathing fall together.

5. **-οι, -ων** indicate respectively the nom. and gen. plur. masc. 2d declension.

6. **-ον** indicates nom., acc., voc., sing. neuter, 2d declension.

7. The Greek verb has three voices, — active, passive, middle.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Final **-αι, -οι**	H. 102, *a*.	G. 22, N. 1.
2.	Decl. of **ἄνθρωπος, δῶρον**	H. 153.	G. 42.
3.	The double consonant **ξ**	H. 26.	G. 5, 2.
4.	Formation of the first aorist stem	H. 428.	G. 110, III. 1.
5.	Voices	H. 298 and *a*; 811–13.	G. 88, 1, 2.
6.	Verbs with two accusatives . . .	H. 726.	G. 166.

5. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀθροίζω**, *I collect.*
2. **ἀπο-δείκνυμι**, *I appoint.*
3. **εἰς**, with acc., *into.*
4. **ὅσος**, **quantus**, *as many as.*
5. **πᾶς** (gen. plur. **πάντων**), *all.*
6. **πεδίον**, *plain.*
7. **στρατηγός**, *general.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) **Βούλεται τελευτὴν πάντων, ὅσοι γίγνονται.** (*b*) **Ἀποδείκνῡμι αὐτὸν πάντων σατράπην.** (*c*) **Ἀρταξέρξης ὁ πρεσβύτερος, ἀπὼν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς, βούλεται Κῦρον στρατηγὸν εἶναι.** (*d*) **Ὁ Κῦρος οὖν σατράπης ὢν ἐτύγχανε.** (*e*) **Παρύσατις, ἧς ὁ Κῦρος ἐγένετο, ἐποίησε αὐτὸν στρατηγὸν τῆς ἀρχῆς.** (*f*) **Αὐτὸς ἐτύγχανε παρών.** (*g*) **Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἐτύγχανε σατράπης ὤν, ὁ στρατηγὸς τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου ἐποίει.** (*h*) **Τυγχάνω πρεσβύτερος ὤν.** (*i*) **Βούλομαι δὲ νεώτερος εἶναι.** (*j*) **Μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κῦρον ἀπὸ τοῦ πεδίου.**

Digitized by Google

2. Translate: (*a*) He was sending him into Castolus's plain. (*b*) He was sending after him. (*c*) I wish in truth (that) the satrap be present. (*d*) The general indeed happened to be absent. (*e*) But I happen to be the general of all who assemble themselves. (*f*) From the government of which he happened to be satrap and general. (*g*) But when the younger suspected an end of his life. (*h*) I appoint him general of all who wish to be present. (*i*) And Darius (ὁ Δαρ.) happened to be absent; happened to be general. (*j*) They sent after Cyrus the satrap.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The aorist tense. 2. The middle voice. 3. Translation and analysis of ἐποιεῖτο. 4. The letters ξ and ζ. 5. The participle with τυγχάνω. 6. Analysis of μετεπέμπετο. 7. Endings in the 2d declension. 8. Endings -οι, -ων. 9. Meanings of καί and δέ. 10. Neuter nouns of the 2d declension. 11. Verbs which take two accusatives. 12. Prepositions meaning *from, into, by the side of, after, up.*

LESSON V.

ANABASIS I. 1. 2.

1. TEXT.

ἀνᾰ-βαί-νει	οὖν	ὁ	Κῦρος	λᾰβὼν	Τισ-σα-
ana-bai-nei					Tis-sa-
(he)-goes-up	*accordingly*	*–*	*Cyrus*	*taking*	*Tissa-*

φέρ-νην	ὡς	φίλον,	καὶ	τῶν	Ἑλ-λή-νων δὲ ἔ-χων
pher-nēn	hōs	philon,		tōn	Hel-lē-nōn e-chōn
phernes	*as*	*a-friend,*	*also*	*of-the*	*Greeks and having*

ὁπ-λῑ́-τᾱς	ἀν-έβη	τρι-ᾱ-κο-σί-ους,	ἄρ-χον-τα	
hop-li-tas	an-ebē	tri-a-ko-si-ous,	ar-chon-ta	
heavy-armed-soldiers	*he-went-up*	*three-hundred,*	*commander*	

Digitized by Google

δὲ αὐτῶν Ξεν-ί-ᾱν Παρ-ρά-σι-ον.
Xe-ni-an
and of-them Xenias a-Parrasian.

2. NOTES.

1. ἀνα-βαίνει, *he goes up:* (*a*) from ἀνα-βαίνω, *I go up;* hence *Anabasis*, the going or marching up to Babylon; (*b*) ἀνά, *up*, prepositional prefix; "he goes *away*" would be ἀπο-βαίνει; (*c*) end. -ει indicates pres. ind. act. 3d sing.; (*d*) *cf.* γίγνονται I. N. **4**, μεταπέμπεται III. N. **8**; note, the pres. tense may denote a time actually or historically past; as such it is called the *historical* present.

2. λαβών, *taking*[1]: (*a*) from λαμβάνω, *I take;* (*b*) end. -ων indicates participle, masc. sing. nom.; *cf.* παρών III. N. **5**; (*c*) λαμβάν-ων, pres. part., also = *taking*, *i. e.* as a continued action; λαβών, *taking*, *i. e.* as an act simply brought to pass; (*d*) meaning of ὑποπτεύων, ἀναβαίνων, ἀποβαίνων? (*e*) *cf.* use of -ων in πάντων IV. N. **5.**

3. Τισσαφέρνην, nom. Τισσαφέρνης; on -ν *cf.* τελευτήν II. N. **6**, Κῦρον III. N. **7**, σατράπην III. N. **14.**

4. ὡς φίλον, *as a friend; cf.* Eng. *phil-anthropy:* (*a*) ὡς, no accent, *cf.* ὁ III., εἰς IV.; all pronounced with foll. word and called *proclitics.*

5. τῶν Ἑλλήνων, *of the Greeks:* on the end. -ων *cf.* πάντων IV. N. **5.**

6. ἔχων, *having:* (*a*) from ἔχω, *I have;* (*b*) use here of end. -ων? Another use of same end.?

7. ὁπλίτας, *heavy-armed soldiers; cf.* Eng. *pan-oply*, full armor: (*a*) nom. sing. ὁπλίτης, accus. sing. ὁπλίτην; *cf.* σατράπης, σατράπην III. N. **14**; (*b*) end. -ᾱς indicates accus. plur. 1st decl.; *cf.* Lat. **mens-ās**; (*c*) *cf.* Ἀρταξέρξης, σατράπης, ὁπλίτης; masc. nouns 1st decl. end in -ης, nom. sing.

8. ἀν-έ-βη, *he went up:* (*a*) on ἀν- and -ε- *cf.* ἀπ-έ-δειξε IV. N. **4**; (*b*) Greek for "he goes up"?

9. τριᾱκοσίους, *three hundred:* (*a*) end. -ους (= **ōs** in Lat. **servōs**) indicates masc. plur. accus. 2d decl.

10. Ξενίᾱν, nom. Ξενίᾱς: (*a*) Ξ, capital ξ, = *ks* in *barks;* (*b*) on the ending -ν *cf.* **3.**

[1] The pupil should not be allowed to fall into the habit of rendering aorist participles by the Eng. "having" with a past partic., *e. g.* "having taken," "having come," etc.

Digitized by Google

11. ἄρχοντ-α, *commander, governor; cf.* ἀρχή, *government:* (*a*) nom. sing. ἄρχ-ων, partic. from ἄρχ-ω, formed as ἔχων from ἔχω; used here as noun; (*b*) -ντ-, partic. suffix; *cf.* Lat. **ama-nt-em**; (*c*) -α, ending accus. sing. 3d decl.

12. αὐτ-ῶν, *of them:* (*a*) on the ending *cf.* πάντων IV. N. **5.**

3. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Two new characters: Ξ, and φ (= *ph* in *hyphen*).

2. Unaccented words read as a part of the following word are called *proclitics.*

3. -ν is the ending of accus. sing. 1st and 2d decl.; -ᾱς ending of accus. plur. 1st decl.; -ους ending of accus. plur. 2d decl.; -α ending of accus. sing. 3d decl.

4. Ending -ων indicates gen. plur.; also the nom. sing. masc. of participles like λαβών, ἔχων.

5. Masculine nouns, 1st decl., end in -ης or -ᾱς nom. sing.

6. Ending -ει indicates pres. ind. act. 3d sing., as in ἀναβαίνει.

7. -ντ- is a participial suffix.

8. The accent, when it falls on the genitive endings -ης, -ου, -ων, is circumflex: ἀρχῆς, τοῦ, αὐτῶν.

9. Appositives (*e.g.* φίλον, ἄρχοντα) agree in case with their substantives.

10. The present tense may be used to denote an event actually past.

4. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Proclitics	H. 111.	G. 29.
2. Accent of nouns . .	H. 128, 129.	G. 25, 1 and 2.
3. Noun stems . . .	H. 130.	G. 32, 2.
4. Declension of χώρᾱ, τῑμή	H. 135.	G. 37.
5. Special rule of accent 1st decl.	H. 141.	G. 39, 4.
6. Appositives. . . .	H. 623.	G. 137.
7. Tenses	H. 821–24, 828.	G. 200 and N. 1 and 5.

Digitized by Google

5. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀναβαίνω, *I go up.*
2. ἀνέβη, *he went up.*
3. ἄρχων, *commander.*
4. Ἕλληνες, *Greeks.*
5. ἔχω, *I have.*
6. λαμβάνω, *I take.*
7. ὁπλίτης, *heavy-armed soldier.*
8. τριᾱκόσιοι, *three hundred.*
9. φίλος, *a friend.*
10. ὡς, *as.*

6. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ὡς δὲ τυγχάνω ἀναβαίνων. (*b*) Ὁ ἄρχων λαμβάνει φίλους τριᾱκοσίους. (*c*) Καὶ Κῦρον δὲ ὑπώπτευε ὡς ἔχοντα ὁπλίτας τῶν Ἑλλήνων. (*d*) Ἐγίγνοντο δύο παῖδες. (*e*) Ὅσοι στρατηγοὶ εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἠθροίζοντο, βούλονται τὸν Κῦρον ἄρχοντα εἶναι. (*f*) Ἐλάμβανε αὐτὸν ὡς ὁπλίτην. (*g*) Ὁ Κῦρος ἀνέβη, ὑποπτεύων τελευτὴν τοῦ Δαρείου. (*h*) Ἀποδείκνῡμι αὐτὸν σατράπην τῶν ἀρχῶν. (*i*) Ὁ φίλος τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀπὼν ἐτύγχανε. (*j*) Μεταπέμπεται τοὺς φίλους τῶν ἀρχόντων.

2. Translate: (*a*) But when he went up, he was taking Xenias as a friend. (*b*) Xenias the Parrasian happens to be (= being) commander of 300 hoplites. (*c*) The government of which Tissaphernes was wishing to be satrap. (*d*) I wish the boys both to be absent. (*e*) They sent him away. (*f*) But when Tissaphernes desires Xenias the Parrasian to be absent, I suspect him. (*g*) Taking 300 friends and Xenias as commander of them, he went up into Castolus's plain. (*h*) But I have friends and generals as commanders. (*i*) Having Artaxerxes as the older satrap. (*j*) He apppointed Cyrus as commander.

7. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The verbal endings **-ω, -ει, -ο-μαι, -ε-ται, -ο-ντο, -ο-νται, -ε-το.** 2. Partic. suffix. 3. Analysis of **ἄρχοντα.** 4. Use of the augment. 5. Formation of the 1st aorist. 6. Signification of the aorist tense. 7. Accent of end. **-ων** 1st decl. 8. Quantity of final **-αι, -οι** as regards accent. 9. Quantity of **-ας** accus. plur. 1st decl. 10. Difference between **λαβών** and **λαμβάνων.** 11. The suffix **ντ.** 12. Appositives. 13. Endings **-ν, -ους, -ος, -ης, -ες, -οι.**

Digitized by Google

LESSON VI.

ANABASIS I. I. 3, to ἐπιβουλεύοι αὐτῷ.

For text and translation the pupil is referred to pp. 228, 279. The dividing of words into syllables will be discontinued from this point; such division as is continued hereafter will have for its object not to teach the pupil the syllables of which a word is composed, but the formative elements out of which it has grown. The marking of quantity will be continued only in the case of ᾰ, ῐ, and ῠ. η and ω are long by nature, and ε and ο are short. When a vowel has the circumflex accent it is always long.

1. NOTES.

1. *ἐ-τελεύτη-σ-ε, he ended: cf.* τελευτή II.: (*a*) from τελευτά-ω; (*b*) on the form *cf. ἐ-ποίη-σ-ε* III.; (*c*) note that *a*, like ε, is lengthened to η before σ of the 1st aorist.

2. *κατ-έ-στη, he took his stand (down), was established (as king):* (*a*) from ἵστη-μι, Lat. **sisto**; both developed from the simple form or theme *στα*; (*b*) κατ (for κατά, *cf.* ὑπ in ὑπώπτευε II.), prepositional prefix = *down; cf.* Eng. *cata-ract;* (*c*) κατά + ἵστημι becomes καθ-ίστημι; note change of τ to θ before the rough breathing; (*d*) *cf.* λαβών V., ἀνέβη V., κατέστη, all indicating past time, and in usage equivalent to aorists with the suffix σα (*cf. ἐποίη-σ-ε*); they however differ in form, and for convenience are called Second Aorists.

3. *εἰς τὴν βασιλείᾱ-ν, into the kingdom; was established into the kingdom* = he became king; (*a*) εἰς with acc. case, *cf.* εἰς πεδίον IV.; (*b*) βασιλείᾱν, nom. βασιλείᾱ declined like χώρᾱ.

4. *δια βάλλ-ει, he slanders; cf.* Eng. *diabol-ical:* (*a*) on the tense *cf.* ἀναβαίνει V. N. **1** *c. d;* (*b*) διά, *through*, prepositional prefix.

5. *ἀδελφόν, brother; cf. Phil-adelph-ia*, brotherly love; why not ἀδελφόν in the text?

6. *ὡς ἐπι-βουλεύ-οι, saying that he was plotting against (him)*; the accuser's *direct* words to the king were, "he [Cyrus] is plotting against you," Κῦρος ἐπιβουλεύ-ει, etc. Xenophon quoting this *indirectly* uses a mode adapted for any verb quoted indirectly when dependent upon a verb denoting past time.[1] This is called the Optative mode.

[1] Do not forget that διαβάλλει is an historical present, really equivalent to an aorist.

Digitized by Google

7. *αὐτῷ, to* or *for him*, here *against him; cf.* Eng. *auto-crat, aut-opsy:* (*a*) *-ῳ* is a contraction of the stem vowel *ο* with *ι*, and is the case end. dat. sing. 2d decl.,[1] *cf.* Lat. **servo**, *to a slave:* (*b*) *cf. αὐτῶν, αὐτῷ*; the gen. and dat., having an accented ultima, are written with the circumflex accent.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The first aorist stem is made by adding the suffix *-σα*; in the 3d sing. *-σα* becomes *-σε*.

2. Final *α* of the simple verb stem or theme becomes *η* before *-σα*.

3. The second aorist has no suffix *-σα*; it has a shorter form of the verb than the present.

4. The first and second aorists differ only in form; each has the augment in the indicative mode.

5. Prepositional prefixes ending in a vowel lose it before the initial vowel of the verb.

6. Before a rough breathing *τ* is roughened to *θ* (*th*).

7. *-ῳ* marks the dat. sing. 2d decl.; if accented, it is circumflex.

8. The prepos. *εἰς* governs the acc. case.

9. The pres. ind. in a direct statement may become pres. optative when quoted after a main verb denoting past time.

10. When an oxytone, *i. e.* a word with acute accent on the ultima, is followed by another word so closely connected with it in sense as not to require any mark of punctuation, it changes or softens its acute accent into the grave accent. Some editors soften the accent even before a comma.

11. Ἐπιβουλεύω is followed by dative of the person conspired against.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Names and characters of first twelve Greek letters	H. 5.	G. 1.
2. Elision in compound words . . .	H. 81.	G. 12, 2.
3. Greek modes	H. 299.	G. 89.
4. Greek tenses in the indicative . .	H. 300.	G. 90.
5. Themes and roots	H. 307.	G. 92.
6. The article	H. 272.	G. 78.

[1] This *ῳ* is pronounced like *ω*, *i. e. o* in *prone;* the *ι* is the same as the *i* in Lat. **honor-i, reg-i.**

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ὁ ἀδελφός, *brother.*
2. αὐτῷ, *to* (or *for*) *him.*
3. ἡ βασιλεία, *kingdom.*
4. διά, *through.*
5. δια-βάλλω, *I slander.*
6. ἐπί, *upon.*
7. ἐπι-βουλεύω, *I conspire against.*
8. κατά, *down.*
9. καθ-ίστημι, *I cause to sit,* = *set down.*
10. κατ-έστη, *he sat down.*
11. πρός, *at, by.*
12. τελευτά-ω, *I end.*
13. ὡς, *that; on the ground that, as if* (with part.).

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate and explain the formation of : ἐποίησε, ἐτελεύτησε, ἀπέδειξε, ἐπεβούλευσε, ὑπώπτευσε, ἠσθένησε. 2. Decline ἀρχή, βασιλεία, ἡ νεωτέρα, στρατηγός. 3. Translate : (*a*) Ὑπὸ τῷ πεδίῳ, παρὰ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις, μετὰ τὸν στρατηγόν, ἀπὸ τῆς τελευτῆς, εἰς τὸν βίον, κατὰ τὴν χώραν, διὰ τοῦ βίου, πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν. (*b*) Ἐπιβουλεύει οὖν τῷ στρατηγῷ. (*c*) Διαβάλλει τὸν ἀδελφόν. (*d*) Ὑπώπτευε αὐτὸν ὡς διαβάλλοι τὸν ἀδελφόν.

4. Translate : (*a*) They desired in-truth to be absent. (*b*) And he made the younger to be satrap. (*c*) Artaxerxes indeed happens to be younger. (*d*) He is conspiring against the government. (*e*) He suspected that he was conspiring against the government.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Comparison between formation of the 1st and 2d aorists. 2. Difference of use between imperfect and aorist. 3. The accent in declension. 4. The participial sign. 5. Nom. sing. endings 1st decl. masc. and fem. 6. Nom. sing. endings 2d decl. masc. and neut. 7. ρ before a rough breathing. 8. Proclitics. 9. Verb endings -ει and -οι. 10. Construction after ἐπιβουλεύω. 11. The tenses which denote continued action; those which denote completed action; those which denote an action as simply brought to pass. 12. Time denoted by the different tenses of the indicative. 13. The historical perfect.

Digitized by Google

LESSON VII.

ANABASIS I. 1. 3, to the end.

1. NOTES.

1. **ὁ**, *the, he:* (*a*) stands here without its substantive **Ἀρταξέρξης**; **ὁ δέ**, *but he;* (*b*) note, the article standing without its substantive has the force of a demonstrative pronoun.

2. **πείθε-ται**, *he is persuaded, he believes; cf.* **γίγνε-ται**, *he is born;* (*a*) from **πείθω**, *I persuade;* **πείθομαι**, *I am persuaded*, hence, *believe;* (*b*) note the tense, denoting time actually past, *cf.* **ἀναβαίνει** V.

3. **συλ-λαμβάνει**, *he arrests:* (*a*) from **λαμβάνω**, *I take, cf.* **λαβ ών** V.; (*b*) **συλ** for **συν**, prepositional prefix, = *together, with; cf. syn-agogue*, a place of meeting together; (*c*) **ν** becomes **λ** before **λ**, but note **συν-ε-λάμ-βαν-ε**, *he was arresting;* (*d*) optative **συλλαμβάν-οι**.

4. **ἀπο-κτεν-ῶν**, **interfecturus**, *about to kill;* (*a*) from **κτείνω**, *I kill*, **ἀπο-κτείνω**, *I kill, destroy;*[1] (*b*) **ἀποκτείνων**, *killing;* **ἀποκτενῶν**, *about to kill* (future), not to be classed with **λαβών** as a 2d aor. partic. on account of the short form of the verb stem (**κτεν**); in the 2d aor. partic. the end. **ων** has an acute accent; (*c*) supply **αὐτόν** (*i. e.* **Κῦρον**) as the object.

5. **ἡ**, *the* (fem.); **ἡ δέ**, *but she, cf.* **ὁ δέ 1**; **ἡ δὲ μήτηρ**, *but the mother.*

6. **μήτηρ**, *mother; cf.* Lat. **māter**: (*a*) nom. sing.; (*b*) *cf.* **ἀρχή** III., **βασιλεῖᾱ** VI., of the *a* decl.; **Δᾱρεῖος** II., **πεδίον** IV., of the *o* decl.; note that **μήτηρ** shows no resemblance to these and belongs to the 3d or consonant decl.

7. **ἐξ-αιτη-σα-μένη**, *begging (him) off:* (*a*) from **αἰτέω**, *I beg*, with **ἐξ**, Lat. **ex**, = *away, off;* (*b*) for **ε** lengthened to **η**, and for **-σα**, 1st. aor. suffix, *cf.* **ἐ-ποίη-σ-ε** III. N. **15**; (*c*) **-μένη** (masc. **μενο-**) participial suffix, mid. voice; for the active suffix *cf.* **ἄρχοντα** V.; (*d*) **ἐξαιτησάμεν-ος**, *he begging off*, **ἐξαιτησαμέν-η**, *she*, etc., **ἐξαιτησάμεν-ον**, *it*, etc.; *cf.* the Lat. end. **-us**, **-a**, **-um**.

8. **ἐπί**, *upon, to; cf.* Eng. *epi-taph*, words *upon* a tombstone: note that after a verb of motion, **ἐπί** is followed by the acc.; *cf.* similar use of acc. after **εἰς**.

[1] Or, sometimes, *I lead away* or *order off to death.*

Digitized by Google

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The proclitics ὁ, ἡ, ὡς, each, like εἰς, without an accent.

2. The article standing without a substantive is equivalent to a demonstrative pronoun: *he, she, it.*

3. The passive of a verb may acquire a meaning apparently disconnected with its active meaning, *e. g.* πείθω, πείθομαι.

4. Prepos. ἐξ, *out of, from;* σύν, *with;* ἐπί, *upon.*

5. ν of σύν becomes λ when followed by λ in the same word.

6. Stems ending in a consonant (μήτηρ, st. μᾰτερ) belong to the third declension.

7. ὁ δέ, *but he;* ἡ δέ, *but she;* τὸ δέ, *but it.*

8. The augment occurs only in the indicative mode, not in the partic., *e. g.* λαβών, ἐξαιτησαμένη.

9. μενο-, fem. μενη, is the partic. suffix middle voice.

10. The nom. of participles mid. voice is -μεν-ος, -μεν-η, -μεν ον, Lat. -us, -a, -um.

11. πείθεται, συλλαμβάνει, pres. tense, here refer to time actually past.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The letters of the Greek alphabet	H. 5.	G. 1.
2. Division of consonants . . .	H. 22.	G. 6.
3. The semivowels	H. 23.	G. 6, 1.
4. Declension of ἀγαθός	H. 222.	G. σοφός, 62, 3
5. Participial suffixes	H. 382.	G. 117, 2.
6. Article as a demonstrative . .	H. 654 and *e.*	G. 143 and N. 2

4. VOCABULARY.

1. αἰτέω, *I beg.*
2. ἐξ *from, out of.*
3. ἐξ-αιτέω, *I beg off.*
4. ἀπο-κτείνω, *I kill, destroy.*
5. ἀπο-πέμπω, *I send off, away.*
6. κτείνω, *I kill.*
7. ἡ μήτηρ, *mother.*
8. πάλιν, *back, again.*
9. πείθω, *I persuade.*
10. πείθομαι, *I am persuaded, believe.*
11. σύν, *with.*
12. συλλαμβάνω, *I seize, arrest.*

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) *Κατέστη πάλιν εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν.* (*b*) *Ὁ δὲ συνελάμβανε αὐτόν, ὡς διαβάλλοντα τὸν Δαρεῖον.* (*c*) *Ὁ μὲν πρεσβύτερος, τοὺς τριακοσίους συλλαβών, κατέστη εἰς τὴν χώραν.* (*d*) *Ἡ δὲ τυγχάνει ἐξαιτησαμένη τὸν νεώτερον τῶν ἀδελφῶν.*

2. Translate: (*a*) *γιγνόμενος*, (*b*) *ὑποπτευόμενος*, (*c*) *βουλόμενος*, (*d*) *πέμπων*, (*e*) *πεμπόμενος*, (*f*) *λαμβανόμενος*, (*g*) *διαβαλλόμενος*, (*h*) *διαβάλλων*, (*i*) *πείθων*, (*j*) *πειθόμενος*.

3. Translate: (*a*) going up, (*b*) being present, (*c*) having, (*d*) having for one's self, (*e*) collecting themselves, (*f*) persuading himself, (*g*) being persuaded.

4. Translate: (*a*) But being slandered, he wishes to be absent from the government. (*b*) He sends the three hundred back again to the government of which Cyrus had made him satrap. (*c*) But he believes (= believing) [and] sends after Cyrus as if (*ὡς*) about to kill him.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Article as demonstrative pronoun. 2. Classification of nouns according to decl. 3. Greek voices; significations of the middle. 4. Proclitics. 5. Historical pres. 6. *ν* before *λ*. 7. Accent in decl. 8. Formation of participles. 9. Analysis of *ἄρχοντα*. 10. Quantity of the vowel of each final syllable in the cases of 1st and 2d decl. 11. The augment, kinds, place, effect on a prep. prefix. 12. Gender in first two declensions. 13. Formation of the aor. stem.

Digitized by Google

LESSON VIII.

ANABASIS I. 1. 4, to *ἀντ' ἐκείνου.*

1. NOTES.

1. **ὁ δ'**, for **ὁ δέ**, *but he; cf.* **ὁ δέ** VII.: note the loss of **ε** before the initial vowel of **ὡς** and the use of the apostrophe to indicate the loss.

2. **ὡς**, *when, as soon as:* conjunction, *cf.* meaning of **ὡς** VI., VII.

3. **ἀπ-ῆλθε**, *he went away, was gone:* (*a*) from theme **ἐλθ** (**ἐλυθ**) seen in Eng. *pros-elyte*, one who *goes* to another sect; (*b*) pres. **ἔρχομαι**, deponent, from theme **ἐρχ**; the fut., 2d aor., and perf. forms have the theme **ἐλυθ**; (*c*) **η** temp. aug., *cf.* **ὑπώπτευε** II.; (*d*) **ἀπ** for **ἀπό**, as in **ἀπ-ών**, **ἀπ-εῖναι.**

4. **κινδῡνευ-σᾱ ς**, *after incurring danger:* (*a*) from **κινδῡνεύ ω**; (*b*) **-σᾱ-ς** indicates 1st aor. partic. act., standing for **-σα-ντ-ς**, as Lat. **amans** for **ama-nt-s**; (*c*) on **-σα-**, *cf.* **ἐποίησε** III. N.; on **ντ** *cf.* **ἄρχο-ντ-α** V.; (*d*) **-ς** case end. nom. sing. masc., *cf.* **σατράπη-ς**, **Δαρεῖο ς**, Lat. **amans**.

5. **ἀτῑμασ-θεί-ς**, *after being dishonored:* (*a*) from **ἀτῑμάζ-ω**, theme **ἀτῑμαδ**; (*b*) **ζ** not only sounded with a **δ** sound, but actually containing a **δ**; (*c*) note the change[1] of a *t* sound before another *t* sound (*i. e.* **δ** before **θ**) to **σ**; (*d*) **τ**, **δ**, **θ**, sounded with the aid of the tip of the *tongue*, are called *lingual* consonants or mutes; (*e*) **-θεί-ς** for **-θέ-ντ-ς** indicates 1st aor. partic. *pass.*; (*f*) **θε-**, first pass. suffix; on **-ντ-** and **-ς** *cf.* **κινδῡνεύσᾱς** for **κινδῡνεύσαντς.**

6. **ἔσ-ται**, *he shall be:* (*a*) from theme **ἐς**, Lat. **es-se**, *to be;* infin. **εἶναι**, partic. **ὤν**; (*b*) **-ται** end. as in **γίγνε-ται**; note that this fut. is deponent, *i. e.* active in meaning, but with passive terminations.

7. **ἐπί**, *upon*, here *in the power of:* followed by dat., *cf.* however **ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν** VII.

8. **ἢν δύνη-ται**, *if he shall* (or *may*) *be able:* (*a*) **ἤν** = **εἰ**, *if* (Lat. **si**) + **ἄν** (untranslatable); (*b*) *cf.* Eng. *dyna-mite*, an *able* explosive: from **δύνα-μαι**, dep., *cf.* **βούλο-μαι**; (*c*) **-η-**, vowel of subjunctive, but **ω** in 1st person: **δύναμαι**, I am able; **δύνωμαι**, pres. subjunctive, 1st sing.; **δύνηται**, pres. subjunctive, 3d sing.

9. **βασιλεύ-σ-ει**, *he shall rule; cf.* **βασιλείᾱ**, kingdom: (*a*) from **βασιλεύ-ω**, I rule; **βασιλεύ-ει**, he rules; (*b*) note, **σ-** inserted after the verb

[1] So in Lat. **claus-trum**, from **claud-o**, is for **claud-trum**; this has come into Eng. as *clois-ter.*

Digitized by Google

stem forms the future stem, as σα- forms the 1st aor. stem, *cf.* ἐποίησε III.; (*c*) similarly ποιή-σω, ποιή-σει, I shall make, he will make.

10. ἀντ' for ἀντί, *instead of*;[1] *cf.* ὁ δ' **1**; note, a final vowel may be dropped before the initial vowel of a following word, and an apostrophe indicate the loss; (*b*) preposition followed by the gen. case.

11. ἐκείνου, *of that one, of him*; from ἐκεῖνος, declined like ἀγαθός, except that the neut. sing. is ἐκεῖνο, not ἐκεῖνον.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A final vowel may be elided before the initial vowel of a following word.

2. ὡς is used both as conjunction and adverb.

3. ἐ augments to ἠ, *e. g.* ἀπ-ῆλθε from theme ἐλθ.

4. The augment in compound verbs comes after the preposition.

5. τ, δ, or θ before another τ, δ, or θ (in the same word) becomes σ.

6. ε-ται indicates the ind. mid. 3d sing.; η-ται the subjunc. mid. 3d sing.

7. -ων, end. of the active partic. in pres., 2d aor., and fut.

8. -σᾶς, end. of the partic., 1st aor. act.; standing for σα-ντ-ς.

9. -θείς, end. of the partic., 1st aor. pass.; standing for θε-ντ-ς.

10. The verb stem is made fut. by adding $\sigma^{o}|_{\epsilon\text{-}}$,[2] *e. g.* ποιή-σω, ποιή-σει.

11. Second aor. forms (*e. g.* ἀπ-ῆλθε) are derived from the theme without a tense suffix.

12. Only the indicative has the augment.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The three classes of mutes	H. 24.	G. 6, 2 second group.
2. Linguals changed to σ . .	H. 52.	G. 16, 1 end.
3. Elision	H. 79.	G. 12.
4. Declension of ἐκεῖνος, αὐτός .	H. 271, 265.	G. 83, 79.
5. Suffixes of the fut., 1st aor., and 1st pass. systems . .	H. 372.	G. 110 II., III., VI.
6. Vowel of the subjunctive .	H. 408.	G. 114.
7. Tenses in participles . . .	H. 856.	G. 204.
8. Final clauses	H. 885.	G. 217

[1] Such Eng. words as *antichrist*, *antidote* show this preposition; but the sense in them is rather that of *against* than *instead of*.

[2] This means that an *o*-vowel follows σ in the 1st pers. sing. and plur. and 3d pers. plur.; and that ε follows elsewhere.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀλλά, *but.*
2. ἀντί, *instead of.*
3. ἔρχομαι, *I come, go.*
4. ἀπ-έρχομαι, *I go away.*
5. ἀπ-ῆλθε, *he went away.*
6. ἀτῑμάζω, *I dishonor.*
7. βουλεύω,[1] *I advise, plan.*
8. δύναμαι, *I am able.*
9. ἐκεῖνος, *that one, he.*
10. ἐπί (with dat.), *upon, in the power of.*
11. ἔσται, *will be.*
12. ἔτι, *yet, again.*
13. ἤν (εἰ ἄν), *if.*
14. κινδῡνεύω, *I incur danger.*
15. μήποτε, *never.*
16. ὅπως, *in order that.*
17. λύω, *I loose.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate : (*a*) ἔχων, κινδῡνεύων, κινδῡνεύσων, κινδῡνεύσᾱς, τελευτησάμενος, αἰτησαμένη, τελευτηθείς. (*b*) ποιήσων, ποιήσᾱς, ποιησάμενος, ποιηθείς. (*c*) γίγνομαι, γίγνεται, βούλεται. (*d*) ἐποίει, ἐποιεῖτο, ἐποίησε. (*e*) πείθω, πείθει, πείθεται, πεισθείς, πείθων. (*f*) λύω, λύων, λῡόμενος, λῡσαμένη, λύσᾱς, λύσων, λυθείς, λύει, ἔλῡε, λύομαι, ἐλύετο, λύεται, ἐλύοντο.

2. Translate : (*a*) after begging, about to beg, after being begged. (*b*) Cyrus is-begged-off (partic. aor. pass.) [and] sent away to the government of which Darius had made him satrap. (*c*) He plans (for himself) in order that he may again be able to be general of all the Greeks who assemble into the plain.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Elision. 2. Participial suffixes. 3. Indirect discourse. 4. Tense suffixes. 5. Verb theme. 6. Future of εἶναι. 7. Analysis of λύσᾱς, λυθείς. 8. Lingual consonant before another ling. cons. 9. Accent in declension. 10. ρ before a rough breathing. 11. Tenses which denote continued action. 12. Purpose. 13. Meaning of σ°|ε.

[1] Very frequent as an indirect middle.

Digitized by Google

LESSON IX.

ANABASIS I. I. 4, 5.

TEXT: **Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ . . . ἡ βασιλεῖ.**

1. NOTES.

1. **ὑπ-ῆρχ-ε**, *was* (*for*, i. e.) *aiding:* (*a*) from **ὑπ-άρχω**; on **ὑπ** (Lat. **sub**) for **ὑπό** *cf.* **ὑπ-ώπτευε** II. N. **5** *d*; (*b*) on **η** and **ε** *cf.* **ἠσθένει** II. N. **4**; (*c*) on the accent *cf.* **ἀπ-ῆλθε** VIII. N. **3**; note that it is upon the temporal aug.

2. **Κύρῳ**: dat. after **ὑπῆρχε**; *cf.* similar use of the dat. in Lat. after verbs of *aiding: e. g.* **mihi succurrit.**

3. **φιλοῦσα**, *loving:* (*a*) from **φιλέω**; (*b*) **φιλέ-ων** (he) loving, **φιλέ-ουσα** (she) loving; so **ἔχων**, **ἔχουσα**; (*c*) note, the diphthong **ου** absorbs **ε** of **φιλέ-ω** and a circumflex marks the contraction;[1] (*d*) so **φιλῶ**, I love, **φιλῶν**, loving, **φιλοῦσα** (she) loving; note the contraction.

4. **βασιλεύο-ντ-α**, (*him*) *ruling; cf.* **βασιλεύσει** VIII.: (*a*) on **-ντ-** and **-α** *cf.* **ἄρχοντα** V. N. 11; (*b*) **βασιλεύων**, *he ruling*, **βασιλεύουσα**, *she ruling;* (*c*) **-α** marks acc. sing. 3d decl.; so **ἡ μήτηρ** (stem **μητερ**), **τὴν μητέρ-α**.

5. **ἀφ-ικνοῖτο**, *might arrive, come*: (*a*) pres. opt. from **ἀφ-ικνέ-ομαι** dep.; (*b*) **-οῖτο**, contr. of **-ε** of the theme with end. **-οιτο**; note that **ε** is absorbed by **οι**, as by **ω** in **φιλέω**, **φιλῶ** **3** *d*, and that a circumflex marks the contr.;[1] (*c*) on the corresp. act. end. *cf.* **ἐπιβουλεύ-οι** VI.; (*d*) note that the verb is introduced by the indef. rel. pron. **ὅστις**, *whoever*, and that *whoever might come = if any one came;* (*e*) **ἀφ** for **ἀπ** (= **ἀπό**), *cf.* **καθ-ίστημι** VI. N. **2.**

6. **παρά**, with the gen., *from beside, from the side of:* (*a*) note the idea of separation in **παρά** with the gen.; (*b*) "whoever, of those *from beside* the king, *i. e.* from the court, came" means "whoever of those *beside* [who were beside] the king came," etc.

7. **βασιλέ-ως**, *of* (*the*) *king;* note the omission of the def. art.;[2] (*a*) from **βασιλεύ-ς**, *king; cf.* **βασιλεύ-οντα** above; (*b*) **-ως** for **-ος** as in **Παρυσάτιδ-ος** I. N. **3**; **ος** case ending gen. sing. 3d decl., *cf.* **-is** in Lat. 3d

[1] A circumflex on the *penult* of course can occur only when the ultima is short.

[2] The art. is regularly omitted before **βασιλεύς**, when the great king of Persia is referred to.

Digitized by Google

decl., *e. g.* **honor-is**, *of honor;* (*c*) so ἄρχοντ-ος, βασιλεύοντ-ος, παιδ-ός, μητρ-ός (Lat. **matr-is**).

8. πάντ-ας, *all;* acc. plur. masc.; gen. plur. πάντ-ων IV. N. **5**: so πάντας βασιλέ-ας, all kings, πάντας ἄρχοντας, all commanders.

9. δια-τιθ-είς, *disposing:* (*a*) *thus disposing all = thus affecting the minds of all;* (*b*) from δια-τίθη-μι, theme θε, pres. stem τιθε; (*c*) pres. stem of the compound, δια-τιθε, partic. δια-τιθε-ντ-ς; on -έντς changed to -είς *cf.* ἀτῑμασθείς VIII. N. **5** *e*; *cf.* also κινδῡνεύσας VIII. for κινδῡνεύσαντς; (*d*) note, ντ is lost before the end. -ς; then ε is lengthened to ει, α to ᾱ.

10. βασιλε-ῖ, *to the king:* (*a*) -ι, end. of dat. sing. 3d decl., *of.* Lat. **regī** and iota subscript in αὐτῷ; (*b*) applying the endings met with, we have: βασιλεύ-ς, βασιλέ-ως, βασιλεῖ, βασιλέ-α; βασιλέ-ες,[1] βασιλέ-ων, βασιλέ-ας.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The accent of compound verbs does not precede the augment.

2. ὑπάρχω, *to be for, to aid,* governs the dative case.

3. Participles in -ων have the feminine in -ουσᾰ.

4. Verb themes ending in -ε lose it before an ending beginning with -ω, -ου, or οι, and the contracted syllable receives a circumflex accent.

5. A sentence introduced by the indef. rel. ὅστις and containing the optative has the force of a condition.

6. π becomes φ before a rough breathing, as τ becomes θ.

7. The partic. suffix ντ is lost before the case ending ς, and a preceding α becomes ᾱ; ε becomes ει.

8. The third decl. endings: -ς, -ος, -ι, -α, -ες, -ων, -ας.

9. With the gen. παρά denotes separation: *from the side of.*

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Three orders of the mutes	H. 25.	G. 6, 2 end.
2. Compensative lengthening	H. 34.	G. 16, 6 N. 1.
3. Contraction of *e* and *o* sounds	H. 37, *c*; 39, *b*.	G. 9, 2 and 4.
4. Accent in contraction . .	H. 105.	G. 24.
5. Third declension . . .	H. 163; 168-170.	G. 45, 1 and 2; 46, 2; 47; 48.

[1] In Xenophon βασιλέ-ες is contr. to βασιλεῖς, a change like that of ἠσθένεα to ἠσθενει.

Digitized by Google

6. Declension of *βασιλεύς*	H. 206.	G. 53, 3.
7. Accent as affected by the augment	H. 391, *b*.	G. 105.
8. Verbs of *aiding*	H. 764, 2.	G. 184, 2.
9. *παρά* with the gen. case	H. 802 and 1.	G. 191, VI. 4 (1).
10. *πρός* with the acc. case [1]	H. 805 and 3 *a*.	G. 191, VI. 6 (3) *a*.
11. Conditional relative sentences	H. 912; 889.	G. 231; 219, 1, 2, 3.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. *ἀφ-ικνέο-μαι*, *I arrive.*
2. *ὁ βασιλεύς king.*
3. *βασιλεύω*, *I rule.*
4. *δή*, *accordingly, so then.*
5. *δια-τίθη-μι*, *I arrange, dispose.*
6. *ἤ*, *than.*
7. *μᾶλλον*, *rather.*
8. *ὅστις*, *whoever.*
9. *οὕτω*, *so, thus*; **ita.**
10. *πάντες*, *all.*
11. *παρά*, with gen., *from beside, from.*
12. *ὑπό*, *under*; **sub.**
13. *ὑπ άρχω*, *I aid.*
14. *φιλέω*, *φιλῶ*, *I love.*
15. *φίλος*, *friend.*
16. *ὥστε*, *that* as a result; **ut.**

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) *βασιλεύων, βασιλεύοντος, βασιλεύοντα, βασιλεύουσα*; *λύσων, λύσουσα.* (*b*) *Ἡ δὴ μήτηρ αὐτὸν ἐφίλει, ὥστε αὐτῇ μᾶλλον φίλον εἶναι ἢ τῷ βασιλεῖ.* (*c*) *Ὅστις οὖν ἀφικνοῖτο παρ' αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην, ἀπέδειξε στρατηγὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων.* (*d*) *Ἀλλ' ἦν δύνηται βασιλεὺς εἶναι, ποιήσει τὸν ἀδελφὸν στρατηγόν.* (*e*) *Ἡ μήτηρ οὖν ἀνέβαινε πρὸς τὸν Ἀρταξέρξην ὡς ἐξαιτησομένη τὸν Κῦρον.* (*f*) *Ὁ δὲ ὑποπτευθεὶς ἐτελεύτησε τὸν βίον.*

2. Translate: (*a*) He indeed happens to be friendly (= a friend) to the king. (*b*) But when the younger happened to be absent, Tissaphernes slanders him before the ruling Artaxerxes. (*c*) But the mother, loving Cyrus rather than the older brother, persuades the king and sends Cyrus back again to his government.

[1] Make it a point to consult the treatment of the preposition given in the grammars, as often as new prepositions or new uses of the familiar ones are met with.

Digitized by Google

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Accent of *ὑπῆρχε*. 2. *ὅπως* and *ὥστε*. 3. Analysis of partic. end. *-ᾱς, -εἰς*. 4. *φ* in *ἀφικνέομαι*. 5. Endings in the 3d decl. 6. Adjective and relative agreement. 7. Analysis of *βασιλεύοντα*. 8. Augment of *α, ε, ο*. 9. Verb endings *-οι, -οιτο*. 10. Elision and augment in compound verbs. 11. Conditional relatives. 12. Classification of the consonants. 13. Article as a demonstrative. 14. Time indicated by the tenses of the participle.

LESSON X. — REVIEW.

[This lesson is a review of all that have preceded it. Nothing is so necessary, in the acquisition of a language, as constant and thorough review. One should carry forward with him at least nine-tenths of what he has learned. The preceding lessons contain in all eighty-eight different words, together with a large number of grammatical forms. Many of the most important principles of the language have been considered. Others might have been brought forward; but it has been deemed wise to hold them in reserve. It is understood that the student will in no case proceed to take up Lesson XI. until this lesson, with all that it includes, is learned. Let every word, every phrase, every principle, be mastered absolutely.]

1. TEXT. ANABASIS I. 1. 1 to *βασιλεῖ* I. 1. 5.

In the review of the text which has thus far been taken, pursue the following order of work: —

1. Pronounce aloud the Greek text repeatedly.

2. With only the English translation before the eye, pronounce the Greek, until this can be done rapidly and without hesitation.

3. With only the English translation before the eye, write out the Greek; compare the result with the printed Greek text; note and correct mistakes.

4. Write out a grammatical analysis of the material of the text thus far studied under the following heads: (1) noun-forms, classifying separately in both sing. and plur., (*a*) nom. forms, (*b*) gen. forms, (*c*) dat. forms, (*d*) acc. forms; (2) verb-forms, classify separately

Digitized by Google

(*a*) presents, (*b*) imperfects, (*c*) aorists; and, again, (*d*) subjunctives, (*e*) optatives, (*f*) participles.[1]

5. Go through the text and select those forms and phrases which, perhaps, still remain unmastered. Read again the previous notes given upon them. *Do not leave them before they have been conquered.*

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The alphabet	H. 5.	G. 1.
2. The vowels	H. 9.	G. 2.
3. Breathings	H. 17.	G. 4.
4. Gamma nasal	H. 20.	G. 6, 1.
5. Zeta	H. 21 *a*.	G. 5, 2.
6. Classification of consonants	H. 22.	G. 5.
7. Semivowels	H. 23.	G. 6, 1.
8. The mutes	H. 24, 25.	G. 6, 2.
9. Xi	H. 26.	G. 5, 2.
10. Compensative lengthening (*α* and *ε*)	H. 34.	G. 16, 6 N. 1.
11. Contr. of *ε* with *ω*, *ου*, *ε*	H. 37.	G. 9, 2, 3, 4.
12. Lingual mute before another lingual mute	H. 52.	G. 16, 1.
13. Elision	H. 79, 81.	G. 12, 1 and 2.
14. Syllables	H. 90.	G. 18, 1.
15. Accent	H. 95, 96 and *a*, 99, 100 *a*, *b*, 102, *a*.	G. 21, 1, 2, 22, 1, 2, N. 1.
16. Accent as affected by contr.	H. 105.	G. 24.
17. Grave accent	H. 108.	G. 23.
18. Proclitics	H. 111.	G. 29.
19. Gender, number, cases	H. 123.	G. 33, 1, 2, 3.
20. Accent of nouns	H. 128, 129.	G. 25, 1, 2.
21. Stems	H. 130.	G. 32, 1, 2.
22. Declensions	H. 131.	G. 34.
23. Stem end., gender, nom. endings, 1st decl.	H. 134.	G. 35.
24. *χώρᾱ*, *τιμή*	H. 135.	G. 37.
25. *-ῶν*, 1st decl.	H. 141.	G. 39, 4.

[1] The instructor should aid the pupil in this work of classifying his material. Blank-books, properly ruled, should be used. It is of extreme importance that, from the beginning, the pupil should be encouraged to do independent work.

Digitized by Google

26. Second decl., stem end., gender, nom. end. . .	H. 151.	G. 40.
27. ἄνθρωπος, δῶρον	H. 153.	G. 42, 1.
28. Third decl. stems and case endings	H. 163, 168, 169, 170.	G. 45, 46, 2, 47, 1, 49.
29. βασιλεύς	H. 206.	G. 53, 3.
30. ἀγαθός	H. 222.	G. 62, 3 σοφός.
31. αὐτός	H. 265.	G. 79, 1.
32. ἐκεῖνος	H. 271.	G. 83.
33. Article	H. 272.	G. 78.
34. Voices, modes, tenses, themes	H. 298-300, 307.	G. 88–92.
35. Augment	H. 354–56, 360.	G. 99, 100, 105.
36. Tense and mode suffixes .	H. 372.	G. 110 II., III., VI.
37. Participial suffixes . . .	H. 382.	G. 117, 2.
38. Vowel of the subjunct. .	H. 408.	G. 114.
39. Agreement of the subject	H. 601.	G. 134.
40. " " verb	H. 603.	G. 135.
41. " " adjective	H. 620.	G. 138.
42. " " appositive	H. 623.	G. 137.
43. " " relative	H. 627.	G. 151.
44. ὁ as a demonstrative . .	H. 654 and *e*.	G. 143 and N. 2.
45. Object and pred. acc. . .	H. 726.	G. 166.
46. Voice	H. 811–813.	G. 199.
47. Tense	H. 821–24, 828, 829, 836, 837, 856.	G. 200, N. 1, 202, 1, 204.
48. Ὅπως with fut. ind. . .	H 885.	G. 217.
49. The cond. sentence . . .	H. 889.	G. 219, 1.
50. Conditional relatives . .	H. 912.	G. 231.

3. VOCABULARY.

[The pupil is expected to know the various forms which have occurred of each of the words here given.]

Verbs.

1. ἀθροίζω.
2. αἰτέω.
3. ἀνα-βαίνω.
4. ἀπ-έρχομαι.
5. ἀπο-δείκνυμι.
6. ἀπο-κτείνω.
7. ἀσθενέω.
8. ἀτῑμάζω.

Digitized by Google

9. ἀφ-ικνέομαι.
10. βασιλεύω.
11. βουλεύω.
12. βούλομαι.
13. γίγνομαι.
14. δια-βάλλω.
15. δια-τίθημι.
16. δύναμαι.
17. εἶναι.
18. ἐξ-αιτέω.
19. ἐπι-βουλεύω.
20. ἔχω.
21. καθ-ίστημι.
22. κινδῡνεύω.
23. κτείνω.
24. λαμβάνω.
25. λύω.
26. μετα-πέμπω.
27. παρ-εἶναι.
28. πείθω.
29. πέμπω.
30. ποιέω
31. συλ-λαμβάνω.
32. τελευτάω.
33. τυγχάνω
34. ὑπ-άρχω.
35. ὑπ-οπτεύω.
36. φιλέω.

NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἀδελφός.
2. ἡ ἀρχή.
3. ὁ ἄρχων.
4. ἡ βασιλεῖᾱ.
5. ὁ βασιλεύς.
6. ὁ βίος.
7. οἱ Ἕλληνες.
8. ἡ μήτηρ.
9. ὁ ὁπλιτης.
10. ὁ παῖς.
11. τὸ πεδίον.
12. ὁ σατράπης.
13. ὁ στρατηγός.
14. ἡ τελευτή.
15. ὁ φίλος.

ADJS., PRONS.

1. ἀμφοτέρω.
2. νεώτερος.
3. πάντες.
4. πρεσβύτερος.

1. αὐτός.
2. ἐκεῖνος.
3. ὅ, ἥ, τό.
4. ὅσος.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. δέ, καί, ἀλλά.
2. ἐπεί.
3. ἤ.
4. ἦν.
5. ὅπως, ὥστε.
6. ὡς.

PREPOSITIONS.

1. ἀνά.
2. ἀντί.
3. ἀπό.
4. διά.
5. εἰς.
6. ἐξ.
7. ἐπί.
8. κατά.
9. μετά.
10. παρά.
11. πρός.
12. σύν.
13. ὑπό.

ADV. PARTICLES.

1. δή.
2. ἔτι.
3. μέν
4. μήποτε.
5. οὖν.
6. οὕτω.
7. πάλιν
8. ὡς.

4. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ὁ στρατηγὸς τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου ἐποίει. (*b*) Ὁ πρεσβύτερος ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἀπὼν ἐτύγχανε. (*c*) Ὅσοι στρατηγοὶ ἠθροίζοντο εἰς πεδίον, βούλονται τὸν Κῦρον εἶναι ἄρχοντα. (*d*) Ὁ δὲ Ξενίας κατέστη εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν. (*e*) Ἡ δ' ἐτύγχανε διαβάλλουσα τὸν νεώτερον ὡς τῇ ἀρχῇ ἐπιβουλεύοι.

2. Translate: (*a*) He wishes accordingly to be absent from the kingdom. (*b*) He sends for the three hundred men from the province of which Darius had made him satrap. (*c*) The king indeed happens to be a friend to him. (*d*) But she, loving the younger, wished him to be present.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XI.

ANABASIS I. i. 5, 6.

TEXT: καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ . . . λάβοι βασιλέα.

1. NOTES.

1. παρ' (with dat.), *by the side of:* (*a*) *cf.* παρὰ βασιλέως IX. (gen.), from *the side of the king;* (*b*) on παρ' for παρά *cf* ἀντ' VIII. N. **10**.

2. ἑαυτῷ, *himself,* **sibi**: note that παρ' ἑαυτῷ stands between τῶν and βαρβάρων like an ordinary attrib. adj., *e.g.* τῶν ἀγαθῶν παίδων, *of the good boys.*

3. ἐπ-ε-μελεῖ-το, contr. from ἐπεμελέ-ε-το from ἐπι-μελέομαι, deponent: (*a*) on the form, *cf.* ἐ-βούλε-το II.; (*b*) ε-ε = ει as in ἠσθένει II.; (*c*) on é-ε = εῖ, *cf.* é-ου = οῦ in φιλοῦσα IX.; (*d*) construed with gen., *he took care* of *the barbarians.*

4. πολεμεῖν, contr. from πολεμέ-ειν, from πολεμέω; *cf.* Eng. *polemic:* (*a*) -ειν indicates the infin., *cf.* also -ναι in παρεῖ-ναι II.; (*b*) so ἔχω, ἔχειν; λύω, λύειν.

5. τε, for τέ, *both,* foll. by καί, *and:* (*a*) note loss of accent; to be read as part of the *preceding* word;[1] (*b*) *cf.* εἰς IV., ὡς V., ὁ VII., which have no accent, and are read as part of the *foll.* word.

6. ὡς . . . εἴησαν, **ut essent,** *that they might be:* (*a*) pres. opt. 3d plur., in a clause of purpose; (*b*) from εἰμί, *I am, cf.* ὤν, *being,* εἶναι, *to be,* ἔσται, *will be;* (*c*) on the optative in indir. disc. for indic. of the dir. disc. *cf.* ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι VI.; (*d*) on the opt. in cond. rel. sent. *cf.* ὅστις ἀφικνοῖτο IX.

7. εὐνοϊκ-ῶς ἔχοι-εν, *and that they might have in a friendly manner, i. e. might be friendly:* (*a*) -ως indicates the adverb; (*b*) as -οι indicates the pres. opt. 3d sing., so -οιεν indicates the pres. opt. 3d plur., *cf.* however εἴ-η-σαν **6**; (*c*) opt. as in εἴησαν, **6** *a.*

8. δύναμι-ν, *force:* (*a*) nom. δύναμι-ς, *cf.* Eng. *dynamite,* δύνηται VIII.; (') end. -ν indicates accus. sing. 3d decl., *cf.* also -α in ἄρχοντ-α V. N. **11.**

9. ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο, **quam maxime poterat,** *as well as he could:* ἐ-δύνα-το from δύνα-μαι dep., *cf.* δύνηται VIII.; on the form *cf.* ἐ-βούλε-το II. N. **9**; ἐπεμελεῖτο, **3** *a.*

[1] So in Lat., **hóminésque.**

Digitized by Google

10. *ἐπι-κρυπτ-ό-μενο-ς*, *hiding* (*for himself*) : (*a*) from *ἐπι κρύπτω*, *cf.* Eng. *crypt*; (*b*) on the partic. suffix and the voice *cf.* *ἐξαιτησα-μέν-η* VII.

11. *ὅπως*, **ut**, *in order that*; *cf.* similar use of *ὡς* **6** : (*a*) followed here by the opt. *λάβ-οι* ; (*b*) *cf.* *εἶησαν*, *ἔχοιεν*, *λάβοι*, note that the verbs upon which they depend (*ἐπεμελεῖτο*, *ἤθροιζεν*) are in a past, or secondary, tense ; (*c*) on *ὅπως* with fut. ind. after verbs of *striving*, *cf.* *ὅπως ἔσται* VIII.

12. *ὅτι ἀπαρασκευό-τατο-ν*, *as unprepared as possible* : (*a*) *ὅτι* like *ὡς* in *ὡς μάλιστα* **9**, strengthening the superlat. ; (*b*) *-τατο-* (nom. *-τατος*) indicates superlat. ; (*c*) for the comparative suffix *cf.* *-τερο-* in *πρεσβύ-τερο-ς* I.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *παρά* is const. with both gen. and dat., but with different meanings.

2. A preposition with its dependent noun may stand between an article and its subst. and have the value of an attrib. adj.

3. *ἐπιμελέομαι* is construed with the gen.

4. *ὡς* and *ὅπως* indicate purpose.

5. *-ειν*, *-ναι* indicate the infinitive. *ἑ-ειν* = *εἶν*.

6. *τέ* loses its accent, and is read as part of the preceding word.

7. A clause of purpose may have its verb in the opt. when the principal verb is in a past tense.

8. *ἔχω* modified by an adv. has the sense of the Eng. *to be* with a pred. adj.

9. *-οιεν* and *η-σαν* indicate the opt. 3d plur.

10. *ὡς*, *ὅτι*, strengthen the superlative, like **quam** in Latin.

11. Adverbs are formed from adjectives by the end. *-ως*.

12. Comparatives and superlatives are formed by the endings *-τερο-* and *-τατο-*.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Open and close vowels . .	H. 12.	G. 2 N.
2. Contraction of vowels . .	H. 37.	G. 9, 1, 2, 3, 4.
3. Enclitics	H. 113.	G. 27.
4. Declension of *πόλις* . . .	H. 201.	G. 53.
5. Comparison of adjectives .	H. 248, 249.	G. 71.
6. Formation of adverbs . .	H. 257.	G. 74.
7. Tenses of the indicative .	H. 301, 302.	G. 90, 1, 2.

Digitized by Google

8. Article with attributives .	H. 666 and *a*.	G. 142, 1 and N.
9. Adverb with ἔχω	H. 810 examples.	
10. Modes in final clauses . .	H. 881.	G. 215 A., 216.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀπαράσκευος, *unprepared.*
2. ὁ βάρβαρος, *barbarian.*
3. ἡ δύναμις, *force.*
4. ἑαυτῷ, *to himself.*
5. εἴησαν (opt.), *they might be.*
6. Ἑλληνικός, *Greek.*
7. ἐπικρύπτω, *I hide.*
8. ἐπιμελέομαι (w. gen.), *I care for.*
9. εὐνοϊκός, *friendly.*
10. εὐνοϊκῶς, *in a friendly way.*
11. ἱκανός, *able.*
12. ὅτι, ὡς (w. sup.), intensify the superlative.
13. παρά (w. dat.), *by the side of.*
14. πολεμέω, *I fight, make war.*
15. τέ . . . καί, *both . . . and.*
16. ὡς (conj.), *in order that.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Form the adverb from Ἑλληνικός and ἱκανός. 2. Decl. δύναμις, ἀπαράσκευος (sing.), ἱκανός (plur.). 3. Translate: (*a*) Οἱ παρ' ἑαυτῷ βάρβαροι βούλονται εἶναι ἱκανοὶ πολεμεῖν. (*b*) Ὁ μὲν Κῦρος ἀνέβη καὶ ἔσται παρὰ τῷ ἀδελφῷ. (*c*) Ἐβούλοντο δὴ αὐτὸν ἔχειν ὅτι ἱκανώτατον ἄρχοντα. (*d*) Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀσθενεῖ ὁ βασιλεύς, ἐπιμελεῖται αὐτοῦ ἡ Παρύσατις. (*e*) Ἐπεκρύπτετο τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ὅτι μάλιστα ἐδύνατο.

4. Translate: (*a*) But whoever might arrive from beside Cyrus slandered the king as secretly (= hiding) as possible. (*b*) But Cyrus was plotting in order that he might rule. (*c*) The satrap accordingly went up when the king was happening to be most unprepared. (*d*) He will be a friend of the king if he is able (subj.) to hold (= have) his government. (*e*) And if he wishes to slay the generals, the king's brother will be present as a friend to them.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Elision. 2. Contr. of ε-ε, έ-ε, έ-ει, έ-ου, έ-α, ε-ω. 3. Deponents. 4. Verb ending -ειν. 5. Different uses of the opt. 6. Accent of τέ. 7. Theme and pres. stem of λαμβάνω. 8. End. -οιεν, -η-σαν. 9. ἔχω with the adv. 10. ὅπως with fut. ind. 11. Cases with παρά. 12. Endings of 3d decl. 13. Attributive position. 14. Position of μέν; of δέ. 15. Augment. 16. Participial suffixes. 17. Comparison of ἱκανός.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XII.

ANABASIS I. I. 6.

TEXT: **ὧδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο . . . πλὴν Μιλήτου.**

1. NOTES.

1. **εἶχε**: (*a*) impf. ind. from **ἔχω**; here **ε** augments to **ει**; (*b*) aug. of **a**, **o**?

2. **ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι**, *in the cities:* (*a*) **ἐν**, Lat. **in**, *in*; with dat. case; (*b*) **πόλε-σι**, dat. plur. of **πόλι-ς**, *cf.* Eng. *metro-polis*;[1] (*c*) note change of **ι** to **ε**; in which cases is **ι** retained?

3. **παρ-ήγγειλε**: (*a*) from **παρ-αγγέλλω**; *cf.* Eng. *angel*;[2] (*b*) **γγ** = *ng*, *cf.* **γχ** in **τυγχάνω** III. N. **6**; (*c*) **ἤγγελλε**, impf., *was announcing*; **ἤγγειλε**, 1st aor., *announced*; (*d*) note, there is but one **λ** in the 1st aor., and the tense suffix **-σ-α** is not employed, but **ε** is strengthened to **ει**.

4. **λαμβάν-ειν**: (*a*) **-ειν** indicates infin. act., *cf.* **πολεμεῖν** XI. N. **4**; (*b*) pres. infin., since **λαμβαν** is the pres. stem of the theme **λαβ**.

5. **ἄνδρ-ας**: (*a*) nom. sing **ἀνήρ**, stem **ἀνερ**, but **ἀνδρ** in decl.; (*b*) on stems in **ρ** belonging to the 3d decl. *cf.* **μήτηρ** VII. Obs. **6.**

6. **πλείστους**, *most*, **βελτίστους**, *best*: (*a*) superlatives of **πολύς**, **ἀγαθός**; (*b*) the adjectives meaning *much*, *good*, are irregularly compared.

7. **ὡς** *as, as if*, *cf.* **ὡς φίλον** V.: introduces the following two gen., which, taken together, make a construction equivalent to the Lat. abl. abs.

8. **Τισσαφέρνους**, for **Τισσαφερνεσ-ος**, **σ** here drops away between **ε** and **ο** and the vowels contr. to **ου**.

9. **καὶ γὰρ ἦ-σαν**, *for* [*the, etc.*] *were*: (*a*) *cf.* Lat. **etenim** = **et-enim**; (*b*) **ἦ-σαν**. **erant**, *were*; on **-σαν** *cf.* **εἶησαν** XI.

10. **τὸ ἀρχαῖον**, *originally*; *cf.* Eng. *archaic*: acc. sing. neut. with force of adverb.

11. **ἐκ βασιλέως**, *from, by*, [*the*] *king*: (*a*) **ἐκ**, same as **ἐξ**, but used when the following word begins with a consonant; (*b*) with the gen. case.

[1] From **μήτηρ**, *mother*, and **πόλις**, *city*.

[2] Strictly *a messenger*.

Digitized by Google

12. δε-δο-μέν-αι, *having been given:* (*a*) perf. part. pass. (or mid.) of theme δο, *to give, cf.* Lat. **do, dare**; (*b*) note, the stem of the perf. is formed by means of a prefixed reduplication, *cf.* Lat. **pe-pendi, de-di, te-tendi**; (*c*) on part. suffix -μενο *cf.* ἐπικρυπτό-μενο-ς XI. N. **10.**

13. ἀφ-ει-στή-κε-σαν, (*they*) *had revolted:*[1] (*a*) from ἀφ-ίστημι, theme στα, Lat. **sta-re**; (*b*) on ἀφ for ἀπ' *cf.* ἀφ-ικνοῖτο IX. N. **5** *e*, καθ-ίστημι VI. N. **2** *c*; (*c*) -σαν indicates 3d plur., *cf.* εἶησαν XI., ᾖ-σαν **9.**

14. πᾶσ-αι, *all*; from πᾶς: nom. plur. fem.; stem πᾱσ-α; for the masc. stem *cf.* πάντ-ων IV. N. **5.**

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ε sometimes augments to ει. γγ pronounced like *ng* in *sing.*

2. ἐν is foll. by the dat.; ἐξ by the gen.

3. Verbs the stem of whose present ends in -λλ form the first aor. with only one λ and lengthen the theme-vowel, ε to ει; the tense suffix -σα is not used.

4. The theme λαβ becomes λαμβαν in the present system.

5. ἀνήρ has ἀνδρ for its stem, in declension.

6. πολύς, ἀγαθός are irreg. compared.

7. The Greek has a gen. abs. corresp. to the Lat. abl. abs.

8. -σαν indicates the 3d plur. in some forms of the verb.

9. The acc. sing. neut. of the adj. may be used adverbially.

10. ἐξ becomes ἐκ before consonants.

11. The perf. stem is formed by reduplication.

12. πᾶς has the two stems παντ (masc., neut.) and πᾱσ-α (fem.).

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Accent in the third decl. . . .	H. 172.	G. 25, 3.
2. Declens. of ἀνήρ	H. 188 *b*, 189.	G. 57, 2.
3. Declens. of πᾶς	H. 240.	G. 67.
4. Tense systems	H. 303.	G. 92, 4.
5. Adverbial accusative	H. 719.	G. 160, 2.
6. Genitive absolute	H. 970	G. 183.

[1] This form is pluperf. ind., but being somewhat irregular, its full analysis is for the present withheld.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀγγέλλω, *I announce.*
2. παρ αγγέλλω, *I announce.*[1]
3. ὁ ἀνήρ, *man.*
4. ἀφ-ίστημι, *I cause to stand off, revolt.*
5. βέλτιστος, *best.*
6. δίδωμι, *I give.*
7. ἕκαστος, *each.*
8. ἐν, *in.*
9. ἦσαν, **erant**, *they were.*
10. ὁπόσος, **quantus**, *as many as.*
11. πᾶς, *every, all.*
12. πλήν, *except.*
13. ἡ πόλις, *city.*
14. πολύς, πλεῖστος, *much, most.*
15. ἡ συλλογή, *levy.*
16. ἀρχαῖος, *ancient, original.*
17. τὸ ἀρχαῖον, *formerly.*
18. τότε, *then.*
19. ὁ φρούραρχος, *captain of the guard.*
20. ὁ φύλαξ, *guard.*
21. ὧδε, *thus.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Decl. πᾶσα ἡ συλλογή (sing.) ; ὁ βέλτιστος ἀνήρ ; ἑκάστη πόλις.

2. Translate: (*a*) And the city makes the levy as follows. (*b*) As many generals as he has in the city. (*c*) To each he announces that they are-to-take (= to take) 300 as good men as possible. (*d*) The Peloponnesian cities were, in truth, wishing to aid the Ionian cities. (*e*) I will make Tissaphernes general, on-the-ground-that (ὡς) Cyrus wishes (it).

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Comparison. 2. Vowel contraction. 3. Open and close vowels. 4. Adv. ending. 5. Different meanings of ὡς. 6. Modes in final clauses. 7. Peculiarities in decl. of πόλις. 8. Peculiarities of παρήγγειλε. 9. Voice and accent of ἐποιεῖτο. 10. Construct. of πόλεσι (after Τισσαφέρνους). 11. Declens. of βασιλεύς. 12. -ξ in φύλαξ; -ους in Τισσαφέρνους. 13. Accent in contraction. 14. Stems of πᾶς.

[1] Literally *pass the word along, announce to one after another.*

Digitized by Google

LESSON XIII.

ANABASIS I. i. 7.

TEXT: ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ . . . ἐκπεπτωκότας.

1. NOTES.

1. προ-αισθ-ό-μενο-ς, *foreseeing:* (*a*) from αἰσθάν-ο-μαι, *I perceive, cf.* Eng. *æsthetic;* (*b*) πρό, *before,* Lat. **pro**; (*c*) note, the partic. here has for its base the theme αἰσθ, not αἰσθαν; it is 2d aor.; *cf.* λαβ-ών V., ἀνέ-βη V.

2. τὰ αὐτά, *the same (things)*; τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα, *these same things:* (*a*) ὁ αὐτὸς ἀνήρ, *the same man;* ἡ αὐτὴ τελευτή, *the same end;* (*b*) ταῦτα, neut. plur. nom. or acc. of οὗτος, *this, that.*

3. βουλευο-μέν ους, *them planning for themselves:* (*a*) in agreement with αὐτούς understood, the people of Miletus; (*b*) note, the partic. in μενο- is declined like ἀγαθό-ς; for the nom. fem. *cf.* ἐξ-αιτησαμέν-η VII.

4. ἀπο-στῆ-ναι, *to revolt; cf.* ἀφ-ει-στή κε σαν XII.; (*a*) *cf.* πολεμ-εῖν, εἰ-ναι; note the infin. suffix is -ναι or -ειν; (*b*) *cf.* κατ-έ-στη VI.; both forms, showing the theme στα (here lengthened to στη), are 2d aor.; (*c*) so κατα-στῆ-ναι, *to stand down, be established.*

5. ἀπ-έ-κτειν-ε, *he killed:* (*a*) from ἀπο-κτείνω, *cf.* ἀπο-κτενῶν VII., theme κτεν; (*b*) 1st aor., *cf.* παρ-ήγγειλε XII.; note, stems in ν, as those in λ, do not form the 1st aor. with the tense suffix σα, but lengthen the vowel of the theme, — ε to ει.

6. τοὺς μέν . . . τοὺς δέ, *some . . . others:* on ὁ as a demons. *cf.* ὁ δέ VII., ὁ δ' VIII.

7. ἐξ-έ-βαλ-ε, *he cast out, banished:* (*a*) from ἐκ-βάλλω, theme βαλ; (*b*) note that the theme is the base of the verb here; the form is 2d aor., *cf.* **4.**

8. ὑπο-λαβὼν τοὺς φεύγ-ο-ντ-ας, *undertaking (= receiving) the fleeing ones (= fugitives):* (*a*) *cf.* λαβών V.; (*b*) φεύγοντας, pres. part. from φεύγω, **fugio**, *flee;* on the form *cf.* ἄρχοντα V.

9. συλ-λέξ-ᾱς . . . ἐ-πολιόρκ-ει, *collecting . . . he besieged,* i. e. *he collected and besieged:* for συν-λεγ-σᾱς, from συλ-λέγω; on συλ for συν *cf.* συλλαμβάνει VII.; on ξ = κς, γς, *cf* ἀπέδειξε IV.; on -σᾱς = -σα-ντ-ς. *cf.*

Digitized by Google

κινδῡνεύσᾱς VIII. N.; (*b*) from πολιορκέω; -ει contracted from ε-ε, as in ἠσθένει II.

10. στράτευμα, *army* (acc.); *cf.* στρατηγός IV.: (*a*) 3d decl. neut., stem στρατευματ; (*b*) note absence of case end. and dropping of final τ.

11. ἐ-πειρᾶ το, *he was trying*: (*a*) from πειρά-ο-μαι, dep.; (*b*) -ᾶτο for -ά-ετο; -ετο being the same ending as in ἐβούλ-ετο II.

12. κατ-άγειν, *to lead down, back*: (*a*) from ἄγω, **ago**, *I lead*; (*b*) on the end. -ειν, *cf.* **4.**

13. ἐκ-πε-πτω-κ-ότ-ᾰς, *fallen* (i. e. *cast*) *out, exiles*: (*a*) nom. ἐκπεπτωκώς, contr. from -κοτς; on -ως for -οτς *cf.* κινδυνεύσᾱς for κινδυνευσαντς; (*b*) perf. partic., here with the force of a noun; theme πτω from πίπτω; (*c*) πε-, redup.; *cf.* δε-δο-μέναι XII.; (*d*) κ-, representing κα, perf. act. suffix, as σα- is of the 1st aor.; (*e*) -ας as in πάντ-ας IX.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ἐν is followed by the dat. case.

2. αἰσθάνομαι, theme αἰσθ, ἵστημι, theme στα, κτείνω, theme κτεν, βάλλω, theme βαλ, λαμβάνω, theme λαβ.

3. ὁ αὐτός = *the same.*

4. Participles in μενο-ς are declined like ἀγαθός.

5. The infin. endings are -ειν, -ναι.

6. The 2d aor. commonly shows the verb theme; *e. g.* ἀπο-στῆ-ναι.

7. ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ denote contrasted persons.

8. Verbs in ν and λ form the first aor. without -σ-, but lengthen the thematic vowel.

9. The participle standing without a substantive may have the force of a noun: e. g. ἄρχων, φεύγων.

10. κ and γ at the end of a verb stem, before -σα-, 1st aor. suffix, unite with σ, forming ξ.

11. Neuter stems in τ form the nom. and acc. sing. without a case ending, and by dropping τ.

12. α-ε contracts to α, ά-ε to ᾶ.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declens. of γῆ	H. 144.	G. 38 (συκῆ).
2. Declens. of neut. stems in τ.	H. 181.	G. 50 II.

Digitized by Google

3. ὁ αὐτός	H. 265.	G. 79, 2.
4. Declens. of οὗτος (neut.) . .	H. 272.	G. 83.
5. First aor. of liquid verbs . .	H. 431.	G. 110, III., 2.
6. Theme in 2d aor.	H. 435, *a*.	G. 110, V.
7. Attributives used without their substantives . . .	H. 621; 965–66.	G. 139 1 and 2.
8. ὁ μέν . . . ὁ δέ	H. 654.	G. 143.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἄγω, *I lead.*
2. κατ-άγω, *I lead down, back.*
3. αἰσθάνομαι, *I perceive.*
4. βάλλω, *I throw.*
5. ἐκ-βάλλω. *I eject, banish.*
6. ἡ γῆ,[1] *earth, land.*
7. ὁ ἐκπεπτωκώς, *exile.*
8. ἡ θάλαττα, *sea.*
9. κατά, *down;* κατὰ γῆν, *by land.*
10. ὁ αὐτός, **idem**, *the same.*
11. ὁ μέν . . . ὁ δέ, *he . . . he.*
12. πειράομαι, *I attempt.*
13. πίπτω, *I fall.*
14. πολιορκέω, *I besiege.*
15. τὸ στράτευμα, *army.*
16. συλ-λέγω, *I collect.*
17. τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα, **haec eadem**, *these same.*
18. φεύγω, *I flee;* φεύγων, *fugitive.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ὁ δὲ φεύγων, συλλέξας τριακοσίους τῶν Πελοποννησίων, πολιορκεῖ τὴν πόλιν. (*b*) Ὁ μὲν ἀθροίζει τὴν βελτίστην δύναμιν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ ἑαυτῷ. (*c*) Οἱ μὲν πείθονται, οἱ δὲ ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως λάβοιεν βασιλέα. (*d*) Οὗτος ἐπεμελεῖτο τῶν φευγόντων, ὥστε πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν.

2. Decline τὸ αὐτὸ στράτευμα: ὁ αὐτὸς φύλαξ; ἡ αὐτὴ ἀρχή.

3. Translate: (*a*) They desire to revolt to the brother of the ruling man. (*b*) All the generals were desiring to besiege those (τούς) in Miletus both by sea and by land. (*c*) He attempted to lead back the army to (εἰς) the government of which he happened to be satrap. (*d*) Some he was sending away into the city, others he was collecting in order that he might take Miletus. (*e*) He was taking care of the best of the barbarians. (*f*) Perceiving the same things in Miletus, the commander of the army goes up to (-the-side-of the) king.

[1] *Cf.* Eng. *ge-ography.*

Digitized by Google

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Augment. 2. Tense suffixes. 3. The verb theme. 4. Time denoted by the tenses of the participle. 5. Declension of participles in *-μενο-ς*. 6. Const. with *ἐπιβουλεύω*, *ἐπιμελέομαι*. 7. *ἐξ* and *ἐκ*. 8. Reduplication. 9. Analysis of *ἐπολιόρκει*, *ἐπειρᾶτο*. 10. *τὸ ἀρχαῖον*, *formerly, at first*. 11. Enclitics. 12. Three uses of the optative. 13. The formation of the nom. of *ἐκπεπτωκότας*.

LESSON XIV.

ANABASIS I. 1. 7, 8.

TEXT : *καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη . . . ἠσθάνετο.*

1. NOTES.

1. *αὕτη*, *this*, *i. e.* the war with Tissaph. : (*a*) nom. sing., subj. of *ἦν* agreeing in gender with *πρόφασις* (fem.) ; (*b*) masc. *οὗτος*, neut. *τοῦτο* ; neut. plur. *ταῦτα*, *cf.* *τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα* XIII.

2. *ἄλλη πρόφασις*, *another pretext* : (*a*) *ἄλλη* (masc. *ἄλλος*, Lat. **alius**) decl. like *αὐτός* ; (*b*) *πρόφασις*, declens. and gend. same as *δύναμις* XI., *πόλις* XII.

3. *ἦν*, *was* (3d sing.); *ἦσαν*, *were*, XII. ; meaning of *ὤν*, *εἶναι*, *εἶησαν*?

4. *αὐτῷ*, *to him ; was to him, = he had ;* note the possessive force of the dative.

5. *τοῦ ἀθροίζειν*, *of the to-collect = of collecting* : (*a*) *-ειν*, sign of the inf. act., *cf.* *πολεμ-εῖν* XI., *λαμβάν-ειν* XII. ; (*b*) note the Greek inf. with the force of an Eng. noun in *-ing ;* so *τοῦ λύειν*, *of loosing*.

6. *ἠξίου*, *he was asking* (as a right) ; from *ἀξιόω* : (*a*) impf. 3d sing. for *ἠξίοε*, *cf.* *ἠσθένεε*, *ἠσθένει* II. ; (*b*) note, *ο-ε* = *ου*. Contr. of *ε-ω*, *ε-ε*, *έ-ει*, *α-ε*, *ε-ο* ?

7. *δο-θῆ-ναι*, *to be given* : (*a*) from theme *δο*, Lat. **do, dare**, *cf.* *δε-δο-μέναι* XII. ; (*b*) *θη*, long form of *θε*, 1st aor. pass. suffix ; *cf.* *ἀτιμα-σθείς* VIII., = *ἀτιμασ-θε-ντς* ; (*c*) *-ναι* inf. suffix in the aor. pass. (*cf.* **5** *a*).

8. *οἱ*, *to himself* : *cf.* similar meaning of *ἑαυτῷ* XI.

Digitized by Google

9. *ταύτᾱς, these:* (*a*) acc. plur. fem. from *οὗτος, cf. αὕτη* **1**; (*b*) note the forms: *οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, ταῦτα*; (*c*) *cf. τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα* XIII., note that the forms of *οὗτος* do not stand between the art. and its substantive.

10. *αὐτῶν, of them;* gen. after *ἄρχειν, to be ruler of them.*

11. *συν-έ-πρᾱττε(ν) αὐτῷ, co-operated with him:* (*a*) from *συμ-πράττω*, theme *πρᾱγ*; (*b*) final *ν* because the following word begins with a vowel, *cf. ἤθροιζεν* XI.; (*c*) *αὐτῷ*, dat. following *σύν* (*with*) in the verb.

12. *πρὸς ἑαυτόν, toward, against himself; cf. ἑαυτῷ, to himself,* XI.: note, these words stand between *ἐπιβουλήν* and its art., *cf. παρ' ἑαυτῷ* XI.

13. *ᾐσθάνε-το, he was perceiving:* (*a*) from *αἰσθάνο-μαι*, dep., *cf. προ-αισθό-μενος* XIII.; (*b*) note, *αι* augments to *η*; augment of *α, ε, ο*? (*c*) tense of *ᾐσθάνετο*?

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, this, that.*

2. *ἄλλος, another; ὁ ἄλλος, the other,* declined like *αὐτός.*

3. *πρόφασι-ς, πόλι-ς, δύναμι-ς,* fem. 3d decl., are declined alike.

4. *εἰμί, am,* is conjugated irregularly.

5. The Greek, like the Latin, has a dat. of possessor.

6. The infin. may be used as an indeclinable noun and take the art. as a modifier, representing any case.

7. *ο-ε = ου. θε,* 1st passive suffix.

8. *ἄρχειν,* a verb of *ruling,* governs the genitive case.

9. *σύν, with,* in composition with a verb governs the dat. case.

10. A prepositional phrase may take the attributive position.

11. *αι* augments to *η*.

12. *οὗτος* does not stand between a noun and its art., *e. g. οὗτος ὁ ἀνήρ.*

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Mutes before *σ*	H. 54.	G. 16, 2.
2.	Contraction of *ο-ε*	H. 37.	G. 9, 2.
3.	Declension of *οὗτος*	H. 272.	G. 83.
4.	Declension of *ἄλλος*	H. 267.	G. 84, 3.
5.	Position of *οὗτος*	H. 673; 670.	G. 142, 4.
6.	Genitive with *ἄρχειν*	H. 741.	G. 171, 3.
7.	Dative with verbs comp. with *σύν, ἐπί*	H. 775.	G. 187.
8.	Infinitive used as a noun	H. 959.	G. 262, 2.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἄλλος, *another.*
2. ἀξιόω, *I claim, ask as a right,*
3. ἄρχω, *I rule.*
4. αὖ, *again.*
5. ἡ ἐπιβουλή, *conspiracy.*
6. ἦν, **erat,** *was.*
7. οἱ, **sibi,** *to himself.*
8. οὐκ, *not.*
9. οὗτος, *this, that.*
10. ἡ πρόφασις, *pretext.*
11. πράττω, *I do, act, make.*
12. συμπράττω, *I do with, co-operate.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Declension of πρόφασις. αὐτός, στράτευμα, βασιλεύς, πόλις, ἐπιβουλή, λυόμενος (*loosing*).

2. Translate: (*a*) Ἡισθετο. (*b*) Ἡισθάνοντο οὗτοι οἱ ἄνδρες αὐτοὺς τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα ἐν τῇ πόλει βουλευομένους. (*c*) Στρατεύματα ὅτι βέλτιστα συλλέξαντες, ἐβούλοντο ταύτην τὴν πόλιν κατὰ γῆν πολιορκεῖν. (*d*) Ἐτύγχανεν οὖν ἡ ἄλλη δύναμις τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν ἀνδρῶν αὐτὸν μᾶλλον φιλοῦσα ἢ τὸν βασιλέα. (*e*) Ἀλλ' ὁ Κῦρος φίλος ἦν καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ ταῖς φυλακαῖς.

3. Translate: (*a*) In order that the king might take the army as unprepared as possible. (*b*) If he may be able to have those cities instead of the king. (*c*) He was not a friend to the ruling Artaxerxes. (*d*) But he was taking care of collecting an army. (*e*) He accordingly made (ποιέω) that pretext.

4. Translate and analyze: δοθῆναι, λυθῆναι, ἀτιμασθείς, δοθείς, ἐπειρᾶτο, ἠξίου.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The liquid consonants. 2. Formation of the 1st aor. of verbs ending in a liquid. 3. Attributive and predicate positions. 4. Noun accent. 5. Accent in the first declens. 6. Accent of monosyllables in the third declens. 7. The tense suffixes; 1st pass. suffix. 8. Nom. of participles whose stems end in **-οτ, -αντ, -οντ, -εντ.** 9. Time denoted by the tenses of the indicative. 10. Modes in final clauses. 11. The mutes, the three classes and three orders. 12. Open and close vowels.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XV.

ANABASIS I. 1. 8, 9.

TEXT: Τισσαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε . . . φυγὰς ἦν.

1. NOTES.

1. Τισσαφέρνει πολεμοῦντα, (*him*) *warring with Tissaphernes*: (*a*) dat. after πολεμοῦντα; for Τισσαφέρνεσ-ι, on the dropping of σ *cf.* Τισσαφέρνους XII.[1]; (*b*) for the acc. *cf.* V. N. **3**; (*c*) πολεμοῦντα for πολεμέο-ντ-α, from πολεμέ-ω, *cf.* πολεμεῖν XI.; on the form *cf.* ἄρχοντα V.

2. στρατεύματ-α, *armies*: (*a*) on the gender and formation of the nom. *cf.* στράτευμα XIII.; (*b*) -α, ending of nom. acc. neut. plur., *cf.* **a** in Latin, *e. g.* **regn-a, gener-a, cornu-a.**

3. δαπανᾶν, for δαπανά-ειν, *to be wasting money*: from δαπανά-ω; note, -ά-ειν = -ᾶν.

4. οὐδὲν ἤχθε-το, *in-no-wise, not-at-all was angry*: (*a*) acc. sing. neut. used adverbially, *cf.* τὸ ἀρχαῖον XII.; (*b*) nom. masc. οὐδείς, **nullus**; (*c*) from ἄχθο-μαι, dep.; on the aug. *cf.* ἠσθένει II.

5. αὐτῶν πολεμού-ντ-ων, **iis bellantibus**, *whilst, because, they were warring*: on the gen. abs., *cf.* XII. N. **7.**

6. τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμούς, *the (being-born) accruing revenues*: note the attrib. position of the partic., *cf.* βασιλεύοντα IX.; theme of γι-γνομέν-ους? *cf.* I.

7. ὧν Τισσαφέρνους κτέ., *which, of (i. e. belonging to) Tissaphernes, he happened to be having*: (*a*) ὧν for ἅς (acc. fem.); note that the relative here agrees with its antecedent even in case.

8. Χερρονήσῳ τῇ κτέ., *in the Cherronesus, the directly opposite Abydos*: (*a*) X, Eng. *ch*, *cf.* X in Xmas, for Ch(rist)mas; (*b*) 2d decl. *fem.*; (*c*) τῇ καταντιπέρας Ἀβύδου is attrib. to Χερρονήσῳ; note that the attrib.

[1] This dropping of σ may be compared with the change of *s* to *r* in Latin in such words as **arbos, arboris; genus, generis.**

Digitized by Google

positions are: art., attrib., noun, or noun, art., attrib.;[1] (*d*) Ἀβύδου, genitive with the locative adv. ἀντιπέρας.

9. τόνδε τὸν τρόπον, *this way, thus, as follows:* acc. sing. used adverbially, *cf.* τὸ ἀρχαῖον XII., οὐδέν **4** *a;* nom. ὅδε ὁ τρόπος; note, ὅδε like οὗτος (XIV. N. 9) does not take the attrib. position.

10. φυγά-ς for φυγαδ-ς, *fugitive;* same theme (φῦγ) as in φεύγοντας XIII.: (*a*) note loss of δ before σ; so in Lat., **virtus** for **virtut-s**; (*b*) dat. plur. φυγᾶδ-σι becomes φυγάσι.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The person *against whom one fights* is expressed by the dative case.

2. ε-ο contracts to ου.

3. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. ends in α.

4. ά-ειν contracts to ᾶν.

5. The accus. is used adverbially in certain expressions.

6. The attributive position is immediately after the article, — either between the article and substantive, or after the substantive with the article preceding.

7. Participles and prepositional phrases, like adjectives, may stand in the attributive position.

8. Adverbs of place are followed by the gen. case.

9. τ and δ before σ are dropped.

10. Stems in -ες, 3d decl., lose ς between vowels.

11. Verb themes ending in ε contract ε with a following vowel.

12. The relative may occasionally agree with its antecedent even in case.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Declens. of βασιλεία, ἀρχή, γῆ.		
2.	Declens. of βίος. στρατηγός. τρόπος.		
3.	Declens. of ἀγαθός, αὐτός, ἄλλος, ὁ.		
4.	Declens. of πόλις, δύναμις, πρόφασις, στράτευμα, ἀνήρ, βασιλεύς.		
5.	Declens. of φύλαξ (for φυλακ-ς)	H. 174.	G. 50.
6.	Attributive positions	H. 666; 668.	G. 142, 1, 2.
7.	Dative of association	H. 772.	G 186, N. 1.

[1] The teacher should illustrate this point clearly and forcibly.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀμφί, *about.*
2. ἀντιπέρας, *directly opposite.*
3. ἄχθομαι, *I am angry.*
4. δαπανάω, *I spend (waste) money.*
5. ὁ δασμός, *revenue.*
6. νομίζω, puto, *I think.*
7. ὅδε, *this, the following.*
8. οὐδείς, οὐδέν, *nobody, nothing.*
9. ὁ τρόπος, *manner.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: ἐνόμιζε, πολεμοῦντα, στρατεύματα, δαπανῶ, ἤχθετο, πολεμούντων, συνελέγετο, φυγάς.

2. Translate: (*a*) Ὁ φυγὰς οὐ[1] βασιλεύσει. (*b*) Τοῦτο τὸ στράτευμα βούλεται τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα βασιλέα εἶναι. (*c*) Ἐβούλοντο οὖν ἄρχειν τῶν στρατευμάτων. (*d*) Οὐκ ἄχθομαι τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀναβαινόντων ἐπὶ τὴν πόλιν.

3. Translate: (*a*) I wish to be opposite that city. (*b*) The commander makes his levy in this manner. (*c*) He takes 300 men of the Greeks and of the barbarians as many as possible. (*d*) He collects (aor. part.) his armies, generals, heavy-armed men of the Greeks, and guardsmen [and] besieges the Ionian cities both by land and by sea.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Adverbial accusative. 2. Accent in contraction. 3. Case with verbs of *fighting.* 4. Contraction of ά-ειν. 5. Quantity of ω in πόλεως, πόλεων. 6. Agreement of the relative. 7. Mutes before σ. 8. Augment of α, ε. 9. Enclitics. 10. Construction with verbs of *ruling.* 11. Tenses in the subjunctive and optative. 12. Accent in declension.

[1] = οὐκ, but preferred when the foll. word begins with a consonant.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XVI.

ANABASIS I. i. 9.

TEXT: *τούτῳ συγγενόμενος . . . πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι.*

1. NOTES.

1. *τούτῳ συγ-γεν-ό-μενο-ς*, *associated with him* [*and*], lit. *becoming associated with that one:* (*a*) dat. follows *σύν* in composition, *cf.* *συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ* XIV. ; (*b*) from *σύν* + *γίγνομαι* (*cf.* I.) ; note *νγ* becomes *γγ* = *ng* ; *cf.* *ἐτύγχανε* III., *παρήγγειλε* XII. ; (*c*) *γί-γνο-μαι*, theme *γεν* ; tense in *συγ-γενόμενος* ?

2. *ἠγάσθη τε*, *both admired* [*and*, etc.] : (*a*) from *ἄγα-μαι*, dep., here aor. pass. with act. meaning (*σ* being inserted before the pass. suffix) ; *cf.* *δοθῆ-ναι* XIV. ; note, the passive of deponents has an active meaning; (*b*) *τε*, enclitic ; *cf.* *τὲ* XI. ; *τέ . . . καί* = *καί . . . καί* (XIII.), *both . . . and.*

3. *δί-δω-σι(ν)*, *he gives:* (*a*) from *δίδω-μι*, *cf.* *δο-θῆναι* XIV., *δε-δο-μένα* XII. ; (*b*) *-μι*, *-σι* indicate pres. ind. act. 1st and 3d sing., like the more usual *-ω*, *-ει* ; so *ἀπο-δείκνῡμι*, *ἀπο-δείκνῡσι* ; *ἵστημι*, *ἵστησι* ; (*c*) on *(ν)* *cf.* *ἤθροιζεν* XI., *συνέπραττεν* XIV. ; theme of *δίδωσιν* ?

4. *ὁ δὲ λαβ-ών*, *but he took*, lit. *taking:* (*a*) on *ὁ* as a demons. *cf.* *ὁ δέ* VII. ; (*b*) on *λαβών* *cf.* V. ; theme ? tense here ? pres. ind. ?

5. *συν-έ-λεξε(ν)*, for *συν-έ λεγ-σε(ν)*, *he collected ; cf.* *συλλογή* XII., *συλλέξᾱς* XIII. : (*a*) on *ξ* = *κσ*, *γσ*, *cf.* *ἀπέδειξε* IV., *συλλέξᾱς* XIII. ; tense here ? (*b*) from *συλ-λέγω* ; *συλ* for *συν*, *cf.* *συλ-λαμβάνει* VII.

6. *ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων* *from, with, these means:* note the order, *τούτων τῶν*, *cf* *ταύτᾱς* XIV. ; *χρημάτων* decl. like *στράτευμα*.

7. *ὁρμώ-μενο-ς*, *rushing:* (*a*) from *ὁρμά-ω* (*cf.* *δαπανά-ω* XV.), *I start ; ὁρμάο-μαι*, *I start myself, rush ;* the mid. voice as in *ἀθροίζονται* IV. ; (*b*) *-ω* for *a-o* ; on *a* for *a-ε*, *cf.* *ἐπειρᾶτο* XIII.

8. *Θρᾳξὶ . . . οἰκοῦσι*, *with the Thracians, the beyond the Hellespont dwelling, i. e. the Th. who dwell beyond the H. ;* on the attrib. position *cf.* *Χερρονήσῳ . . . Ἀβύδου* XV. : (*a*) nom. *Θρᾷξ* (for *Θρᾷκ-ς*), *cf.* *φύλαξ*, Gram. Less. XV. ; on the dat. *cf.* *Τισσαφέρνει* XV. ; (*b*) *οἰκοῦσι* for *οἰκέο-ντ-σι*, dat. plur. ; on *ε-ο* contracted to *ου*, *cf.* *πολεμοῦντα* XV. ; on *ντ* lost before *σ*, *cf.* *ἀτιμασθεὶς* VIII.

Digitized by Google

9. *ὠφέλει, he was aiding:* from *ὠφελέ-ω*; note, *ω* absorbs the augment *ε-*, and remains unchanged; on *-ει* (= *-ε-ε*), *cf.* *ἠσθένει* 11.

10. *χρήματ-α συν-ε-βάλλο-ντο, they were (for their sake) contributing means:* (*a*) *cf.* *χρημάτ-ων* **6**; (*b*) from *συμ-βάλλω* for *συν-βάλλω*; so *συμ-πράττω*, *συμ-βουλεύω*; on the theme of *βάλλω*, *cf.* *ἐξέβαλεν* XIII.

11. *στρατιωτῶν, of (the) soldiers, cf.* *στρατηγός*, *στράτευμα*: (*a*) nom. *στρατιώτης*, 1st decl. masc.; so *ὁπλίτης*, *ὁπλίτᾱς* V.; note the accent of the gen. plur. 1st decl.

12. *ἑκοῦσαι, willing*, fem.; from *ἑκών*, masc. sing.; fem. *ἑκοῦσᾰ*, *cf.* *φιλοῦσα* IX.; *ἑκόντες, they* (masc.) *willing.*

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The dative follows verbs compounded with *σύν*.

2. *συν* becomes *συγ* before *γ*, pronounced *sung*.

3. Theme of *γίγνομαι*, *γεν*; *λαμβάνω*, *λαβ*; *βάλλω*, *βαλ*.

4. Deponents retain their active meaning even in passive forms.

5. *-μι* and *-σι*, personal endings, = *-ω* and *-ει*.

6. The impf. 3d sing. ending in *ε* adds *ν* before a word beginning with a vowel.

7. *νλ* becomes *λλ*; *νπ*, *νβ* become *μπ*, *μβ*.

8. Final *κ* or *γ* in verb themes unites with *σα* in the 1st aor., forming *ξα*.

9. *α-ο*, *α-ω* = *ω*; *α-ε* = *ᾱ*.

10. Final *κ* or *γ* in noun stems unites with *ς* (nom.) or *-σι* (dat. plur.), forming *ξ*, *ξι*.

11. Participles drop *ντ* before the dat. plur. end. *-σι*.

12. *ω* does not change in augment.

13. The genit. plur. 1st decl. ends in *-ῶν* (circumflex accent[1]).

14. Adjectives and participles in *-ων* have the fem. in *-ουσᾰ*.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	*ν* before other consonants . . .	H. 55.	G. 16, 5, 6.
2.	*ν* movable	H. 87.	G. 13.
3.	Declens. of *πολίτης*	H. 145.	G. 37, 1.

[1] Except the feminine of barytone adjectives and participles in *ος*, which takes the same accent as the masc. and neut.

Digitized by Google

4.	Declens. of φλέψ (for φλέβ-ς)	H. 174.	G. 50.
5.	The -μι conjugation	H. 311.	G. 93, 3.
6.	Passive deponents	H. 497.	G. 88, 2 N.
7.	Circumstantial participle	H. 968–69.	G. 277, 1–6.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἄγαμαι, *I admire.*
2. ὁ δαρεικός,[1] *a daric.*
3. ἑκών, ἑκοῦσα, *willing.*
4. μύριοι, 10,000.
5. οἰκέω, *I live, dwell in.*
6. ὁρμάω, *I start.*
7. ὁ στρατιώτης, *soldier.*
8. συγ-γίγνομαι, *come into intercourse with.*
9. συμ-βάλλω, *I contribute.*
10. ἡ τροφή, *support.*
11. ὑπέρ,[2] *beyond, above.*
12. τὸ χρῆμα, *thing;* τὰ χρήματα, *means.*
13. τὸ χρῡσίον, *money.*
14. ὠφελέω, *I aid.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Οὗτος ὁ Θρᾷξ δᾱρεικοὺς δύο συμβάλλεται. (*b*) Ἑκὼν ὠφελήσω τὸν αὐτὸν στρατιώτην. (*c*) Οἰκῶ ὑπὲρ πόλιν τὴν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. (*d*) Πολεμήσει σὺν στρατιώται; μυρίοις. (*e*) Ἑκὼν δίδωμι τὰ χρήματα εἰς τροφὴν τῶν στρατιωτῶν τοῦ βασιλεύοντος ἀνδρός.

2. Translate: (*a*) These men were contributing money for the support of the guards. (*b*) But the kings living in that city do not perceive the plots against them. (*c*) The army deemed it right (ἀξιόω) that 10,000 darics should be given to the generals. (*d*) I do not wish to live in the kingdom of that king. (*e*) These men were not willing.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Sound of γγ, γχ. 2. Enclitics, proclitics. 3. ν before consonants; σύν in composition. 4. Uses of the pres. indic. 5. Declens. of χρῡσίον. 6. Case with ἀπό 7. Declens. of χρῆμα. 8. Formation of 1st aor. stem. 9. Position of οὗτος. 10. Middle voice. 11. Case with verbs of *fighting.* 12. Analysis of ἐπολέμει. 13. Attributive position. 14. Contraction of ε-ο; ντ before σ. 15. Accent of στρατιωτῶν.

[1] A Persian gold coin equal to about $3.75.
[2] Lat. **super**, Eng. OVER.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XVII.

ANABASIS I. 1. 9, 10.

TEXT: τοῦτο δ' αὖ . . . περιγενόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν.

1. NOTES.

1. τοῦτο, *this*; join with τὸ στράτευμα, *this army*: separated from its noun for the sake of emphasis, — *this army, as well as the preceding.*

2. τρεφό-μενο-ν, *being supported*: from τρέφω, *cf.* τροφή XVI.

3. ἐ-λάνθαν-ε(ν), *escaped notice*: from λανθάνω, theme λαθ; *cf.* λαμβάνω, theme λαβ

4. ξένος ὤν, *being a guest, friend*: on the partic. with τυγχάνω, *cf.* παρών III.

5. ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν, *by the at-home adversaries*: (*a*) note the meaning of ὑπό followed by the gen.; *cf.* the Lat. abl. of the agent with **ab**; (*b*) οἴκοι, adv., with the position and force of an attrib. adj., *cf.* παρ' ἑαυτῷ XI., κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου XV.; on the meaning *cf.* οἰκέω, *I inhabit*; (*c*) ἀντιστασιωτῶν from ἀντιστασιώτης, 1st decl. masc., *cf.* στρατιώτης XVI. N. 11.

6. αἰτεῖ for αἰτέ-ει, *he demands*; from αἰτέω, *cf.* ἐξ-αιτη-σαμένη VII.: on é-ει = εἰ, *cf.* πολεμεῖν XI.

7. αὐτόν . . . ξένους, μισθόν: objects of αἰτεῖ; αὐτόν, *i. e.* Cyrus, upon whom the demand is made; ξένους, μισθόν, the objects demanded.

8. εἰς, *into, about* (with numerals): so εἰς τριακόσιοι στρατηγοί, *about* 300 *generals.*

9. ξένους, *hired soldiers, mercenaries*: on ξένος, *guest, visitor, cf.* **4.**

10. τριῶν μηνῶν, *of three months*: (*a*) nom. τρεῖς μῆν-ες; so τρεῖς παῖδες, *three boys*, τριῶν παίδων, *of three boys*; (*b*) *cf.* Lat. **tres**, *three*; (*c*) μηνῶν, nom. sing. μήν, *cf.* Lat. **mensis**; on the nom. without case end. **s**, *cf.* μήτηρ VII., ἀνήρ XII. vocab.

11. ὡς περι-γεν-ό-μενο-ς ἄν, *on-the-ground-that he would conquer*, etc., [if he received aid from Cyrus]: (*a*) γεν, theme of what verb? tense here? (*b*) γενόμενος, *becoming*; συγ-γενόμενος, *being with*; περιγενόμενος, *getting around, becoming superior to*; (*c*) ἄν, not translatable, but always

Digitized by Google

used in conclusions after conditions referring to the future in a vague or uncertain (and less vivid) manner.[1]

12. ἀντιστασιωτῶν . *cf.* **5** ; note the gen. following περιγενόμενος ; *cf.* gen. after ἄρχειν XIV.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adjectives are separated from their substantives for emphasis.

2. ν is added to the impf. indic. act. 3d sing. of verbs when the foll. word has an initial vowel.

3. λανθάνω, theme λαθ; λαμβάνω, theme λαβ; τυγχάνω, theme τυχ; γίγνομαι, theme γεν.

4. τυγχάνω is foll. by the partic. where the infin. might be expected.

5. ξένος has two different meanings: *guest, visitor; mercenary soldier.* *Mercenaries* were called *friends* euphemistically

6. ὑπό with the gen. of a noun denoting a *person* signifies the agent.

7. Adverbs, like partic. and prep. phrases, have the position and value of attrib. adj.

8. αἰτέω is foll. by the acc. of the *thing desired* and that of the person upon whom the demand is made.

9. εἰς with numerals means *about, approximately.*

10. Stems in -ν, 3d decl., like those in -ρ, do not take the end. ς in the nom. sing.

11. ἄν used in conclusions after conditions referring in a vague or uncertain manner to future time.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. ντ, νδ, νθ before σ	H. 56.	G. 16, 6, N. 1, 2.
2. ν and ντ, νδ, νθ before -σι, dat. plur.	H. 57.	G. 16, 6, N. 1, 2.
3. Two classes of feminines, 1st decl.	H. 137–140.	G. 37, 2.
4. Nom. sing. 3d decl.	H. 168.	G. 46, 2, 3, 4.
5. Decl. of λῦων	H. 241,[2] 242.	G. 68.

[1] The teacher should point out, in connection with this lesson, the signification of the phrases *fut. vivid,* and *fut. less vivid.*

[2] Omit the 3d sentence.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. *αἰτέω, I beg, demand.*
2. *ἄν,* used in the conclusion of less vivid fut. cond.
3. *ὁ ἀντιστασιώτης, adversary.*
4. *δισχίλιοι,* 2,000.
5. *ἔρχομαι, I come.*
6. *λανθάνω, I escape notice.*
7. *ὁ μήν, month.*
8. *ὁ μισθός, pay.*
9. *ὁ ξένος, guest; mercenary.*
10. *οἴκοι, at home.*
11. *περί, around.*
12. *περι-γίγνομαι, I become superior, conquer.*
13. *πιέζω, I press.*
14. *τρεῖς, three.*
15. *τρέφω, I support.*
16. *ὑπό,*[1] *under, by.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) *Αὕτη δ' οὖν οὕτω τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐπιβουλεύουσα λανθάνει ἡ πόλις.* (*b*) *Ξενίας δ' ὁ Παρράσιος φίλος ὢν ἐτύγχανε τῷ σατράπῃ, καὶ ἀτιμασθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει οἰκούντων ἀνέβη πρὸς βασιλέα.* (*c*) *Ἠσθάνετο; ᾔσθετο. Ἥιτει τὸν ἄρχοντα τὸν αὐτὸν μισθόν.* (*d*) *Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν.*

2. Translate: (*a*) Clearchus, being a fugitive, was a general of the Greeks in the army of Cyrus. (*b*) But he took (aor. partic.) the money [and] was desiring to spend it for the support of the Grecian force. (*c*) He collected an army of 2,000 men by-means-of (*ἀπό*) these resources (*χρῆμα*). (*d*) The guards indeed thus make the levy. (*e*) And he was deliberating in order that he might take the cities as unprepared as possible.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Analysis of *πιεζόμενοι*. 2. Constructions after *αἰτέω*. 3. Constructions with verbs of *fighting;* verbs of *superiority;* with compounds in *σύν*; with *ἐπιβουλεύω*. 4. *ὑπό* with the genitive. 5. Accent in the 3d decl. 6. Vowel contraction. 7. Circumstantial participles. 8. *ν* before other consonants. 9. Declens. of *στρατιώτης, σατράπης*. 10. Three uses of the optative.

[1] *παρά* = *by, by the side of; ὑπό* = *by* only in expressions of agency.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XVIII.

ANABASIS I. I. 10.

TEXT: *ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν . . . τρεφόμενον στράτευμα.*

1. NOTES.

1. *δίδωσιν . . . καὶ δεῖται, gives . . . and wants of, asks, him:* (*a*) *cf.* *δίδωσιν* XVI. ; *-ν* movable as in *ἤθροιζεν* XI., *ἐξέβαλεν* XIII. ; (*b*) from *δέομαι*, dep., *I want;* for *δέ-ε-ται*, *έ-ε* = *εῖ* as in *ἐπεμελεῖτο* XI., *ἐποιεῖτο* XII.

2. *μὴ κατα-λῦ-σ-αι, not to loosen down, let down, come to terms with,* **ne condiciones ferat**: (*a*) *μή, not,* corresponding to the Lat. **ne** in many of its uses; (*b*) 1st aor. inf. act. from *κατα-λύω*; ending *-αι*; (*c*) on the pres. act. ending, *cf.* *πολεμεῖν*; aor. pass., *cf.* *δοθῆ-ναι*; 2d aor. act., *cf.* *ἀποστῆ-ναι*.

3. *πρόσθεν . . . πρὶν ἄν, before, until; πρόσθεν = previously,* but need not be translated when followed by *πρίν*.

4. *αὐτῷ συμ-βουλεύσηται, should consult with him:* (*a*) *αὐτῷ* dat. as in *συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ* XIV. ; (*b*) from *συμ-βουλεύω, I advise with;* mid. *I advise with* (*for my interest*); *συμ* for *συν* as in *συμ-πράττω* XIV. vocab.; (*c*) *-ηται* indicates the subjunct., *cf.* *δύν-ηται* VIII. ; *σ-* (for *σα-*) indicates the 1st aor. stem ; (*d*) note, *πρὶν ἄν* followed by the subjunct. ; *cf.* the Lat. **antequam consuluerit** ; had the main verb been in a secondary tense, *πρίν* might have been followed by the opt. without *ἄν*.

5. *τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ στράτευμα, the army in Thessaly:* on the attrib. position of *ἐν Θετταλίᾳ*, *cf.* *παρ' ἑαυτῷ* XI.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *ν* is added to the ending *-σι* before words beginning with a vowel.

2. *δέομαι* is followed by the gen. of the person of whom a request is made.

3. *μή* corresponds in many of its uses to the Lat. **ne**.

Digitized by Google

4. The 1st aor. inf. act. ends in *-σ-αι*.

5. *πρόσθεν . . . πρίν, until.*

6. The subjunct. is used after *πρὶν ἄν*, when it is dependent upon a primary tense.

7. The opt. without *ἄν* may stand after *πρίν* when it is dependent upon a secondary tense.

8. The ending *-ηται* indicates the subjunct. 3d sing.

9. The dat. is used after compounds with *σύν*.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of stems ending in a lingual mute : *θής, ἐλπίς, γέρων*	H. 176, 177.	G. 50.
2. Declension of *φίλιος* . . .	H. 222.	G. 62 (*ἄξιος*).
3. Construction with *αἰτέω* . . .	H. 724.	G. 164.
4. Construction with *δέομαι* . . .	H. 743, *a*.	G. 172, 2 N. 1.
5. Relat. clauses introduced by *until*	H. 921.	G. 239, 240.

4. VOCABULARY A.

1. *δέομαι, I want, ask.*
2. *ἕξ, six.*
3. *κατα-λύω, I loosen, come to agreement.*
4. *μή, not.*
5. *πρίν, until.*
6. *πρόσθεν, before.*
7. *συμ-βουλεύω, I advise with.*
8. *τετρακισχίλιοι*, 4,000.

VOCABULARY B.

λύω, I loose.
λύει,[1] *he looses.*
ἔλῡε(ν),[2] *he was loosing.*
λύσω, I shall loose.
λύσει,[3] *he will loose.*
ἔλῡσε(ν),[4] *he loosed.*
λύοι,[5] *he might loose.*
λύοιεν,[6] *they might loose.*
λύειν,[7] *to loose.*
λύσειν, to be about to loose.
λῦσαι[8] *to loose.*
λύων,[9] *loosing.*

[1] *cf.* *ἀναβαίνει* V.
[2] " *ἐτύγχανε* III.
[3] " *βασιλεύσει* VIII.
[4] " *ἐποίησε* III.
[5] " *ἐπιβουλεύοι* VI.
[6] " *ἔχοιεν* XI.
[7] *cf.* *λαμβάνειν* XII.
[8] " *καταλῦσαι* XVIII.
[9] " *ἔχων* V.

Digitized by Google

λύουσα,[1] λῦον, } *loosing.*
λύσων, *about to loose.*
λύσᾱς,[2] *loosing.*
*λύομαι, *am loosed.*
λύεται, *he is loosed.*
λύονται, *they are loosed.*
ἐλύετο,[3] *he was being loosed.*
ἐλύοντο, *they were being loosed.*
λύσομαι, *I shall loose (for myself).*
λύσεται, *he will loose (for himself).*
ἐλύσατο, *he loosed (for himself).*
ἐλύσαντο, *they loosed (for themselves).*
λύηται,[4] *he may loose, be loosed.*
λύσηται, " " "
λυθῆναι,[5] *to be loosed.*
λυθείς,[6] *loosed.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Decline μισθός, ἀντιστασιώτης, τρεφόμενος, λαβών.

2. Translate: (*a*) Καὶ ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν μὴ πρόσθεν ἀναβαίνειν πρὶν στράτευμα ἀθροίζοι. (*b*) Τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ δίδωσι στρατεύματα ὡς Τισσαφέρνους αὐτῷ ἐπιβουλεύοντος. (*c*) Τούτῳ τῷ ἀνδρὶ δώσω δύο μηνῶν μισθόν. (*d*) Οὐ συμβουλεύσεται τοῖς στρατηγοῖς πρόσθεν πρὶν ἂν τὴν συλλογὴν ποιῆται.

3. Translate: (*a*) Cyrus escapes notice [in] collecting his armies. (*b*) Being hard-pressed by the soldiers, they assemble in (= into) the cities. (*c*) The king thinks that his brother is spending-money on his armies. (*d*) He perceives the plots against himself and tries to arrest the men. (*e*) They do not wish to revolt to Cyrus.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The declension of ἀνήρ; of πᾶς. 2. Comparison. 3. Formation of the adverb. 4. ὅτι, ὡς with superlatives. 5. Some uses of the optative mode. 6. Time denoted by the tenses of the subjunct., opt., infin. 7. Classes of feminines 1st declens. 8. Subjunct. and optat. after πρίν. 9. ν and ντ before σ. 10. Nom. of stems in -οντ, -εντ, -αντ.

[1] " φιλοῦσα IX.
[2] " κινδυνεύσᾱς VIII.
[3] *cf.* συνελέγετο XV.
[4] " δύνηται VIII.
[5] " δοθῆναι XIV.
[6] " ἀτιμασθείς VIII.

* Middle or passive.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XIX.

ANABASIS I. I. 11.

1. NOTES.

1. *ξένον ὄντα αὐτῷ*, *being* (acc. sing.) *a guest-friend to him (since he was his guest-friend)* ; on the dat. *cf.* *αὐτῷ* XIV *in init.*

2. *ὄντα . . . λαβόντα*, *being . . . having taken:* from *ὤν*, *λαβών*, stems *ὀντ*, *λαβοντ* ; note, the nom. is formed without the case end. *s*, and *o* is lengthened to *ω*, *τ* disappearing, since it may never stand at the end of a word.

3. *ὅτι πλείστους*, **quam plurimos**, *cf.* XII.

4. *παρα-γενέ-σθαι*, *to become beside, come, arrive:* *-σθαι*, infin. ending mid. voice ; *γεν* theme of what verb? tense here?

5. *ὡς . . . βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι*, *as wishing (wishing, as he said) to conduct a campaign for himself ; to march:* (*a*) on *ὡς*, *cf.* *ὡς ἀποκτενῶν* VII. ; (*b*) *στρατεύε-σθαι* pres. inf. mid., *cf.* **4.**

6. *ὡς παρεχόντων Πισιδῶν*, *on the ground that, etc.* : on the gen. abs. *cf.* *ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους* XII.

7. *τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ*, *to-the of-himself country:* (*a*) note, *ἑαυτοῦ* stands between the art. and its substant., *i. e.* in the attrib. position ; (*b*) note the forms *ἑαυτοῦ*, *ἑαυτῷ* *ἑαυτόν*.

8. *ἐλθ-εῖν*, *to come:* (*a*) 2d aor. infin. act., from the theme *ἐλθ* (*ἐλυθ*) ; ind. *ἦλθε*, *he came ;* note that here *ε* augments to *η* ; *cf.* *εἶχε* XII. ; (*b*) the assumed pres. is *ἔρχομαι*, dep. *cf.* XVII. vocab.

9. *ὡς πολεμή-σων*, *as being about (intending, as he said) to fight, cf.* *ὡς ἀποκτενῶν* VII.

10. *φυγά-σι*, for *φυγάδ-σι*; on *δ* dropped before *s*, *cf.* *φυγάς* XV.

11. *τοῖς Μιλησίων*, namely, *the (fugitives) of the Milesians:* *Μιλησίων*, attrib. position, *cf.* *τοῖς Θρᾳξὶ τοῖς . . . οἰκοῦσι* XVI.

12. *ἐποίουν οὕτως*, *thus they were doing:* (*a*) note, *οὕτω* becomes *οὕτως* before an initial vowel; (*b*) *ἐποίουν*, contr. from *ἐ-ποίε-ον* ; on *ε-ο* = *ου* *cf.* *πολεμοῦντα* XV., *πολεμούντων* XV.; *-ον*, end. of impf. ind. act. 3d plur.; so *ἔλυον*, *they were loosing.*

Digitized by Google

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Stems in **-οντ** form the nominative in **-ων**.

2. The dative used with the verb *to be* may indicate possession.

3. **-σθαι** is the ending of the infin. mid. voice.

4. **ὡς** with the participle marks something as merely alleged, which may or may not be true.

5. The possessive **ἑαυτοῦ** stands in the attrib. posit.

6. **ε** may augment to **η** as well as to **ει**.

7. The pres., 2d aor., and fut. act. infinitives end in **-ειν**.

8. **ἦλθε**, *he came*, has no present, but assumes **ἔρχομαι** instead.

9. **ὡς** with the fut. partic. indicates an intention as stated, whether assumed or real.

10. Participles, prepositional phrases, adverbs, and genitives are found in the attrib. position.

11. The ending **-ον** indicates the impf. ind. act. 3d plur.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Declension of **φιλῶν** (loving)	H. 243.	G. 69.
2.	Declension of **ἑαυτοῦ** (*sing.*)	H 266.	G. 80.
3.	Mute-, liquid-, and vowel-verbs . . .	H. 309.	G. 92, 3.
4.	Formative elements of the verb . . .	H. 353.	G. 93 (read).
5.	The infinitive endings	H. 381.	G. 117.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἑαυτοῦ**, *of himself.*
2. **ἦλθε(ν)**, *he came.*
3. **κελεύω**, *I order.*
4. **παρα-γίγνομαι**, *I arrive.*
5. **παρ-έχω**, *I furnish, cause.*
6. **τὸ πρᾶγμα**, *affair*, plur. *trouble.*
7. **στρατεύομαι**, *I march.*
8. **ἡ χώρᾱ**, *country.*

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate and analyze: *κελεύσας, κελεύοιεν, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευον, ἐκέλευσεν.*

2. Translate: (*a*) *Καὶ γὰρ ὁ ἀδελφὸς τὰ γιγνόμενα χρῡσία βασιλεῖ πέμπων, ἐλάνθανεν ἐπιβουλεύων.* (*b*) *Οἱ δ' υὗν ἑκόντες χρήματα συνέβαλλον εἰς τὴν τροφὴν τῆς πόλεως.* (*c*) *Πράγματα παρεῖχον*[1] *τῇ βασιλείᾳ.*

3. Translate: (*a*) But they were collecting men, as if the Pisidians were causing trouble. (*b*) I will war against Tissaphernes with the soldiers of these cities. (*c*) He announced to the guards in the city[2] to take as good men as possible, and thus they were doing. (*d*) That country was formerly the kingdom of Artaxerxes[3] the king. (*e*) Being his brother, he was asking-as-his-right (that) those armies be given to himself rather than to another man.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. *ὡς* with participles. 2. The infinitive endings. 3. Constructions after *δέομαι, αἰτεῖν.* 4. Modes after *πρίν.* 5. The orders and classes of mutes. 6. *φ* in *ἀφικνοῖτο.* 7. Gen. and dat. sing. 1st declens. 8. Analysis of *ἐποίουν,* of *φυγάσι.* 9. Demonstrative use of the article. 10. The formation of the verb. 11. Mutes before *ς.* 12. Uses of the accus. 13. Declension and gender of stems in *τ.* 14. The accent of the gen. plur. of *φίλιος* (3 genders).

[1] Why not *πάρειχον*? *Cf. ἀπῆλθε* VIII.
[2] Put the prepos. phrase in the attrib. posit.
[3] First declension.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XX. — REVIEW.

[In preparing this Review Lesson, follow closely the directions given with Lesson X.]

1. **TEXT**: *καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ* (I. 1. 5), through Chapter I.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. (*a*) Open and close vowels, H. **12**; G. **2** N. (*b*) Gamma nasal, H. **20**; G. **6**, 1. (*c*) Contraction of vowels, H. **37**; G. **9**, 1, 2, 3. (*d*) Mutes before *σ*, H. **54**; G. **16**, 2. (*e*) *ν* and *σ* before other consonants, H. **55–57**; G. **16**, 5, 6. (*f*) *ν* movable, H. **87**; G. **13**. (*g*) Enclitics, H. **113**; G. **27**.

2. **First Declens.**: (*a*) Two classes of feminines, H. **137–140**; G. **37**, 2. (*b*) Gen. and dat. sing., H. **140**; G. **37**, 2. (*c*) Accent, H. **141**; G. **25**, 2. (*d*) Declens. of *πολίτης*, H. **145–147**; G. **37**, 1.

3. **Third Declens.**: (*a*) Nom. sing., H. **168**; G. **46**, 2, 3, 4. (*b*) Special rule of accent, H. **172**; G. **25**, 3. (*c*) Declens. of *φύλαξ*, *φλέψ*, *θής*, *ἐλπίς*, *γέρων*, *σῶμα*. (*d*) Declens. of *ἀνήρ*, H. **188** *b*, **189**; G. **57**, 2. (*e*) Declens. of *πόλις*, H. **201**; G. **53**.

4. **Adjectives**: (*a*) Declens. of *ἀγαθός*, *φίλιος*, *πᾶς*, *λύων*, *φιλῶν*. (*b*) Comparison, H. **248**, **249**; G. **71**. (*c*) Formation of adverbs, H. **257**; G. **74**.

5. **Pronouns**: (*a*) *αὐτός*, H. **265**; G. **79**, 2. (*b*) *ἑαυτοῦ*, H. **266**; G. **80**. (*c*) *ἄλλος*, H. **267**; G. **84**, 3. (*d*) *οὗτος*, H. **272**; G. **83**.

6. **Verbs**: (*a*) Tenses of the indic., H. **301**, **302**; G. **90**, 1, 2. (*b*) Tense systems, H. **303**; G. **92**, 4. (*c*) Mute-, liquid-, and vowel-verbs, H. **309**; G. **92**, 3. (*d*) The *-μι* form, H. **311**; G. **93**, 3. (*e*) Formative elements of the verb, H. **353**; G. **93**. (*f*) Infinitive endings, H. **381**; G. **117**. (*g*) First aor. of liquid verbs, H. **431**; G. **110** III. 2. (*h*) Second aorists, H. **435** *a*; G. **110** V. (*i*) Passive deponents, H. **497**; G. **88**, 2, N.

7. (*a*) **Adjective** used alone, H. **621**; G. **139**, 1 and 2. (*b*) *ὁ* as a demonstrative, H. **654**; G. **143**. (*c*) The article with attributives,

Digitized by Google

H. 666–670 ; G. 142, 1 and N. 1, 2, 3. (*d*) The article with pronouns, H. 673 ; G. 142, 4.

8. **Accusative** : (*a*) Adverbial, H. 719 ; G. 160, 2. (*b*) Double object, H. 724 ; G. 164. **Genitive** : (*a*) With verbs of *ruling*, H. 741 ; G. 171, 3. (*b*) With δέομαι, H. 743 *a* ; G. 172, 2, N. 1. (*c*) With verbs of *superiority*, H. 749 ; G. 175, 2. (*d*) With adverbs of *place*, H. 757 ; G. 182, 2.

9. **Dative** : (*a*) Of the possessor, H. 768 ; G. 184, 4. (*b*) Of association, H. 772 ; G. 186, N. 1. (*c*) With compound verbs, H. 775 ; G. 187.

10. **Verbs** : (*a*) καλῶς ἔχει, H. 810. (*b*) Modes in final clauses, H. 881 ; G. 215 A, 216. (*c*) Relative clauses introduced by *until*, H. 921 ; G. 239, 240. (*d*) Infinitive used as a noun, H. 959 ; G. 262, 2. (*e*) Attributive participles, H. 965, 966 ; G. 276, 1. (*f*) Circumstantial participle, H. 968, 969 ; G. 277, 1–6. (*g*) Gen. absolute, H. 970 ; G. 183.

3. VOCABULARY.

VERBS.

1. ἄγαμαι.
2. ἀγγέλλω.
3. ἄγω.
4. αἰσθάνομαι.
5. αἰτέω.
6. ἀξιόω.
7. ἄρχω.
8. ἀφ-ίστημι.
9. ἄχθομαι.
10. βάλλω.
11. ἐκ-βάλλω.
12. δαπανάω.
13. δέομαι.
14. δίδωμι.
15. εἶησαν, ἦν, ἦσαν.
16. ἐκ-πίπτω.
17. ἐπι-κρύπτω.
18. ἐπι-μελέομαι.
19. ἔρχομαι, ἦλθε(ν).
20. κατ-άγω
21. κατα-λύω.
22. κελεύω.
23. λανθάνω.
24. νομίζω.
25. οἰκέω.
26. ὁρμάω.
27. παρ-αγγέλλω.
28. παρα-γίγνομαι.
29. παρ-έχω.
30. πειράομαι.
31. περι-γίγνομαι.
32. πιέζω.
33. πολιορκέω.
34. στρατεύομαι.
35. συγ-γίγνομαι.
36. συλ-λέγω.
37. συμ-βάλλω.
38. συμ-βουλεύω.
39. συμ-πράττω.
40. τρέφω.
41. ὠφελέω.

NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἠπήρ.
2. ὁ ἀντιστασιώτης.
3. ὁ βάρβαρος.
4. ἡ γῆ.
5. ὁ δᾶρεικός.
6. ὁ δασμός.

Digitized by Google

7. ἡ δύναμις.
8. ἡ ἐπιβουλή.
9. ἡ θάλασσα.
10. ὁ μήν.
11. ὁ μισθός.
12. τὸ πρᾶγμα.
13. ἡ πρόφασις.
14. ὁ στρατιώτης.
15. ἡ συλλογή.
16. ὁ τρόπος.
17. ἡ τροφή.
18. ὁ φεύγων.
19. ὁ φρούραρχος.
20. ὁ φύλαξ.
21. τὸ χρῆμα.
22. τὸ χρυσίον
23. ἡ χώρᾱ.
24. ὁ ξένος.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄλλος.
2. ἀπαράσκευος.
3. βέλτιστος.
4. δισχίλιοι, τετρακισχίλιοι.
5. ἕκαστος.
6. ἑκών.
7. ἓξ τρεῖς.
8. μύριοι.
9. ὁπόσος.
10. οὐδείς, οὐδέν.
11. πᾶς.
12. πλεῖστος.

ADVERBS.

1. αὖ.
2. εὐνοϊκῶς.
3. ἀντιπέρας.
4. μή, οὐ, οὐκ.
5. πρόσθεν.
6. τὸ ἀρχαῖον.
7. τότε.
8. ὧδε.
9. ὡς.

PRONOUNS.

1. ἑαυτοῦ.
2. ὅ, ἥ, τό.
3. ὧδε.
4. οἷ.

PREPOSITIONS.

1. ἀμφί.
2. ἐν.
3. πλήν.
4. ὑπέρ.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. πρίν.
2. τέ.
3. ὡς.

4. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ἐπεκρύπτετο τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ὅτι μάλιστα ἐδύνατο. (*b*) Τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἦσαν δεδομέναι αἱ βέλτισται πόλεις τῷ ἀδελφῷ τοῦ βασιλέως. (*c*) Ὁ μὲν ἤθροιζε δύναμιν τὴν βελτίστην ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος ἑαυτῷ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ. (*d*) Αὐτοὺς τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα ἐν τῇ πόλει βουλευομένους ᾔσθάνετο.

2. Analyze: φυγάς, συνελέγετο, στρατεύματα, ἐνόμιζε, πολεμοῦντα.

3. Translate: (*a*) The satrap accordingly went up, when the king was happening to be as unprepared as possible. (*b*) He announces to as many generals as he has in the cities, that they take 300 men as good as possible. (*c*) All the generals were desiring to besiege those in Miletus both by land and by sea. (*d*) If he may be able to have those cities instead of the king. (*e*) This man contributes money for the support of the soldiers. (*f*) By means of these resources he collected an army of two thousand men.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXI.

ANABASIS I. II. 1.

1. NOTES.

[By using the Vocabulary, pp. 361-387, and with the aid of the literal and free translations on pp. 279 and 289, the pupil will master the meanings not given for some of the words in the Notes of this and the subsequent Lessons.]

1. ἐ-δόκει, for ἐ-δόκε-ε, *cf.* ἠσθένει II.; from δοκέω; tense, pers., and num. of ἐδόκει?

2. πορεύε-σθαι dep., *to proceed;* on the ending -σθαι *cf.* παραγενέσθαι XIX. **4.**

3. μέν, *on the one hand;* used here without a following δέ, so that the *real intentions* of Cyrus are left to the surmises of the reader. On the use of μέν . . . δέ *cf.* I. **8.**

4. ἐποιεῖτο, mid., *for himself; cf.* ἐποιεῖτο XII.

5. ὡς βουλόμενος, *as wishing* [*saying that he wished*]; *cf.* ὡς βουλόμενος XIX.

6. ἐκ-βαλεῖν, from ἐκ-βάλλω; on the theme, *cf.* ἐξ-έ-βαλεν XIII.; tense here? On the change of ἐξ to ἐκ before consonants, *cf.* ἐκπεπτωκότας XIII.

7. τε, enclitic, *both; cf.* τε XI., XVI. Note that here τε, immediately following an accent otherwise grave, makes it acute.

8. ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα, **quantus erat ei exercitus**; object of λαβόντι, *taking what army he had;* αὐτῷ dat. of possessor, *cf.* αὐτῷ XIV., XVII.; on ὅσοι = **quanti** *as many as, cf.* IV.

9. συν αλλαγ-έ-ντ-ι, *becoming reconciled;* partic., nom. συναλλαγείς for συναλλαγεντς, *cf.* ἀτιμασθείς VIII.; aor. pass. from συν αλλάττω, theme αλλαγ, as πράττω XIV., theme πραγ. On the pass. suffix θε-, here ε-, *cf.* ἀτιμασθείς VIII.

10. πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι, *toward, with, the* [*adversaries*] *at-home.* Note the omission of the substantive.

11. ἀπο-πέμψαι (= ἀπο-πεμπ-σ-αι), *cf.* κατα-λῦ-σ-αι XVIII., 1st aor. infin. act. Note ψ = π + σ.

Digitized by Google

12. ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα, **quem habebat exercitum,** obj. of ἀποπέμψαι ; ὅ rel. pron. neut. sing. ; masc. ὅς.

13. προ-ει-στή κ-ει, **praefuerat,** *was in command of ;* pluperf. ind. act. from προΐστημι, *cf.* κατέστη VI. Note the reduplication ει-, *cf.* ἀφ-ειστήκεσαν XII. ; on the reg. redup. *cf.* δε-δομέναι XII., ἐκ-πε-πτω-κότας XIII. ; on κ (= κα) the perf. suffix *cf.* ἐκπεπτω-κ ότ-ας XIII.

14. τοὺς ἄλλους πλήν, *the others, excepting, i. e. all, excepting.*

15. φυλάττειν from φυλάττω, theme φυλακ ; force of ending -ειν ?

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. δοκεῖ = *it seems, it seems best.*

2. The infin. mid. ends in -σθαι.

3. ὡς gives to the participle the idea of a merely possible reality, like the Lat. **tamquam,** Eng. *as.*

4. ἐξ becomes ἐκ before consonants.

5. The 1st aor. infin. act. ends in σ-αι ; the 2d aor. infin. act. ends in -εῖν.

6. An enclitic changes a preceding grave accent to an acute.

7. In Greek, as in English, a relative clause may be the object of a verb.

8. θε- is the 1st passive suffix ; ε-, the 2d passive suffix.

9. The article, followed by an attributive adjective, or the equivalent of an attributive adjective, may modify an omitted substantive which is easily supplied from the context.

10. Verb stems in -π unite π with σ-α, 1st aor. suffix, forming ψ-α.

11. Verbs in -ττω have their themes ending in -γ or -κ.

12. -κ-α is the perf. act. suffix.

13. ἵστημι reduplicates in the pluperf. by prefixing εἱ- to the theme, στα.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declens. of λυθείς	H. 242.	G. 69 (τιθείς).
2. Infinitives and participles of λύω	H. 313.	G. 95, 1.
3. Reduplication	H. 363–65.	G. 101, 1, 2.
4. The 1st perfect stem	H. 446.	G. 110, 4 *b.*

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἡ ἀκρόπολις, *citadel.*
2. ἄνω (*cf.* ἀνά, *up*), *upward.*
3. βαρβαρικός, *barbarian.*
4. δοκεῖ, *it seems.*
5. Ἑλληνικός, *Grecian.*
6. ἐνταῦθα, *there.*
7. ἤδη, *now, at length.*
8. ἥκω, *I am come.*
9. ξενικός, *mercenary.*
10. ὅσος (**quantus**), *how great.*
11. παντάπασιν, *wholly.*
12. πορεύομαι, *I advance.*
13. προ-ίστημι, *I set in charge.*
14. συν-αλλάττω, *I reconcile.*
15. φυλάττω, *I guard.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Decline: αὐτῷ, τούτους, συναλλαγέντι, ἀκρόπολις.

2. Translate: (*a*) Καὶ γὰρ ἐτύγχανον καὶ οὗτοι οἱ αὐτοὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ ξένοι ὄντες. (*b*) Καὶ πιέζων τοὺς οἴκοι ἀντιστασιώτας περιγίγνεται αὐτῶν. (*c*) Δοκεῖ δὴ τοὺς μὲν ἐκβάλλειν τοὺς δ' ἀποκτείνειν. (*d*) Ἀνέβαινον εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἔχοντες ὃ ἦν αὐτοῖς στράτευμα. (*e*) Ἀπέπεμψε πρὸς Κῦρον ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα.

3. Translate: (*a*) I will now advance upward with my (= the) friends into the province of the satrap. (*b*) The soldiers were wishing to drive out the conspirators (= the conspiring) wholly from (ἐκ) the kingdom. (*c*) They were collecting accordingly, as against these men, both the mercenary and the Greek (army). (*d*) He will come (ἥκω), taking what army he has. (*e*) All (οἱ ἄλλοι) were slandering the king, except as many as were friends to him.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Elision. 2. Enclitics. 3. Grave accent before an enclitic. 4. Themes of verbs in -λλω, -ττω. 5. First and second passive suffixes. 6. Formation of the perf. stem. 7. The 1st aor. of liquid verbs. 8. Ὡς with the participle. 9. Reduplication. 10. Uses of the aorist participle. 11. The genitive after προ-ίστημι. 12. Words in the attributive position.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXII.

ANABASIS I. II. 2 and 3.

1. NOTES.

1. ἐ κάλε-σ-ε : (*a*) from καλέω; on the form, *cf.* ἐποίησε III.; note, final ε of the theme does not here change to η before a consonant ; (*b*) ἐκάλεσα I called, so ἔλῡσα *I* loosed ; (*c*) the pres. (λύω), fut. (λύσω), aor. (ἔλῡσα), perf. (λέλυκα) are the principal parts of the verb in the active voice.

2. τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, *the* [*men*] *besieging Miletus ;* note the omission of the substantive.

3. ὑπο-σχ-ό-μενο-ς, *promising :* (*a*) from ὑπ-ισχνέο-μαι dep.; ὑπ-έ-σχε-το, *he promised ;* tense of the partic.? (*b*) The rest of the sentence gives his promise; stated in his own words it would be : "*if I shall succeed in those matters with reference to which I am marching, I will not cease until I bring you back home.*" This would be called a future condition, vividly stated, with probability of fulfilment ; in the conditional clause ἐάν with the subjunctive would be used, and the future indicative in the conclusion.

4. εἰ καλῶς κατα-πράξ-ειε(ν), *if well he accomplished, i. e. if he succeeded :* (*a*) καλ-ῶς adv., *cf.* εὐνοϊκ-ῶς XI.; (*b*) κατα-πράττω, *I accomplish ;* theme πρᾱγ ; here aor. opt. 3d sing.; on ξ = κς, γς, *cf.* ἀπέδειξε IV. ; note the personal ending -ειε(ν); *cf.* however ἐπιβουλεύοι VI., λάβοι XI.; (*c*) the words of the promise are not stated directly (**3** *b*), but indirectly, *i. e.* in the *oratio obliqua ;* note that ἐάν with the subjunctive has accordingly become εἰ with the optative.

5. ἐφ' ἅ, for ἐπὶ ἅ ; note that after the loss of ι (elision) π is brought before a rough breathing ; hence changed to φ, *cf.* ἀφ-ικνοῖτο IX.

6. μὴ πρόσθεν παύσε-σθαι, **se non prius cessurum esse,** *that he would not (sooner) cease, stop :* (*a*) παύω, *I stop ;* mid. *I stop myself, cease ;* παύσεσθαι fut. inf. mid. ; -σε-, fut. suffix ; (*b*) note, the fut. ind. of the direct discourse (**3** *b*) has become fut. infin., and οὐ becomes μή.

Digitized by Google

7. πρὶν κατ-αγάγ-οι: (*a*) from κατ-άγω; here 2d aor. opt., *cf.* λάβοι XI.; note, the 2d aor. of ἄγω has the theme doubled, instead of its simplest form; (*b*) this subordinate clause also, like εἰ καταπράξειεν, has its verb in the optative, where πρὶν ἄν with the subjunctive would have been used in the *oratio recta*, *cf.* πρὶν ἂν συμβουλεύσηται XVIII. Notes **4** *d*.

8. οἱ δὲ ἐ-πείθο-ντο; *cf.* ὁ δὲ πείθε-ται VII.

9. παρ-ῆσαν, *were beside, arrived*; *cf.* παρών III., παρεῖναι II., ἦσαν XII.; on the accent, *cf.* ἀπ-ῆλθε VIII.

10. τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβών, *taking the* [*soldiers*] *from the cities*; note the omission of the substantive στρατιώτας after πόλεων, *cf.* **2**; (*a*) ἐκ τῶν πόλεων, attrib. posit., as παρ' ἑαυτῷ XI.; (*b*) ἐκ for ἐν on account of the idea of separation in λαβών; *cf.* παρὰ βασιλέως IX. for παρὰ βασιλεῖ.

11. παρ ἦν, on the meaning, form, and accent, *cf.* **9**.

12. τῶν στρατευομένων, *of the being-in-the-army, i. e. of* (*among*) *those fighting*; note the omission of the substantive; *cf.* **2, 10**.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. καλέω does not change ε to η before consonants.

2. The pres., fut., aor., and perf. act. are four of the principal parts of the verb.

3. The substantive is sometimes omitted after words which modify it attributively.

4. The Greek, like the Latin, has a direct and an indirect discourse.

5. A vivid future condition with probability is expressed by ἐάν with the subjunctive in the condition, and the future indicative in the conclusion.

6. γ and κ unite with -σα, 1st aor. suffix, forming ξα.

7. -ειε(ν) marks the 1st aor. opt. act. 3d sing.

8. π, κ, or τ, brought by elision before a rough breathing, is made rough.

9. μή takes the place of οὐ with infinitives.

10. ἄγω has a reduplicated theme in the 2d aor.

11. γάρ, like the Lat. **enim**, does not stand first in its sentence.

12. πιστεύω, *I trust*, is followed by the dative case.

13. The accent of a verb does not precede the augment

14. The partitive genitive exists in Greek as in Latin.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Elision	H. 82.	G. 17, 1.
2. The variable vowel of the verb . .	H. 310.	G. 113 and [1].
3. Pres. ind. act. of λύω	H. 314.	G. 96.
4. Declension of the relative pron. .	H. 275.	G. 86.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ὁ γυμνής, *light-armed soldier.*
2. ἡδέως, *gladly.*
3. καλέω, *I call.*
4. καλός, *beautiful.*
5. καλῶς, *beautifully, well.*
6. κατ-άγω, *I lead down, back.*
7. τὰ ὅπλα, *arms.*
8. πάρ-ειμι, *I arrive, am present.*
9. παύω, *I stop;* mid. *I pause.*
10. ὁ πελταστής, *targeteer.*
11. πιστεύω, *I trust.*
12. ὑπ-ισχνέομαι, *I promise.*
13. ὡς (with numerals), **circa,** *about.*
14. τριᾱκόσιοι, 300
15. πεντᾱκόσιοι, 500.
16. χῑ́λιοι, 1,000.
17. μύριοι, 10,000.

5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze : ἐκάλεσε, πολιορκοῦντας, φυγάδας, καταπράξειεν, παύσεσθαι, ἐπίστευον.

2. Translate : (*a*) Ἐκάλει δ' οὖν τοὺς ἀμφὶ τὴν πόλιν στρατευομένους. (*b*) Ἐνόμιζε δή, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ἐφ' ἃ τοὺς ἄνδρας συνέλεγε, βασιλεύσειν ἀντ' ἐκείνου. (*c*) Ἐβουλεύετο ὡς ταύτην τὴν δύναμιν οἰκαδε καταγάγοι. (*d*) Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐπίστευον τῷ στρατηγῷ καὶ ἡδέως τε καὶ ἑκόντες ἐπείθοντο. (*e*) Καὶ αὐτούς, τὰ ὅπλα λαβόντας, ἐκέλευεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν παρεῖναι.

2. Translate : (*a*) And the guest-friends came (πάρειμι) unto the king, having money for the support of the soldiers. (*b*) And 3,000 men in truth were present. (*c*) In order that he might have 10,000 darics. (*d*) If the 500 targeteers would be friendly to him. (*e*) And Socrates was among those fighting in the plain.

Digitized by Google

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Attributives used substantively. 2. The adverbial ending. 3. Principal parts of the verb. 4. Infinitives and participles of λύω. 5. The accent of παρῆν. 6. Formation of the perfect stem. 7. Theme of verbs ending in -λλω, -ττω. 8. First and second pass. suffix. 9. Principal parts (act.) of κελεύω, ποιέω. 10. Augment and reduplication of αἰ-. 11. Principal parts of αἰτέω. 12. Declension of πολίτης, πελταστής. 13. Ἐάν with the subjunctive in the indirect discourse after secondary tenses. 14. Position of γάρ. 15. Case with πιστεύω. 16. καί . . . καί. 17. Declens. of θής, γυμνής.

LESSON XXIII.

ANABASIS I. II. 4 and 5.

1. NOTES.

1. ἀφ-ῑ́κο-ντο: from ἀφ-ικνέο μαι, *cf.* IX.; note, ι augments to ῑ. Theme and tense of the verb?

2. κατα-νοή-σᾱς, *when he perceived:* on the form *cf.* κινδυνεύσᾱς VIII.; principal parts, κατανοέω, κατανοή-σω, κατε-νόη-σα, κατα-νε-νόη-κα.

3. μείζονα ἡγη-σά-μενος, *and because he thought . . . to be greater:* (*a*) μείζων, *greater;* μέγας, *great;* note the irreg. comparative, and *cf.* πρεσβύτερος I.: (*b*) from ἡγέ-ομαι, dep. *I lead, think;* fut. ἡγή-σο-μαι, aor. ἡγη-σά μην ;[1] note, η here augments without change, as ὠ in ὠφέλει XVI.

4. ᾗ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα, *by what way he could most quickly: cf.* ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο XI.; ᾗ the rel. pron. dat. sing. fem., *sc.* ὁδῷ, *way;* note, the dat. here denotes *manner; cf.* the Lat. **quā viā**, *by what way* or *means; how.*

5. ἤκου-σε Τισσαφέρνους, *heard from Tissaphernes:* (*a*) from ἀκούω, *cf.* the Eng. *acoustics;* (*b*) account for the η and for the σ.

[1] -μην ending of 1st sing. in the past tenses ind. mid., so ἐλῡσάμην, *I loosed for myself.*

Digitized by Google

6. *οὓς εἰ-ρη-κα, whom I have mentioned:* (*a*) *εἴρηκα* classed as the perf. of *φη-μί, I say,* Lat. **fāri**; (*b*) *-κα,* the perf. suffix, as in *λέλυκα*; note the irreg. redup. *εἰ-*; *cf.* *προεστήκει* XXI.

7. *ὡρμᾶτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων, was setting out from Sardis:* (*a*) *cf.* *ὁρμώμενος* XVI.; *ᾶ* for *ά-ε*, as in *ἐπειρᾶτο* XIII.; (*b*) *Σάρδεων,* declined like *πόλις,* plur.

8. *σταθμοὺς τρεῖς, three days' journey;* acc. plur.; note, the distance or extent of space is expressed by the acc.; *cf.* the Lat. usage.

9. *τὸ εὖρος*: subj. of *ἦν, was,* understood; *not* 2d decl., but 3d neut., as in Lat. **corp-us, corpor-is,** not **corp-i.**

10. *ἐπ-ῆν,* from *ἔπ-ειμι*; *cf.* *παρ-ῆν* XXII. N. **11.**

11. *ἐ-ζευγ-μένη, joined:* (*a*) from the theme *ζευγ, ζυγ,* Lat. **jug** in **jungo,** *I join;* (*b*) perf. partic. mid.; *cf.* *προ-ει-στήκει* XXI., and note, the redup. is not as it is in *λέλυκα,* when the verb begins with a double consonant (*ζ* = *δς*) or two consonants; (*c*) *cf.* *λέλυκα,* note, the perf. mid. is formed without the suffix *κα-,* so *λε-λυμένη, λέ-λυ-μαι.*

12. *πλοί-οις, by means of . . . boats;* note, the dat. here denotes *means; cf.* **4.**

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The theme of *ἀφ-ικνέομαι* is *ἰκ.*

2. *ι* augments to *ῑ*, *α* to *η*, *ο* to *ω*, *η* remains unchanged.

3. *νοέω, ἡγέομαι* lengthen *ε* to *η* before consonants, but *καλέω* XXII. does not.

4. The regular comparative ending is *-τερο-*; but *μέγας* forms the comparative *μείζων.*

5. *-μην* ending 1st sing., where the 3d sing. is *-το*; 3d plur. *-ντο.*

6. The person *from whom* one hears is denoted by the gen. case.

7. *εἴρηκα* classed as the perf. of *φημί.*

8. *ά ω = ῶ, α-ε = ᾱ, ά-ε = ᾶ.*

9. The *means* and the *manner* of an action are denoted by the dat.

10. Extent of space is denoted by the accusative.

11. Nouns in *-ος* are, some 2d decl. masc.; others, 3d decl. neut.

12. Verbs beginning with a double consonant or two consonants reduplicate by omitting the consonant and prefixing *ἐ* only.[1]

13. *κα-*, the perf. suffix, does not appear in the middle voice.

[1] The perf. of *ἵστημι* is *ἕστηκα.* It is in the pluperf. that *εἰ-* appears.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declens. of γέφῡρᾰ	H. 135.	G. 37, 1, end.
2. Declens. of δαίμων	H. 184.	G. 50.
3. Declens. of μείζων (G. ἡδίων) .	H. 236.	G. 72, 2, N. 1.
4. Conjug. of λύω in pres., fut., imperf., aor., ind. act.	H. 314–316.	G. 96.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀκούω, *I hear.*
2. ἡ γέφῡρᾰ, *bridge.*
3. διά (with gen.), *through.*
4. εἴκοσι(ν), *twenty.*
5. εἴρηκα (φημί), *have said, mentioned.*
6. ἐξ-ελαύνω, *I march.*[1]
7. ἔπ-ειμι, ἐπ-εῖναι, *am upon.*
8. ἑπτά, **septem**, *seven.*
9. τὸ εὖρος, *breadth, width.*
10. ζεύγ-νῡμι, *I join.*
11. ἡγέομαι, *I lead, think.*
12. ὁ ἱππεύς, *horseman.*
13. κατα-νοέω, *I observe.*
14. μέγας, μείζων, *great, greater.*
15. ἡ παρασάγγης,[2] *league.*
16. παρα-σκευάζω,[3] *I prepare.*
17. ἡ παρασκευή,[3] *preparation.*
18. τὸ πλέθρον,[4] *plethron.*
19. τὸ πλοῖον, *boat, vessel.*
20. ὁ ποταμός,[5] *river.*
21. ὁ σταθμός, *stopping-place, day's journey.*
22. ὁ στόλος, *equipment.*
23. ταχέως, τάχιστα, *quickly, most quickly.*
24. ὡς, *as, in order that, to* (preposition).

Principal parts of λύω: λύω, λύσω, ἔλῡσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι,[6] ἐλύθην.[7]

5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: ἀφίκοντο, κατανοήσας, ἤκουσε, ὡρμᾶτο.

2. Translate: (*a*) Οἱ μὲν οὖν στρατηγοί, λαβόντες χρήματα εἰς τὴν τροφὴν τῶν στρατιωτῶν, παρῆσαν εἰς τὴν πόλιν. (*b*) Ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅπως, ὁπόσοι στρατηγοὶ εἴησαν, ἑαυτῷ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν. (*c*) Ἦσαν δὲ καὶ οὗτοι

[1] Used with reference to the general, not the soldiers.
[2] Equal to about 5½ kilometers (3 English miles).
[3] *Cf.* ἀπαρασκευότατον XI.
[4] About 30.8 meters (101 feet).
[5] *Cf.* the English *hippo-potamus*, river-horse.
[6] *Cf.* Notes 11, *c.*
[7] Aor. ind. pass. 1st sing., *cf.* ἠγάσ-θη XVI.

Digitized by Google

τῶν τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐπιβουλευομένων. (*d*) *Κατανοήσαντες δὴ τοὺς τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀνέβη ὡς βασιλέα.*

3. Translate: (*a*) But when those hoplites arrived, the commander thought Cyrus had made (aor. inf.) preparation against him(self). (*c*) He heard from those (= the) living in the city, [that] Cyrus was marching through the provinces of the king. (*c*) And he destroyed (*καταλύω*) that bridge. (*d*) He desired the same bridge to be destroyed.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts of the verb. 2. Quantity of *ι* in *ἀφῑκοντο*. 3. Quantity of the 3d *α* in *κατανοήσας*. 4. Different uses of *ὡς*. 5. Explanation of *ᾗ* in *ᾗ ἐδύνατο*. 6. Case with *διά*, = *through*. 7. Extent of space. 8. Formation of perf. stem act.; mid. 9. Declension of *οὗτος*, *ἡγησάμενος*, *παρασκευή*, *ἱππεύς*, *ἔχων*, *πλοῖον*. 10. Uses of the dative. 11. The final vowel in the 1st decl. 12. Nom. sing. of liquid nouns in the 3d decl. 13. The variable vowel of the verb.

LESSON XXIV.

ANABASIS I. II. 6 and 7.

1. NOTES.

1. *δια-βάς, going through, crossing (this river)*: *δι-έ-βη, he crossed; cf. ἀν-έ βη, he went up* V., so *ἀνα-βᾶς, going up:* (*a*) from *δια-βαίνω*, theme *βᾰ*; (*b*) *βᾱς* = *βα-ντ-ς*, *cf* *λύσᾱς* = *λυσαντς*; (*c*) tense here? (*d*) on the declens., *cf.* *πᾶς* XII. Gram. Less.

2. *ἕν-α, one;* nom. *εἷς* for *ἑν-ς*, 3d decl.; *-α* as in *ἄρχοντα* V.

3. *εὐδαίμον-α καὶ μεγάλην, prosperous and large:* (*a*) nom. *εὐδαίμων*, stem *εὐδαιμον*; (*b*) nom. *μέγας*, fem. *μεγάλη*; *cf.* XXIII. Vocab.

4. *ἔ-μειν-ε(ν)*: from *μένω*, Lat. **man-eo**, here 1st aor.; on the 1st aor. of liquid verbs *cf.* *παρ-ήγγειλε* XII.

5. *ἡμέρᾱς ἑπτά, throughout seven days.* Note, duration of time, like extent of space, is denoted by the acc. case; *cf.* *σταθμούς* XXIII.

6. *ἧκε, arrived;* imperf. of *ἥκω*, *cf.* XXI. Note, *η* augments without change; *cf.* *ἡγέομαι* XXIII.

Digitized by Google

7. Κύρῳ βασίλειᾰ ἦν: (*a*) on the dat. *cf.* ἦν αὐτῷ XIV.; (*b*) βασίλειᾰ, *royal abodes* (not βασιλείᾱ, *kingdom*); 2d decl. neut. plur.; (*c*) ἦν, *was*, sing.; note the subj. is plur.; the verb is regularly sing. when the subject is neut. plur.

8. γυμνά-σαι βούλ-οιτο, *whenever* (= *if*) *he might wish to take exercise:* (*a*) aor. infin., *cf.* κατα-λῦσαι XVIII.; from γυμνάζω, theme γυμναδ; so ἀτῑμάζω VIII., theme ἀτιμαδ; here γυμνάσαι is for γυμναδ-σαι; note, a lingual mute drops out before σ, *cf.* φυγάς for φυγαδς XV.; on a lingual mute before another lingual mute, *cf.* ἀτιμασθείς VIII.; (*b*) βούλοιτο, opt. as in ἀφικνοῖτο IX.; -οιτο, ending of the opt. *middle*, corresponds to the *active* ending -οι; *cf.* λάβοι XI.

9. διὰ μέσου τοῦ παραδείσου, *through the middle of the park.* Note that μέσου stands before the art., *i. e.* in the pred. position.

10. εἰσιν, **sunt**, *are:* like τε an enclitic, throwing its accent (εἰσίν) on the preceding word. Note, a final circumflex is not altered thereby.

11. Κελαινῶν: gen. plur. takes the place of an appositive with πόλεως. *Cf.* City of New York.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. βαίνω, theme βα; βᾶς is for βαντς, and is declined like πᾶς.

2. εἷς, *one*, is for ἑν-ς.

3. Nouns whose stems end in -ον form the nominative by lengthening ο to ω.

4. In the 1st aor. of liquid verbs ε in the theme becomes ει.

5. *Duration of time* is denoted by the accusative case.

6. Verbs beginning with a long vowel augment without change, except that ᾱ generally becomes η.

7. A neuter plural subject has a singular verb.

8. Verb themes which end in a lingual mute lose it before σ.

9. The optative is used in relative clauses which have the force of a condition, when the main verb denotes past time.

10. -οι-το is the ending opt. middle, corresponding to the active οι; οίμην is the ending, 1st pers., if -οιτο is 3d; *cf.* Obs. **5**, XXIII.

11. μέσος (when it means *middle of*) takes the predicate position, like ὅδε and ἐκεῖνος.

12. εἰσίν, like τέ, is an enclitic.

13. A final circumflex is not affected by an enclitic.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Declens. of εὐδαίμων	H. 235.	G. 66.
2.	Declens. of μέγας	H. 247.	G. 70.
3.	Conjug. of λύω in the perf. act., perf. mid., aor. pass., indicative . .	H. 317–319.	G. 96.
4.	Duration of time; extent of space .	H. 720.	G. 161.
5.	The imperfect tense	H. 830.	G. 200.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἄγριος,[1] *wild.*
2. τὰ βασίλεια,[2] *royal abodes.*
3. δια-βαίνω, *I go through, cross.*
4. εἷς, *one.*
5. εἰσί(ν), **sunt**, (*they*) *are.*
6. εὐδαίμων,[3] *prosperous.*
7. ἡ ἡμέρᾱ,[4] *day.*
8. θηρεύω, *I hunt.*
9. τὸ θηρίον, *wild beast.*
10. ὁ ἵππος,[5] *horse.*
11. μένω, *I remain.*
12. μέσος,[6] *middle.*
13. οἰκούμενος,[7] *populous.*
14. ὀκτώ, **octo**, *eight.*
15. ὁ παράδεισος,[8] *park.*
16. ἡ πηγή, *source.*
17. πλήρης, *full.*
18. ῥέω, *flow.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Decline: ἐκεῖνος, ος, η, ο, ἡμέρᾱ, μέσος, πηγή.

2. Translate: (*a*) Ἐξελαύνω ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάττης εἰς τὴν Σάρδεις πόλιν. (*b*) Ὅπότε ἀτῑμάσαι τὸν βασιλέα βούλοιτο, συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ ἡ μήτηρ. (*c*) Διὰ μέσης τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς μέγας. (*d*) Τοῦτον τὸν ποταμὸν διέβη τῇ μεγάλῃ γεφύρᾳ.

3. Analyze: διαβάς, ἐξελαύνει, οἰκουμένην, ἔμεινεν, ἦκε, ἔχων.

4. Translate: (*a*) I have said [that] Cyrus has a large force. (*b*) The army marched[9] through that prosperous country eight days' journey. (*c*) But this river flows from large springs. (*d*) I heard [that] the younger brother was marching against the older brother. (*e*) That city is large and prosperous, and full of both (τέ) gardens and royal abodes.

[1] *Cf.* Lat. **agr-estis**, wild.
[2] *Cf.* βασιλεύς, βασιλεῖᾱ, βασιλεύω.
[3] *Having kindly deities:* εὖ, well; δαίμων (Eng. *demon*), spirit, deity.
[4] *Cf.* Eng. eph-*emeral.*
[5] *Cf.* Eng. *hippo*-drome.
[6] *Cf. Meso*-potamia, between rivers.
[7] *Cf.* οἶκοι, at home; οἰκέω.
[8] *Cf.* Eng. *Paradise.*
[9] Use πορεύομαι.

Digitized by Google

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Themes of *βαίνω, τυγχάνω, ἀγγέλλω, ἵστημι, βάλλω, ἀλλάττω*; 2. Review of the conjugation of *λύω*. 3. Formation of the nominative of stems in *-αντ, -εντ*. 4. Lingual mutes before *σ*; before lingual mutes. 5. Principal parts of *λύω, κελεύω, αἰτέω*. 6. The liquids. 7. Uses of the pres., imperf., aorist. 8. The form *ἐθήρευον*. 9. Declension of *πᾶς, διαβάς*. 10. Position of *μέσος*. 11. Enclitics.

LESSON XXV.

ANABASIS I. II. 8 and 9.

1. NOTES.

1. *ἔσ-τι*, Lat. **es-t**, *is:* (*a*) subj. *βασίλεια*; on the sing. verb with a plur. subj., *cf.* *βασίλεια ἦν* XXIV.; (*b*) note the forms met with, — *εἰμί, εἰσί(ν), ἦν, ἦσαν, ἔσται, εἶησαν.*

2. *ὑπό*, Lat. **sub**, *under:* here with the dat., denoting *place where; cf.* the dat. with *ἐν*; on *ὑπό* with the gen., *cf.* *ὑπὸ ἀντιστασιωτῶν* XVII.

3. *ἐμ-βάλλει*: from *ἐμ* (= *ἐν*) *βάλλω*; on *ν* before consonants, *cf.* *συλλαμβάνει* VII., *συμ-βουλεύσηται* XVIII.; meaning of *δια-βάλλει*?

4. *ἐστί(ν)*, enclitic, like *εἰσίν* XXIV. § **7.** Note, its accent is thrown on the ultima of *εὖρος*; on a *final* circumflex before an enclitic *cf.* *αὐτοῦ εἰσιν* XXIV.

5. *εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν*, (*the breadth was*) *of twenty-five feet:* (*a*) note the use of the gen. in expressions of measure; *cf.* the Lat. usage; (*b*) *ποδῶν*, nom. *πούς*, Lat. **pes, ped-is.**

6. *ἐκ-δεῖρ-αι*, *to flay*[1] (*skin*), *i. e.* (*it is said that Apollo*) *flayed:* from *ἐκ-δέρω*, 1st aor. infin. act.; *cf.* *κατα-λῦ-σαι* XVIII. On the formation of the aor. of liquid verbs, *cf.* *ἔμεινεν* XXIV., *παρήγγειλε* XII.

[1] The aor. infin. with *λέγεται* here corresponds to the aor. ind. *ἐξέδειρε, ἐκρέμασε* of direct discourse. The translation of the aor. infin. by the Eng. perf. infin. is

Digitized by Google

7. *νική σᾱς ἐρίζοντά οἱ, when he conquered (on conquering) him, Marsyas, who contended with him, Apollo:* (*a*) from *νικάω*; note, *α* becomes *η* before *σα*; on *-σᾱς*, *cf.* *κινδυνεύσᾱς* VIII.; (*b*) *ἐρίζοντα*, theme *ἐριδ*; so fut. *ἐρίσω*, aor. *ἔρισα*; *cf.* *γυμνάσαι* XXIV.; (*c*) *οἱ*, for *οἷ*, **sibi**, *to, with, himself;* dat. sing., *cf.* *Τισσαφέρνει* XV.; note the loss of accent; *οἷ* is an enclitic, and throws its accent on *ἐρίζοντα*, *cf.* *δοθῆναι οἷ* XIV., where *οἷ* keeps its accent for emphasis.

8. *κρεμά σαι, to hang:* on the form, *cf.* *ἐκ-δεῖρ-αι* **6**, *καταλῦσαι* XVIII.; *κρεμα*, theme of *κρεμά-ννῡμι*, *cf.* *δείκ-νῡμι* IV., theme *δεικ*; *ζεύγ-νῡμι* XXIII., theme *ζευγ*, *cf.* foot-note, page 89.

9. *ἡττη-θείς*: from *ἡττά-ο-μαι*; on *-θεις* *cf.* *ἀτιμασ-θείς* VIII.

10. *ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχῑλίους, about (the) 2,000:* note, *ἀμφί* has the same force with numerals as *ὡς*, *εἰς* XXII.; note the use of the article with approximate *round numbers*, — unnecessary in translation.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Neuter plural nouns take a singular verb.

2. *ὑπό* with the dative denotes the place under which, as *ἐν* denotes the place in which.

3. *ν* becomes *μ* before labial mutes.

4. A word which has the circumflex accent on the penult takes an acute on the last syllable when it is followed by an enclitic.

5. Measure may be denoted by the genitive case.

6. A proparoxytone takes an acute on the ultima before an enclitic.

7. The theme of verbs in *-νῡμι* is found by dropping the *-νῡμι*.

8. The article is used with approximate *round numbers*.

9. Verbs in *-αω* change *α* to *η* when it comes before a consonant.

10. The aor. act. infin. is accented on the penult: *καταλῦσαι*, *ἐκδεῖραι*, *κρεμάσαι*.

always to be discouraged; the Eng. perf. infin. should be reserved for the Greek perf. infin. If necessary, let the pupil give a free rendering; thus it is far better to translate "*it is said that Apollo flayed and hung up*," than "*Apollo is said to have flayed*," etc. So with aorist circumstantial participles; let the pupil always indicate by his translation what circumstance the participle denotes. Where the participle indicates preliminary action, let him render it by the indicative: e. g. *to take men and come*, not *having taken men, to come*.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Enclitics	H. 113, 115, 116.	G. 27, 28, 1, 2, 3.
2. Declens. of πούς . .	H. 172.	G. 46, 4, N. 1, end.
3. Declens. of γένος . .	H. 190, 191.	G. 52, 2.
4. Declens. of νεανίᾱς .	H. 145.	G. 37 ταμίᾱς.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. τὸ ἄντρον, *cave.*
2. ἀπο χωρέω, *I retreat.*
3. ὁ ἀριθμός, *number.*
4. τὸ δέρμα, *hide, skin.*
5. ἐκ δέρω, *I flay, skin.*
6. ἡ Ἑλλάς, *Greece.*
7. ἐμ βάλλω, *flow into.*
8. ἡ ἐξέτασις, *examination.*
9. ἐρίζω, *I contend.*
10. ἐρυμνός, *fortified.*
11. ἐστί, **est,** *is.*
12. ἡττάομαι, *I am defeated.*
13. κρεμάννῡμι, *I hang.*
14. λέγω, *I say.*
15. ἡ μάχη, *battle.*
16. νῑκάω, *I conquer.*
17. ὅθεν, *whence.*
18. οἰκοδομέω, *I build.*
19. ὀκτακόσιοι, *eight hundred.*
20. ὅτε, ἐπεί, *when.*
21. περί, *about.*
22. ὁ πούς, *foot.*
23. ἡ σοφίᾱ, *wisdom, musical skill.*
24. σύμπας, *all together,* **cunctus.**
25. ὁ τοξότης, *bowman.*
26. τριάκοντα, *thirty.*
27. ὑπό (with dat.), *under.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: ῥεῖ, ἐκδεῖραι, ἀπεχώρει, ἡττηθείς.

2. Translate: (*a*) Ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλη ἀκρόπολις ἐν τῇ πόλει, ὅθεν οἱ τοξόται ὡρμήσαντο. (*b*) Ὁ Μαρσύας λέγεται τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι ἐρίσαι περὶ σοφίας. (*c*) Τῶν ἀ δρῶν ἐξέτασιν ποιήσω ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῷ μεγάλῳ.

3. Translate: (*a*) The skin, however, is said to be [that] of Marsyas. (*b*) Those springs are said to empty into the Maeander, a large river. (*c*) There the satrap remained twenty-seven days. (*d*) That large acropolis is full of all the best men of Greece. (*e*) Xerxes built a large and beautiful palace over the source of the river Marsyas. (*f*) The forces of the king assembled in the park whenever he wished to make a review of them. (*g*) It was said that the skin which Apollo hung up in the cave belonged to Marsyas. (*h*) He has parks which are full of beautiful animals; these [= which] I believe he hunts whenever he wishes to exercise his horse.

Digitized by Google

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Διὰ τοῦτο: διά with the gen. 2. Construction of the dat. in ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ. 3. Principal parts of νῑκάω, ποιέω. 4. Enclitics: enclitics and proclitics contrasted. 5. ὑπό with the gen.; with the dat. 6. Final α, first declension. 7. Theme of ἐρίζω; of κρεμάννῡμι. 8. Expressions of *measure*. 9. ν before other consonants. 10. Position of the appositive. 11. Construction with verbs of fighting. 12. Declension of τὸ δέρμα.

LESSON XXVI.

ANABASIS I. II. 10–14.

1. NOTES.

1. ἐν αἷς [ἡμέραις], *in which* [*days*]. τὰ Λύκαια,[1] *the Lycaean* [*sacrifices*]: on the attrib. used without its substant. *cf.* ἐκπεπτωκότας XIII., τὸ βαρβαρικόν XXI. ἔ-θη-κε: aor. ind. from τί-θη-μι, theme θε or θη, *cf.* δια-τι-θείς IX.; note, κ- irreg. takes the place of σ- (*cf.* ἔλυσε); fut. θήσω, perf. τέθηκα.

2. ἦσαν: plur., although the subj. ἄθλα is *neut.* plur.; *cf.* XXIV. N. **7**. The verb here agrees in number with the pred. χρυσαῖ, *golden* (*cf.* the Eng. *chrys-alis*), from χρυσοῦς.

3. ἐ-θεώρει, *viewed*; *cf.* the Eng. *theory*; on the form, *cf.* ἀπ-ε-χώρει XXV. § 9 πρὸς . . . χώρᾳ, *in the direction of*, etc.; for πρός with the accus., implying *motion*, *cf.* πρὸς Κῦρον XII. *ad fin.* Μῦσίᾳ: *adj. Mysian*, nom. Μύσιος.

4. ἰ-όν-ντ-ες, **e-u-nt-es**, *going*: pres. part. from εἶμι, theme ι, Lat. **ire**, nom. sing. ἰών. ἀπ-ῄτουν: from ἀπ-αιτέω, *cf.* ἐξ-αιτησαμένη VII.; ᾐ, augment of αἰ, *cf.* ᾐσθάνετο XIV.; -οῦντ- for -έοντ-, *cf.* πολεμούντων XV.; on the ending -ον, *cf.* ἐποίουν XIX., ἐπίστευον XXII.

5. δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος (for ἀνιαόμενος), *was evident being annoyed*, i. e. *was evidently annoyed*. Note, α-ο contracts to ω.

[1] Sacrifices in honor of Zeus, such as those performed on Mount Lycaeum in Arcadia each spring (as expiatory offerings for the sins of the previous year).

Digitized by Google

6. *πρὸς τοῦ τρόπου, in accord with the character;* *μὴ ἀπο δι-δό ναι, not to give:* (*a*) note the use of *μή, not, cf. μὴ παύσεσθαι* XXII., N. **6**; (*b*) pres. infin. of *ἀπο-δίδωμι*, theme *δο*; note, the infin. in *-ναι*, like the aor. infin. in *-σαι*, is accented on the penult; *cf. ἐκ δεῖραι, κρεμάσαι* XXV.; verbs in *-μι* do not have the pres. infin. in *-ειν* (*λύω, λύειν*), but in *-ναι*, so *τιθέ-ναι, δεικνύ-ναι, ἱστά-ναι.*

7. *τοῦ Κιλίκων βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον, of the king of* [*the*] *Cicilians to Cyrus:* (*a*) note the attrib. position of the gen. *Κιλίκων*; (*b*) *παρά* with the acc., denoting motion *to a place beside; cf. παρά* with the gen., *παρὰ βασιλέως* IX.; with the dat., *παρ' ἑαυτῷ* XI. N. **1.**

8. *δοῦ-ναι,* **dedisse,** *that she gave: cf.* **6** *b*; 2d aor. infin., so *ἀποστῆ-ναι* XIII.; note, the pres. and 2d aor. infin. act. of *-μι* verbs end in *-ναι*. *ἀπ-έ-δω-κε, he gave:* on *κ* for *σ* in the 1st aor., *cf. ἔ-θη-κε* **1**; fut. *δώσω*, perf. *δέ-δω-κα.* *χρήματα πολλά, much money:* *πολλά* from *πολύς.*

9. *αὐτήν,* **se** (fem.), *herself;* not *αὐτήν* (nom. *αὐτός*).

10. *ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη, the so-called* [*spring*] *of Midas:* attrib. to *κρήνη*, note the position; also the position of the gen. *Μίδου* between *ἡ* and *καλουμένη*; *cf. Κιλίκων* **7.** *ἐφ' ᾗ = ἐπὶ ᾗ, upon which, at which; cf. ἐφ' ἃ* XXII. N. **5.**

11. *οἴνῳ κεράσᾱς αὐτήν, by mixing it with wine:* (*a*) dat. as in *πλοίοις* XXIII., *μάχῃ* XXV.; (*b*) from *κερά-ννῡμι*, theme *κερα-.*

12. *δεη-θῆ-ναι, that the Cilician* (*queen*) *asked:* pass. dep. from *δέομαι*, *cf. δεῖται* XVIII.; note the accented syllable of infinitives in *-ναι* (**6** *b*).

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *ἐν* is followed by the dative; *παρά* and *πρός* by the genitive, dative, or accusative.

2. *τίθημι, δίδωμι* form the 1st aor. stem with *κ* instead of *σ*.

3. The verb *to be* sometimes agrees in number with its predicate instead of its subject.

4. *εἶμι, I go,* has the theme *ἰ*; *εἰμί, I am,* has the theme *ἐς.*

5. Greek, *was evident being annoyed;* English, *was evidently annoyed.*

6. *μή* is used with the infin. instead of *οὐκ.*

7. Verbs in *-μι* have the pres. and 2d aor. infin. act. in *-ναι.*

8. The infin. in *-ναι* is accented on the penult.

9. The gen. which limits a noun is put in the attrib. position.

Digitized by Google

10. The dat. denotes *means, manner, place where.*

11. ἑαυτοῦ etc. may contract to αὑτοῦ etc.

12. Contract adj. in **-ους** for **-ε-ος** have the circumflex on the ultima.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Declens. of contract adjective in **-ους**	H. 223, 224.	G. 65.
2.	παρά, πρός	H. 802, 805.	G. 191, 4, 6.
3.	Λύω, pres. system, act.	H. 314.	G. 96.
4.	Numerals, 1–10	H. 288.	G. 76.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἡ ἀγορά, *market, market-place.*
2. ὁ ἀγών,[1] *game, contest.*
3. τὸ ἆθλον,[2] *prize.*
4. ἀνιάω, *I trouble.*
5. ἀπ-αιτέω, *I ask as my due, demand.*
6. ἀπο-δίδωμι, *I give, give away.*
7. ἡ γυνή, *woman, wife.*
8. δῆλος, *evident.*
9. δι-άγω, *I continue.*
10. εἶμι, *I go;* ἰέναι,[5] *to go.*
11. ἡ ἐλπίς, *hope, promise.*
12. ἐπι-δείκνῡμι, *I show.*
13. ἔσχατος, *remotest.*
14. θεωρέω,[3] *I view.*
15. ἡ θύρᾱ,[4] *door.*
16. θύω, *I sacrifice.*
17. κεράννῡμι, *I mix.*
18. ἡ κρήνη, *spring (of water).*
19. ὁ οἶνος,[6] *wine.*
20. ὀφείλω, *I owe.*
21. πλέον,[7] *more.*
22. πολλάκις, *often.*
23. πολύς,[8] *much.*
24. ἡ στλεγγίς, *comb.*
25. ἡ στρατιά, *army.*
26. συγ-γίγ ομαι, *have intercourse, acquaintance with.*
27. τέτταρες, *four.*
28. τίθημι, *I place.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze : ἔθυσε, ἔθηκε, στλεγγίδες, ἐθεώρει, ὠφείλετο, ἰόντες, ἀπῄτουν, δεῖγε, ἀνιώμενος, ἀποδιδόναι, καλουμένη, θηρεῦσαι, ἐπιδεῖξαι.

2. Principal parts of λύω, θύω, κελεύω, αἰτέω. Inflect each of the principal parts of θύω.

[1] *Cf.* Eng. *agony.*
[2] *Cf.* Eng. *athletic.*
[3] *Cf.* Eng. *theory.*
[4] *Cf.* Lat. **fores,** Eng. *door,* Ger. *thür.*
[5] *Cf.* Lat. **i-re.**
[6] *Cf.* Lat. **vinum,** Eng. *wine.*
[7] *Cf.* Eng. *pleon-asm.*
[8] *Cf.* Eng. *poly*-syllabic.

Digitized by Google

3. Translate: (*a*) Ἦν δὲ ἡ στλεγγὶς χρῦσῆ ἣν ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐλέγετο τῷ στρατιώτῃ ἀποδοῦναι. (*b*) Θεωρήσομεν οὖν μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων τὰς ἐξετάσεις, ἃς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ποιήσουσιν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις τοῦ σατράπου. (*c*) Δῆλοι ἦσαν ἀνιώμενοι τὴν τῶν πολεμίων δύναμιν ὁρῶντες. (*d*) Αὕτη δ ἐστὶ ἡ Σάρδεις καλουμένη πόλις, ἧς ὁ Κῦρος τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἄρχων ἦν. (*e*) Ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ἰών, μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν ἀπῄτει, ὃς αὐτῷ ὠφείλετο.

4. Translate: (*a*) All those women were evidently annoyed. (*b*) The remotest government in the direction of Phrygia (= the government the remotest). (*c*) He used to make an examination of his soldiers on horseback. (*d*) Going often to the gates of the king, he used to ask that all those cities be given to him. (*e*) I have no (= not) means for the support of those large armies.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Attributive used without the substantive. 2. Agreement of the verb. 3. Vowel contraction. 4. Accent of διῆγε. 5. *Means* in Greek. 6. Declension of στλεγγίς, ἀγών, ἀγορά, ἐλπίς, ἐξέτασις. 7. Διά with the accusative. 8. Formation of the aor. of τίθημι, δίδωμι. 9. Greek for "*he was evidently.*" 10. The negative with the infin. 11. Accent of the infin. in -ναι. 12. Declension of Μίδᾶς.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXVII.

ANABASIS I. II. 15, 16.

1. NOTES.

1. *ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην*, *as* [*was the*] *custom to them* [*in entering*] *into battle:* on the dat. *cf.* *Κύρῳ βασίλεια ἦν* XXIV.

2. *ταχ-θῆ-ναι καὶ στῆ-ναι*, *to be arranged and to stand:* (*a*) from *τάττω*, theme *ταγ*, *cf.* *φυλάττειν*, theme *φυλακ* XXI.; *-θῆναι*, ending as in *λυθῆναι*; note *γ* becomes *χ* before *θ*; (*b*) *στῆναι*, aor. infin. act.; *cf.* *δοῦναι* XXVI.; verbs in *-μι* have the pres. and the aor. infin. act. in *-ναι*, — *διδόναι*, *δοῦναι*, *ἱστάναι*, *στῆναι*. *ἕκαστον*, subj. of *συν-τάξαι*. *τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ*, *the* [*men*] *of himself; cf.* *τοὺς οἴκοι* XXI., *the* [*men*] *at home.*

3. *τὸ δεξιόν*, *the right* [*wing*]: *cf.* *τὸ Ἑλληνικόν*, *the Greek* [*army*] XXI. *οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ*, *the* [*men*] *with him.* *οἱ ἐκείνου*, *the* [*men*] *of, with, that one.* Note how readily the substantive is omitted when easily supplied from the sense of the text.

4. *οἱ δὲ παρ-ήλαυνον*: *cf.* *ὁ δέ*, *but he* VIII.; on *ἠ-* *cf.* *ἀπ-ῆλθε* VIII., *εἶχε* XXI.

5. *τε-ταγ-μένοι*: from *τάττω*, perf. pass. partic., theme *ταγ*, fut. *τάξω*, aor. *ἔταξα*, perf. mid. *τέ-ταγ-μαι*, aor. pass. *ἐ-τάχ-θην*; on the redup. *cf.* *δεδομέναι* XII.

6. *κράνη*: from *κράνος*, declined like *ἔγχος* XXIII. *χαλκᾶ*, for *χάλκεα*: nom. *χαλκοῦς*, declined like *χρυσαῖ* XXVI.

7. *ἐκ-κε καλυμ-μέν-ας*: perf. partic.; *cf.* *δεδομέναι* XII., *τεταγμένοι* **5**; from *ἐκκαλύπτω*.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Possession is denoted by the dat. with *εἰμί*, *am.*

2. *γ* coming before *θ* is changed to *χ*.

3. *τάττω*, theme *ταγ*.

Digitized by Google

4. The infin. in **-ναι** is accented on the penult.

5. Substantives are readily omitted when understood from the context, their place being frequently taken by a modifying adjective.

6. **ε** augments to **η** or **ει**.

7. The article with **δέ** has the force of a demonstrative.

8. The perf. mid. attaches the pers. and partic. ending directly to the reduplicated theme.

9. Contract adjectives like **χαλκοῦς**; accent the final syllable circumflex throughout.

10. Nouns in **-ος** are 2d declension masc. or 3d declension neuter.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The tense systems	H. 303.	G. 92, 4, I.–VII.
2. Principal parts	H. 304, *c*.	G. 92, 5.
3. Conjugation of **λύω** through the fut. *act.* and aor. *act.*	H. 315, 316.	G. 96.
4. Augment of diphthongs . .	H. 357.	G. 103.
5. Reduplication of verbs beginning with a vowel . . .	H. 367.	G. 101, 3.
6. Accent of the verb	H. 386.	G. 26.
7. Formation of fut. stem . . .	H. 420, 421, *b*.	G. 110, II.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **τὸ ἅρμα**, *chariot.*
2. **ἡ ἁρμάμαξα**, *carriage.*
3. **ἡ ἀσπίς**, *shield.*
4. **δεξιός**, **dexter**, *right.*
5. **εἶτα**, *then, thereupon.*
6. **ἕκαστος**, *each.*
7. **ἐκ-καλύπτω**,[1] *I uncover.*
8. **ἐπί** (*upon*); **ἐπὶ τεττάρων**, *in fours.*
9. **εὐώνυμος**, *left.*
10. **ἡ ἴλη**, *troop, company.*
11. **ἵστημι**,[2] *I set, station.*
12. **ἡ κνημίς**,[3] *greave.*
13. **καλύπτω**, *I cover.*
14. **τὸ κράνος**, *helmet.*
15. **ὁ νόμος**, *custom.*
16. **παρ-ελαύνω**, *I march by.*
17. **πρῶτος**, *first.*

[1] *Cf.* Eng. Apo-*calypse*, Revelation.

[2] In the 2d aor., *I stand, station myself.*

[3] Leathern leggings, to protect the lower part of the leg in warfare.

Digitized by Google

18. ἡ τάξις (ταγ-σις),[1] *arrangement, company.*
19. τάττω, *I arrange.*
20. φοινικοῦς,[2] *purple.*
21. χαλκοῦς, *brazen, of bronze.*
22. ὁ χιτών, *tunic.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: ταχθῆναι, στῆναι, συντάξαι, ἐθεώρει, τεταγμένοι, ἐκκεκαλυμμένας.

2. Decline: Ἕλλην, πόλις, τάξις, σῶμα, ἅρμα, γένος, κράνος, ἁπλοῦς χαλκοῦς, ἐλπίς, ἀσπίς, κνημίς.

3. Translate: (*a*) The Greeks were ordered to stand in fours. (*b*) And they (= but the), arranged in companies, were going up into the city, [which was] great and prosperous (pred. position). (*c*) And all the hoplites had golden helmets and tunics of bronze. (*d*) And it is said that Cyrus gave pay to all his soldiers. (*e*) He was uncovering his shield. (*f*) It was their custom (dat. construction) to fight those [who] dwelt (= dwelling) beyond the so-called Maeander River.

4. Translate: (*a*) Πολλὰς δ' ἐξετάσεις ποιήσει τῆς τῶν Ἑλλήνων δυνάμεως, πρὶν ἂν οἱ πολέμιοι παραγένωνται. (*b*) Οὐκ οὖν ἤσθοντο τὸ ἄθλον στλεγγὶς χρῡσῆ οὖσα. (*c*) Ἐκκαλύψουσι τὰς ἀσπίδας, ὅταν τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι δέῃ. (*d*) Χαλκᾶ δ' ἦν τὰ κράνη, ἃ αἱ τάξεις αἱ πρῶται ἔφερον. (*e*) Νόμος δὴ αὐτοῖς ἐστιν ἀφ' ἵππου θηρεύειν, ὅταν ἑαυτοὺς γυμνάσαι βούλωνται.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. φ in ἐφ' ἅρματος. 2. κατ' ἴλας. 3. Augment of ε. 4. Different uses of παρά. 5. ὑπό with the genitive; with the dative. 6. Construction with ἐν, εἰς, σύν, περί, ἀμφί, ἐπί, πρός, διά. 7. The tense systems. 8. Fut. and aor. of themes ending in κ, γ. 9. Accent of the verb; of ἀπῆλθε. 10. ὡς . . . οὕτω. 11. Classes and orders of mutes. 12. γ before θ. 13. The numerals from 1 to 10.

[1] *Cf.* Eng. syn-*tax.*

[2] The *Phoenic-ians* are said to have discovered the *purple* dye.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXVIII.

ANABASIS I. II. 17–20.

1. NOTES.

1. *παρ-ήλα-σε*: 1st aor. from *ἐλαύνω*, theme *ἐλα*; *cf.* *βαίνω*, theme *βα*; on the imperf., *cf.* *παρ-ήλαυνον* XXVII. *στήσᾱς*: from *ἵστημι*, 1st aor. partic.; so *στῆσαι* infin., but *στῆναι* 2d aor. infin.; note, *ἵστημι* has 1st and 2d aor. forms. *πέμψᾱς*, = *πέμπ-σᾱς*; *cf.* *ἀπο-πέμψαι* XXI. *προ-βαλέ-σθαι*: from *βάλλω*, theme *βαλ*; *cf.* *ἐξ-έ-βαλ-εν* XIII.; tense here? mid. voice, to throw before *one's self.* *ἐπι-χωρῆ-σαι*, *to advance:* *cf.* *ἀπ-ε-χώρ-ει* XXV., *he retreated;* on the form, *cf.* *κρεμάσαι* XXV.

2. *προ-εῖπον*, *report:* from *εἶπον*, *I said;* 2d aor. with no pres. form, but classed with *λέγω*; *cf.* *εἴρηκα* XXIII. *ἐ-σάλπιγξε*, *he (the trumpeter) blew the trumpet:* from *σαλπίζω*, theme *σαλπιγγ*; on *γ* nasal, *cf.* *παραγγέλλει* XXI. *ἐπ-ῆε-σαν*, *they advanced:* imperf. ind., irreg. formation, from *ἐπι* + *ἰέναι*, Lat. **ire**; *cf.* *ἰ-όντες* XXVI.; *-σαν* as in *ἦ-σαν*, **e-rant.**

3. *ἐκ τούτου*, *from, out of, this; thereupon.* *θᾶττον προ-ιόντων*, **iis ocius proeuntibus,** [*they*] *advancing more rapidly:* (*a*) gen. abs., *στρατιωτῶν* being understood; *cf.* *αὐτῶν πολεμούντων* XV., *παρεχόντων Πισιδῶν* XIX.; (*b*) *θᾶττον*, compar. of adv. *ταχέ-ως*, superl. *τάχι-στα* XXIII. *ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου*, *from the spontaneous, spontaneously;* note the omission of the substant.; *cf.* *τὸ δεξιόν* XXVII. *τοῖς στρατιώταις*: the dat. as in *Κύρῳ ἦν* XXIV.

4. *ἔ-φυγ-ε(ν)*: from *φεύγω*, theme *φυγ*; *cf.* *φυγάς*, *fugitive;* tense here? why? *οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς*: read as if *ἐκ* were *ἐν*, *the men in the market; cf.* *ἐκ τῶν πόλεων* XXII. *κατα-λιπ-όντες*, *leaving:* *κατα-λείπω*, theme *λιπ*; tense here? *ἰδοῦσα*: masc. *ἰδών*, from *εἶδ-ον*, theme *ἰδ*, Lat. **vid-eo**; no pres. form, but classed as 2d aor. of *ὁράω*. *ἐθαύμασε* for *ἐθαυμαδ-σε*. from *θαυμάζω*, theme *θαυμαδ*; *cf.* *ἀτῑμάζω* VIII.; on the loss of *δ* before *s*, *cf.* *φυγάς* (= *φυγαδ-s*). *ἤσ-θη* for *ἡδ-θη*, from *ἥδ-ομαι* dep.; on *δ* before *θ*, *cf.* *ἀτῑμασθείς* VIII.

5. *τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν*, *the quickest way, straightway:* note the adv. use of the accus.; *ταχύς*, *quick;* *cf.* the forms *ταχέως*, *θᾶττον*, *τάχιστα.* *ἐν ᾧ*, *in which* [*time*]; *cf.* *ἐν αἷς*, *in which* [*days*]. *τινα*, **quemdam,** *a certain:* an enclitic for *τινά*; note the accent is thrown

Digitized by Google

upon the ultima of ἕτερον; *cf.* ἐρίζοντά οἱ XXV., nom. τὶς for τινς. αἰτιᾱ-σά-μενο-ς : from αἰτιάομαι dep.; note, α does not become η before σ; *cf.* νικήσᾱς XXV., ἡττηθείς XXV.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The theme of ἐλαύνω is ἐλα (aor. ἤλα-σε); so βαίνω, theme βα.

2. The theme of βάλλω is βαλ; of σαλπίζω, σαλπιγγ; of φεύγω, φυγ; of λείπω, λιπ.

3. ἵστημι has a 1st and 2d aor., the first being trans., the second intrans.

4. εἶπον, *I said*, is classed as the 2d aor. of λέγω; εἶδον, *I saw*, as the 2d aor. of ὁράω.

5. The accent of a verb does not precede the augment.

6. εἶμι, *I go*, is conjugated irregularly.

7. ταχέως is compared ταχέως, θᾶττον, τάχιστα.

8. A verb containing the idea of separation causes the use of ἐκ for ἐν, even when the preposition has no connection with the verb.

9. θαυμάζω has the theme θαυμαδ, δ dropping before σ (fut. θαυμάσω), and becoming σ before a lingual mute.

10. The accus. is used adverbially.

11. τὶς, *a certain*, is an enclitic throughout its inflection; a proparoxytone before an enclitic takes an acute on the last syllable.

12. αἰτιάομαι does not change α to η in conjugation.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Labial and palatal mutes before a lingual mute	H. 51.	G. 16, 1.
2.	Declens. of σάλπιγξ	H. 174.	G. 50.
3.	Conj. of λύω, fut., and 1st aor. act.	H. 315, 316.	G. 96.
4.	Conj. of λείπω, 2d aor. act. . . .	H. 320.	G. 96, II.
5.	Article with πᾶς and ὅλος . . .	H. 672.	G. 142, 4, N. 5.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. αἰτιάομαι, *I accuse*.
2. ἁρπάζω, *I seize*.
3. αὐτόματος,[1] *spontaneous*.
4. ὁ γέλως, *laughter*.

[1] *Cf. automat-ic.*

Digitized by Google

5. δι-αρπάζω, *I plunder.*
6. ὁ δρόμος,[1] *a run.*
7. ὁ δυνάστης,[2] *officer.*
8. εἶδον (ὁράω), *I saw.*
9. εἶπον (λέγω), *I said.*
10. ἔπ-ειμι, ἐπ-ιέναι, *I advance.*
11. ἐπι-χωρέω, *I advance.*
12. ὁ ἑρμηνεύς, *interpreter.*
13. ἕτερος,[3] *other.*
14. ἥδομαι, *I am pleased.*
15. θαυμάζω, *I wonder.*
16. ἡ κραυγή, *shout.*
17. ἡ λαμπρότης, *brightness.*
18. λείπω,[4] *I leave.*
19. καταλείπω, *I leave behind.*
20. μετά (with gen.), *with.*
21. ὅλος, *whole.*
22. πολέμιος,[5] *hostile.*
23. προ-βάλλω, *I throw before, present (arms).*
24. πρό-ειμι, προ-ιέναι, *I go forward.*
25. σαλπίζω, *blow the trumpet.*
26. ἡ σκηνή, *tent.*
27. ταχύς, *quick.*
28. ταχέως, *quickly.*
29. τρέπω, *I turn.*
30. ἐπι-τρέπω, *I turn over to.*
31. ἡ φάλαγξ, *phalanx.*
32. φεύγω, *I flee.*
33. ὁ φόβος,[6] *fear.*
34. ὁ φοινικιστής,[7] *wearer of the purple.*
35. τὰ ὤνια, *goods for sale.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: παρήλασε, πέμψας, ἐπιχωρῆσαι, ἐσάλπιγξε, καταλιπόντες.

2. Decline: ἅρμα, Κίλισσα, γέλως, λαμπρότης, ἑρμηνεύς, δυνάστης.

3. Translate: (*a*) And he announced to his friend to take (*taking*) what army he (*dat.*) had, and come straightway. (*b*) The guards indeed, becoming reconciled with the (men) in the city, send to the commanders what armies they had. (*c*) And he (ὁ) ordered those (who were) besieging the enemy (= hostiles) to advance quickly. (*d*) And they gladly obeyed. (*e*) They began to run.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The declension of φάλαγξ. 2. Some uses of the optative. 3. Future conditions with probability. 4. Tenses of the participle. 5. Uses of the imperfect indicative. 6. The cases after παρά. 7. Reduplication. 8. Greek for "he was evidently." 9. Future of themes ending in τ, δ, θ.

[1] *Cf.* Eng. hippo-*drome*, horse-race.
[2] *Cf.* δύναμαι.
[3] *Cf.* Eng. *hetero*-dox, having other or wrong beliefs.
[4] *Cf.* Eng. ec-*lip*-*se*.
[5] *Cf.* πολεμέω.
[6] *Cf.* Eng. hydro-*phobia*.
[7] *Cf.* φοινικοῦς XXVII.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXIX.

ANABASIS I. II. 21–24.

1. NOTES.

1. *ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν, they were attempting to enter:* (*a*) *cf.* *ἐπειρᾶτο* XIII.; (*b*) theme *βαλ*; *cf.* *προ-βαλέσθαι* XXVIII., *ἐξέβαλεν* XIII. *ἁμαξιτός . . . ἀμήχανος κτέ, a wagon-road, . . . and impracticable for an army to enter.* Note the mas. ending, although *ὁδός* is fem.; in Greek, as in Latin, there are adj. of two terminations, the mas. and fem. forms being alike. *εἰσ-ελθεῖν*: indic. *εἰσ-ῆλθον*; *cf.* *ἀπ-ῆλθε* VIII.; theme? *pres.* indic. *εἰσ-έρχομαι* dep. *τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, on the following day; sc.* *ἡμέρᾳ*; note that the dat., like the Latin abl., denotes *time when.* *λελοιπ-ὼς εἴη, that Syennesis had left,* lit. *was having left:* (*c*) perf. *opt.*, for the indic. of the dir. disc., *λέλοιπε(ν)*, "*Syennesis has left,*" *cf.* *ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι* VI.; (*d*) *λε-λοιπ-ώς*, perf. partic. act. of *λείπω*; note the redup., and the ending *-ως* = *-or-s* *cf.* *ἐκπεπτωκ-ότ-ας* XIII.; note the change of the theme *λιπ* to *λοιπ*, and that the perf. suffix *-κα* has been omitted; such perfects are called *second* perf.; so *γράφ-ω γέ-γραφ-α, I have written.* *καὶ ὅτι . . . ἤκουε, and because he heard Tamōs having* (*i. e. that T. had*) *triremes* [*which were*] *sailing around,* etc.; note the partic. after *ἤκουε*, and *cf.* *παρὼν ἐτύγχανε* III.; such partic., taking the place of an infin., are called *supplementary.* On *ἤκουε*, *cf.* *ἤκουσε* XXIII. *καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου, and of Cyrus himself;* but *ὁ αὐτὸς Κῦρος, the same Cyrus; cf.* *τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα* XIII.

2. *οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος,* **nullo prohibente**: *οὐδείς, no one,* accus. *οὐδένα*; *cf.* *ἕνα* XXIV. Does this construction denote time, cause, or condition? *δένδρων . . . ἀμπέλων σύμπλεων, full of trees . . . and of vines;* note the genitives dependent on *σύμπλεων*; *cf.* the Eng. usage, *full* OF; *σύμπλεως* masc., fem.; neut. *σύμπλεων.*

3. *ἐξ-έ-λιπ-ον*: on the form, *cf.* *καταλιπόντες* XXVIII.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Greek has adjectives of two terminations, the masculine and feminine forms being alike.

2. The dative denotes *time when.*

Digitized by Google

3. The perf. opt. act. is made up of the perf. partic. and the optative of the verb *to be.*

4. 2d perfects differ from 1st perfects in omitting the suffix **κα.**

5. A supplementary partic. may stand after **ἀκούω**, as after **τυγχάνω.**

6. **αὐτός** is intensive when it modifies a noun, provided it does not stand in the attributive position.

7. Adjectives of fulness are followed by the genitive case.

8. **σύμπλεως** has **ω** short as regards accent.

9. **ἐπί** with the gen. or the dat. denotes *rest upon.*

10. **διά** with the gen. = *through*; with the acc. = *on account of.*

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Declension of **ὁδός**	H. 153.	G. 42.
2.	Adjectives of two terminations . .	H. 225, 226.	G. 63.
3.	Declension of **εὐγενής**, mas. and fem.	H. 230.	G. 66.
4.	1st perf. system, active voice . . .	H. 317.	G. 96.
5.	2d perf. system, active voice . . .	H. 321.	G. 96, II.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ὁ ἄγγελος**, *messenger.*
2. **τὸ ἄκρον**, *height, summit.*
3. **ἁμαξιτός**, *passable for wagons.*
4. **ἀμήχανος**, *insurmountable.*
5. **ἡ ἄμπελος**, *vine.*
6. **βάλλω**, *I throw.*
7. **εἰσ-βάλλω**, *I throw in, make an entrance.*
8. **ἡ εἰσβολή**, *entrance.*
9. **τὸ δένδρον**, *tree.*
10. **διό**, *wherefore.*
11. **ἔσω**, *within.*
12. **ἐκ-λείπω**, *I leave out.*
13. **ἐν-οικέω**, *I dwell in.*
14. **ἐπίρρυτος**, *watered.*
15. **εἰσ-έρχομαι, εἰσ-ῆλθον**, *I enter.*
16. **ἰσχυρός**, *mighty*; **-ῶς**, *mightily.*
17. **ἡ κρῖθή**, *barley.*
18. **κωλύω**, *I prevent.*
19. **μελίνη**, *millet.*
20. **ἡ ὁδός**, *way.*
21. **ὄρθιος**, *straight.*
22. **τὸ ὄρος**, *mountain.*
23. **ὅτι** (conjunct.), *that, because.*
24. **οὗ**, *where.*
25. **οὐδ-είς**, *nobody.*
26. **ὀχυρός**, *fortified.*
27. **πάντῃ**, *on all sides.*
28. **παντοδαπός**, *of all kinds.*
29. **περι-έχω**, *surround.*
30. **πλέω**, *I sail*; **περι-πλέω**, *sail around.*
31. **ὁ πῦρός**, *wheat.*
32. **τὸ σήσαμον**, *sesam-e.*
33. **ἡ τριήρης**, *tri-reme.*
34. **ὑστεραῖος**, *next* (following in time).
35. **ὑψηλός**, *high.*

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Principal parts of κωλύω; conjugation of the perf. system act. and mid. of κωλύω; conjugation of the fut., 2d aor., 2d perf. act. of λείπω.

2. Translate: (*a*) That good king has a large and beautiful park. (*b*) He was living in a large and well-watered plain. (*c*) The interpreters announced that those lofty mountains were fortified, and that the enemy were upon them. (*d*) In that same country there was much wheat. (*e*) Nobody can enter where the great king dwells. (*f*) On the following day he died, and the younger of the brothers became king.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Formation of the pluperf. ἐλελύκειν. 2. Different meanings of αὐτός. 3. Case following adverbs of *place*. 4. Indirect discourse. 5. Conjugation of ἔφυγον, 2d aor. system act. 6. The form ἐπειρῶντο. 7. Construction with adj. of *fulness*. 8. Adj. of two terminations. 9. Compensative lengthening, with examples.

LESSON XXX. — REVIEW.

1. TEXT: ANABASIS I. II. 1 — I. II. 24.

2. GRAMMAR.

1. Labial and palatal *mutes* before a lingual mute: H. 51; G. 16, 1. *Elision:* H. 82; G. 17, 1. *Enclitics:* H. 113, 115, 116; G. 27, 28, 1, 2, 3.

2. **Declension:** γέφῡρα, H. 135; G. 37, 1, end. νεᾱνίᾱς, H. 145; G. 37 (ταμίᾱς). ὁδός, H. 153; G. 42. πούς, H. 172; G. 46, 4, N. 1, end. σάλπιγξ, H. 174; G. 50. δαίμων, H. 184; G. 50. γένος, H. 190, 191; G. 52, 2. *Of Adjectives:* contr. in -οῦς, H. 223, 224; G. 65. Of two terminations, H. 225, 226; G. 63. εὐγενής, H. 230; G. 66. εὐδαίμων, H. 235; G. 66. μείζων, H. 236; G. 72, 2, N. 1 (ἡδίων). λυθείς, H. 242; G. 68 (τιθείς). μέγας, H. 247; G. 70. *The Relative:* H. 275; G. 86. *Numerals:* 1–10, H. 288; G. 76.

Digitized by Google

3. **Conjugation**: Tense systems, H. 303; G. 92, 4, I.–VII. Principal parts, H. 304, *c*; G. 92, 5. Variable vowel, H. 310; G. 113 and 1. Synopsis of λύω, H. 313; G. 95, 1. λύω, act. voice, H. 314–319; G. 96. λείπω, 2d aor. act., H. 320; G. 96, II.; and 2d perf., H. 321. Augment, H. 357; G. 103. Reduplication, H. 363–365, 367; G. 101, 1, 2, 3. Accent, H. 386; G. 26. Fut. stem, H. 420, 421, *b*; G. 110, II. 1st perf. stem, H. 446; G. 110, iv. *b*.

4. **Syntax**: Article with πᾶς, ὅλος, H. 672; G. 142, 4, N. 5. Time and space, H. 720; G. 161. παρά, πρός, H. 802, 805; G. 191, vi. 4, 6. Imperf., H. 830; G. 200.

3. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἄγγελος.
2. ἡ ἀγορά.
3. ὁ ἀγών.
4. τὸ ἆθλον.
5. τὸ ἄκρον.
6. ἡ ἀκρόπολις.
7. ἡ ἄμπελος.
8. τὸ ἄντρον.
9. ὁ ἀριθμός.
10. τὸ ἅρμα.
11. ἡ ἁρμάμαξα.
12. ἡ ἀσπίς.
13. τὰ βασίλεια.
14. ὁ γέλως.
15. ἡ γέφῡρα.
16. ὁ γυμνής.
17. ἡ γυνή.
18. τὸ δένδρον.
19. τὸ δέρμα.
20. ὁ δρόμος.
21. ὁ δυνάστης.
22. ἡ ἐλπίς.
23. ἡ ἐξέτασις.
24. ὁ ἑρμηνεύς.
25. τὸ εὖρος.
26. ἡ ἡμέρα.
27. τὸ θηρίον.
28. ἡ θύρα.
29. ἡ ἴλη.
30. ὁ ἱππεύς.
31. ὁ ἵππος.
32. ἡ κνημίς.
33. τὸ κράνος.
34. ἡ κραυγή.
35. ἡ κρήνη.
36. ἡ κρῑθή.
37. ἡ λαμπρότης.
38. ἡ μάχη.
39. ἡ μελίνη.
40. ὁ νόμος.
41. ἡ ὁδός.
42. ὁ οἶνος.
43. τὰ ὅπλα.
44. τὸ ὄρος.
45. ὁ παράδεισος.
46. ἡ παρασάγγη.
47. ἡ παρασκευή.
48. ὁ πελταστής.
49. ἡ πηγή.
50. τὸ πλέθρον.
51. τὸ πλοῖον.
52. ὁ ποταμός.
53. ὁ πούς.
54. ὁ πῦρός.
55. τὸ σήσαμον.
56. ἡ σκηνή.
57. ἡ σοφίᾱ.
58. ὁ σταθμός.
59. ἡ στλεγγίς.
60. ἡ στρατιᾱ.
61. ὁ στόλος.
62. ἡ τάξις.
63. ὁ τοξότης.
64. ἡ τριήρης.
65. ἡ φάλαγξ.
66. ὁ φόβος.
67. ὁ φοινικιστής.
68. ὁ χιτών.
69. τὰ ὤνια.

Digitized by Google

VERBS.

1. αἰτιάομαι.
2. ἀκούω.
3. ἀνιάω.
4. ἀπ-αιτέω.
5. ἀπο-δίδωμι.
6. ἀπο-χωρέω.
7. ἁρπάζω.
8. βάλλω.
9. δια-βαίνω.
10. δι-άγω.
11. δι-αρπάζω.
12. δοκεῖ.
13. εἶδον.
14. εἰμί.
15. εἶμι.
16. εἶπον.
17. εἰσ-βάλλω.
18. εἰσ-έρχομαι.
19. ἐκ-δέρω.
20. ἐκ-καλύπτω.
21. ἐκ-λείπω.
22. ἐμ-βάλλω.
23. ἐν-οικέω.
24. ἐξ-ελαύνω.
25. ἔπ-ειμι.
26. ἔπ-ειμι.
27. ἐπι-δείκνῡμι.
28. ἐπι-τρέπω.
29. ἐπι-χωρέω.
30. ἐρίζω.
31. ζεύγνῡμι.
32. ἡγέομαι.
33. ἥδομαι.
34. ἥκω.
35. ἡττάομαι.
36. θαυμάζω.
37. θεωρέω.
38. θηρεύω.
39. θύω.
40. ἵστημι.
41. καλέω.
42. καλύπτω.
43. κατ-άγω.
44. κατα-νοέω.
45. κεράννῡμι.
46. κρεμάννῡμι.
47. κωλύω.
48. λέγω.
49. λείπω.
50. μένω.
51. νῑκάω.
52. οἰκοδομέω.
53. ὁράω.
54. ὀφείλω.
55. παρα-σκευάζω.
56. πάρ-ειμι.
57. παρ-ελαύνω.
58. παύω.
59. περι ἔχω.
60. πιστεύω.
61. πλέω.
62. πορεύομαι.
63. προ-βάλλω.
64. πρό-ειμι.
65. προ-ίστημι.
66. ῥέω.
67. σαλπίζω.
68. συγ-γίγνομαι.
69 συν-αλλάττω.
70. τάττω.
71. τίθημι.
72. τρέπω.
73. ὑπισχνέομαι.
74. φεύγω.
75. φυλάττω.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄγριος.
2. ἀμαξιτός.
3. ἀμήχανος.
4. αὐτόματος.
5. βαρβαρικός.
6. δεξιός.
7. δῆλος.
8. Ἑλληνικός.
9. ἐπίρρυτος.
10. ἐρυμνός.
11. ἔσχατος.
12. ἕτερος.
13. εὐδαίμων.
14. εὐώνυμος.
15. ἰσχυρός.
16. μέγας.
17. μείζων.
18. μέσος.
19. ξενικός.
20. ὅλος.
21. ὄρθιος.
22. ὅσος.
23. οὐδ-είς.
24. ὠχυρός.
25. παντοδαπός.
26. πλήρης.
27. πολέμιος.
28. πολύς.
29. πρῶτος.
30. σύμπας.
31. ταχύς.
32. ὑστεραῖος.
33. ὑψηλός.
34. φοινικοῦς.
35. χαλκοῦς.
36. χρῑσοῦς.

Digitized by Google

ADVERBS.

1. ἄνω.
2. διό.
3. εἶτα.
4. εἴσω.
5. ἐνταῦθα.
6. ἤδη.
7. ἰσχυρῶς.
8. ὅθεν.
9. οὖ.
10. παντάπασιν.
11. πάντῃ.
12. πλέον.
13. πολλάκις.
14. ταχέως.
15. τάχιστα.

NUMERALS.

1. εἴκοσι(ν).
2. τριάκοντα.
3. τριᾱκόσιοι.
4. πεντακόσιοι.
5. ὀκτακόσιοι.
6. χίλιοι.
7. δισχίλιοι.
8. τετρακισχίλιοι.
9. μύριοι.

PREPOSITIONS.

1. περί.
2. ὑπό (dat.).
3. διά (gen.).
4. ὡς.
5. ἐπί (τετταρων).
6. μετά.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. ὅτε, ἐπεί.
2. ὅτι.
3. πρίν.

LESSON XXXI.

ANABASIS I. II. 25–27.

1. NOTES.

§ 25. ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνή: *cf.* XXVI. **§ 12.** προτέρᾱ Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις, **maturius Cyro quinque diebus**, *earlier (than) Cyrus by five days.* Note, προτέρᾱ agrees with γυνή; on the comparative ending, *cf.* πρεσβύ-τερο-ς I. Κύρου, genitive case, dependent upon the comparative; *cf.* the Latin use of the ablative. ἡμέραις, dative, denoting the interval or degree of difference between the queen's arrival and that of Cyrus; *cf.* the Latin usage. τῇ ὑπερβολῇ . . . τῇ . . . πεδίον: on the order, *cf.* τοῖς Θρᾷξὶ . . . οἰκοῦσι XVI. ἀπ-ώλο-ντο: from ἀπ-όλ-λῡ-μι (= ὀλ-νυ-μι, *cf.* ἀπο-δείκ-νῡ-μι), theme ὀλ. Tense here? ἔ-φα-σαν, *they said:* from φη-μί, Latin **fa-ri**; on -σαν, ending 3d plur., *cf.* εἴη-

Digitized by Google

σαν XI., *ἀφ-ειστήκε-σαν* XII. *κατα-κοπ-ῆ-ναι*: 2d aor. pass. infin.; pass. suffix *-ε*, lengthened to *η* before the infin. ending; *cf.* *συν-αλλαγ-έ-ντι* XXI. *ὑπο-λειφ-θέντας*: from *λείπ-ω*, theme *λιπ*; *cf.* *κατα-λιπόντες* XXVIII. On *φ* for *π* before *θ*, *cf.* *ταχ-θῆναι* XXVII. *εὑρ-εῖν*: from *εὑρ-ίσκω*, theme *εὑρ*. Tense here?

§ **26.** *οὔτε . . . ἐλθεῖν ἔφη, οὔτε ἰέναι ἤθελε*, *he said that he had not* (lit. *neither*) *come, nor was he willing*, etc. *ἑαυτοῦ*, *than himself*: on the case, *cf.* **Κύρου**, § **25**. *οὐδενί . . . εἰς χεῖρας*, *for no one into the hands*, = *into the hands of no one*: *cf.* **sese Caesari ad pedes projecerunt**. In both instances the English prefers the genitive construction. Note that the two negatives, *οὔτε . . . οὐδενί*, do not make an affirmative.

§ **27.** *ἔδωκε*: on the form, *cf.* *ἀπέδωκε* XXVI. § **12**. *χρήματα πολλά*: *cf.* XXVI. § **12**. *εἰς τὴν στρατιάν*: *cf.* *εἰς τὴν τροφήν* XVI. **Κῦρος**: subject of an omitted *ἔδωκε*. *παρὰ βασιλεῖ*, *by the side of the king*; *i. e. at the Persian court*. *καὶ . . . χώρᾱν . . . ἀφ-αρπάζεσθαι*, *and that his country be no longer plundered*: object of *ἔδωκε*; on the infin., used as a noun, *cf.* *ἀποστῆναι* XIII., *ἀθροίζειν* XIV. *ἡρπασ-μένα*: from *ἁρπάζω*, theme *ἁρπαδ*. Note the change of *δ* to *σ* before *μ*; on the form, *cf.* *δεδομέναι* XII.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The genitive, dependent upon a noun, occurs in the attributive position.

2. The genitive follows the comparative when *ἤ*, *than*, is omitted.

3. *Degree of difference* is expressed by the dative.

4. The suffix *-τερο-* forms comparatives.

5. The attributive order is: article, attributive, substantive; or (article), substantive, article, attributive.

6. *ὀλ* is the theme of *ὄλλῡμι*; *εὑρ*, of *εὑρίσκω*.

7. *-σαν* indicates the 3d plural, as in *ἔφα-σαν*, *εἶη-σαν*, *ἐλύθη-σαν*.

8. The Greek has a 1st aorist passive suffix (*θε-*); also one for the 2d aorist (*ε-*).

9. The infinitive is used substantively, with or without the article.

10. *π* and *β* become *φ* before *θ*.

11. Lingual mutes become *σ* before *μ*.

12. The dative occurs in the sense of an English possessive genitive.

13. *δίδωμι* forms its 1st aorist with *-κα-* for *-σα-*.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of πολύς . .	H. 247.	G. 70.
2. Accent of infinitives and participles	H. 389.	G. 26, (1), (2), (3).
3. Classes of verbs: 1st and 2d classes	H. 392–394.	G. 107, 108, I., II.
4. Reduplication of verbs beginning with a vowel .	H. 367.	G. 101, 3.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ὁ ἀκῑνάκης, *dagger.*
2. τὸ ἀνδράποδον, *slave.*
3. ἀπ-όλλῡμι, *I destroy.*
4. τὸ δῶρον,[1] *gift.*
5. ἐθέλω, *am willing, wish.*
6. εἰσ-ελαύνω, *march into.*
7. ἑκατόν, *hundred.*
8. ἐν-τυγχάνω, *happen upon.*
9. εὑρίσκω, *I find.*
10. κόπτω, *cut*; κατα-κόπτω, *cut down.*
11. κρείττων, *stronger.*
12. ὁ λόχος, *company.*
13. ὁ ὄλ-εθρος,[2] *destruction.*
14. ὀργίζω, *am angry.*
15. οὐδείς, *nobody, no one.*
16. ἡ πίστις, *pledge.*
17. πλανάομαι,[3] *I wander.*
18. πού, *anywhere.*
19. πώ, *yet.*
20. πρότερος, *earlier.*
21. ἡ στολή, *gown.*
22. ὁ στρεπτός, *necklace.*
23. τῑ́μιος,[4] *honorable.*
24. τότε, *then.*
25. ἡ ὑπερ-βολή, *passage over.*
26. ὑπο-λείπω, *I leave.*
27. φη-μί,[5] *I say.*
28. ἡ χείρ,[6] *hand.*
29. χρῡσο-χάλῑνος, *golden bridle.*
30. τὸ ψέλιον, *bracelet.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Οὐχ[7] εὑρεῖν τὸν καλὸν ἀκῑνάκην δύναμαι, ὃν ὁ φύλαξ ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ ὑπέλιπεν. (*b*) Εἶδον τὴν τοῦ μεγάλου βασιλέως χεῖρα ἐχούσην πολλὰ ψέλια ἐφ' αὑτῇ. (*c*) Οὐδείς ἐστι κρείττων τοῦ μεγάλου

[1] *Cf.* Eng. Theo-*dore*, divine *gift.*
[2] *Cf.* ὄλ-λυμι.
[3] *Cf.* Eng. *plan*-et, wanderer among fixed stars.
[4] *Cf.* ἀ-τῑμάζω, I dis*honor.*
[5] *Cf.* Eng. eu-*phem*-ism, blas-*pheme.*
[6] Eng. *chir*-ography.
[7] Note the change of κ (οὐκ) to χ before the following rough breathing.

Digitized by Google

βασιλέως. (*d*) Οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ ἦν τότε τοῦ Κύρου πρεσβύτερος ἑκατὸν ἡμέραις ὅτε τὰ στρατεύματα ἀπώλετο.

2. Analyze: διήρπασαν, μετεπέμπετο, ἔδωκε, ἐντυγχάνωσιν.

3. Translate: (*a*) But Parysatis, the wife of Darius, arrives in the city six days before he [does]. (*b*) The passage of those mountains is exceedingly difficult (ἀμήχανος). (*c*) I am not willing to fall into the hands of any one stronger than myself. (*d*) Many gifts are considered honorable at court.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1 παρά. 2. Use of the infinitive. 3. Declension of ὅς; of μείζων, κρείττων. 4. Degree of difference. 5. Case with comparatives. 6. Labial and palatal mutes before τ, δ, θ. 7. Accent of the verb. 8. Declension of χρῡσοῦς. 9. Accent in declension. 10. Formation of the perfect stem. 11. Reduplication. 12. Accent in οὐδενί πω, ἤν που. 13. Quantity of ι in ἀφίκετο. 14. Adverbial accusative.

LESSON XXXII.

ANABASIS I. III. 1–3.

1. NOTES.

§ **1.** ἔμεινε: note, the singular, although two subjects follow. οὐκ ἔ-φα-σαν κτέ,[1] *refused* (lit. *said not*) *to go forward.* On ἔφασαν, *cf.* XXXI. § **25**; on ἰέναι, *cf.* ἰόντες XXVI. § **11**; τοῦ πρόσω, *of the forward, i. e.* any part of the [journey] forward. ὑπ-ώπτευον . . . ἰέναι, sc. αὐτόν, *they suspected him to be going.* μισθω-θῆ-ναι κτέ, *they said* [*themselves, sc.* ἑαυτοῦς] *to be hired not for that* [*purpose*]. Note, after φημί, the infinitive is used in the indirect discourse; not ὅτι with a finite mode. πρῶτος δὲ Κλέαρχος, **primus autem Clearchus,** *Clearchus was the first to,* etc. αὐτοῦ: on the attributive position, *cf.* τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ XIX. ἐβιάζετο, *was forcing, i. e. was trying to force;* ἔβαλλον, *they kept throwing.* Note the two different uses of the imperfect. ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο, *whenever they might begin, whenever they began;* aor. opt.,

[1] καὶ τὰ ἕτερα, and the rest, and so forth.

Digitized by Google

from ἄρχω. On the mode, *cf.* ὅστις ἀφικνοῖτο IX.; ὁπότε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο XXIV.

§ 2. μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε κτέ, *escaped little* [*so as*] *not to be stoned, i. e. narrowly escaped being*, etc. Note the redundant use of the negative. μικρόν: adv. acc.; *cf.* τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν XXVIII. § 20. ὕστερον, *afterwards: cf.* preceding note. ἔ-γνω, *he knew*: from γι-γνώ-σκω, Lat. **gnō-sco**, Eng. *kno-w*. Theme? tense? Note, there is no personal ending; *cf.* κατ-έστη VI., ἀν-έβη V. συν-ήγαγ-ε(ν): on the form, *cf.* κατ-αγάγ-υι XXII. § 2. ἑ-στ-ώς: 2d perf. partic., from ἵ-στη-μι; *cf.* λε-λοιπ-ώς XXIX. § 21. On the ending -οτ, *cf.* ἐκ-πεπτω-κ-ότ-ας XIII.

§ 3. ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, *O men soldiers, i. e. fellow-soldiers*: ἄνδρες used for politeness, as in English, "gentlemen of the jury." χαλεπῶς φέρω, **aegre fero**, *am troubled, grieved.* τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν, *because of the present affairs.* Note that the dative, like the Latin ablative, may express *cause.* ἐγένετο, *became: cf.* δρόμος ἐγένετο XXVIII. τά τε ἄλλα κτέ, *he both honored me in other matters, and gave me*, etc., *i. e., he gave me ten thousand darics, besides honoring me in other ways.* εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατ-ε-θέ-μην, *laid aside for the* (= *my*) *private* [*use*]. θε, theme of what verb? tense here? note the voice. Note the omission of the substantive after ἴδιον; *cf.* τὸ δεξιόν XXVII. ἐμοί, **mihi**; nom. ἐγώ, **ego**.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A verb with two subjects may agree in number with the nearest only.

2. οὔ φημι, signifies *I refuse.*

3. εἶμι, **eo, ire**, has the theme ι.

4. After φημί the main verb of the indirect discourse is in the infinitive.

5. ἑαυτοῦ takes the attributive position.

6. πρῶτος Κλέαρχος means *Clearchus was the first*, etc.

7. An *attempted act* is denoted by the imperfect.

8. A *continued past act* is denoted by the imperfect.

9. ἐπεί with the optative forms a conditional relative sentence, referring to no particular, but to a general, occasion.

10. The neuter accusative is used with an adverbial force.

11. γιγνώσκω, theme γνο; τίθημι, theme θε.

12. ἀνήρ is used in addresses for politeness or respect.

13. The dative may express *cause.*

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Present system of λύω . .	H. 314.	G. 96.
2.	Classes of verbs	H. 392–400.	G. 108, I.–IV.
3.	Position of ἑαυτοῦ	H. 673, *b*.	G. 142, 4, N. 3.
4.	τὰ ἄλλα	H. 704.	G. 142, 2, N. 3.
5.	Attempted action	H. 832.	G. 200, N. 2.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἄρχω,[1] *I begin.*
2. βιάζομαι, *I force.*
3. γι γνώ-σκω,[2] *I know.*
4. δακρύω,[3] *I weep.*
5. δαπανάω, *I expend.*
6. ἡ ἐκκλησίᾱ,[4] *assembly.*
7. ἐκ-φεύγω,[5] *I flee*, aor. *escape.*
8. ἐπὶ τούτῳ, *for that* (*purpose*).
9. ὁ ἴδιος,[6] *private.*
10. κατα-πετρόω,[7] *I stone down* (*to death*).
11. καθ-ηδυπαθέω, *I waste in luxury.*
12. μικρός,[8] *small.*
13. μισθόω,[9] *I hire.*
14. ὁράω,[10] *I see.*
15. οὔ φημι, *I refuse, deny.*
16. ἡ πατρίς, *fatherland.*
17. πρόσω, *forward.*
18. πρῶτος,[11] *first.*
19. σιωπάω, *I am silent.*
20. συν-άγω,[12] *I bring together.*
21. τῑμάω, *I honor.*
22. ὑμεῖς, *ye*; σύ, *thou.*
23. τὸ ὑποζύγιον, *pack animal.*
24. ὕστερον,[13] *later.*
25. φέρω,[14] *I bear.*
26. χαλεπῶς, *grievously.*
27. ὁ χρόνος,[15] *time.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze : μισθωθῆναι, ἰέναι, ἄρξαιντο, δυνήσεται, συνήγαγον, ἐδαπάνων.

2. Difference between ἔβαλλον and ἔβαλον, ἐξέφυγε and ἐξέφευγε.

[1] *Cf.* *arch-aic*, ancient.
[2] *Cf.* a-*gno*-stic.
[3] Lat. **lacru-ma**, tear.
[4] *Cf.* Eng. *ecclesia*-stical; Fr. *église.*
[5] Lit. *flee away.*
[6] *Cf.* Eng. *idio*-syncrasy.
[7] *Cf.* Lat. **petra**, rock; **petr-oleum**, rock-oil.
[8] *Cf.* Eng. *micro*-scope.
[9] *Cf.* μισθός, pay.
[10] *Cf.* Eng. pan-*orama.*
[11] *Cf.* Eng. *proto*-plasm.
[12] *Cf.* Eng. *synagogue.*
[13] Note the comparative ending -τερο-.
[14] *Cf.* Lat. **fero**, Eng. *bear.*
[15] *Cf.* Eng. *chronic*, *chron*-icle, *chron*-ometer, ana-*chron*-ism.

Digitized by Google

3. Principal parts of *δακρύω*, *τῑμάω*, *σιωπάω*, *δαπανάω*. Translate *βιάσομαι*, *ἐβιασάμην*, *βεβίασμαι*, *ἐβιάσθην*. Conjugate *φεύγω*, 2d aorist active system : H. **320** ; G. **96**, II.

4. Translate : (*a*) He remained in the city many days. (*b*) Messengers said (*εἶπον*) that the enemy (hostiles) broke down (*καταλύω*) the bridge on the following day. (*c*) The depth of that river is twenty feet. (*d*) I give the soldiers pay for (= of) six months, besides honoring them in other respects.

5. Classify : *ὑποπτεύω*, *μισθόω*, *βιάζομαι*, *βάλλω*, *ἄγω*, *σιωπάω*.

6. Translate : (*a*) *Πολὺν δὲ χρόνον ἐστώς, ἐσιώπᾱ.* (*b*) *Μῑκρὸν ἐκφεύγει τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα μὴ κατακοπῆναι.* (*c*) *Ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤρξατο προϊέναι οὐκ ἐδύνατο τὴν ὁδὸν εὑρεῖν.* (*d*) *Οὐκ ἔφασαν ἐν Ἰσσοῖς μένειν.* (*e*) *Ἐπὶ δὲ τούτῳ οὐκ ἔφη χρήματα ἀποδιδόναι.*

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The prepositions *πρός*, *παρά*, *ἐπί*, *διά*, *μετά*, *σύν*, *ἐν*, *εἰς*, *κατά*. 2. *τὰ ἄλλα ἐτῑμησε*. 3. Indirect discourse after *φημί*. 4. Supplementary participle. 5. Verb accent. 6. Verb followed by two subjects. 7. *ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο*. 8. Uses of the imperfect. 9. *Cause*. 10. Second aorist of *ἄγω*. 11. Conditional relative sentences (*subjunctive, optative, ἄν, general time ;* discuss under each head). 12. Comparison of adjectives. 13. Special Greek uses of the genitive case. 14. Future conditions *with probability*.

LESSON XXXIII.

ANABASIS I. III. 4, 5.

1. NOTES.

§ 4. *πρῶτον* : on the construction, *cf.* *μικρόν* XXXII. § 2. *μεθ' ὑμῶν*, *with you : cf.* *ἐφ' ἅ* XXII. § 2. Meaning of *μετά* with the accusative ? *αὐτοὺς . . . βουλομένους*, *them wishing, i. e. because they wished.* Note that the participle here marks the circumstances under which Clearchus fought. *ἀφ-αιρεῖσθαι . . . Ἕλληνας . . . γῆν*, *to deprive the Greeks of their land.* Note, both nouns are accusative after the

Digitized by Google

verb; *cf.* **αἰτεῖ κτέ** XVII. **δέ-οιτο**: indirect middle; optative, because the verb on which it depends is optative. **ὠφελ-οίην**, *I might aid:* from **ὠφελέω**; *cf.* **ὠφέλει** XVI.; same as **ὠφελέ-οιμι** (= **ὠφελοῖμι**), *cf.* **λύ-οιμι**. On the mode, *cf.* **ἔχοιεν, εἶησαν** XI. **ἀνθ' ὧν κτέ**, *in return for what I suffered well by him, i. e. in return for the favors I enjoyed at his hand.* **ἀνθ' ὧν**: for **ἀντὶ ὧν**, *cf.* **μεθ' ὑμῶν** above. **ἔ-παθ-ον**, *I suffered:* from **πάσχω** (for **παθ-σκω**), theme **παθ**. Tense here? **ὑπ' ἐκείνου, ab eo**: *cf.* **ὑπὸ ἀντιστασιωτῶν** XVII.

§ 5. **ἀνάγκη**, *sc.* **ἐστί**, *it is necessity, necessary.* **ὑμᾶς προδόντα**, *betraying, i. e. to betray you and:* nom. **προδούς**, = **προ-δο-(ντ)-ς φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι**; from **χράομαι**, dep. The dat. is like the Latin abl. with **utor.** **ψευ-σά-μενο-ν** *deceiving, i. e. to deceive, be false, and,* etc.: from **ψεύδω.** Note the loss of **δ** before **ς** in the aor. **δίκαια**, *just things, right:* neut. plur. **ὅτι ἂν δέῃ**, *whatsoever* (= *if anything*) *may be necessary:* conditional relative sentence. Note that the subjunctive stands after a primary tense; on the optative in a conditional relative sentence, *cf.* **ὅστις ἀφικνοῖτο** IX. Note that when the subjunctive is used, **ἄν** follows the relative. **δέ-ῃ**: on the form, *cf.* **λύῃ** (pres. subj.). **πείσ-ο-μαι**: from **πάσχω**; fut. **πεί-σο-μαι** (note, loss of **θ**), 2d aor. **ἔπαθον. καὶ οὔποτε κτέ**, *and never shall nobody* (= *anybody*) *say that,* etc.: the redundant negative as in XXXI. § **26.** **ἐρεῖ**: classed as fut. of **φημί. ὡς**: conj. like **ὅτι**, = *that.* **ἀγαγών**: on the form, *cf.* **συν-ήγαγον** XXXII. § **2.** **εἱλόμην**, *I took for myself, I chose:* from the theme **ἑλ**, pres. **αἱρέω**; on the augment, *cf.* **εἶχε** XXI.; classed as 2d aor. of **αἱρέω**; fut. **αἱρήσω**, aor. **εἷλον.**

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The neuter accusative of the adjective is used adverbially.

2. **μετά** becomes **μεθ'** in losing its final vowel before a vowel with the rough breathing.

3. **μετά** with the genitive = *with.* This is more frequent in Attic prose than **σύν** with the dative.

4. A circumstantial participle marks the circumstances under which an act occurs: *cause, condition, time,* etc.

5. **ἀφ-αιρέω** is followed by the accusative of the *thing taken* and of the *person* from whom it is taken.

6. A verb depending upon an optative may itself be in the optative.

Digitized by Google

7. The optative is regularly used in *purpose* clauses when the main verb is in a past tense.

8. *πάσχω* is for *παθσκω*; the theme is *παθ*; fut. *πείσομαι* for *πενθ-σομαι*.

9. *ὑπό* with the genitive denotes *agency*; with the dative, = *under*.

10. *-οίην* as an optative ending has the same force as *-οιμι*.

11. *αἱρέω* has the theme *ἑλ* in the 2d aorist.

12. *διδο ντ*, *δο-ντ*, form the nominative *διδούς*, *δούς*.

13. *χράομαι* is followed by the dative, as the Latin **utor** is followed by the ablative. *χρά-εσθαι* contracts *ά-ε* to *ᾶ*, becoming *χρᾶσθαι*.

14. *μοί* is an enclitic, but *ἐμοί* is not.

15. *ε* augments to *ει* in *εἷλον*, theme *ἑλ*, as in *ἔχω*, *εἶχον* (imperfect).

16. *πάσχω* and *αἱρέω* have irregular principal parts.

17. Redundant negatives do not annul but intensify one another when the second is a compound negative.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Future and 1st aorist system of *λύω*	H. 315, 316.	G. 96.
2. Verb endings	H. 375–376, 379.	G. 112, 114, 115.
3. First five classes of verbs	H. 392–402.	G. 108, I.–V.
4. Declension of *διδούς*	H. 242.	G. 68 (*δεικνύς*).
5. Principal parts of *πάσχω*, *αἱρέω*	H. 533, 11; 539, 1.	G. pages 330, 351.
6. Verbs of *depriving*	H. 724.	G. 164.
7. Case with *χράομαι*	H. 777.	G. 188, N. 2.
8. Purpose clauses	H. 881.	G. 216, 1, 3.
9. Participles	H. 968, 980.	G. 275, 277, 279.
10. Contr. of *α-ε* in *χράομαι*	H. 412.	G. 98, N. 2.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. *αἱρέω*, *I take*.
2. *ἀντί*, *instead of*, *in return for*.
3. *ἡ ἀνάγκη*, *necessity*.
4. *ἀφ-αιρέω*, *I take away*.
5. *δέω*, *I want*; *δεῖ*, *it is necessary*.

Digitized by Google

6. δίκαιος, *just, right.*
7. ἐξ-ελαύνω, *I drive out, march.*
8. ἐρῶ (future of φημί), *I shall say.*
9. εὖ,[1] *well.*
10. μετά (with gen.), *with.*
11. οἶδα,[2] *I know.*
12. πάσχω,[3] *I suffer.*
13. προ-δίδωμι,[4] *I betray.*
14. τῑμωρέω, *I punish.*
15. ὑπέρ,[5] *above, in behalf of.*
16. χράομαι (deponent), *I use.*
17. ψεύδω,[6] *I deceive.*
18. ὡς, ὅτι (conj.), *that.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: ἐτῑμωρούμην, ἀφαιρεῖσθαι, ἐκάλει, ψευσάμενον.
2. Decline: Θρᾷξ, Ἕλλᾱς, ἐνοικῶν, γῇ, ὅς, φιλίᾱ.
3. Explain: ἐκ τῆς for ἐξ τῆς; the accent in εἴ τι, δή μοι.
4. Principal parts of ὠφελέω, πολεμέω, πορεύομαι.
5. Translate: (*a*) Ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθε ὑπ' ἐμοῦ, ἐπιβουλεύει δὴ τῇ ἀρχῇ. (*b*) Πρῶτον μὲν οὖν πρὸς ὑμᾶς πολεμήσουσι καὶ πειράσουσι ὑμᾶς τὴν βασιλείαν ἀφαιρεῖν. (*c*) Ἤθελον τῇ φιλίᾳ τῇ Κύρου χρῆσθαι. (*d*) Εἷλον, εἱλόμην.

6. Translate: (*a*) We do not wish to fall into the hands of the great king. (*b*) I know that I shall not be able to force you. (*c*) I do not know if I am acting rightly; but I chose to be with you, and to suffer whatever might be necessary.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Circumstantial participle. 2. Supplementary participle. 3. Special Greek uses of the accusative; of the genitive. 4. Accent of participles and infinitives. 5. ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο. 6. ἀντί, ὑπέρ, μετά. 7. *Not*, with imperative. 8. The correlative of μέν; of μέν, beginning § **4**. 9. Words in the attributive position. 10. Ending **-οίην**. 11. Elision. 12. Accent in the case of enclitics. 13. Redundant negatives. 14. The subjunctive and the optative in conditional relative sentences. 15. Uses of the imperfect.

[1] *Cf.* εὐ-δαίμων, having the gods *well*-disposed; fortunate.
[2] *Cf.* Eng. *wit*, *wot*, *wis-dom*.
[3] *Cf.* Eng. *path-etic*, sorrowful.
[4] *Cf.* Lat. **pro-do**.
[5] *Cf.* Eng. *over*; Lat. **super**.
[6] *Cf.* Eng. *pseudo*-nym.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXIV.

ANABASIS I. III. 6–8.

1. NOTES.

§ 6. **ἐπεί**, *since.* **ἐμοὶ πείθεσθαι**: *cf.* **ἐπίστευον αὐτῷ** XXII. § 2; *cf.* the similar use of the dative in Latin, **mihi parēre, credere.** **καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν . . . ὅπου ἂν ὦ**, *and with you, on the one hand, I think I would be* (**puto me futurum esse**), etc. Note the condition in **σὺν ὑμῖν**, *if I were to be with you,* — **εἰ σὺν ὑμῖν εἴην.** The conclusion might be **τίμιος ἂν εἴην.** **οἶμαι** shows the modesty of the speaker. In **ἄν οἶμαι τίμιος, ἄν** is construed with the inf. **εἶναι**, and shows that the inf. is here equivalent to the opt. Note the form of statement in modest fut. cond.: **εἰ** with the *optative* in the condition, **ἄν** with the *optative* in the conclusion. On *confident* fut. cond., with probability (**ἐάν** with *subjunctive* in the condition, *future indicative*, or some form expressing futurity, in the conclusion), *cf.* XXII. N. 4, **εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ὅπου ἂν ὦ**: on the subjunct. **ὦ**, Lat. **sim**, *cf.* **ὅτι ἂν δέῃ**, § 5. **ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος . . . εἶναι**, *but if I should be*, etc. . . . *I would not be, methinks*, etc. **οὐτ' ἄν . . . οὐτ' ἄν**: note the redundant negatives, the repeated **ἄν**, and the consequent emphasis. **ὡς ἐμοῦ . . . ἰόντος . . . καὶ ὑμεῖς** (*sc.* **ἴητε**, **eatis**) **κτέ**, *so make up your minds as if, i.e. on the understanding that, I am going*, etc.; *cf.* **ὡς παρεχόντων** XIX.

§ 7. **οἵ τε . . . καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι**, *both those of that one himself and the rest.* Note the partitive apposition. **αὐτοῦ**, *cf.* **αὐτοῦ Κύρου** XXIX. § 21. **ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ὅτι οὐ φαίη**, *hearing this, that he refused.* What they heard was **Κλέαρχος οὔ φησι** (indic.). But Xenophon puts this in the indirect discourse; hence the optative. On the form, *cf.* **ε-ἶη** XXIX. § 21; on **οὔ φη-μι**, *cf.* **οὐκ ἔφασαν** XXXII. **πλείους, plūres**, contracted form, = **πλείονες**; irregular comparative of **πολύς**; *cf.* **πλέον** XXVI. § 11. Significations of **παρά** in this section?

§ 8. **τούτοις**: on the case, *cf.* **πράγμασιν** XXXII. **λάθρᾳ τῶν στρατιωτῶν**, *secretly* (= *without the knowledge*) *of the soldiers.* The genitive as in **εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων** XXIX. **θαρρεῖν**, *be of good cheer.* Note the infinitive for the imperative of the direct discourse. **ὡς καταστησομένων κτέ**, *as these matters being about to* (= *would*) *settle themselves into*

Digitized by Google

the necessity; would turn out all right. Cf. **κατέστη** VI. **δέον**: pres. part. neut., from **δέω**, *I need.* Note the substantive use, and *cf.* **ἐκπεπτωκότας** XIII. **μεταπέμπεσθαι κτέ**, *and he bade him send for* [*him, i. e.* Clearchus]; *but* **he** (**ipse**, Clearchus] *refused*, etc.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ἐπεί**, = *since*, or *when*.

2. **πείθομαι** is followed by the dative of the person persuaded.

3. A preposition with its noun may have the force of a condition.

4. **εἰ**, with the optative in the condition and **ἄν** in the conclusion, expresses a future condition *modestly*, or with less probability.

5. **ἐάν**, with the subjunctive in the condition and the future indicative in the conclusion, expresses a future condition confidently or *with probability*.

6. **ἄν** and the subjunctive are used in conditional relative sentences after primary tenses.

7. Adjectives of *want* are followed by the genitive.

8. A noun may be followed by words in partitive apposition with it.

9. The infinitive with **ἄν** may stand in the indirect discourse for the optative with **ἄν** in direct discourse.

10. The optative may stand for the indicative of the direct discourse after a secondary tense.

11. **πολύς** is compared: **πολύς, πλείων, πλεῖστος.**

12. **παρά** is followed by the genitive, dative, and accusative, with a difference of meaning.

13. Adverbs are followed by the genitive: *e. g.* **εἶσω, λάθρᾳ.**

14. The infinitive in the indirect discourse may represent the imperative.

15. The neuter participle, like the neuter adjective, is used substantively.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Perfect system of **λύω**	H. 317, 318.	G. 96.
2. Seven classes of verbs	H. 392–404.	G. 108, I.–VII.

Digitized by Google

3. Conjugation of *εἰμί*, subjunct., opt., inf., partic.	H. 478.	G. 127.
4. Declension of *ἐγώ*, *σύ*	H. 261.	G. 79.
5. Conditions . . .	H. 889, 890, 898, 900.	G. 220, II., 223, 224.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀλέξω,[1] *ward off, protect.*
2. ἀπορέω,[2] *am perplexed.*
3. ἡ γνώμη,[3] *opinion.*
4. ἐπ-αινέω, *I applaud.*
5. ἐπεί, *when, since.*
6. ἕπομαι, *I follow.*
7. ἔρημος,[4] *barren, deprived of.*
8. ὁ ἐχθρός, *enemy.*
9. θαρρέω, *am of good cheer.*
10. λάθρᾳ,[5] *secretly.*
11. λυπέω, *am distressed.*
12. οἶμαι, *I think.*
13. πῇ, *in some way;* ὅπῃ, *whatever way.*
14. πού, *somewhere;* ὅπου, *wherever.*
15. πολύς, *much, many;* πλείων, *more.*
16. τὰ σκευοφόρα,[6] *baggage.*
17. στρατοπεδεύω,[7] *I encamp.*
18. ὁ σύμμαχος,[8] *ally.*
19. τίμιος,[9] *honored.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: ἕψομαι, ἰόντος, ἐπῆνεσαν, καταστησομένων.

2. Decline: πατρίς, γνώμη, ἀκούσᾱς, βασιλεύς.

3. Translate: (*a*) Ὁ δὲ ἐνόμισε ἡμᾶς αὐτῷ φίλους εἶναι. (*b*) Τοὺς ἐμοῦ κρείττονας φιλήσω ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ πείσομαι ὑπ' αὐτῶν. (*c*) Οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχω ὡς Κύρου τῷ ἀδελφῷ ἐπιβουλεύσαντος. (*d*) Ὅπῃ ἂν ἔρχηται, αἰρήσομαι σὺν αὐτῷ εἶναί τε καὶ πάσχειν. (*e*) Χαλεπῶς ἐφέρομεν τῷ στρατηγῷ ὅτι ἡμᾶς οὐκ ἑκόντας προϊέναι ἐβιάζετο. (*f*) Καὶ δὴ ἐσιωπῶμεν ὁρῶντες τὸν ἄνδρα ἑστῶτα καὶ δακρύοντα. (*g*) Εἵλοντο δὲ μετ' αὐτῶν ὅ τι δέοι πάσχειν.

[1] *Alex*-ander, protector of men.
[2] From πόρος (Eng. *pore*). ἀ- is negative; hence ἀπορέω, = am without a way.
[3] *Cf.* γι-γνώ-σκω. [4] Eng. *hermit.* [5] From λαθ, in λανθάνω; *cf.* Lat. *lat*-eo.
[6] From σκεῦος, *baggage* (*cf.* παρασκευάζω), and φέρω, *I bear.*
[7] στρατόπεδον, a camp. [8] σύν + μάχ-ομαι (*cf.* μάχη XXV.)
[9] *Cf.* τιμή, ἀ-τῑμάζω.

Digitized by Google

4. Translate: (*a*) And first they waged war (aor. partic.) against the inhabitants (partic.) of the city, and punished them mightily. (*b*) He cannot deprive the soldiers of their pay. (*c*) I came to aid them if there might be any (**που**, enclitic) need. (*d*) He led (partic.) the army into the large and prosperous city, and went away to his own (**ἑαυτοῦ**) country. (*e*) Not being able to find the rest of the army, he was left behind, and then was cut down by the enemy. (*f*) It is said (that) those beautiful plains, which we see, bear much sesame and wheat. (*g*) Wherefore we remained a day in the city, but when on the following (day) messengers came, saying that the enemy were coming, we fled as quickly as possible.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Case with **πείθομαι**. 2. Future conditions. 3. Conditional relative sentences. 4. Construction with adjectives of *want*. 5. Partitive apposition. 6. **αὐτός**. 7. Optative in indirect discourse. 8. Declension of comparatives. 9. Comparison of **πολύς**. 10. **Παρά**. 11. Case with certain adverbs. 12. Imperative in indirect discourse. 13. The substantive use of the participle. 14. Classification of five verbs in the text of the lesson. 15. Principal parts of the verbs belonging to the first two classes (except **δέω**, **ἀκούω**). 16. Special Greek uses of the dative.

LESSON XXXV.

ANABASIS I. III. 9–11.

1. NOTES.

§ 9. **μετὰ ταῦτα**, *after these* [*things*], *after this*: *cf.* **μεθ' ὑμῶν** XXXIII. **προσ-ελθόντας**: note the force of the aor. partic., *those who came, i. e. had come.* **καὶ τῶν ἄλλων κτέ**, *and, of the others, the one wishing, i. e. any one who wished.* **τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου κτέ**, *the* [*interests*] *of Cyrus* (*clearly* (**δή**)) *evidently have thus* (*i. e. are in the same relation*) *to us as our* [*interests*] *to him.* **τὰ Κύρου** is here nearly equiv. to **Κῦρος**. Note,

Digitized by Google

μέν is used here without a following *δέ*: *cf.* *τὴν μὲν πρόφασιν* XXI.; *cf.* *εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν* XI. *ἡμεῖς*: *sc.* *ἔσμεν*, *we are.* *συν-επόμεθα αὐτῷ*: *cf.* *συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ* XIV. *ἐκεῖνος*: *sc.* *ἐστίν*, *is.*

§ 10. *ἀδικεῖσθαι*: *sc.* *ἑαυτόν* as the subject. *καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ*, *even though he sends after me.* Note this force of *καί*, *even*, with the gen. abs. *τὸ μὲν μέγιστον κτέ*, *most greatly, i.e. chiefly, indeed being ashamed* (*i.e. because I am ashamed*). *μέν* correlative with the following *ἔπειτα*. *μέγιστον*: *cf.* *μῑκρόν* XXXII. *αἰσχυνόμενος*: *cf.* *βουλομένους* XXXIII. § 4, N. *σύν οἰδα ἐμαυτῷ . . . αὐτόν*, *I am conscious to myself having deceived* (= *that I have deceived*) *him in all respects.* *Cf.* *αὐτῷ* § 9. Note the supplementary use of the participle; *cf.* *παρὼν ἐτύγχανε* III. *ἐ-ψευσ-μένος*: perf. partic. Note the reduplication before the double consonant; it is identical in form with the syllabic augment. On *σ* (for *δ*) before *μ*, *cf.* *ἡρπασ-μένα* XXXI. end. *δε-δι-ώς*: 2d perf. partic., from *δείδω*; *cf.* *λελοιπώς* XXIX. *ἐπιθῇ*: subjunct. 3d sing., from *ἐπι-τίθημι*. Tense here? Note the usage after verbs of *fearing*. *ὧν* (= *τούτων ἅ*), *on account of those* [*things*] *which* (= *wherein*) *he*, etc. Note the *genitive* of cause after the *legal* expression *δίκην ἐπιθῇ*; *cf.*, however, *πράγμασιν* XXXII. The *ἅ* included in *ὧν* would be obj. of *ἀδικεῖσθαι*, called a *cognate* acc.; so *πάντα* (*ἐψευσμένος*).

§ 11. *οὐχ ὥρᾱ εἶναι*: note the change in *οὐκ* before a rough breathing. *ὥρᾱ*, if subject of *εἶναι*, should be acc. (*ὥρᾱν*). *ἀμελεῖν*, *κτέ*, *to be careless of ourselves.* Note the genitive; *cf.* *ἐπεμελεῖτο* XI. *σκεπ-τέον εἶναι*, **videndum esse**, *we must see.* *ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν*, *how we shall remain most safely*: from *ἀσφαλέ-ως*, comp. *ἀσφαλέσ-τερον*. *μενοῦμεν*: fut. ind. of *μένω* for *μεν-έσω*. Note, *σ* does not appear in the future of liquid verbs, and that *ε-* contracts with the following vowel: *μενοῦμεν* for *μενέομεν*. *ἄπ-ι μεν*, **ab-i-mus**, *we* [*shall*] *go away.* *ἕξομεν*: from *ἔχω*. Note the rough breathing.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *μετά* with the genitive means *with*; with the accusative, *after*.

2. The aorist participle sometimes refers to an act previous to that of the main verb.

3. *μέν* is used occasionally without a following *δέ*.

Digitized by Google

4. ἔχω modified by an adverb = εἰμί with predicate adjective.

5. Compounds in συν- are followed by the dative.

6. καί is often used where a participle denotes concession, and may be translated *even, although.*

7. The circumstantial participle gives the circumstances under which an act occurs.

8. Σύνοιδα is followed by the supplementary participle.

9. Verbs beginning with a double consonant reduplicate with ε-, so that their reduplication has the same form as a syllabic augment.

10. A lingual mute (τ, δ, θ) becomes σ before μ.

11. δείδω forms the 2d perfect δέδια, δεδιώς.

12. Verbs of *fearing* in primary tenses are followed by μή with the subjunctive.

13. The genitive of *cause* follows verbs of legal or judicial action.

14. The neuter adjective or pronoun may be used as a cognate accusative.

15. Verbs of *caring* are followed by the genitive case.

16. The form of the verb in -τέον denotes *duty* or *necessity.*

17. The superlative of adverbs ends in -τατα.

18. The future of liquid verbs omits -σ, and shows contracted forms.

19. ἔχω has the rough breathing in the future.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Comparison of μέγας	H. 253.	G. 73, 4.
2. Declension of ἐμαυτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ, ἑαυτοῦ	H. 266.	G. 80.
3. λύω, 1st passive system . . .	H. 319.	G. 96.
4. Participle in -τέος	H. 475, 2.	G. 281, 1, 2.
5. Verbs denoting *action of senses or mind*	H. 742.	G. 171, 2.
6. Verbs of *judicial action* . . .	H. 745.	G. 173, 2.
7. Circumstantial participle . . .	H. 969, 979.	G. 277, 1–6.
8. Supplementary participle . . .	H. 982.	G. 279, 280.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀδικέω,[1] *I injure, wrong.*
2. αἰσχύνω, *I shame.*
3. ἀμελέω,[2] *I neglect.*
4. ἄνευ, *without.*
5. ἄπ-ειμι (-ιέναι), *I go away.*
6. αὐτοῦ, *here.*
7. ἀσφαλής, *safe.*
8. ἀσφαλέως, *safely.*
9. δείδω, *I fear.*
10. δῆλος, *evident.*
11. δῆλον ὅτι, *it is evident that, evidently.*
12. ἡ δίκη *justice.*
13. τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, *provisions.*
14. ἐπι-τίθημι, *I place upon, inflict.*
15. ἕως, *as long as.*
16. ἡμέτερος, **noster**, *our.*
17. ὁ ἰδιώτης,[3] *a private* (soldier).
18. καθεύδω, *I sleep.*
19. μετά (with acc.), *after.*
20. ὁ μισθοδότης,[4] *paymaster.*
21. τὸ ὄφελος,[5] *use, profit.*
22. προσ-έρχομαι (-ἦλθον), *I come to, join.*
23. σκέπτομαι,[6] *I examine.*
24. χρή, *it is necessary.*
25. ὥρᾱ, **hora**,[7] *season, time.*
26. ὥσπερ, *just as.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) *Συνάξω τε τοὺς ἐμαυτοῦ φίλους καὶ ἀποδώσω, αὐτοῖς ἐπιτήδεια εἰς τὴν τοῦ βίου τροφήν.* (*b*) *Σκεπτέον δ' ἐστὶν ὅπως τούτους τοὺς μεγάλους ποταμοὺς διαβαίνειν δύνωμαι.* (*c*) *Δίκην ἐπιθήσω ὧν νομίζω ὑπ' ἐχθρῶν ἠδικῆσθαι.* (*d*) *Ἐὰν δὴ ἐμαυτοῦ τινι κρείττονι εἰς χεῖρας ἔλθω, βασιλείᾱν οὐκ ἔτι δυνήσομαι ἔχειν.* (*e*) *Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο τέτταρες, ὧν δὴ δύο ἑλεξάτην ἃ ἐγιγνωσκέτην.* (*f*) *Δύο δὲ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκελεύστω ἦτην.*

2. Translate: (*a*) The boys are not willing to obey me. (*b*) I cannot indeed follow with my friends, but will suffer whatever may be necessary. (*c*) He thought we were (as good as) a fatherland to him. (*d*) Without you I do not think I should be honored wherever I might be. (*e*) Thus make up your minds, that I follow whithersoever you also may go.

[1] *δίκη, justice; ἀ-*, negative, as in *ἀ-τιμασθείς.*
[2] *ἀ-*, as in *ἀδικέω. Cf. ἐπι-μελέομαι.*
[3] *Cf.* Eng. *idiot.*
[4] From *μισθός* and the theme *δο* (*δίδωμι*).
[5] *Cf. ὠφελέω.*
[6] *Cf.* Eng. *scep*-tic.
[7] *Cf.* Eng. *hour.*

Digitized by Google

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. *Cause.* 2. Expressions of *duty, necessity.* 3. Uses of the genitive. 4. **θ' ἑαυτοῦ.** 5. Position of **ἑαυτοῦ.** 6. Tenses of the participle; time denoted by them. 7. **ᾔσχῡνα; αἰσχυνῶ.** 8. Declension of **ἰδιώτης.** 9. **τέ . . . τέ.** 10. Comparison of adverbs; of adjectives. 11. **ἕξω.** 12. Cognate accusative. 13. Lingual mutes before **μ.** 14. **οὕτως ἔχει.** 15. Construction with verbs of *fearing.* 16. Classification of twelve verbs in this Lesson. 17. **ἠδικῆσθαι**; also principal parts of **ἀδικέω.**

LESSON XXXVI.

ANABASIS I. III. 12–14.

1. NOTES.

§ 12. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ κτέ, *but the man* [= *Cyrus*] *is* (*sc.* **ἐστί**) *worthy of much* (*i. e. valuable*) *to whomsoever he may be a friend: cf.* **ὅπου ἂν ὦ** XXXIV. **δύναμιν**: modified by the following three adjectives. Note, **καὶ . . . καὶ . . . καὶ,** *both . . . and . . . and.* **καὶ γάρ,** **etenim,** *and* [*I say we see and know*] *for: cf.* XII. **πόρρω . . . αὐτοῦ,** *apart from him: cf.* **εἴσω τῶν ὁρέων** XXIX. **καθ-ῆ-σθαι**: (from **κάθ-η μαι,** dep.; perf., with no pres. form; *cf.* **οἶδα,** Lat. **memini.** **ὥρᾱ,** *sc.* **ἐστίν.**

§ 13. ἐκ τούτου ἀν-ίστα-ντο κτέ, *some from this* (= *thereupon*) *kept rising.* Tense and theme of the verb? **ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου**; *cf.* XXVIII. **§ 17.** **ἡ ἀπορίᾱ,** *the difficulty both to remain; i. e. as regarded remaining.* Note the dependence of the infinitive on the noun.

§ 14. ὡς τάχιστα, **quam celerrime**: *cf.* **ὡς μάλιστα** XI. **εἶπε . . . ἑλέσθαι,** *told them to choose: cf.* **εἱλόμην** XXXIII. **§ 5.** His direct words were, **ἑλώμεθα,** *let us choose,* or **ἕλεσθε,** *choose ye.* Note the change of the imperative to the infinitive in the indirect discourse; *cf.* **θαρρεῖν** XXXIV. **§ 8.** So also the following infinitives — **ἀγοράζεσθαι, συσκευάζεσθαι, αἰτεῖν** (twice), **συντάττεσθαι, πέμψαι** — depend upon **εἶπε.** **ἐλθόντας . . . αἰτεῖν,** *to go and ask: cf.* **διαβᾶς ἐξελαύνει** XXIV.,

Digitized by Google

καταβᾶς ἤλασε XXIX. § 23. Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα: *cf.* αἰτεῖ XVII. ὡς ἀπο-πλέ-οιεν, *in order that they might*, etc. On the form, *cf.* ἔχ-οιεν XI.; on the mode, *cf.* λάβοι XI., ἵνα ὀφελοίην XXXIII. Note, the main verb (εἶπε) is in a past tense. ὅστις . . . ἀπ-άξει, *who (whoever he is) will*, etc. Note the predicate position of φιλίᾱς, — not *through a friendly country*. διδῷ: subjunct., 3d sing. of δίδωμι. Tense? τὴν ταχίστην [ὁδόν]: *cf.* XXVIII. § 20. πέμψαι: *cf.* πέμψᾱς XXVIII.

προ-κατα-ληψομένους, [*men*] *who should take, with the purpose of taking:* fut. partic. (dep.) of λαμβάνω, theme λαβ, here strengthened to ληβ. On the fut. partic. denoting purpose, *cf.* ὡς ἀποκτενῶν VII.

ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι, *in order that they may anticipate.* Note the subjunctive for the optative, the secondary tense εἶπε having for the moment lost its force. On the form, *cf.* λύ-σωσι. Note the plural form, the speaker having others besides Cyrus in mind. ἀν-ηρπακ-ότες: *cf.* ἡρπασμένα XXXI. end; ἐκπεπτωκότας XIII.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adjectives signifying *worthy* are followed by the genitive.
2. Certain adverbs are followed by the genitive: πόρρω, εἴσω, πλήν.
3. ἧμαι is a defective perfect.
4. The infinitive may depend upon a noun, like the Latin gerund.
5. The imperative becomes infinitive in the indirect discourse.
6. ὡς, ὅτι, *that*, do not introduce the infinitive.
7. The first of two consecutive acts is often expressed by the aorist participle.
8. Verbs of *asking, begging*, are followed by two accusatives.
9. The future participle expresses purpose.
10. ὅπως μή expresses negative purpose.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. φιλέω, present system	H. 324.	G. 98.
2. Conjugation of εἰμί	H. 478.	G. 127.
3. Genitive with certain adjectives	H. 753, *c, f.*	G. 180, 1.
4. Conditional sentences	H. 889–891.	G. 220, I., II.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀγοράζω, *buy.*
2. ἀν ἵστημι, *raise up;* mid. *stand up, rise.*
3. ἄξιος, *worth, worthy.*
4. ἀπο-πλέω, *sail away.*
5. ἡ ἀπορία,[1] *perplexity.*
6. ἄριστος,[2] *best.*
7. ἐγ-κέλευστος,[3] *instructed.*
8. ἐπίσταμαι, *know.*
9. ὁ ἡγεμών, *leader.*
10. κάθ-ημαι, *sit down, am encamped.*
11. οἷος, **qualis**, *what, of what*
12. ὁμοίως, *equally, alike.* [*sort.*
13. πόρρω, *far from, away from.*
14. προ-κατα-λαμβάνω, *seize in advance.*
15. προσ-ποιέομαι, *pretend.*
16. σπεύδω, *hasten.*
17. συ-σκευάζομαι, *pack up.*
18. φθάνω, *anticipate.*
19. φίλιος,[4] *friendly.*
20. χαλεπός, *hard, violent.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Decline: φίλιος, ἄξιος, ὥρᾱ, δύναμις, οὗτος, ἡγεμών; present system of δοκέω.

2. Translate: (*a*) Αὕτη ἡ ἱππικὴ δύναμις οὐ πολλοῦ ἀξίᾱ ἐστίν. (*b*) Πάντες ἐπίστασθε ὅτι οἷς ἂν φίλιος ᾖ ἰσχυρῶς τετίμηκε. (*c*) Ὥρᾱ ἐστὶν ταῦτα γιγνώσκειν ἃ ἄριστά ἐστιν. (*d*) Εἷς δὲ δὴ ἀνίσταται ὡς λέξων ὅτι ἡ τοῦ ἄγοντος ἀπορίᾱ μεγάλη ἐστίν (*e*) Ἐντεῦθεν οὖν ἐπειρᾶτο ἐξελαύνειν διὰ πολεμίᾱς τῆς χώρᾱς. (*f*) Δεδιότες μὴ αὐτοὺς λαβὼν δίκην ἐπιθείη ἀντὶ τούτων ἃ ἠδικήθη, ἀπέφευγον. (*g*) Αὐτὸν δὲ ἐπῄνουν, ὅτι ἔλεγεν ἃ ἔγνω ἄριστα εἶναι.

3. Translate: (*a*) After this he collected his soldiers and crossed the river. (*b*) If it is necessary, I will follow and suffer with you. (*c*) I will obey the king, wherever he may lead me. (*d*) O fellow-generals, our commander is no longer (οὐκέτι) our paymaster if we do not obey him. (*e*) The soldiers crossed the river without the knowledge of the generals. (*f*) It seems to me that we must see what opinion our soldiers have. (*g*) They were pretending to be willing to follow wherever he might go.

[1] *Cf.* ἀπορῶν (= ἀπορέων) XXXIV.
[2] *Cf.* Eng. *aristo*-cracy, *best* rule.
[3] From ἐν + κελεύω, I order.
[4] *Cf.* φιλέω, φιλίᾱ.

Digitized by Google

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Negative purpose. 2. **ὡς, ὅτι,** in introducing the indirect discourse. 3. The imperative in the indirect discourse. 4. Construction with **αἰτέω, αἱρέω.** 5. Case following **ἐξ, ἐν, ἄνευ, εἰς, ἀπό, ἀντί, σύν.** 6. Comparison. 7. General conditions. 8. Contraction of **ε-** with following vowels. 9. Use of the future participle. 10. Future conditions. 11. Subjunctives and optatives in the Lesson. 12. Genitive and dative singular endings of 1st declension. 13. Middle and passive deponents. 14. Mutes before **σ**; **σ** before other consonants.

LESSON XXXVII.

ANABASIS I. III. 15–17.

1. NOTES.

§ **15.** **ὡς μεν στρατηγήσοντα κτέ,** *let no one of you speak on the supposition that I am (as I being) about to general (i. e. to hold) this generalship, i. e. to hold this office, to lead this army.* Note **μηδείς** = *nobody*, with the imperative. **δι' ἃ . . . ποιητέον** [**ἐστίν**], *on account of which this is not to be done by me, i. e. why I must not do this. Cf.* **διὰ δὲ τοῦτο** XXV. § **8.** Note the *dative* of the agent with the verbal adjective; but *cf.* **ὑφ' ἡμῶν** XXXV. § **10**; also the Latin usage with the participle in **-dus.** *Cf.* **σκεπτέον** XXXV. § **11.** **ὡς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ κτέ,** [*but let each say* or *think, sc.* **ἀλλὰ ἕκαστος λεγέτω,** from the preceding **μηδεὶς λεγέτω**] *that I will obey*, etc. **ὡς,** as in **ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς** XXXIII. **πεί-σο-μαι,** for **πείθσο-μαι**: from **πείθω**; *cf.* **φυγαδς, φυγάς.** **ᾗ δυνατὸν** [**ἐστιν**] **μάλιστα**: *cf.* **ᾗ ἐδύνατο** XXIII. **ἵνα εἰδ-ῆτε κτέ,** *that you may know*, etc.: subjunct., from **οἶδα.** On the mode, *cf.* **ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι** XXXVI. **ὅς τις καὶ ἄλλος,** *as much as possible as also any one else of men* (*i. e.* as well as or better than any other man).

§ **16.** **τοῦ κελεύοντος,** *of him who urged that they ask*, etc. **ὥσπερ κτέ,** *as if Cyrus were on the home trip*: **ὡς Πισιδῶν** XIX. **ὡς . . . εἴη,** *that it was foolish*: *cf.* **ὡς ἐπιβουλεύ οι** VI.; **εἴη** XXXVI. § **13**;

Digitized by Google

XXIX. § **21.** **τί κωλύει, quid obstat.** Note that the interrogative does not change its acute to a grave (**τὶ**). **ἡμῖν**, *for us*, to our disadvantage.

§ **17.** **ὀκν-οίην ἄν**, *I should be reluctant.* Note, the reluctance is not stated as a fact ("*I am reluctant*"), but as a possibility, *potentially*. On the form, *cf.* **ὀφελ-οίην**. Compare this potential optative with the conclusion of future conditions with less probability. **ἃ δοίη**, *which he might give.* Theme? Note, **ἄν** is not used in conditional relative sentences where the verb is optative. **μὴ . . . καταδύ-σῃ κτέ**, *lest he sink us* **with** *the . . . themselves.* Note, the dative denotes accompaniment even without **σύν**: so **ἡγεμόνι ἕπεσθαι**; but *cf.* **ἕψο-μαι** XXXIV. **ᾧ δοίη**, for **ὃν δοίη**; *cf.* **τῶν πόλεων ὧν** XV. **ὅθεν . . . ἐξ-ελθεῖν**, [*to a place*] *whence it will not be* [*possible*] *to*, etc. **ἄκοντος . . . Κύρου**, **Cyro nolente**: connect with the intervening **ἀπ-ιών**. **λαθ-εῖν . . . ἀπ-ελθών**, *to escape him* (*in*) *going away*: **λαθ**, theme of what verb?

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The participle modified by **ὡς** indicates a merely supposed or possible fact, and does not necessarily convey the idea of reality.

2. **μηδείς**, = *nobody*, with the imperative.

3. **διά**, with the genitive, = *through*; with the accusative, = *on account of.*

4. With the verbal adjective in **-τέος**, the dative expresses the *agent.*

5. **ὡς** serves the same purpose as **ὅτι** in introducing the indirect discourse.

6. The interrogative **τίς** retains its acute accent in connected discourse.

7. The Greek dative, like the Latin dative, expresses *advantage* or *disadvantage.*

8. A fact is stated doubtfully or potentially by the optative with **ἄν**.

9. The potential optative resembles in form the conclusion of future conditions *with less probability.*

10. Occasionally the relative pronoun agrees in *case* with its antecedent.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Declension of *εὐγενής* .	H. 230.	G. 66 (*ἀληθής*).
2.	Declension of *τίς* (interrogative and relative)	H. 277 and *a*.	G. 84 and N. 2.
3.	*τελέω, καλέω, λύω, αἰνέω*	H. 503, I. 14;	504, 3–5.[1]
4.	Verbal adjectives in *-τέος*	H. 988, 991.	G. 281, I. and note.
5.	Potential optative . .	H. 872.	G. 226, 2 *b*.
6.	Genitive absolute. . .	H. 970, 971.	G. 183, 278, 1.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. *ἄκων*,[2] *unwilling*.
2. *ἄρχω, I rule, begin.*
3. *δυνατός*,[3] *possible, able.*
4. *δύω, enter, cause to enter.*
5. *κατα-δύω, sink.*
6. *ἐμ-βαίνω*,[4] *go in, embark.*
7. *ἐν-οράω, see into, discover.*
8. *εὐήθης, simple, foolish.*
9. *ἡ εὐήθεια, simplicity, folly.*
10. *λῡμαίνω, spoil, ruin.*
11. *μηδείς, οὐδείς, nobody.*
12. *ὅθεν, whence.*
13. *ὀκνέω, hesitate.*
14. *ἡ πρᾶξις*,[5] *business.*
15. *στρατηγέω, am general, command.*
16. *ἡ στρατηγία, military plan.*
17. *φοβέω*,[6] *frighten;* pass., *I am frightened, fear.*
18. *ἡ φλυαρίᾱ, nonsense.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Analyze: *στρατηγήσοντα, ἕλησθε, ἐπιδεικνύς, καταδύσῃ.* Decline *πρᾶξις.*

2. Translate: (*a*) *Ὡς δὴ φοβουμένου με τοῦτον μηδεὶς αὐτῶν λεγέτω.* (*b*) *Ὁρῶ γὰρ πολλὰ ὄρη δι' ὧν ἡμῖν ὁδοὶ ποιητέαι εἰσίν.* (*c*) *Εὐηθέστατόν ἐστι τὴν τοῦ ἡγεμόνος πρᾶξιν λῡμαίνειν.* (*d*) *Πείσομαι τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἕλησθε.* (*e*) *Ἐπείθοντο ὃν ὑμεῖς ἕλοισθε.* (*f*) *Ἡρώτων δὴ τί κωλύσειν τὰ ὄρη αὐτοῖς προκαταληφθῆναι, εἰ τούτοις τοῖς ἡγεμόσι πιστεύοιεν, οἷς βασιλεὺς δοίη.*

[1] The teacher will be obliged to pick out these verbs, if he is using Goodwin's Grammar, from the Catalogue of Verbs, pp. 329 *ff.*

[2] From *ἀ* = *not* (called *α-* privative), and *ἑκών, willing.*

[3] *Cf. δύναμαι, δύναμις.*

[4] *ἐμ* for *ἐν*, *cf. συμ-πράττω* XIV., Vocabulary.

[5] *Cf. πράττω.*

[6] *Cf.* Eng. hydro-*phobia.*

Digitized by Google

3. Translate: (*a*) The army will follow wherever the guides may lead. (*b*) He said that (εἶπε ὅτι) the army would follow wherever the guides might lead. (*c*) I should hesitate to follow where the foolish go in (ἦλθον with prefix εἰς). (*d*) Going away without his permission, they would desire to elude him in going away. (*e*) But that would be impossible. (*f*) The barbarians began to rush with a shout, as was their custom. (*g*) They did not wait at the gates, for great fear had seized them. (*h*) There are many large and strong bridges over the full rivers which flow through the well-watered gardens of the king's wife.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The long and short forms, μοῦ, ἐμοῦ, etc, of ἐγώ. 2. Lingual mutes before lingual mutes; before σ. 3. Labial mutes before μ. 4. Uses of the participle. 5. Conditional sentences. 6. Conditional relative sentences. 7. General conditions. 8. Agreement of the relative. 9. Some uses of ἄν. 10. Parts of αἰτέω, πιστεύω, οἰκνέω. 11. Classification of six additional verbs in this Lesson. 12. Declension of liquid stems. 13. Conjugation of the present system of οἰκνέω. 14. Relative clauses introduced by πρίν (*until*).

LESSON XXXVIII.

ANABASIS I. III. 18–21.

1. NOTES.

§ **18.** οἵ-τινες ἐπιτήδειοι [εἰσίν], *whoever* (*i. e. such persons as*) *are suitable*: *cf.* ὅστις ἀπάξει XXXVI. **14.** ἐρωτᾶν: *cf.* δαπανᾶν XV. τί . . . ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι, *what use he wishes to make of us*: *cf.* τί κωλύει XXXVII.; *cf.* φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι XXXIII. χρῆσθαι, for χρά-εσθαι: note, *a-ε* here contracts to η instead of ᾱ **11.** ἐὰν μέν: note the following ἐὰν δέ. παραπλησίᾳ . . . ξένοις, *like to what, i. e. the business* [*in which*]. ἕπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς, *that we too follow*: dependent upon δοκεῖ. κακίους: *cf.* πλείους XXXIV. τῶν . . . συνανα-βάντων, *those who went up with*. On the case, *cf.* Κύρου XXXI. **25.**

Digitized by Google

§ **19.** Note the form of conditional statement: **δοκεῖ** with its dependent infinitive (referring to a future line of action) takes the place of the future indicative in the conclusion.[1] **ἀξιοῦν**, *sc.* **δοκεῖ**: *cf.* **ἠξίου** XIV. **πείσαντα . . . πεισθέντα**: from **πείθω**. Note the euphonic changes. **πρὸς φιλίαν ἀφ-ιέ-ναι**, *to-let-go in a friendly manner* (lit. with a view to friendship). **ἀφ-ίη-μι**, *I release*, theme **ἑ**, not to be confused with **εἶμι**, **εἰμί**. **οὕτω ἑπόμενοι . . . ἂν ἑποίμεθα**, *if we should thus follow . . . we should follow.* Note the form of conditional statement; *cf.* **ἔρημος ὤν** XXXIV. **6.** **ἂν αγγε ῖ λ-αι**: *cf.* **παρ ήγγε ι λ-ε** XII.

§ **20.** **ἠρώτων**: from **ἐρωτά-ω**. On the two accusatives, *cf.* **αἰτεῖ** XVII., **ἀφ αιρεῖσθαι** XXXIII. **4.** **τὰ δόξαντα**: on the tense, *cf.* **συν-ανα-βάντων**, § **18.** **δοκέ-ω**: aor. **ἔδοξε**, not **ἐδόκησα**. **κἂν**: contracted from **καὶ ἄν** (= **ἐάν**). **ἐπι θε ῖ-ναι**: on the long form of the theme vowel in the 2d aorist of **-μι** verbs before **-ναι**, *cf.* **ἀποστ ῆ ναι** XIII., **δοῦναι** XXVI. **12.** **ἦν** (= **ἐάν**, *cf.* **ἦν** VIII.): note the form of conditional statement.

§ **21.** **ὑπ-ισχνεῖται**: *cf.* **ὑπο-σχόμενος** XXII. **τοῦ μην-ός**, *of the month*,[2] *each month.* *Cf.* this with the use of the accusative, *throughout the month.* **τῷ στρατιώτῃ**, *to each soldier.*

Compare the *indirect discourses* in this section.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ὅστις** is used with reference to persons *indefinite* in the mind of the writer or speaker.

2. **ά-ειν** (infinitive) contracts to **ᾶν**.

3. **α-ε** contracts to **η** in **χράομαι**.

4. Adjectives of *likeness*, as in Latin, are followed by the dative.

5. The aorist participle occasionally has the use of the aorist indicative in denoting an act as brought to pass in *some* past time.

6. The genitive follows adjectives of the comparative degree.

7. Conditions and conclusions are very frequently expressed in mixed forms.

8. **ἵημι**, *I send, let*, has the theme **ἑ**.

[1] Thus, *it seems best that we demand*, is equivalent to saying, *we shall wisely demand*, or *let us demand.*

[2] So in English, "he goes to church *of a* Sunday," — which has become the less idiomatic, — "*on* Sunday," *each* Sunday."

Digitized by Google

9. The 1st aorist of liquid verbs is formed without the suffix **-σα** ; but, instead, the theme vowel is strengthened.

10. Verbs of *asking* are followed by one accusative of the *person* and another accusative of the *thing*.

11. **-μι** verbs strengthen the final vowel of the theme in the 2d aorist before the ending **-ναι**.

12. The genitive denotes time in such expressions as *by* day, *per* month, *each* year.

13. The indirect discourse has the main verb in the infinitive ; or in a finite mode, introduced by **ὡς** or **ὅτι**.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Crasis	H. 76.	G. 11.
2. Conjugation of present system of **δίδωμι**	H. 330, 414.	G. 121, 123.
3. Conjugation of **εἶμι**	H. 477.	G. 127, II.
4. Adjectives of *likeness*	H. 773.	G. 186.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀν-αγγέλλω**,[1] *I report, bring back word.*
2. **ἀπ-έχω**, *hold off, am distant.*
3. **ἀπο-κρῑ́νομαι**, *I reply.*
4. **ἀφ ἵημι**, *send away, dismiss.*
5. **δεῦρο**, *hither.*
6. **δώδεκα**,[2] *twelve.*
7. **ἐκεῖ**,[3] *there.*
8. **ἐπικίνδῡνος**,[4] *dangerous.*
9. **ἐπίπονος**, *laborious.*
10. **ἐπιτήδειος**, *suitable.*
11. **ἐρωτάω**, *I ask.*
12. **ἡμι-όλιος**,[5] *one and a half.*
13. **κακός**, *bad.*
14. **κακίων**, *worse.*
15. **ὅμως**, *nevertheless.*
16. **ὅστις**, *whoever;* **ὅτι**, *whatever.*
17. **παραπλήσιος**, *like.*
18. **πρόθῡμος**, *eager; warm friend.*
19. **προσ-αιτέω**, *ask besides.*
20. **ἡ ὑποψίᾱ**[6] *suspicion.*
21. **φαίνω**,[7] *I show.*
22. **φαίνομαι**, *show myself, appear.*
23. **φανερός**,[8] *evident.*
24. **χρῄζω**, *I desire.*

[1] *Cf.* **παρ-αγγέλλω** XII.
[2] From **δύο** (two) + **δέκα** (ten), as *twelve* has *two* as one of its elements.
[3] So **ἐκεῖνος**, he yonder; *cf.* Ger. *jen-er.* [4] *Cf.* **κινδῡνεύω**.
[5] *Cf.* **ἡμι-** = ½, Lat. **semi**; **ὅλιος**, from **ὅλος**, the entire. [6] *Cf.* **ὑποπτεύω**.
[7] *Cf.* Eng. *pheno*-menon. [8] From **φαν**, the theme of **φαίνω**.

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ἐὰν ἡ πρᾶξις μείζων ᾖ τῆς πρόσθεν οὐχ ἕψονται. (*b*) Στρατηγοί, οἵτινες ἄριστοι ἦσαν, προσῆκον εἰς τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως σκηνήν. (*c*) Καὶ ἐμοὶ ἔδοξε ἡμᾶς πλείους εἶναι τῶν οἴκαδε πρόσθεν ἀπελθόντων. (*d*) Κἂν δή μοι ἐπιβουλεύσῃ, χρῄζω δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ. (*e*) Αὕτη ἡ πόλις τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπέχει χίλιους σταδίους.

2. Translate: (*a*) I come in order that you may know that I am a friend to you. (*b*) If he will give us a guide, I will follow him as a zealous friend. (*c*) There were many suspicions that the commander was marching against the king. (*d*) Cyrus was evidently wishing to become king. (*e*) They called (partic.) an assembly, and chose men to tell the king those things which seemed best to the army. (*f*) They indeed had suspicions that, if he had been there, the mercenaries would have punished him.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. **ἐπὶ τὴν πόλιν, πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, εἰς τὴν πόλιν.** 2. Uses of the aorist participle. 3. Declension of comparatives in **-ων**. 4. Case after comparatives. 5. Potential optatives. 6. Case after **χράομαι**. 7. Words for *if*. 8. **τοῖς στρατιώταις ὑποψίᾱ ἦν**. 9. Principal parts of **δίδωμι**, **δοκέω**, **πείθω**, **λείπω**, **παύω**, **κελεύω**, **ἀκούω**. 10. Declension of **ἀσφαλής**. 11. Classification of six verbs in the Lesson. 12. Enclitic forms of the personal pronouns. 13. **ἀπεκρίναντο**; quantity of **ι**; **ὅτι ἀκούοι**; the mode. 14. Accent and enclitics.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXIX. — REVIEW.

[In preparing this Review Lesson, follow closely the directions given with Lesson X.]

1. **TEXT**: ANABASIS I. II. 25, through Chap. III.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Crasis**: H. 76; G. 11.

2. **Declension**: (*a*) *εὐγενής*, H. 230; G. 66 (*ἀληθής*). (*b*) *διδούς*, H. 242; G. 68 (*δεικνύς*). (*c*) *πολύς*, H. 247; G. 70. (*d*) *μέγας* (comparison), H. 253; G. 73, 1, 4. (*e*) *ἐγώ, σύ*, H. 261; G. 79. (*f*) *ἐμαυτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ, ἑαυτοῦ*, H. 266; G. 80. (*g*) *τίς, τὶς*, H. 277 and *a*; G. 84.

3. **The Verb**: (*a*) *λύω*, present, future, 1st aorist, perfect, and 1st passive systems, H. 314–319; G. 96. (*b*) *φιλέω*, present system, H. 324; G. 98. (*c*) *δίδωμι*, present system, H. 330, 414; G. 121, 123. (*d*) Verbal endings, H. 375, 376, 379; G. 112, 114, 115. (*e*) Accent of the infinitive and participle, H. 389; G. 26, (1), (2), (3). (*f*) Classes of verbs, H. 392–404; G. 108, I.–VII. (*g*) Reduplication of verbs beginning with a vowel, H. 367; G. 101, 3. (*h*) Participles in *-τέος*, H. 475, 2; G. 281, 1, 2. (*i*) *εἶμι*, H. 477; G. 127, II. (*j*) *εἰμί*, H. 478; G. 127, I. (*k*) Principal parts of *πάσχω, αἱρέω*, H. 533, 11, 539, 1; G. pp. 330, 351.

4. **Syntax**: (*a*) Position of *ἑαυτοῦ*, H. 673, *b*; G. 142, 4, N. 3. (*b*) *τὰ ἄλλα*, H. 704; G. 142, 2, N. 3. (*c*) Verbs of *depriving*, H. 724; G. 164: (*d*) of *action* of the *senses* or *mind*, H. 742; G. 171, 2: (*e*) of *judicial action*, H. 745; G. 173, 2. (*f*) Genitive with certain adjectives, H. 753, *c, f*; G. 180, 1. (*g*) Case with adjectives of *likeness*, H. 773; G. 186. (*h*) Attempted action, H. 832; G. 200, N. 2. (*i*) Potential optative, H. 872; G. 226, 2 *b*. (*j*) Purpose clauses, H. 881; G. 216, 1, 3. (*k*) Conditions, H. 889–891, 898, 900; G. 220, I., II., 223, 224. (*l*) Participles, circumstantial, H. 968, 969; G. 275, 277, 1–6. (*m*) Genitive absolute, H. 970, 971; G. 278, 1. (*n*) Participles, supplementary, H. 980–982; G. 279, 280. (*o*) Verbal adjectives in *-τέος* (syntax), H. 988, 991; G. 281.

Digitized by Google

3. VOCABULARY.

VERBS.

1. ἀγοράζω.
2. ἀδικέω.
3. αἱρέω, αἱρέομαι.
4. αἰσχύνω.
5. ἀλέξω.
6. ἀμελέω.
7. ἀν-αγγέλλω.
8. ἀν-ίστημι.
9. ἄπ-ειμι.
10. ἀπ-έχω.
11. ἀπο-κρίνομαι.
12. ἀπ-όλλῡμι.
13. ἀπο-πλέω.
14. ἀπορέω.
15. ἄρχω.
16. ἀφ-αιρέω.
17. ἀφ-ίημι.
18. βιάζομαι.
19. γιγνώσκω.
20. δακρύω.
21. δαπανάω.
22. δείδω.
23. δέω.
24. δύω.
25. ἐθέλω.
26. εἰσ-ελαύνω.
27. ἐκ-φεύγω.
28. ἐμ-βαίνω.
29. ἐν-οράω.
30. ἐν-τυγχάνω.
31. ἐξ-ελαύνω.
32. ἐπ-αινέω.
33. ἐπίσταμαι.
34. ἐρῶ (φημί).
35. ἐρωτάω.
36. ἐπι-τίθημι.
37. ἕπομαι.
38. εὑρίσκω.
39. θαρρέω.
40. καθεύδω.
41. καθ-ηδυπαθέω.
42. κάθ-ημαι.
43. κατα δύω.
44. κατα-πετρόω.
45. κόπτω, κατα-κόπτω.
46. λῡμαίνω.
47. λυπέω.
48. μισθόω.
49. οἶδα.
50. οἶμαι.
51. ὀκνέω.
52. ὁράω.
53. ὀργίζω.
54. πάσχω.
55. πλανάομαι.
56. προ-δίδωμι.
57. προσ-αιτέω.
58. προσ-έρχομαι.
59. προσ-ποιέω.
60. σιωπάω.
61. σκέπτομαι.
62. σπεύδω.
63. στρατηγέω.
64. στρατοπεδεύω.
65. συν-άγω.
66. συ-σκευάζομαι.
67. τῑμάω.
68. τῑμωρέω.
69. ὑπο-λείπω.
70. φαίνω, φαίνομαι.
71. φέρω.
72. φημί.
73. φθάνω.
74. φοβέω.
75. χράομαι.
76. χρή.
77. χρῄζω.
78. ψεύδω.

NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἀκινάκης.
2. ἡ ἀνάγκη
3. τὸ ἀνδράποδον.
4. ἡ ἀπορίᾱ.
5. ἡ γνώμη.
6. ἡ δίκη.
7. τὸ δῶρον.
8. ἡ ἐκκλησίᾱ.
9. τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
10. ἡ εὐήθεια.
11. ὁ ἐχθρός.
12. ὁ ἡγεμών.
13. ὁ ἰδιώτης.
14. ὁ λόχος.
15. ὁ μισθοδότης.
16. ὁ ὄλεθρος.
17. τὸ ὄφελος.
18. ἡ πατρίς.
19. ἡ πίστις.
20. ἡ πρᾶξις.
21. τὰ σκευοφόρα.
22. ἡ στολή.
23. ἡ στρατηγίᾱ.
24. ὁ στρεπτός.
25. ὁ σύμμαχος.
26. ἡ ὑπερβολή.
27. τὸ ὑποζύγιον.
28. ἡ ὑποψίᾱ.
29. ἡ φλυαρίᾱ.
30. ἡ χείρ.
31. ὁ χρόνος.
32. τὸ ψέλιον.
33. ἡ ὥρᾱ.

Digitized by Google

ADVERBS.

1. αὐτοῦ.
2. ἀσφαλῶς.
3. δεῦρο.
4. δῆλον ὅτι.
5. ἐκεῖ.
6. ἔπειτα.
7. εὖ.
8. λάθρᾳ.
9. ὅθεν.
10. ὁμοίως.
11. ὅμως.
12. οὔποτε.
13. πῇ, ὅπῃ.
14. πόρρω.
15. πού, ὅπου.
16. πρόσω.
17. πώ.
18. τότε.
19. ὕστερον.
20. χαλεπῶς.
21. ὥσπερ.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄκων.
2. ἄξιος.
3. ἄριστος.
4. ἀσφαλής.
5. δῆλος.
6. δίκαιος.
7. δυνατός.
8. ἐγκέλευστος.
9. ἐπικίνδῡνος.
10. ἐπίπονος.
11. ἐπιτήδειος.
12. ἔρημος.
13. εὐήθης.
14. ἡμέτερος.
15. ἡμιόλιος.
16. κακός, κακίων.
17. κρείττων.
18. μῑκρός.
19. οἷος.
20. παραπλήσιος.
21. πολύς, πλείων.
22. πρόθῡμος.
23. πρότερος.
24. πρῶτος.
25. τιμιος.
26. φανερός.
27. φίλιος.
28. χαλεπός.
29. χρῡσυχάλῑνος.

PRONOUNS.

1. μηδείς, οὐδείς.
2. ὅστις.
3. σύ, ὑμεῖς.

PREPOSITIONS.

1. ἄνευ.
2. ἀντί.
3. μετά.
4. ὑπέρ.

CONJUNCTIONS.

ἕως, ἵνα.

4. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Οὐκ ἐδυνάμεθα πολλοὺς δικαίους ἐν τῇ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν πόλει εὑρίσκειν. (*b*) Ἡ δὴ ἀπορία τῶν συμμάχων δῆλη ἂν εἴη ἄνευ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ὧν παρείχομεν. (*c*) Ἐγκέλευστος ἦν ὁ ἰδιώτης ἀποκρίνασθαι ὅτι μῑκρὸς εἴη ἂν ὁ μισθός. (*d*) Οἱ μὲν ἡγεμόνες πρότεροι ἀφῑκνοῦντο τοῦ στρατεύματος. (*e*) Ὁ χρόνος λῡμαίνει πάντα τὰ καλά.

2. Translate: (*a*) And the passage of the mountains was hard for the beasts of burden. (*b*) This necklace is in truth small, but I have many others which are larger. (*c*) If ye go away, I will follow with you; but I know this well, that it will not be possible to protect ourselves from our enemies. (*d*) My fatherland is dearer to me, methinks, than life itself and much honor. (*e*) It was the opinion of all the company that the slaves should be honored in return for what they had done.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XL.

ANABASIS I. IV. 1–4.

1. NOTES.

§ 1. *τρία*, Lat. **tria**, from *τρεῖς*, **tres**.

§ 2. *νῆ-ες*: from *ναῦ-ς*. **navis**. Number and case? *ναύ-αρχος*, *ship-commander*. Composition of this word? *ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐταῖς* **κτέ**, *commanded them*, lit. *for them*. On the genitive with verbs of commanding, *cf.* *ἄρχειν αὐτῶν* XIV. **ναῦς** *ἑτέρᾱς*, *other ships*; acc. plur. Note the form *ναῦς*. *συνεπολέμει* **κτέ**, *and* [*with which*] *he was conducting the war together with Cyrus against him* [*Tissaphernes*].

§ 3. *ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν*, *upon the ships*: from *ναῦς*. Case and number? *ὧν ἐστρατήγει*, *which he commanded*: *cf.* *ἡγεῖτο*, N. § 2. *οἱ παρὰ Ἀβροκόμᾱ* **κτέ**, *the mercenaries beside* (lit. *from beside*) *Abrocomas* (gen. sing.) *revolted and*, etc. Note the gen. sing. form *Ἀβροκόμ-ᾱ* for **-ου**. This genitive takes the place of the dative through the influence of the verb of separation, *ἀπο-στάντες*: *cf.* *οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς* XXVIII.

§ 4. *ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα*, *but these* [*the gates*] *were two walls*: *ταῦτα* for *αὗται*, consequently the plur. *ἦσαν*. *τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν . . . τὸ δὲ ἔξω*, *the within* (*inner*) *wall, the one towards Cilicia, . . . the without* (*outer*), etc. Of course, the first wall was to the west and northwest of the second. *διὰ μέσου τούτων*: note the substantive use of *μέσος*. *τὸ μέσον ἦσαν στάδιοι*: note the influence of the predicate upon the number of the verb; Eng., *the entire distance between* **was**. *οὐκ ἦν* [= *δύνατον ἦν*], *was not possible*; *cf.* *οὐκ ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν* XXXVII. *ἐφ-εστή-κεσαν*, *stood upon*; *were set at*; *built*: from *ἐφ-ίστημι*; *cf.* *ἀφ-εστήκεσαν* XII., — here pluperf., the meaning passing from the trans. (**sisto**) to the intrans. (**sto, stare**). Note that stems beginning with two consonants do not reduplicate regularly.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adverbs, genitives, appositives, prepositional phrases, may occupy the attributive position.

2. *ναῦς*, *στάδιον* (plur. *στάδιοι*), are irregularly declined.

Digitized by Google

3. πάρ-ειμι is followed by the dative (of persons), or εἰς with the accusative (of places).

4. Verbs of *commanding* are followed by the genitive, but ἡγέομαι is followed by the dative also.

5. Prepositional constructions dependent upon a noun are readily affected and changed by a verb in the sentence.

6. Some proper nouns in -ᾱς (1st declension) have a gen. sing. in -ᾱ, for -ου.

7. The verb εἰμί may agree in number with its predicate; sometimes it is plural when the subject is a neuter plural pronoun and refers to masculine or feminine plural nouns.

8. μέσος (in the neuter) may be used substantively.

9. ἔστι, ἦν, and ἔσται sometimes have the meaning of *it is* (etc.) *possible*.

10. Verbs beginning with two consonants do not take the regular reduplication.

11. Some of the forms of ἵστημι (**sisto**) are intransitive; *e. g.* 2d aorist ἔστην, perfect, pluperfect, ἑστήκειν.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of ναῦς	H. 206, 207.	G. 54.
2. Declension of εἷς, δύο, τρεῖς .	H. 290.	G. 77.
3. Gender of nouns	H. 125, *a*, *b*, *c*.	G. 33, 2, notes.
4. ἵστημι (present system) . .	H. 331, 414, 415, 534. 5.	G. 123, 121, 1, 2 (*d*).

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἡ βίᾱ,[1] *force, violence.*
2. ἔξω,[2] *without, outer.*
3. ἔσωθεν,[2] *within, inner.*
4. ἕτερος,[3] *other.*
5. ἐφ-ίστημι, *I place upon, build at.*
6. ἡγέομαι, *I lead.*
7. ἠλί-βατος, *steep, inaccessible.*
8. καθ-ήκω, *come down, extend down (to).*
9. μετά-πεμπτος, *sent after.*
10. ὁ μισθο-φόρος,[4] *paybearer, mercenary.*

[1] *Cf.* ἐβιάζετο XXXII.
[2] *Cf.* ἐκ, *from*; εἰς, *to.*
[3] *Cf.* Eng. *hetero*-dox.
[4] μισθός, *pay*; φέρω, *I carry.*

Digitized by Google

11. ἡ ναῦς, *ship.*
12. ὁ ναύ-αρχος, *admiral, captain.*
13. τὸ ὄνομα,[1] *name.*
14. ὁρμέω, *lie at anchor.*
15. παρ-έρχομαι, *come* or *go by.*
16. παρ-ῆλθον, *came* or *went by.*
17. ἡ πάρ-οδος, *way past, pass.*
18. ἡ πέτρᾱ,[2] *rock.*
19. ἡ πύλη,[3] *gate.*
20. τὸ στάδιον, *a stade* (192 meters).
21. στένος, *narrow.*[4]
22. στρατηγέω, *I command.*
23. τὸ τεῖχος, *wall.*
24. ὕπερθεν, *above* (adv.).
25. φίλος, *friend, friendly.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ὁ δὲ Ψάρος ποταμός ἐστι μέγας, ἀλλ' ἐζευγμένος ἐστὶν ἑπτὰ πλοίοις. (*b*) Τὸ μὲν οὖν εὖρός ἐστι δέκα πλέθρων. (*c*) Οὐκ ἦν διελθεῖν διὰ ταύτης τῆς μεγάλης τε καὶ εὐδαίμονος πόλεως. (*d*) Αἱ δὲ πύλαι πᾶσαι ἰσχυρῶς μεγάλαι εἰσίν. (*e*) Συμπολεμήσω δὴ τῷ Κύρῳ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέᾱ.

2. Translate: (*a*) The chosen admirals arrived (= were present) for Cyrus. (*b*) We have asked what he wishes to do with that money. (*c*) It is necessary [for] us not to be worse than those who formerly fought with the younger brother, Cyrus. (*d*) If we should thus follow, we should be friends worthy of much. (*e*) They announce to the king whatever we do in this city.

3. Prepare a list containing the translation of each word in the Voc. of Lesson X.; with this list in hand in the class-room, be prepared to give rapidly and distinctly each corresponding Greek word.[5]

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Accent in the 3d declension. 2. The attributive position. 3. Words in the attributive position. 4. The dative in **συνεπολέμει Κύρῳ**. 5. Extent of space and duration of time. 6. Cases for expressing *means, measure, specification.* 7. The neuter plural subject. 8. Agreement of the verb with two subjects. 9. **ἐπί** in §§ **1** and **3**. 10. Accent of **παρῆσαν, παρῆν**. 11. **-ν** in **εἴκοσιν**. 12. **παρά** in § **3**. 13. Construction with verbs of *commanding.* 14. Classification of the verbs in the Lesson.

[1] *Cf.* Eng. pseud-*onym.*
[2] *Cf.* Eng. *petr*-oleum, rock-oil.
[3] *Cf.* Thermo-*pylae*, Hot-gates.
[4] *Cf.* Eng. *steno*-graphy.
[5] Preserve this list for following exercises.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XLI.

ANABASIS I. IV. 5–7.

1. NOTES.

§ 5. *ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου, on account of this*, etc. *ἕνεκα*, adv., used as a prep. with the genitive case. *Cf.* the use of the Latin adv. **clam** as a prep.; *e. g.* **clam uxōrem**. Note the position.[1] *ἀποβι-βάσειε(ν)* κτέ, *he might land his hoplites within and without the walls, i. e.* on both sides of the east or Syrian wall. On the form of the verb, *cf. καταπράξειεν* XXII.; on the mode, *cf. λάβοι* XI. *τῶν πυλῶν*: *cf. εἷσω τῶν ὀρέων* XXIX. § **21**. *βια-σ ο-μένους*: from *βιάζομαι*; euphonic change? Note the tense, *cf. ὡς ἀποκτενῶν* VII. **4**. *ᾤετο*: from *οἶμαι*; *cf.* XXXIV. Note how *οἰ-* augments. *ᾤετο ποιήσειν*: Lat. **putābat [Abrocomān] factūrum esse**. *ἤκουσε Κῦρον ὄντα, heard that Cyrus was*, etc. On the supplementary participle after *ἀκούω*, *cf. ἤκουε Ταμῶν ἔχοντα* XXIX.

§ **7**. *ἔμειναν*: theme *μεν*, Lat. **man-eo**; fut. *μεν-έσω*, but in actual use *-σ-* drops away and *έ ω = ῶ*; hence the actual future is **μενῶ**, (*μενέ-εις*) **μενεῖς**, (*μενέ-ει*) **μενεῖ**, etc. Explain the form here. *ἐμ-βά-ντες, . . . ἐν-θέ-μενοι, . . . ἀπέπλευσεν*: the aor. partic. used as in *ἐλθόντας . . . ἐρωτᾶν* XXXVIII. *βα* and *θε*, themes of what verbs?

τὰ πλείστου ἄξια: *cf. πολλοῦ ἄξιος* XXXVI. *ὡς . . . ἐδόκουν, φιλοτῑμηθέντες*: *being piqued, as they seemed* or *appeared*. The Greek says "as they seemed," where the English says "as it seemed." Like the Latin, the Greek prefers the personal construction; *cf. λέγεται Ἀπόλλων* XXV. *ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτᾱς* κτέ, *because Cyrus was permitting* (*εἴᾱ* contracted from *εἴα-ε*, from *ἐάω*) Clearchus *to have their soldiers, who had left* [their generals, Xenias and Pasion,] *on the understanding that they were going back to Greece again*, etc. *Cf.* XXXIV. **7**.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *ἕνεκα, μέν, δέ, οὖν*, put after one or more words in their sentences, are called *post-positive*.

[1] Words which do not stand at the beginning of phrases, clauses, or sentences in which they appear are called *post-positive; e. g. μέν, δέ, οὖν, γάρ*.

Digitized by Google

2. The 1st aor. opt. act. 3d sing. ends in **-αι** or **-ειε(ν)**.

3. **οἰ-** augments to **ᾠ̈**; **ἐ-** to **εἰ-** in **ἐάω**, **ἔχω**.

4. The supplementary participle follows **ἀκούω**, with nearly the value of an English infinitive.

5. Liquid verbs form their future without **-σ**, contracting the endings with a preceding original **ε** to **-ῶ**, **-εῖς**, **-εῖ**, etc.

6. The aorist participle, denoting a preliminary act, is rendered as co-ordinate with the verb upon which it depends.

7. **ἄξιος**, an adjective of *value*, is followed by the genitive.

8. In using **δοκεῖ (vidētur)**, **λέγεται (dicitur)**, the Greek prefers the personal construction.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The mutes when coming before **μ**	H. 53.	G. 16, 3.
2. Conjugation of the present system of **δείκνῡμι** . . .	H. 332.	G. 123.
3. Formation of the future of liquid verbs	H. 422.	G. 110, II. 2.
4. The perfect with aspiration .	H. 452.	G. 110, IV. *b*.
5. Principal parts of **πέμπω**[1] .	H. 508, 21.	G. page 351.
6. Principal parts of **φυλάττω** .	H. 514, 11.	G. page 359.
7. The future in the indirect discourse	H. 855.	G. 203.
8. The infinitive in the indirect discourse	H. 930, 2; 946.	G. 246 and Note.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἀνα-στρέφω**, *turn around, back.*
2. **ἀπ-ελαύνω**, *march away.*
3. **ἀπ-έρχομαι**, *go away.*
4. **ἀπο-βιβάζω**,[2] *I land.*
5. **ἀπο-πλέω**,[3] *sail away.*
6. **αὐτόθι**, *here, there.*
7. **ἐάω**, *permit.*
8. **ἐμ-βαίνω** *go on board, embark.*
9. **τὸ ἐμπόριον**,[4] *port, place of trade.*
10. **ἐν-τίθημι**, *place in, on (board).*

[1] Note that the perfect middle, **πέ-πεμ-μαι**, loses final **π** of the theme between the two **μ**'s.

[2] Strictly, *cause to go off.* Verbs in **-αζω** are regularly transitive, and many are causative.

[3] *Cf.* **πλοῖον**, *boat.*

[4] *Cf.* Eng. *emporium.*

Digitized by Google

11. **ἕνεκα** (with gen.), *on account of.*
12. **ἔξω**, *without, outside of.*
13. **ἡ μῡριάς**,[1] *number* or *crowd of* 10,000.
14. **ἡ ὁλκάς**, *freight ship.*
15. **ὅσ-περ, ὅ-περ**, *who* or *which really, just who* or *which.*
16. **φιλοτῑμέομαι**,[2] *am piqued* or *jealous.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Decline: **ναῦς, ὅσ-περ, ἀναστρέψᾱς**

2. Synopsis of **λύω**, active voice. Master § 313 Hadley (G., pages 86, 87) until all the forms can be given and written correctly, discriminated from one another, and readily translated.

3. Translate: (*a*) **Τούτου ἕνεκα τοῦ ποταμοῦ οὐκ ἦν ἐξελθεῖν ἐκ τῶν ὑρῶν.** (*b*) **Τυγχάνει δ' ἐπιμελούμενος ὅπως αἱ νῆες αὐτόθι πάρωσιν.** (*c*) **Εἰ δὴ ὑμεῖς πολεμοῖτε τῷ Συρίῳ βασιλεῖ, οὐκ ἂν πολὺ στράτευμα καταγάγοιτε.** (*d*) **Ἐνόμισεν οὖν ὅτι τοῦτο ποιήσοι ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῷ ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ πέπονθε.** (*e*) **Καὶ γὰρ ἔγωγέ φημι τὸν ἄνδρα πέμψειν πολλὰς ὁλκάδας εἰς τὸ ἐμπόριον.**

4. Translate: (*a*) Thence I was marching five days' journey, twenty (and) five parasangs, to a large river of Syria. (*b*) The width of these rivers is about two plethra. (*c*) Issus (plural) is the last city of Cilicia, built by the sea-side, and large and prosperous. (*d*) I will remain in this city thirty days. (*e*) Now the commanders of the ships revolted (partic.), and sailed away again to Greece. (*f*) I am afraid (**ὀκνέω**) to go on board those ships (= what ships) he may give us.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Classification of the verbs in this Lesson. 2. Post-positive words. 3. **π** between two **μ**'s. 4. Tenses in the indirect discourse. 5. Modes in main clauses, indirect discourse. 6. Peculiarities of **-μι** verbs. 7. Formation of the future and 1st aorist stems, liquid verbs. 8. The aspirated perfect. 9. The participle with **ἀκούω**. 10. Regular meaning of verbs in **-άζω**. 11. Personal endings, 1st aorist optative active. 12. Conjugation of the present and imperfect indicative active of **ἐάω**. 13. Three prepositions which govern the genitive only; two which govern the dative only. 14. Classification of the consonants.

[1] *Cf.* Eng. *myriad.*

[2] **φίλος** and **τῑμή**, *to hold honor dear.*

Digitized by Google

LESSON XLII.

ANABASIS I. IV. 7–9.

1. NOTES.

§ 7. **ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς**, *were out of sight, gone.* On the declension, *cf.* **εὐήθης** XXXVII. **δι-ῆλθε**, *i. e.* through the army. **ὅτι διώκοι**: *cf.* **ὅτι ἄγοι** XXXVIII. **τριήρεσι**: on the case, *cf.* **πλοίοις** XXIII. **ηὔχοντο**: impf., from **εὔχομαι**, dep. Note the augment. **ὡς . . . ὄντας . . . ληφ-θῆ-ναι**: **ὡς** construed with the participle, = *on the ground that.* It does not introduce the infinitive; neither **ὡς** nor **ὅτι**, nor any conjunction, ever does that. **ληφ-θῆναι**: aor. pass. inf. of **λαμβάνω**, theme **λαβ**; *cf.* **λάβ-οι** XI. On **φ** for **β**, *cf.* **ὑπολει φ-θέντας** XXXI. **φ̓κτειρον**: from **οἰκτείρω**; *cf.* **φ̓ετο** XLI. **εἰ ἁλώ-σο-ι-ντο**, *should they be taken:* from **ἁλ-ίσκομαι** (**ἁλ-**, **ἁλο-**), used as passive to **αἱρέω**.

§ 8. **συγ-καλέσᾶς**, *called together . . . and,* etc. On **συν-** changed to **συγ-**, *cf.* **συγγενέσθαι** XXVI. **ἐπιστά-σθων**, *let them know: cf.* **λῡέ-σθων**; from **ἐπίσταμαι**, dep. **ἀπο-δε-δρά-κα-σιν**, *have eluded:* from **δι-δρᾰ́-σκω** (**δρα**); *cf.* **γι-γνώ-σκω** (**γνο**). **ὥστε ἑλεῖν**, *so that I am able to take.* Note the manner of expressing *result* in Greek. On the theme **ἑλ**, *cf.* **εἱλόμην** XXXIII. **μᾶ τοὺς θεούς**, *by the gods!* **μᾶ** used in negative oaths; hence probably allied with **μή**. Note the accusative following it. **ἐρεῖ**: classed as future of **φημί**; *cf.* the perf. **εἴρηκα** XXIII.; see **οὔποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδείς** XXXIII. **ἕως ἂν παρ-ῇ τις**, *as long as any one may be with me,* = *if any one,* etc.: conditional relative sentence; but note, the subjunctive with **ἄν** is used when the present is alluded to; *cf.* **ὅστις ἀφικνοῖτο** IX. **ἐπειδᾶν δέ**, = **ἐπειδὴ ἂν δέ**. Note the contrast indicated by **μέν . . . δέ**. **ἰ-όντων**, *let them go.* So **λῡ-όντων**, imperative 3d plural. **εἰδ-ότ-ες**: *cf.* **εἰδ-ῆτε** XXXVII. **κακίους**: comparative of **κακός**; *cf.* **πλείους** XXXIV. § 7. **φρουρούμενα** (*cf.* **φρούραρχος** XII.): neuter plural, the women being possibly classed as vaguely as the children, — as mere things or creatures. **ἕνεκα**: *cf.* § 5.

§ 9. **ἥδ-ιον**, *more gladly:* comparative of the adverb **ἡδ-έως**; strictly the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective, similarly with **προθῡμότερον**.

Digitized by Google

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The verb of the indirect discourse may be put in the optative when dependent upon a verb denoting definitely past time.

2. Adjectives whose stem ends in **-εϛ** lose **ϛ** between vowels, and contract **ε-ε** to **ει**, **ε-ο** to **ου**, and **ε-α** to **η**.

3. *Means* is expressed by the dative case.

4. **εὐ** augments to **ηὐ**.

5. The infinitive in the indirect discourse is never introduced by a conjunction.

6. **λαβ** becomes **ληβ** in the future and in the aorist passive.

7. *Result* is denoted by **ὥστε** with the infinitive.

8. A number of verbs form the present stem by reduplicating the theme and adding **-σκ**.

9. The object or person *by whom* one swears negatively is indicated by the accusative case following **μά**.

10. Conditional relative sentences of present time have the verb in the subjunctive, with **ἄν** following the relative adverb or pronoun.

11. Adverbs form their comparative by using the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of **γυνή**	H. 216, 4.	G. 60, 5, 7.
2. Conjugation of **τῑμάω**, present system	H. 323.	G. 98.
3. Principal parts of **φεύγω**	H. 511, 15.	G. Appendix.
4. Principal parts of **λαμβάνω** . . .	H. 523, 5.	G. Appendix.
5. Principal parts of **ἔρχομαι**	H. 539, 2.	G. Appendix.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **ἄθῡμος**,[1] *dispirited.*
2. **ἁλίσκομαι**, *am taken, captured.*
3. **ἡ ἀνάβασις**, *upward march.*
4. **ἀπο διδράσκω**,[2] *run off* (by stealth), *elude.*
5. **ἀπο-λείπω**, *forsake, desert.*
6. **ἀπο-σῡλάω**, *steal, rob.*
7. **ἀπο-φεύγω**, *flee away, escape.*
8. **ἡ ἀρετή**, *goodness, good service.*
9. **ἀφανής**,[3] *out of sight, gone.*

[1] **ἀ-** privative (like the English suffix *-less* in spirit-less), **θῡμός**, mind, courage. *Cf.* Lat. **a-mens.**

[2] Theme, **δρα** ; *cf.* **δρό-μος.**

[3] **ἀ-** privative, **φαίνομαι**, appear.

Digitized by Google

10. δειλός, *timid, cowardly.*
11. δι-έρχομαι, *go through;* (of rumor) *spread.*
12. διώκω, *I pursue.*
13. ἔγωγε, **equidem**, *I at least.*
14. ἐπειδάν,[1] *when indeed, after* (with subjunc.).
15. εὔχομαι, *I pray, wish.*
16. ὁ θεός,[2] *god.*
17. κακός, *bad, base.*
18. κακῶς, *badly.*
19. κακῶς ποιέω, *I injure, wrong.*
20. ὁ λόγος,[2] *word, rumor.*
21. μᾶ, *nay! by* (adv. of swearing).
22. οὐδέ, *neither, not even.*
23. οἰκτείρω, *I pity.*
24. οἴχομαι, *am gone, departed.*
25. προθύμως, *with spirit, zealously.*
26. στερέω, *I deprive.*
27. συγ-καλέω, *I call together.*
28. τὸ τέκνον, *child.*
29. φρουρέω,[3] *I guard.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Αἱ γυναῖκες οὐκ ἀπολείψουσι τὰ ἑαυτῶν τέκνα, μὴ ὑπὸ τῶν μετὰ Κύρου πορευομένων ἁλῶσιν. (*b*) Τὸ ἑαυτῆς δῶρόν ἐστιν ἡ ἀρετή. (*c*) Οἱ δειλοί τε καὶ κακοὶ πειρῶνται ἀπὸ τῆς μάχης ἀποδιδράσκειν.

2. Translate: (*a*) I-indeed pursued the enemy, but I was not able to take them. (*b*) When-indeed you wish (fut. cond. *with* probability) to call together (partic.) the generals, and pursue with triremes and boats those who have (partic.) fled away, many friends will follow with you. (*c*) And beautiful gates were-built (= set upon) in the royal-abodes. (*d*) Cherisophos arrives upon the ship which the admiral Pythagoras was commanding. (*e*) On account of the good-service of these men, their enemies did not injure their wives and children.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Present and imperfect of εἰμί. 2. Declension of ἀφανής, τριήρης. 3. Augment of diphthongs. 4. Future conditions. 5. Result clauses. 6. Negative oaths. 7. Formation of adverbs; of the comparative. 8. The second accent in κακίους εἰσι, § 8. 9. Contractions in the present system of τῑμάω. 10. Classification of the verbs in § 8. 11. Accent of διῆλθε. 12. ἀ- privative illustrated. 13. Peculiarities in the declension of γυνή. 14. αἱρέω and ἁλίσκομαι: theme of the latter; relation of meaning.

[1] ἐπεί + δή + ἄν, followed by the *subjunctive.*
[2] *Cf.* Eng. *theo-logy.*
[3] *Cf.* φρουράρχοις XII.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XLIII.

ANABASIS I. IV. 9–12.

9, **Μετὰ ταῦτα**, through **τοῦ πατρὸς Κῦρον**, 12.

1. NOTES.

§ **9.** **ὄντα . . . πλέθρου**, *being, in respect to width, of a plethrum: cf.* **εὖρος δύο πλέθρων** XXIX. § **23**, Lat. **via tridui.** **πλήρη ἰχθύων**: *cf.* **πλήρης θηρίων** XXIV. Why genitive? **καὶ . . . εἴων**, *and they did not permit any one*, etc.: *cf.* **εἶᾶ** XLI. **Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν δεδομέναι**:[1] *cf.* **καὶ . . . ἦσαν . . . δεδομέναι** XII.

§ **10.** **οὗ . . . πλέθρου**, *of which the width* [*was*] (*of*) *a plethrum.* **Συρίας ἄρξα-ντ-ος**, (*of*) *the former ruler of Syria.* Note the tense; also that the participle, like a noun, is here followed by the objective genitive, — so **amans patriae**, *patriot.* **πάντα ὅσα** *all things which: cf.* **πάντων ὅσοι** IV.

§ **11.** **ὄντα . . . σταδίων**: *cf.* **ὄντα πλέθρου**, § **9.** **ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἔσοιτο**, *he said that the journey would be*; dir. disc., "*the journey will be*" (**ἔσται**): *cf.* **ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι** VI.

§ **12.** **ἐ-χαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς**, *were angry at the generals.* H. **764**, 2 Ex. **εἰδό-τ-ας**, theme **ἰδ** (Lat. **vid-eo**, Eng. *wit*); perf. partic.: *cf.* **ἐκπεπτωκ-ό-τ-ας** XIII., **εἰδότες** XLII. **οὐκ ἔφασαν**: *cf.* XXXII. **ἐὰν μή** **nisi**, *unless.* Note the use of **μή** rather than **οὐ**. **τοῖς μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι**, *those who went up with Cyrus*: nom. **ἀναβάς** (2d aor. partic. of **ἀνα-βαίνω**); *cf.* **δια-βᾶς** XXIV.; *cf.* the use of the tense with that of **ἄρξαντος**, § **10.** **καὶ ταῦτα κτέ**, *and that too, though.* Note the concessive force of the genitive absolute; this is heightened by **καὶ ταῦτα**.

[1] "Given for her girdle" is somewhat like the English "given for pin money," since the beauty of the girdle was a matter of pride with Persian ladies. Other cities were assigned to furnish the queen-mother with sandals and head-dresses. The Persian king assigned to the exiled Themistocles one city to furnish bread, and another to furnish meat.

Digitized by Google

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. "A river four feet wide" is in Greek "a river of four feet, respecting width."

2. "The cities belong to Parysatis" is in Greek "the cities are of Parysatis."

3. Participles of transitive verbs may be used as nouns, and be followed by an objective genitive.

4. ὁ ἄρχων, = *ruler*; ὁ ἄρξᾶς, = *he who* (*once* or *formerly*) *ruled, the ruler.*

5. The future optative, introduced by ὡς, ὅτι, indirect discourse, after a secondary tense, represents the future indicative.

6. οἰδ-, of οἶδα, becomes εἰδ- in the subjunctive and in the participle.[1]

7. In conditional sentences μή is the negative of the condition (protasis), οὐ that of the conclusion (apodosis).

8. καὶ ταῦτα preceding a concessive participle intensifies its force as such.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of ἰχθύς	H. 201.	G. 53, 2.
2. The ordinals (1–20)	H. 288.	G. 76.
3. Conjugation of οἶδα	H. 491.	G. 127, VII.
4. Accusative of *specification* . . .	H. 718.	G. 160, 1.
5. The genitive with substantives . .	H. 729, *a–g.*	G. 167, 1–6.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀδικέω,[2] *I harm, injure.*
2. ἀνα-πείθω, *I persuade, i.e. change one's mind, induce.*
3. ἐὰν μή (with subjunct.), *unless.*
4. ἐκ-κόπτω,[3] *I cut out, destroy utterly.*
5. ἡ ζώνη,[4] *belt, girdle.*
6. ὁ ἰχθύς,[5] *fish.*

[1] It does the same elsewhere, as will presently be learned.

[2] From ἄδικος, = ἀ- privative, and δίκη, justice.

[3] *Cf.* κατα-κοπῆναι XXXI.

[4] *Cf.* Eng. *zone.*

[5] *Cf.* Eng. *ichthy*-ology.

Digitized by Google

7. καὶ ταῦτα, *and that too; although.*
8. κατα-καίω,[1] *I burn down, destroy by fire.*
9. κρύπτω,[2] *I hide, conceal.*
10. ἡ κώμη, *village.*
11. πάλαι,[3] *long before, previously.*
12. ὁ πατήρ,[4] *father.*
13. πρᾷος,[5] *mild, tame.*
14. σκηνέω,[6] *I encamp.*
15. φύω,[7] *produce, yield, bring forth.*
16. χαλεπαίνω,[8] *am angry.*
17. ἡ ὥρᾱ,[9] *season* (of the year).

5. EXERCISES.

1. Principal parts of πείθω, κόπτω, κρύπτω.[10]

2. Translate: (*a*) Ἐπεὶ δ' αὐτόθι πολλοὶ ἦσαν φίλοι ἡμῖν, ἐμείναμεν τρισκαίδεκα ἡμέρᾱς. (*b*) Χαλεπανοῦσιν αὐτῷ ἐὰν μὴ ταύτᾱς τὰς πολεμίᾱς κώμᾱς ἐκκόψῃ. (*c*) Πάλαι δὴ ἀνέπεισα αὐτὸν ταῦτα κρύπτειν, καὶ ταῦτ' οὐκ ἐθέλοντα. (*d*) Πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι κῶμαι τῇ Παρυσάτιδι δεδομέναι εἰς τὴν ζώνην, ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἁλώσονται (*e*) Οἱ ἑρμηνεῖς ταῦτα τῷ φρουράρχῳ ἀπήγγειλαν· ὁ δε ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἑκάστῳ χρήματα πολλὰ ἐπειδὰν εἰς Ἴσσους ἥκωσι καὶ μισθὸν μέχρι (*until*) ἂν καταγάγῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πάλιν εἰς Ἰωνίαν. (*f*) Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπείθοντο καὶ οὐ διέβησαν πρὶν ἂν οἱ ἄλλοι ἀποκρίνωνται.

3. Translate: (*a*) They said that those rivers were full of many (and) tame fishes; but the inhabitants of the country do not permit any-one to harm them. (*b*) They encamped (aor.) in the gardens and palace of the former-king of the country, and then (εἶτα) burned down the palace. (*c*) He will call (partic.) an assembly of his soldiers, and endeavor to persuade them. (*d*) He said that all things which the seasons produce would be theirs (dat. poss.) if they should be able to take these gardens.

4. Review the noun list in Lesson X., giving the gender, genitive, and declension of each word.

[1] καίω, fut. καύ-σω; Eng. *caustic.*
[2] *Cf.* ἐπι-κρυπτόμενος XI.; Eng. *crypt.*
[3] Eng. *palæ*-ontology.
[4] Lat. **pater.**
[5] Very irregularly declined. The study of its declension is omitted for the present.
[6] *Cf.* σκήνη, *tent.*
[7] Whence φύσις, *nature*, Eng. *physics, phys*ician, meta*phys*ics.
[8] From χαλεπός, *hard, difficult.*
[9] *Cf.* Lat. **hora**, Eng. *hour.*
[10] Consult the verb-indices in the grammars.

Digitized by Google

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. μετά with the genitive; with the accusative. 2. Accusative of specification. 3. Genitive of measure. 4. Declension of πλήρης. 5. Inflection[1] of εἶων. 6. εἰς ζώνην. 7. The genitive with ἄρξαντος. 8. Time denoted by the tenses of the participle. 9. Inflection of μέγας. 10. Principal parts and classification of the verbs of § **10**. 11. Analysis of ᾠκεῖτο ; why not pluperfect ? 12. Future conditions in the indirect discourse. 13. Correlative pronouns used with πᾶς.

LESSON XLIV.

ANABASIS I. IV. 13–15.

1. NOTES.

§ **13**. ὑπ-έσχετο : *cf.* ὑπο-σχόμενος XXII. Note the present and aorist stems. δώ-σειν . . . Ἰωνίᾱν πάλιν (dir. disc.), "*I will give you . . . when you reach Babylon, and full pay until I set you Greeks down again*," etc. Note the form of indirect discourse after this verb. ἐπ ἠ ν . . . ᾖκωσι : *cf.* ἕως ἄν χρῶμαι, ἐπειδ ἂ ν βούληται XLII. ; conditional relative clauses. On the optative (without ἄν) in such clauses, referring to time past, *cf.* ἀφικνοῖτο IX., βούλοιτο XXIV. Note that with the subjunctive, ἄν is used : ἐπήν = ἐπεὶ ἄν. μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ, *until he* (*shall*) *set down*, (*shall*) *bring back* : *cf.* preceding note. Ἑλληνικοῦ : *sc.* στρατεύματος. πρὶν . . . εἶναι, *before it was evident* : *cf.* πρὶν συμβουλεύσηται XVIII. ; noting, however, that the verb upon which the subjunctive depends is negative. τί ποιήσουσιν : note that this interrogative maintains its acute accent. οὔ : accented, because at the end of a clause. χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων : *cf.* λάθρᾳ τῶν στρατιωτῶν XXXIV.; each is a gen. of separation.

§ **14**. τῶν ἄλλων πλέον, *more* [*than*] *the others*, etc. Note the genitive dependent upon the comparative πλέον ; on πλέον, *cf.* XXVI., πλέον ἢ . . . μηνῶν. δεῖται : *cf.* XVIII., δεῖται αὐτοῦ μή. χρῆ-ναι :

[1] That is, give all the persons and numbers of the verb in this mode, voice, and tense.

Digitized by Google

infinitive of χρή; *cf.* χρή XXXV. διαβῆναι: the form is analogous with στῆ-ναι XXVII. ἀπο-κριν ο ῦνται: *cf.* ἔμειναν XLI., Notes, § 7.

§ 15. ἦν μέν: note ἦν δέ below, — ἤν, = ἐάν, εἰ ἄν; *cf.* ἦν δύνηται VIII. Kind of conditional sentences in this section? δόξετε: fut., from δοκέω. Note the change of theme. ἄρξαντες κτέ, *since you began the crossing* (lit. *to cross*): *cf.* ἄρξαντος XLIII. § 10. Note the case, and *cf.* ἄρχειν αὐτῶν XIV. χάριν εἴσεται (first, *will know, recognize, the favor*, and then), *will be grateful, will requite.* ἐπίσταται κτέ, *and he knows how, if anybody else also* (*does*). ὑμῖν χρήσεται: *cf.* ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι XXXVIII. καὶ ἄλλου οὑτινος . . . Κύρου, *and* IF *you stand-in-need of anything else . . . as friends, you will happen upon* (*get*) *it from Cyrus.* τεύξεσθε: fut. (deponent), from the theme τυχ, τυγχάνω. Note the dependent genitive.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. ὑπισχνέομαι is followed by the infinitive construction, like the Latin **polliceor.**

2. Conditional relative clauses, referring to the present or future, have their verbs in the subjunctive; and ἄν stands after the relative adverb or pronoun introducing them.

3. The 1st aorist of ἵστημι, like the present, is causative, = *set.*

4. πρίν is followed by the infinitive; but generally by the subjunctive when the leading verb is negative.

5. τίς, interrogative, always retains its acute accent. οὐ becomes οὔ at the end of a sentence.

6. Indirect questions may retain the mode of the direct discourse.

7. The comparative is followed by the genitive when ἤ (*than*) is omitted.

8. χρή, *it is necessary*, has an irregular present infinitive χρῆναι.

9. δοκέω assumes the theme δοκ- in the future.

10. τυγχάνω, *I meet with, happen upon, obtain,* is construed with the genitive of the source whence the thing obtained comes.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of μνᾶ . .	H. 144.	G. 38.
2. Declension of πατήρ . .	H. 188, 189.	G. 57, 1.
3. Second aorist system of τίθημι and δίδωμι . .	H. 333, 334.	G. 123, pages 161, 164.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. αἴτιος, *responsible for, chargeable with.*
2. ἀπ-αγγέλλω, *I report.*
3. τὸ ἀργύριον, *silver, money.*
4. ἄρχω, *I begin, rule.*
5. ἐντελής, *full, complete.*
6. ἐπήν (with subjunct.), *when.*
7. ἡ λοχᾱγίᾱ, *captaincy.*
8. μόνος,[1] *alone.*
9. ἡ μνᾶ,[2] *mina.*
10. πονέω,[3] *I labor, toil.*
11. πότερον . . . ἤ, *whether . . . or.*
12. προ-τῑμάω, *I honor above others, prefer.*
13. τοὔμπαλιν (= τὸ ἔμπαλιν), *back, back again.*
14. τυγχάνω, *I happen upon, meet with, obtain.*
15. τὸ φρούριον,[4] *a garrison.*
16. χωρίς, *apart from.*
17. ψηφίζομαι, *I vote, decide.*
18. ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι, *I vote off, reject.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Τὸ δὲ Μένωνος στράτευμα ἀπεψηφίσατο τοὔμπαλιν ἀπιέναι. (*b*) Σὺ δὲ οὐκ οἶσθα πότερον χωρὶς τῶν βαρβάρων ἐκινδύνευσαν ἢ οὔ. (*c*) Ὁ ἐντελὴς μισθὸς ὠφείλετο τοῖς ἀναβᾶσι μετὰ Κύρου. (*d*) Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπείθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. (*e*) Ἐπεὶ δ' ᾔσθετο διαβεβηκότας, ἤσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι τὸν ἑρμηνέᾱ ἔπεμψεν λέξοντα ὅτι Κῦρος αὐτῷ χάριν οἶδεν.

2. Translate: (*a*) They began the flight (= to flee) before it was plain what the enemy were doing. (*b*) And if they need money or anything else, they know that they will obtain it from me, their best friend. (*c*) We recognize the favor, and that too although they are our enemies. (*d*) But he says that this (= these things) is nonsense, and to him it seems best that men, such as (= whoever) are suitable, should go to Cyrus with the captain-of-the-garrison and ask what use he wishes to make of the Greek mercenaries.

3. In the List of Words of Book I. arranged in the order of *first* occurrence, prepare the first fifty words carefully for rapid oral recitation.

[1] *Cf.* the Eng. *mono*-syllable, *mono*-tone, *mono*-gram.
[2] The sixth part of a talent, = 100 drachmae, about $18.75.
[3] *Cf.* ἐπι-πονωτέρᾱ XXXVIII. § 19.
[4] *Cf.* φρουράρχοις XII., φρουρούμενα XLII.

Digitized by Google

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Conditional sentences. 2. The use of πρίν. 3. The genitive with comparatives. 4. Synopsis of λύω, πέμπω, and ἀγγέλλω in the present and future active. 5. Principal parts of δίδωμι, ἵστημι, πείθω, βαίνω. 6. The genitive with δέομαι; with χωρίς; with ἄρχω. 7. Crasis: τοὔμπαλιν. 8. ἄν in conditional relative sentences. 9. The proclitics; οὐ and οὔ. 10. The aspirated perfect. 11. Post-positives. 12. Peculiarities of -μι verbs. 13. Analyze: ἔψονται, πεισθῆτε, ψηφίσωνται, πονήσαντες.

LESSON XLV.

ANABASIS I. IV. 16–19.

1. NOTES.

§ 16. ἤσθετο διαβεβηκότας, *perceived, learned, that they had crossed.* Had the participle been aorist (διαβάντας), the sense would have been "... *that they crossed*," not *had crossed*: *cf.* λελοιπὼς εἴη XXIX. *Cf.* ἤσθετο XXIX. On the use of the participle (supplementary), *cf.* ἦκουε Τάμων ἔχοντα XXIX. ἥσ-θη κτέ, *was both pleased and*, etc.: *cf.* Κῦρος δὲ ἥσθη XXVIII. ὅπως ἐπαινέσετε κτέ, *it will be my concern that you praise* (fut.) *me*: *cf.* ὅπως ἔσται VIII. *Cf.* ἐπῄνεσαν XXXIV.; final ε of the theme is not here changed to η as is usual before consonants, as in φιλέω, φιλήσω. μηκέτι νομίζετε, *no longer consider*, etc.: *cf.* μὴ θαυμάζετε XXXII.

§ 17. συν-εἵπετο: from συν-έπομαι; *cf.* ἕξω, εἶχον; ἐάω, εἴων. ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν, *above* (lit. *higher up than*) *the breast*: *cf.* ἄνω XXI. and τῶν ἄλλων πλέον XLIV. ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ: *cf.* ὑπὸ τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν XVII. Note, the river is represented as acting like a personal *agent*.

§ 18. εἰ μὴ τότε, *unless then, i. e. excepting then*: *cf.* ἐὰν μή XLIII. § 12. ὡς βασιλεύσοντι: note the tense.

Digitized by Google

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *αἰσθάνομαι* (theme *αἰσθ*) is followed by the supplementary participle, or by *ὅτι* with a finite mode.

2. *ἥσθη, was pleased,* is for *ἡδ-θη*.

3. *ὅπως* with the future indicative follows verbs of *striving* or *attention*.

4. *μή* and its compounds are the negatives used with the imperative.

5. *ἔπομαι,* like *ἔχω, ἐάω,* augments by changing *ε* to *ει*.

6. *Agency* is denoted by *ὑπό* with the genitive; *means,* by the dative, or occasionally by *ὑπό* with the genitive, when the means is viewed as agent.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Present and aorist systems of *τίθημι*	H. 329, 333.	G. 123.
2. Conjugation of *φημί*	H. 481.	G. 127, IV.
3. The cognate accusative	H. 715, *a, b*; 716, *a, b*.	G. 159, REM., NOTES 2, 4.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. *ἀνωτέρω, higher up.*
2. *βρέχω, moisten, wet.*
3. *δια-βατός, fordable, passable.*
4. *ἐπι-σῖτίζομαι,*[1] *lay in provisions.*
5. *εὐτυχέω,*[2] *be fortunate, successful.*
6. *Θαψακηνός, inhabitant of Thapsacus.*
7. *θεῖος,*[3] *divine, supernatural, miraculous.*
8. *ὁ μαστός, breast.*
9. *μεγαλο-πρεπῶς,*[4] *magnificently.*
10. *μέλει,* **refert,** *it concerns.*
11. *μηκέτι, οὐκέτι, no longer.*
12. *οὐπώποτε, never yet, never before.*
13. *πεζῇ,*[5] *on foot.*
14. *πρό-ειμι, go before, in advance.*
15. *σαφῶς, clearly.*
16. *τὸ σῖτον, food.*
17. *ὑπο-χωρέω, retreat, give way.*

[1] *Cf. σῖτον, food.*
[2] *εὖ, well; τύχη-, fortune.* τυγχ-άνω has the same theme.
[3] *Cf. θεός, a god.*
[4] The first element is *μέγας*; so in the translation the first element is **magnus.**
[5] *Cf. πούς, foot;* Lat. **pes.**

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Give the principal parts and the classification of (*a*) *ἀκούω*; (*b*) *βρέχω*; (*c*) *νομίζω*; (*d*) *αἰσθάνομαι*. Decline *βασιλεύσων*.

2. Translate: (*a*) *Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου ἑνός.* (*b*) *Ἐὰν δ' ἀποψηφιζώμεθα ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω, βασιλεὺς ἡμῖν χάριν εἴσεται καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ.* (*c*) *Ἀλλ' ἐνόμισε ὅτι ἄλλου οὑτινος δεοίμεθα ὡς φίλου τευξοίμεθα Κύρου.* (*d*) *Ἔμελεν αὐτῷ ὅπως ἀκούσας τὴν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἀρετὴν ἡδέως καὶ οὐκ ἀθύμως συμπορεύσεται.*

3. Translate: (*a*) They praised him as often as (*ὁπότε*) he was fortunate. (*b*) But when they received the pay for (= of) more than three months, which was due (= owed) them, they were pleased, and willingly (= willing) followed Cyrus to battle. (*c*) Because the river was not large, it did not wet the soldiers above the breast as they crossed. (*d*) Now when he learned that they had voted to cross the river, and that too before it was evident whether the others would follow them or not, he recognized the favor in a magnificent manner. (*e*) As-long-as (*ἕως*) they obey their leader gladly, they know well that they will find him a true (*ἀληθής*) and faithful friend.

4. Review carefully the Vocab. of Lesson X. until, by means of hearing the English equivalents, the Greek may be given without hesitation.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Complete synopses of *ἵστημι*, *τίθημι*, *δίδωμι*, in the present, future, and aorist systems. 2. The imperfect indicative of *εἶμι*. 3. The declension of *ἀνήρ*. 4. Formation of adverbs. 5. The labial and palatal mutes before *τ*, *δ*, *θ*. 6. The disappearance of *ζ* (of verbs in *-ίζω*) in the future, aorist, and perfect systems. 7. The uses of the accusative. 8. Translation of aorist and perfect participles. 9. Some verbs which are followed by the supplementary participle.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XLVI.

ANABASIS I. v. 1–3.

1. NOTES.

§ 1. ἐν δεξιᾷ, *on the right* (hand): *sc.* χειρ-ί (from χείρ, *hand*). ἅπαντα ἦσαν, *all* [*the bits of wood and brush*] *were.* Note the plural verb with a neuter subject; *cf.* ἄθλα ἦσαν XXVI.

§ 2. θηρία δὲ κτέ, *and there were many kinds,* etc. πολὺ θᾶττον, *much swifter* [*than*]. πολύ, neut. sing., used adverbially, modifies θᾶττον; *cf.* τὸ ἀρχαῖον XII. θᾶττον (for ταχ-ιον), comparative of ταχέως: the aspirate χ being lost in the comparative, τ is aspirated to θ as a compensation; *cf.* θᾶττον προϊόντων XXVIII. ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν: *cf.* ὁπότε βούλοιτο XXIV. § 7. ταὐτόν, = τὸ αὐτόν: *cf.* τοὔμπαλιν XLIV. § 15. οὐκ ἦν: *cf.* οὐκ ἔσται XXXVII. § 17. εἰ μὴ διαστάντες κτέ, *unless standing apart* (*i. e. at intervals*) *they chase, taking their turn in line, i. e. relieving one another.* παραπλήσια: *cf.* XXXVIII. § 18.

§ 3. τοῖς ποσὶ δρόμῳ . . . χρωμένη κτέ, *using its feet in running, and its wings like a sail by raising them up.* ἄν τις, *if any one:* ἄν = ἐάν, ἤν. ἔστι λαμβάνειν, *it is possible to capture.* Note the accent of ἔστι meaning *it is possible.*

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The neuter singular accusative of an adjective is readily used as an adverb. This is so even when the adverb itself exists; *e. g.* ταχύ, ταχέως.

2. ταχύς, ταχέως, roughen τ to θ in the comparative, the rough χ being lost.

3. The optative is used in general conditions which refer to past time; in the conclusion a past tense of the indicative is used

4. The subjunctive with ἄν is used in general conditions which refer to present time; in the conclusion the present indicative is used.

5. ἔστι, in the sense *it is possible*, is accented upon the penult.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Transfer of aspiration . . . . . H. 74, *b*. G. 17, 2, N.
2. Comparison by *-ίων, -ιστος* . . . . . H. 253. G. 72, 1.
3. Contract verbs in *-όω* . . . . . H. 325. G. 98.
4. Declension of *γέρας* . . . . . H. 191. G. 56.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. *αἴρω*, *raise*.
2. *ἀν-ίστημι*, *stir up*.
3. *ἀπ-αγορεύω*, *desist, fail, give out*.
4. *ἁπαλός*, *tender*.
5. *ἀπο-σπάω*,[1] *draw off, withdraw*.
6. *τὸ ἄρωμα*,[2] *spice*.
7. *τὸ ἀψίνθιον*,[3] *wormwood*.
8. *βραχύς*,[4] *-εῖα, -ύ*, *short*.
9. *δια-δέχομαι*,[5] *receive in turn, succeed, relieve*.
10. *δι-ίστημι*, *set apart*; intrans., *stand apart*.
11. *ἡ δορκάς*,[6] *gazelle*.
12. *ἐλάφειος*, *belonging to a deer*; *κρέας ἐλάφειον*, *venison*.
13. *ἔν-ειμι*, *am in a place, am*
14. *ἐνίοτε*, *at times*. [*there*.
15. *ἔρημος*,[7] *deserted, desolate*; *σταθμὸς ἔρημος*, a day's march through a *desert* country.
16. *εὐώδης*,[8] *-ες*, *fragrant*.
17. *ἡδύς*,[9] *-εῖα, -ύ*, *sweet*.
18. *ὁ κάλαμος*,[10] *reed, brush-wood*.
19. *τὸ κρέας*, *flesh, meat*.[11]
20. *ὁμαλής*,[12] *-ές*, *even, level*.
21. *ὁ ὄνος*, *ass, donkey*.
22. *παντοῖος*,[13] *varied, of all kinds*.
23. *παύω*,[14] *stop*; mid., *cease*.
24. *ἡ πέρδιξ*, *partridge*.
25. *πέτομαι*,[15] *fly*.
26. *πλησιάζω*,[16] *approach*.
27. *προ-δι-δράσκω*,[17] *run ahead*.
28. *ἡ πτέρυξ*, *wing*.
29. *ἡ στρουθός*,[18] *ostrich*.
30. *ὁ τόπος*,[19] *place, locality*.
31. *ἡ ὕλη*,[20] *wood*.
32. *ἡ ὠτίς*,[21] *bustard*.

1 *Cf.* Eng. *spasm*.
2 *Cf.* Eng. *aromatic*.
3 *Cf.* French *absinthe*, brandy flavored with *wormwood*.
4 Hence Eng. tri-*brach*, *brachy*-logy.
5 *Cf.* Eng. *take*.
6 Hence the name *Dorcas*.
7 *Cf.* Eng. *eremite, hermit*; *cf.* XXXIV. 8 *εὖ*, *well*, *cf.* Eng. *eu*-logy; *ὠδ*, from the theme *οδ* (Lat. **od-or**), *smell*.
9 *Cf.* *ἥδομαι*, *am pleased*; *ἡδέως*, *gladly*.
10 Hence Lat. **calamus**.
11 *Cf.* Eng. *crea*-sote.
12 *Cf.* Eng. an-*omalous*.
13 From *παντ*, theme of *πᾶς*.
14 *Cf.* Eng. *pause*.
15 Theme *πετ*; Lat. **pen-na**, wing, for **pet-na**.
16 *Cf.* *παραπλήσιος*, *like*.
17 Theme *δρᾰ*, *cf.* *δρό-μος*.
18 *Cf.* Eng. o-*strich*.
19 *Cf.* Eng. *topo*-graphy.
20 *Cf.* Lat. **silva**.
21 A large bird, which like the ostrich runs with great swiftness.

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ἐπορεύθη παρὰ ποταμὸν ἰχθύων πραέων πλήρη, ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων πεδίον μέγα καὶ ἐπίρρυτον. (*b*) Τοὺς δὲ ὄνους διαστάντες διώξομεν διαδεχόμενοι, ἀλλ' εὖ ἴσμεν οὐκ ἔσεσθαι αὐτοὺς λαβεῖν, ἐπεὶ πολὺ ἀποσπῶσιν. (*c*) Καὶ πᾶσα ἡ χώρᾱ ὁμαλὴς ἦν ὥσπερ πεδίον μέγα. (*d*) Ἐν τούτοις τοῖς τόποις ἐποιήθησαν καλοὶ παράδεισοι ὑπὸ τοῦ τότε ἄρχοντος.

2. Translate: (*a*) Sometimes indeed they obeyed, but (use μὲν . . . δέ) then they refused to go farther. (*b*) If they shall cross this river now, they will not be wet above the middle. (*c*) The flesh of the animals caught (attrib. posit.) by the Greeks is found to be more tender than venison. (*d*) It was said that they ran much swifter than the horses. (*e*) But proceeding through this country, they arrive at (= upon) a river, the width of which was a plethrum; there was a large city there, of which (dat. poss.) the name was Issus; they remained there three days, and took-in-provisions; thence they marched thirteen days' journey through a-desert-country (use ἔρημος), with the Euphrates river on the right; in these journeys many of the beasts-of-burden perished.

3. Parts and classification of ἵστημι, διδράσκω, διώκω, δέχομαι, λαμβάνω, παύω, σπάω, φεύγω. Declension of κρέας.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Declension of nouns and adjectives whose stems end in **-ες**; the manner of contraction. 2. Accent of **ἐνην, inerat**; why? 3. Uses of the imperfect indicative. 4. Conditional relative sentences. 5. The case after comparatives when ἤ is omitted. 6. The aspiration in θᾶττον. 7. Crasis, corónis. 8. ω in ἀπαλώτερα. 9. ἔστι, ἐστί. 10. Formation of comparatives and superlatives. 11. The present system of ἀποσπάω. 12. The first aorist and future of liquid verbs. 13. Synopsis of ἀξιόω, present system, 1st and 2d person singular.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XLVII.

ANABASIS I. v. 4–7.

1. NOTES.

§ 4. **περι-ερρεῖτο** : impf. ind. from **περι-ρ-ρέω**, and contracted from **περι-ερρέ-ετο**. Note the doubling of **ρ**, and *cf.* **ἐπίρρυτον** XXIX., from **ἐπί** and **ῥέω**. Initial **ρ** is usually doubled when a vowel is brought before it by composition or inflection. **ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκᾱ** : *cf.* **ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ** XLV. On the form, *cf.* **Ἀβροκόμᾱ** XL. § 3. **κύκλῳ**, *in a circle.*

§ 5. **ἀπ-ώλετο** : *cf.* **ἀπ-ώλοντο** XXXI. **καὶ ποιοῦντες κτέ**, *and manufacturing them* (into the proper form), *they used to take them*, etc. **ἔζων κτέ**, *and they lived by buying bread in turn.* **ἔζων**, contracted from **ἐ-ζα-ον**, impf. ind.

§ 6. **τεττάρων σίγλων**, *for four shekels; paying four shekels.* Note the use of the genitive to indicate the price of a purchase; *cf.* the Latin usage. **δύναται κτέ**, *is worth seven and a half Attic obols. Cf.* this use of **δύναται** with that of the Latin **valet.** **ἐσθίοντες . . . διεγίγνοντο**, *continued eating, i. e. continued to eat.* This use of **διαγίγνομαι** with the participle is a more vivid way of expressing what might be denoted by the imperfect (**ἔσθιον**) alone. What kind of participle?

§ 7. **ἦν σταθμῶν**, *there were* (*some*) *of*, etc. . . . *which he made* (lit. *marched*) *very long.* **ἦν** singular; being used without reference to any definite subject. **οὗς** : cognate accusative. **ἐπ-έστη**, *stood by, halted : cf.* **ἐφ-ειστήκεσαν** XL. § 4. **λαβόντας τοῦ . . . στρατοῦ**, *taking* [*a part*] *of the*, etc. Note this free use of the partitive genitive, the limited word being omitted.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **ρ** at the beginning of a word is doubled when a vowel is brought before it.

2. A few proper names of the first declension ending in **-ᾱς**, have the genitive singular ending in **-ᾶ**.

Digitized by Google

3. *Manner* is denoted by the dative case.

4. *Price* is denoted by the genitive case.

5. **δύναται**, = *is able, is worth*, and in the latter sense governs an accusative.

6. Verbs, like nouns, are often followed by the partitive genitive.

7. The relative pronoun may stand as a cognate accusative wherever a noun could stand in the same construction.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **ἵστημι** in the 2d aorist and 2d perfect active systems	H. 335, 336.	G. 123.
2. The partitive genitive with verbs .	H. 736.	G. 170.
3. The genitive with verbs of *buying* .	H. 746.	G. 178.
4. *Instrument, means, cause, manner* .	H. 776.	G. 188, 1.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. **τὸ ἄλευρον** (usually plur.), *meal, flour.*
2. **τὸ ἄλφιτον** (usually plur.), *barley grits.*
3. **ἀντ-αγοράζω**,[1] *buy in exchange.*
4. **Ἀττικός**, *Attic, Athenian.*
5. **δια-τελέω**,[2] *bring through to an end, complete.*
6. **δύναμαι**, *am able; worth.*
7. **δυσ-πόρευτος**,[3] *difficult of travel.*
8. **ἐνενήκοντα**, *ninety.*
9. **ἐπι-λείπω**, *give out, fail.*
10. **ζάω**,[4] *live.*
11. **ἡμι-ωβόλιον**,[5] *half-obol*, $1\frac{3}{4}$ cents.
12. **ἡ καπίθη**,[6] *kapithe.*
13. **ὁ κύκλος**,[7] *circle*
14. **ὁ λῑμός**, *hunger.*
15. **μακρός** *long.*
16. **ὁ ὀβολός**,[8] *obol.*
17. **ὁ ὄνος ἀλέτης**, *grinding-jack*, (hand) *mill-stone.*
18. **ὀρύττω**, *dig, quarry.*
19. **πάνυ**,[9] *wholly, exceedingly.*
20. **περι-ρ-ρεω**, *flow about, encompass.*

[1] *Cf.* **ἀγορά**, *market.*
[2] *Cf.* **τελευτάω**, *finish.*
[3] *Cf.* **πορεύομαι, απορία, απορεω.** **δυσ-** has the sense of *difficult, cf.* Eng. *dys*-pepsia.
[4] *Cf.* Eng. *zoo*-logy.
[5] *Cf.* **ημι-όλιον**, = $1\frac{1}{2}$.
[6] A Persian dry measure, = 2.3 litres.
[7] *Cf.* Eng. *cycle.*
[8] An Attic coin, the sixth part of a drachma, about $3\frac{1}{2}$ cents.
[9] *Cf.* **πᾶς**, *all.*

Digitized by Google

21. ὁ πηλός, *mud.*
22. πλεθριαῖος, *of a plethrum* (in extent).
23. πρίαμαι, *buy.*
24. πωλέω,[1] *sell.*
25. ὁ σίγλος,[2] *shekel.*
26. ἡ στενοχωρίᾱ,[3] *a narrow place, pass.*
27. συν-εκ-βιβάζω,[4] *help pull out.*
28. τὸ ὕδωρ,[5] *water.*
29. ὁ χῖλός, *grass, fodder.*
30. ἡ χοῖνιξ,[6] *choenix.*
31. ὁ χορτός, *grass, fodder.*
32. χωρέω,[7] *give room; hold, contain.*
33. ψῖλός, *bare.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ὁ μὲν δᾱρεικὸς δύναται πολλοὺς ὀβολοὺς Ἀττικούς. (*b*) Τοῦτον τὸν ὄνον ἀλέτην ἐπρίατο ἐννέα σίγλων. (*c*) Ἔλεξαν ὅτι ὀρύξαντες εὕροιεν πολλοὺς ὀβολοὺς ἐν τῷ πηλῷ. (*d*) Ὅτι δὲ πολλοὶ τῶν ἐνοικοῦντων ὑπὸ λῖμοῦ ἀπόλοιντο, εὖ ἤδειτε. (*e*) Ὅταν βούλησθε πρὸς πόλιν διατελέσαι οἱ σταθμοὶ οὓς ἐλαύνετε ἰσχυρῶς μακροί εἰσιν. (*f*) Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ οὐ ταχέως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ἀχθόμενος ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσᾱς τοὺς βελτίστους συμπρᾶξαι αὐτῷ. ἔνθα δή τι τῆς καλῆς τάξεως ἦν θεάσασθαι. (*g*) Δῆλος δὲ ἦν Κῦρος ὡς ὅτι τάχιστα πορευόμενος πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδόν, νομίζων, εἰ θᾶττον ἔλθοι, ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι. (*h*) Ὑπὲρ δὲ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη ὄνομα δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πλοίοις διαβαίνοντες.

2. Translate: (*a*) He was exceedingly pleased because you crossed before the rest replied whether they would do so or not. (*b*) But when Socrates learned that he had gone up with Cyrus against the king, he was not at all (adverb. acc.) pleased. (*c*) We know that the breasts of the soldiers were not made-wet as they crossed (= crossing) the Euphrates. (*d*) Pray that Cyrus may be fortunate in-the-matters-for-which (ἐφ' ἅ) he is marching.

3. (*a*) Decline: ὕδωρ, H. 182, *a*; G. 60, 5, 29. δυσπόρευτος, H. 225; G. 63. (*b*) Learn the Vocabulary of Lesson XX., (*a*) pronouncing carefully each word, observing its translation, and dwelling upon it

1 *Cf.* Eng, mono-*poly.*
2 A Persian coin, equal to about 24 cents.
3 στενός, *narrow*; χώρᾱ, *place.*
4 *Cf.* ἀπο-βιβάζω XLI.
5 *Cf.* Eng. *hydrant, hydro*-phobia.
6 A grain measure, equal to about 1.1 litres or quarts.
7 *Cf.* χώρᾱ.

Digitized by Google

until it is fixed in the mind, (*b*) copying on a slip of paper the English translations, and then from the English giving the Greek, and *vice versa*.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Meanings of διά; constructions after it. 2. Analysis and synopsis of ἀφικνοῦνται. 3. Declension of εὖρος. 4. The doubling of ρ. 5. The form Μάσκᾱ. 6. *Manner*. 7. Future and aorist formation in liquid verbs. 8. Future and aorist of verbs in -αζω, -ιζω. 9. Theme and principal parts of ὀρύττω and ἐπέλιπε. 10. Value of the obol, the shekel. 11. Participle with διαγίγνομαι. 12. Declension of compound adjectives. 13. Principal parts and classification of ἐφίστημι; of ἔταξε. 14. Cognate accusative.

LESSON XLVIII.

ANABASIS I. v. 8, 9.

1. NOTES.

§ **8.** ὥσπερ ὀργῇ: on the construction, *cf.* κύκλῳ, § **4.** συν-επι-σπεῦσαι κτέ, *to help in hastening forward.* σύν has here the same force (that of *helping*) as in συν-εκ-βιβάζειν, § **7.** ἵε-ντο, *they sent themselves, rushed:* from ἵη-μι, *send, let go;* not to be confused with εἶμι or εἰμί. ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι κτέ, *just as any one would run for a victory, even down a very,* etc. Note the optative, and *cf.* ὀκνοίην ἄν XXXVIII. § **17.** ἢ ὥς τις ἂν ᾤετο, *than* [omit ὡς, *as*] *any one might think, i. e.* if he were observing them. The past indicative thus used in a conclusion is called the hypothetical indicative. Without ἄν, what would ᾤετο mean? μετεώρους . . ἀμάξᾱς, *i. e.* they lifted them up, and brought them out of the mud.

§ **9.** τὸ δὲ σύμπᾶν, *upon the whole,* adverbial accusative: *cf.* οὐδὲν ἤχθετο XV. δῆλος ἦν σπεύδων: *cf.* δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος XXVI. § **11.**

Digitized by Google

ὅπου μὴ καθέζετο, where he did not halt, i. e. except (*εἰ μή*) *where he halted.* On account of the conditional idea in the sentence, the negative is *μή*, not *οὐ*. *ὅσῳ . . . τοσούτῳ*, **quanto, . . . tanto** (degree of difference; *cf. ἡμέραις* XXXI.), *the more swiftly he proceeded, the more unprepared the king would be.* *μαχεῖσθαι*: fut. of *μάχομαι*. *συν-ιδεῖν δ' ἦν . . . οὖσα, and for one lending his attention* (**animum adhibenti**), *the government of the king was to see into as being strong* (*i. e.* it was possible to see that the government was strong). *ἀρχή*, subject of *ἦν*, the Greek, as usual, preferring the personal construction, *cf. δῆλος ἦν σπεύδων* above, and XXIV., XXV. *συν-ιδεῖν*, 2 aor. inf. (from *συν-οράω*), is loosely attached to *ἦν*. *πλήθει . . . μήκεσι . . . τῷ δι-εσπάσθαι*: datives of *cause*. *τῷ διεσπάσθαι, the scattered condition of his forces:* perf. inf., from *δια-σπάω*. Note the reduplication *ε-*; why not *σε-*? On the infinitive used as a noun, *cf. τοῦ ἀθροίζειν* XIV. *δυνάμεις*: subject of *διεσπάσθαι*. *διὰ ταχέων, through swift means; quickly, rapidly.*

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *σύν*, prefixed to a verb, frequently has the idea of *aiding* in the act denoted by the simple verb.

2. *ἵστημι* has a 1st and 2d perfect participle (*ἑστηκώς*, *ἑστώς*) without difference of meaning.

3. The Greek prefers the personal construction (*δῆλος ἦν, he was evident*) to the impersonal (*δῆλον ἦν*). Occasionally it is impossible to render a personal construction literally and in good English; *e. g. συν-ιδεῖν ἦν ἡ ἀρχὴ ἰσχυρὰ οὖσα, the government was to perceive as being strong, i. e. it was possible to perceive that the government was strong.*

4. The infinitive, even when used as a noun, may take a subject.

5. The English, *they lifted up and brought out the wagons*, may become *they brought out the uplifted wagons*, in being put into Greek.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Comparison of *ἀγαθός*	H. 254, 1.	G. 73, 1.
2. The genitive with substantives . .	H. 729, *a–g.*	G. 167.
3. The present system of *ἵημι*	H. 476.	G. 127, III.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀναγκαῖος, *necessary*; neut., *a necessity.*
2. αἱ ἀναξυρίδες, *Persian trow-*
3. ὁ γή-λοφος,[1] *hill.* [*sers.*
4. δια-σπάω,[2] *draw apart, separate.*
5. δ *a*-τρίβω,[3] *wear away; delay.*
6. εἰσ-πηδάω, *jump into.*
7. ἐκ-κομίζω, *bring out.*
8. ἔνιοι, *some.*
9. ἐπισῖτισμός, *provisioning, taking supplies.*
10. εὐθύς, *immediately.*
11. ἡ εὐταξίᾱ,[4] *good order.*
12. ἵημι,[5] *send, hurl.*
13. καθέζομαι, *sit down, rest.*
14. ὁ κάνδυς, *caftan* (a Persian vest).
15. κράτιστος, *most powerful, best.*
16. μάλα, *very, exceedingly.*
17. μάχομαι,[6] *fight, contend with.*
18. τὸ μέρος, *part, portion.*
19. μετέωρος,[7] *lifted, raised* (in mid air).
20. τὸ μῆκος[8] *length.*
21. ἡ νίκη,[9] *victory.*
22. ὁ νόος (νοῦς), *mind, attention.*
23. ἡ ὀργή, *anger.*
24. τὸ πλῆθος, *number, multitude, extent.*
25. ποικίλος, *many-colored, embroidered.*
26. πολυτελής, *-ές, costly, rich.*
27. πορφύρεος, *-οῦς, purple.*
28. πρᾱνής,[10] *-ές, steep.*
29. προσ-έχω, *hold to, apply.*
30. ῥίπτω, *throw, throw off.*
31. σπεύδω, *hasten.*
32. συν-επι-σπεύδω, *help in hastening onward.*
33. συν-αγείρω, *collect together.*
34. συν-οράω, *observe, perceive.*
35. σχολαῖος, *slow; -ως*, adv., *slowly.*
36. ὁ τράχηλος, *throat.*
37. ἡ χείρ,[11] *hand.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Compare: πρᾱνής, πολυτελής, ποικίλος, ταχέως, σχολαίως, σχολαῖος, ἰσχυρός, ἀσθενής. (Grammar Lesson XI.)

2. Principal parts, theme, and class of ῥίπτω, τυγχάνω, διδράσκω, ἔχω, τρίβω, μάχομαι.

[1] γῆ, *earth,* and λόφος, *an eminence.*
[2] *Cf.* ἀπέσπα XLVI.
[3] *Cf.* Eng. *diatribe.*
[4] εὖ, *well,* and τάττω, *arrange.*
[5] *Cf.* ἀφ-ιέναι XXXVIII. § 19.
[6] *Cf.* μάχη, *battle,* XXV., Eng. logo-*machy.*
[7] *Cf.* Eng. *meteor.*
[8] *Cf.* μακρός, *long,* XLVII.
[9] *Cf.* νῑκάω, XXV. § 8.
[10] *Cf.* Lat. **prōnus.**
[11] *Cf.* Eng. *chir*-ography.

Digitized by Google

3. (*a*) Ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν πρὸς ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. (*b*) Τῇ δ' αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐπὶ τὴν πηγὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἰὼν καὶ ἐκεῖ θεωρήσας τὴν ἀγοράν, ἀπῆλθε ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατοῦ σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν. (*c*) Ὅσῳ πλεῖον ἔχομεν τοσούτῳ πλεῖον βουλόμεθα ἔχειν. (*d*) Τοῖς τὸν νοῦν προσέχουσι δῆλόν ἐστι τοῦτο τὸ μέρος τοῦ γηλόφου ἰσχυρῶς πρᾶνές. (*e*) Ὑπέσχετό μοι εἰ καταπηδήσας συνεπισπεύσαιμι τὰ σκευοφόρα, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρίν μοι πολλοὺς ποικίλους τε καὶ πολυτελεῖς κάνδυς τοὺς πορφυροῦς ἀποδοίη.

4. Translate: (*a*) If he should apply his attention to this conspiracy against himself, he would quickly perceive that it is very dangerous.[1] (*b*) The more we have, the more we want. (*c*) It is said that Apollo was the best of all the gods in musical-skill. (*d*) It was indeed evident that the kingdom was weak on account of the barbarians dispersing their armies. (*e*) They thought that if any one made a quick campaign, the city might be conquered.

5. Select fifty of the words in Chap. I. whose meanings are most difficult to retain, make a list of these meanings, and practise giving the corresponding Greek until it can be done without hesitation.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Declension of neuters in **-ος**. 2. The supplementary participle. 3. Declension of *χείρ*, *νοῦς*.[2] 4. Hypothetical optative; hypothetical indicative. 5. Personal and impersonal constructions. 6. Classification and orders of the mutes. 7. Accent in the 2d aorist infinitive and participle. 8. Declension of *ἑστηκώς*. 9. Reduplication of *ψεύδω*, *σπάω*, *ἵστημι*, *λαμβάνω*; the form *εἴρηκα*. 10. The hypothetical indicative. 11. Substantive use of the infinitive. 12. Its loose use. 13. *μετεώρους*, *ἐξεκόμισαν*.

[1] Lesson XXXVIII. § 19.

[2] H. 157; G. 43.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XLIX.

ANABASIS I. v. 10–13.

1. NOTES.

§ **10.** **κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμούς**, opposite *the journeys through the desert: cf.* **κατ' ἀντιπέρᾱς** XV. **στεγάσματα**, *as coverings* [for their tents]. **ἐ-πίμπλα-σαν χόρτου**, *they filled with light hay.* **συν-έσπων**: *cf.* **ἀπέσπᾱ** XLVI. § **3**; **διεσπάσθαι** XLVIII. **ὡς μὴ . . . ὕδωρ**, *so that the water did not touch the hay.* **ὡς** = **ὥστε**; *cf.* IX. **οἶνον . . . σῖτον**: appositives to **ἐπιτήδεια**. Note carefully the arrangement of attributives in this clause: **ἐκ**, *out of*; **ἀπό**, *from, from off.*

§ **11.** **ἀμφι-λεξάντων**, — gen. abs., with **τοῦ** (= **τινός**) after **Μένωνος**, and **τοῦ** supplied before **τῶν Κλεάρχου**, — *because some one of . . . had some dispute*, etc. **ἐχαλέπαινον**, *bore it hard, were provoked: cf.* XLIII. § **12**, and **χαλεπῶς φέρω** XXXII.

§ **12.** **ἔ-ησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ**, *hurls (with) his axe.* **αὐτοῦ ἥμαρτεν**, *missed him.*

§ **13.** **παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὅπλα**, *passes the word along, "to arms!" orders them to arms.* **τούτων δὲ . . . Θρᾷκας**: a parenthesis. **ἐκ-πεπλῆχθαι**: perf. inf. mid., from **ἐκ πλήττω**, theme **πληγ**. The ending **-σθαι** drops **σ** coming between **γ** and **θ**, and **γ** then becomes **χ**; so **λαμβάνω**, perf. **εἴληφα**, inf. mid. **εἰλῆφθαι**.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. **πέρᾱν**, an adverb of *place*, is followed by the genitive.

2. Verbs of *filling* govern the genitive.

3. Negative result is expressed by **ὡς μή** or **ὥστε μή**, with the infinitive.

4. Verbs of *touching* govern the genitive.

5. **τοῦ**, meaning the same as **τινός**, is an enclitic.

6. Verbs signifying *to be angry*, may take the dative of the cause.

7. Verbs of *missing* are construed with the genitive.

8. In the perfect infinitive middle the ending **-σθαι** loses **σ** between consonants.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of γόνυ	H. 216, 3.	G. 60, 5, **6**.
2. Genitive with verbs	H. 736–743.	G. 170, 171.
3. Conjugation of ἵστημι	H. 331, 335, 336, 351.	G. 123, 121, 1, 2 (*d*).

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἁμαρτάνω (theme ἁμαρτ), *miss.*
2. ἀμφι-λέγω (talk on both sides), *wrangle, quarrel.*
3. ἡ ἀξίνη, *axe.*
4. ἅπτομαι, *touch.*
5. ἀφ-ιππεύω,[1] *ride away.*
6. ἡ βάλανος, *nut*: (of the date-palm) *date.*
7. τὸ γόνυ,[2] *knee.*
8. ἡ διάβασις,[1] *place of crossing; ford.*
9. δι-ελαύνω, *ride through.*
10. ἡ διφθέρᾱ,[3] *hide*; (hide made into a) *bag.*
11. ἐκ-πλήττω,[4] *strike out*; (of one's senses) *dumbfound, amaze.*
12. ἐμ-βάλλω,[5] *throw on*; πληγὰς ἐμβάλλω, *throw on blows, chastise by beating.*
13. ἡ κάρφη, *hay.*
14. κατα-σκέπτομαι,[6] *examine.*
15. κατα-φεύγω, *flee for refuge, escape to.*
16. κοῦφος, *light.*
17. κρίνω, *decide, judge.*
18. ὁ λίθος,[7] *stone.*
19. τὸ ξύλον, *piece of wood.*
20. ὀλίγος,[8] *small*; plur., *few.*
21. ὀργίζομαι,[9] *am angry.*
22. οὔπω, *not yet.*
23. πέρᾱ(ν),[10] *beyond, across.*
24. πίμπλημι,[11] *fill.*
25. πληγή, **plāga**, *blow.*
26. προσ-ελαύνω, *ride forward, up.*
27. τὸ στέγασμα,[12] *covering.*
28. συ-σπάω,[13] *draw together.*
29. ἡ σχεδίᾱ,[14] *frame, raft.*
30. σχίζω.[15] **scindo**, *split.*
31. ὁ φοῖνιξ, *date-palm.*

[1] Derivation?
[2] Same in origin as **genu** and the Eng. *knee.*
[3] How different from τὸ δέρμα? *Cf.* Eng. diph-*theria.*
[4] Theme πλαγ, πληγ. *Cf.* πληγή.
[5] *Cf.* ἐμβάλλει XXV.
[6] *Cf.* σκεπτέον XXXV.
[7] *Cf.* Eng. *litho*-graphy, mono-*lith.*
[8] *Cf.* Eng. *olig*-archy.
[9] *Cf.* ὀργή XLVIII.
[10] *Cf.* κατ' ἀντιπέρᾱς XV.
[11] *Cf.* πλή-ρης, σύμ-πλε-ως, πλῆ-θος, **pleo.**
[12] From στέγω, = **tego**, *cover.*
[13] *Cf.* ἀπο-σπάω, XLVI., δια-σπάω XLVIII.
[14] How different from τὸ πλοῖον?
[15] *Cf.* Eng. *schism.*

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) *Τούτῳ δὲ τῷ ἵππει πολλάς τε καὶ ἰσχυρὰς πληγὰς ἐμβαλῶ, ἐὰν μή μοι πείθηται* (*b*) *Ὅσοις μὲν λίθοις τὸν γυμνῆτα ἧκε, πάντες αὐτοῦ ἥμαρτον· ἡ δ' ἀξίνη τοῦ ποδὸς ἐκείνου ἔτυχε.* (*c*) *Κεκελεύκαμεν ὑμᾶς μὴ ἅπτεσθαι τούτων τῶν στλεγγίδων τοῦ φοινικιστοῦ.* (*d*) *Ταῦτα δὴ πράγματα ἐπὶ τῶν γονάτων τῶν θεῶν ἐστιν.* (*e*) *Ἡ τῶν ἀρχαίων σοφία μέγα θαυμαστέα ἐστίν.*

2. Translate: (*a*) This is the cave in which are the sources of the river which we must cross (= is to be crossed, *διαβατέος*) when we arrive directly-opposite the city of the great king. (*b*) We will not touch those things which do not belong to us. (*c*) Whenever they crossed the river they used to fill their leathern bags with food which they bought in the markets of the barbarians. (*d*) Whenever we wish to split wood rapidly, we use an axe. (*e*) You know well that the nut of the date-palm is sweet.

3. Review carefully all the words in the Voc. of Lessons X. and XX.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Construction of the genitives and the datives in this Lesson. 2. The principal parts of *πίμπλημι*, *ἐμβάλλω*, *ἁμαρτάνω*, *καταφεύγω*, *παραγγέλλω*, *μένω*, *τίθημι*, *ἐκπλήττω*. 3. Classification of the preceding verbs. 4. Formation and comparison of the adverb *ἰσχυρῶς*. 5. The short forms for the genitive and dative singular of *τίς*. 6. Conjugation of *συσπάω* and *πίμπλημι*, present system, active and middle.

Digitized by Google

LESSON L.

ANABASIS I. v. 14–17.

1. NOTES.

§ **14.** ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσιών, κτέ, *for he happened to be coming on later, behind*, etc. ἔτυχε, *cf.* ἔτυχεν XLVII. § **8**; ὕστερος, on the case, *cf.* προτέρᾳ XXXI. § **25**; προσιών, *cf.* παρών III. On the number of ἔτυχε, *cf.* ἔμεινε XXXII. § **1**. εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρων, *between both*. ἐδεῖτο . . . ταῦτα : *cf.* closely with δεῖται . . . καταλῦσαι XVIII. αὐτοῦ . . . καταλευσθῆναι, *when he wanted little to be stoned to death* (*i. e. narrowly escaped being stoned*).

§ **15.** ἐν τούτῳ, *meanwhile*. ἐπ-ῆει : *cf.* ἐπ-ῆεσαν XXVIII.

§ **16.** οὐκ ἴστε : from οἶδα. κατακεκόψεσθαι (fut. perf.), *shall have been cut to pieces, i. e. shall certainly be*, etc. Note, the future perfect for the future here seems to make the act *immediate* or *decisive*. ἐμοῦ ὕστερον : *cf.* προτέρᾳ Κύρου XXXI. κακῶς ἐχόντων : what circumstance is denoted by the genitive absolute here? τῶν . . . ὄντων, *than those*, etc.: *cf.* τῶν ἄλλων πλέον XLIV. § **14**.

§ **17.** ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο, (became in himself), *came to himself*. κατὰ χώρᾱν ἔθεντο κτέ, *they brought their arms to their right place; they returned to their original quarters*.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Words meaning *earlier, later*, standing as predicates to verbs of motion, agree with the subject, and are therefore not adverbs.

2. A verb having two or more subjects, and preceding them, may agree in number with the nearest only.

3. ὀλίγου δεῖ, followed by the infinitive, = (*he*) *almost* or (*he*) *very nearly; e. g.* ὀλίγου δεῖ ἐβλήθη (βληθῆναι), *he was very nearly hit*.

4. The future perfect may be used for the simple future to represent a future act as certainly about to occur.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. First aorist system of liquid verbs, active and middle	H. 327.	G. 96.
2. Future perfect of λύω	H. 319.	G. 96.
3. The future perfect	H. 466, 467, 850 and *a.*	G. 92, 4, IV.; 110, IV. *c.*
4. Predicate adjective, equivalent to an English adverb	H. 619.	G. 138, N. 7.
5. The genitive with δέω	H. 743, *b.*	G. 172, 1.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἐξ-ίστημι, *set, place, out of*; mid., *stand out of.*
2. κακῶς ἔχειν,[1] *be* or *go ill, be in a bad condition.*
3. κατα-λεύω,[2] *stone down, to death.*
4. τὸ πάθος,[3] *suffering, treatment.*
5. τὸ παλτόν, *light spear, javelin* (used for hurling or striking).
6. πρᾴως,[4] *mildly.*
7. πρόσ-ειμι, *come to, near; approach.*
8. πυνθάνομαι (theme πυθ), *ask, learn by inquiry.*
9. συν άπτω,[5] *make touch, join together*; μάχην, *join battle.*
10. τίθημι τὰ ὅπλα; mid., *take a military position* (in line), *stand under arms* (after advancing to or from a place).
11. ὕστερος,[6] *later, behind.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Εὖ δ' οὖν ᾔδεσαν τὴν τάξιν ἡ προσιοῦσα ὑστέρα ἐτύγχανεν ὅτι κωλύσοι μὴ τὸν ἑρμηνέα καταπετρωθῆναι. (*b*) Οὐ δὴ πολὺ Κύρου ὕστερον θήσονται τὰ ὅπλα κατὰ χώρᾱν τῆς ἕριδος παυσάμενοι. (*c*) Συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόντᾱν καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἑπτά. καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὺς κελεύει ὁπλίτᾱς ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα περὶ τὴν αὑτοῦ σκηνήν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὁπλίτας.

[1] *Cf.* εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχειν XI.
[2] *Cf.* κατα-πετρόω XXXII.
[3] *Cf.* πάσχω (theme παθ, πενθ) XXXIII.
[4] *Cf.* πρᾶος XLIII.
[5] *Cf.* ἅπτεσθαι XLIX.
[6] *Cf.* ὕστερον (used adverb.) XXXII.

Digitized by Google

2. Translate: (*a*) They knew not what they were doing until they saw Cyrus standing in their midst, and begging them not to join battle. (*b*) Then in truth they returned to their better senses. (*c*) Any one might well be angry with you, because when the generals were almost cut-down, you seem to speak so lightly about it.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts of *τυγχάνω*, *ἕπομαι*, *ἄγω*, *δέω*, *λέγω*, *πυνθάνομαι*. 2. Classification of *κελεύω*, *ἔλαβε*, *ἐλαύνων*, *συνάψετε*. 3. Theme of *νομίζω*, *κόπτω*, *ἔχω*, *ἀκούσᾱς*, *ἔθεντο*. 4. (§ **14**.) Construction of *αὐτῷ*, Κλεάρχου, *αὐτοῦ*; (§ **16**.) of *πολύ*, *ἐμοῦ*, *ὕστερον*, *τῶν . . . ὄντων*. 5. Inflexion of *πράττω*, perfect indicative middle. 6. Synopsis of *ἔθεντο*, 2d aorist active, and middle 2d singular.

LESSON LI. — REVIEW.

1. TEXT: ANABASIS I. IV. and V.

This is a most important review, and should be taken up carefully. Go over the translation several times; mark the words whose meaning it is hard to retain; write them and repeat them with their meanings until they become thoroughly impressed. Apply just as far as possible, and step by step, the method of review suggested at the beginning of Lesson X. Be sure that if you wish to master the five remaining chapters of this First Book of the Anabasis, you must master thoroughly these first fifty Lessons, and, above all, this Review.

2. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

1. *τὸ πλευρον.*
2. *τὸ ἅλφιτον.*
3. *ἡ ἀνάβασις.*
4. *αἱ ἀναξυρίδες.*
5. *ἡ ἀξίνη.*
6. *τὸ ἀργύριον.*
7. *ἡ ἀρετή.*
8. *τὸ ἄρωμα.*
9. *τὸ ἀψίνθιον.*
10. *ἡ βάλανος.*
11. *ἡ βίᾱ.*
12. *ὁ γήλοφος.*

Digitized by Google

13. τὸ γόνυ.
14. ἡ διάβασις.
15. ἡ διφθέρᾱ.
16. ἡ δορκάς.
17. τὸ ἐμπόριον.
18. ὁ ἐπισῑτισμός.
19. ἡ εὐταξίᾱ.
20. ἡ ζώνη.
21. τὸ ἡμιωβύλιον.
22. ὁ θεός.
23. ὁ ἰχθῦς.
24. ὁ κάλαμος.
25. ὁ κάνδυς.
26. ἡ καπίθη.
27. ἡ κάρφη.
28. τὸ κρέας.
29. ὁ κύκλος.
30. ἡ κώμη.
31. ὁ λίθος.
32. ὁ λῑμός.
33. ὁ λόγος.
34. ἡ λοχᾱγίᾱ.
35. ὁ μαστός.
36. τὸ μέρος.
37. τὸ μῆκος.
38. ὁ μισθοφόρος.
39. ἡ μνᾶ.
40. ἡ μυριάς.
41. ὁ ναύαρχος.
42. ἡ ναῦς.
43. ἡ νίκη.
44. ὁ νοῦς.
45. τὸ ξύλον.
46. ὁ ὀβολός.
47. ἡ ὀλκάς.
48. τὸ ὄνομα.
49. ὁ ὄνος.
50. ὁ ὄνος ἀλέτης.
51. ἡ ὀργή.
52. ἡ ὠτίς.
53. τὸ πάθος.
54. τὸ παλτόν.
55. ἡ πάροδος.
56. ὁ πατήρ.
57. ἡ πέρδιξ.
58. ἡ πέτρᾱ.
59. ὁ πηλός.
60. τὸ πλῆθος.
61. ἡ πύλη.
62. ὁ σίγλος.
63. ὁ σῖτος.
64. τὸ στάδιον.
65. ἡ στενοχωρίᾱ.
66. ἡ στρουθός.
67. τὸ τεῖχος.
68. τὸ τέκνον.
69. ὁ τόπος.
70. ὁ τράχηλος.
71. τὸ ὕδωρ.
72. ἡ ὕλη.
73. ὁ φίλος.
74. τὸ φρούριον.
75. ἡ φυλακή.
76. ἡ χείρ.
77. ὁ χιλός.
78. ὁ χοῖνιξ.
79. ὁ χόρτος.
80. ἡ ὥρᾱ.

VERBS.

1. ἀδικέω.
2. αἴρω.
3. ἁλίσκομαι.
4. ἁμαρτάνω.
5. ἀμφι-λέγω.
6. ἀνα-πείθω.
7. ἀνα-στρέφω.
8. ἀν-ίστημι.
9. ἀντ-αγοράζω.
10. ἀπ-αγγέλλω.
11. ἀπ-αγορεύω.
12. ἀπ-ελαύνω.
13. ἀπ-έρχομαι.
14. ἀπο-βιβάζω.
15. ἀπο-διδράσκω.
16. ἀπο-λείπω.
17. ἀπο-σπάω.
18. ἀπο-σῡλάω.
19. ἀπο-φεύγω.
20. ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι.
21. ἅπτομαι.
22. ἄρχω.
23. ἀφ-ιππεύω.
24. βρέχω.
25. δια-δέχομαι.
26. δια-σπάω.
27. δια-τελέω.
28. δια-τρῑβω.
29. δι-ελαύνω.
30. δι-έρχομαι.
31. δι-ίστημι.
32. διώκω.
33. δύναμαι (2 senses).
34. ἐάω.
35. εἰσ-πηδάω.
36. ἐκ-κομίζω.

Digitized by Google

37. ἐκ-κόπτω.
38. ἐκ-πλήττω.
39. ἐμ-βαίνω.
40. ἐμ-βάλλω.
41. ἔν-ειμι.
42. ἐν-τίθημι.
43. ἐξ-ίστημι.
44. ἐπι-λείπω.
45. ἐπι-σῑτίζομαι.
46. εὐτυχέω.
47. εὔχομαι
48. ἐφ-ίστημι.
49. ζάω.
50. ἡγέομαι.
51. ἵημι.
52. καθ-ήκω.
53. καθ ἑζομαι.
54. κακῶς ἔχειν; κ. ποιεῖν.
55. κατα-καίω.
56. κατα λεύω.
57. κατα-σκέπτομαι.
58. κατα-φεύγω.
59. κρίνω.
60. μάχομαι.
61. μέλει.
62. οἰκτείρω.
63. οἴχομαι.
64. ὀργίζομαι.
65. ὁρμέω.
66. ὀρύττω.
67. παρ έρχομαι.
68. παύω.
69. περι ρ-ρέω.
70. πέτομαι.
71. πίμπλημι.
72. πλησιάζω.
73. πονέω.
74. πρίαμαι.
75. προ-διδράσκω.
76. πρό-ειμι.
77. πρόσ-ειμι.
78. προσ ελαύνω.
79. προ-τῑμάω.
80. πυνθάνομαι.
81. πωλέω.
82. ῥίπτω.
83. σκηνέω.
84. στρατηγέω.
85. συγ-καλέω.
86. συν-αγείρω.
87. συν-άπτω.
88. συν-εκ-βιβάζω.
89. συν-επι-σπεύδω.
90. συν-οράω.
91. συ-σπάω.
92. σχίζω.
93. τίθημι τὰ ὅπλα.
94. τυγχάνω (2 senses).
95. ὑπο-χωρέω.
96. φιλοτῑμέομαι.
97. φρουρέω.
98. φύω.
99. χαλεπαίνω.
100. χωρέω.
101. ψηφίζομαι.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄθῡμος.
2. αἴτιος.
3. ἁπαλός.
4. Ἀττικός.
5. ἀφανής.
6. βραχύς.
7. δειλός.
8. διαβατός.
9. δυσπόρευτος.
10. ἐλάφειος.
11. ἐνενήκοντα.
12. ἕνιοι.
13. ἐντελής.
14. ἔρημος.
15. ἕτερος.
16. εὐώδης.
17. ἡδύς.
18. ἠλίβατος.
19. θεῖος.
20. κακός.
21. κοῦφος.
22. κράτιστος.
23. μακρός.
24. μετέωρος.
25. μόνος.
26. ὀλίγος.
27. ὁμαλής.
28. παντοῖος.
29. πλεθριαῖος.
30. ποικίλος.
31. πολυτελής.
32. πορφυροῦς.
33. πρᾶνής.
34. πρᾶος.
35. στενός.
36. σχολαῖος.
37. ὕστερος.
38. φίλος.
39. ψῑλός.

Digitized by Google

ADVERBS.

1. ἄνω, ἀνωτέρω.
2. αὐτόθι.
3. ἔξω.
4. ἔσωθεν.
5. εὐθύς.
6. καὶ ταῦτα.
7. κακῶς.
8. μά.
9. μάλα.
10. μεγαλοπρεπῶς.
11. μηκέτι, οὐκέτι.
12. οὐδέ.
13. οὔπω.
14. οὐπώποτε.
15. πάνυ.
16. πάλαι.
17. πεζῇ.
18. πέραν.
19. πρᾴως.
20. προθύμως.
21. σαφῶς.
22. τοὔμπαλιν.
23. ὕπερθεν.
24. χωρίς.

CONJUNCTIONS.

ἐὰν μή.
ἐπειδαν.
ἐπήν.
πότερον . . . ἤ.

PRONOUNS.

ἔγωγε.
ὅσπερ.

PREPOSITIONS.

ἕνεκα (strictly an adv.).

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Mutes** before μ, H. 53 ; G. 16, 3. Transfer of aspiration, H. 74, *b* ; G. 17, 2, N.

2. **Declension** : μνᾶ, H. 144 ; G. 38. πατήρ, H. 188, 189; G. 57, 1. γέρας, H. 191 ; G. 56. ἰχθύς, H. 201 ; G. 53, 2. ναῦς, H. 206, 207 ; G. 54. γόνυ, H. 216, 3 ; G. 60, 5, 6. γυνή, H. 216, 4 ; G. 60, 5, 7. Gender of nouns, H. 125, *a*, *b*, *c* ; G. 33, 2, NN.

3. (*a*) **Numerals** 1 to 20, H. 288 ; G. 76. (*b*) εἷς, δύο, τρεῖς, H. 290 ; G. 77.

4. **Comparison** : (*a*) ἀγαθός, H. 254, 1 ; G. 73, 1. (*b*) Endings -ιων, -ιστος, H. 253 ; G. 72, 1.

5. **Verbs** : (*a*) Pres. system of τῑμάω, H. 323 ; G. 98. (*b*) Of verbs in -όω, H. 325 ; G. 98. (*c*) Liquid verbs, 1st aorist, H. 327 ; G. 96. (*d*) Future perfect λύω, H. 319 ; G. 96. (*e*) ἵστημι, H. 331, 335, 336, 351, 414, 415, 534, 5 ; G. 123, 121, 1, 2, *d*. (*f*) δείκνῡμι, H. 332 ; G. 123. (*g*) τίθημι, H. 329, 333, 334 ; G. 123. (*h*) δίδωμι, H. 330 ; G. 123. (*i*) Future of liquid verbs, H. 422 ; G. 110, II. 2. (*j*) Aspirated perfect, H. 452 ; G. 110, IV. *b*. (*k*) φημί, H. 481 ; G. 127, IV. (*l*) οἶδα, H. 491 ; G. 127, VII. (*m*) Future perfect, H. 466, 467, 850 and *a* ; G. 92, 4, IV., 110, IV. *c*. (*n*) ἵημι, H. 476 ; G. 127, III.

Digitized by Google

6. **Syntax**: (*a*) Pred. adj. equivalent to Eng. adverb, H. **619**; G. **138**, N. 7. (*b*) Cognate acc., H. **715**, *a*, *b*; G. **159**, NN. 2, 4. (*c*) Accusative of specification, H. **718**; G. **160**, 1. (*d*) Genitive with substantives, H. **729**, *a–g*; G. **167**, 1–6. (*e*) With verbs, H. **736–742**; G. **170–173**. (*f*) With **δέω**, H. **743**, *a*, *b*; G. **172**, NN. 1, 2. (*g*) With verbs of buying, H. **746**; G. **178**. (*h*) Instrument, means, cause, manner, H. **776**; G. **188**, 1, 2. (*i*) Future in the ind. disc., H. **855**; G. **203**. (*j*) Infin. in ind. disc., H. **930**, 2, **946**; G. **246** and note.

LESSON LII.

ANABASIS I. VI. 1–6.

1. NOTES.

§ 1. **προ-ιόντων**, on the construction, etc., *cf.* Chap. II. **17**. **οὗτοι**, *i. e. the horsemen*, suggested by **ἵππων**. **καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο . . . ἦν**, *sc.* the conclusion **καὶ τοῦτο ἔκαον**, or render **εἴ τι** *whatever*. **γένει**, *in birth*, a dative indicating the *manner* of his connection with the king. **τὰ πολέμια**, *regarding the matters of war*; construction? **καὶ πρόσθεν**, *on a former occasion also*. **καταλλαγείς**, *cf.* **συν-αλλαγέντι**, XXI.

§ 3. **ὡς ᾤετο**, modifies what?

§ 5. **τὴν κρίσιν . . . ὡς ἐγένετο**, *the trial . . . how it took place*, *i. e. how the trial took place*. **ἀπόρρητον**, neuter, *a thing of secresy*.

§ 6. **ὅτι δίκαιόν ἐστι . . . ἀνθρώπων**, *what is just . . . before men*; object of **βουλευόμενος**. antecedent of **τοῦτο**? mode of **πράξω**? why? **περὶ Ὀρόντᾱ τουτο-ί**, *regarding this* (*-ί*) *here Orontās*; note the force of *-ί*; *cf.* the Lat. **-ce**, **hic-ce**.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The noun or pronoun with which a participle is in the absolute construction has occasionally to be supplied.

2. Indefinite things are denoted not only by the indefinite pronoun, but also by a clause with **εἴ τις**, **εἴ τι**; **siquis**, **siquid**.

3. The dative of *manner* is used to denote that in respect to which a thing is true.

Digitized by Google

4. The subject of a subordinate clause may be anticipated in a sentence by being made object in the main clause.

5. An adjective referring to a preceding masculine or feminine noun may be neuter, when the noun passes over into the general idea of a *thing*.

6. **-ι** added to a demonstrative pronoun renders it *deictic, i.e.* makes it refer to something as present.

3. FORM LESSON.

PRIN. PARTS.	DECLENSION.	ANALYSIS.
1. φαίνω.	1. κρίσις.	1. προσπολεμῶν.
2. γιγνώσκω.	2. ἴχνος.	2. ἀναγνούς.
3. γράφω.	3. ὑπόμνημα.	3. καταλλαγείς.
4. δέχομαι.	4. ἀναγνούς.	4. ἐνεδρεύσας.
5. καίω (κάω)	5. προσπολεμῶν.	5. διαγγεῖλαι.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀνα-γιγνώσκω, *recognize; read.*
2. ἀπό-ρ-ρητος,[1] **-ον**, *not to be told, se-*
3. τὸ γένος,[2] **genus**, *birth.* [*cret.*
4. γράφω,[3] *write.*
5. ἡ δεξιά,[4] *pledge.*
6. δι-αγγέλλω, *carry word through, report.*
7. εἰκάζω, *liken; estimate, suppose.*
8. ἐν-εδρεύω, *lie in ambush.*
9. ἐξ-αγγέλλω, *bring out word, make known.*
10. ἡ ἐπιστολή, **epistola**, *letter.*
11. ἕτοιμος, *ready.*
12. τὸ ἴχνος, *trace, track, footprint.*
13. κατα-καίνω,[5] *kill, put to death.*
14. ὁ κόπρος, *dung.*
15. ἡ κρίσις,[6] *judgment, trial.*
16. παρα-καλέω, *call to my side, invite.*
17. προ-κατα-καίω,[7] *burn in advance.*
18. προσ-ήκων,[8] *coming to; related to.*
19. προσ-πολεμέω, *wage war against.*
20. ὁ στίβος, *trodden* or *beaten path.*
21. ὁ σύμ-βουλος, *counsellor.*
22. ὑπήκοος, **-ον**,[9] *subject to, obedient.*
23. ὑπο-δέχομαι, *receive, welcome.*
24. τὸ ὑπόμνημα, *reminder.*
25. φράζω, *tell, declare.*
26. χρήσιμος, *useful.*
27. ὠφέλιμος, *serviceable.*

[1] ἀπό, *from, not* (like α- priv.), and the theme ῥε, *speak; cf.* εἴρηκα XXIII.
[2] *Cf.* γίγνομαι, theme γεν; Lat. **gigno, genus.**
[3] *Cf.* Eng. geo-*graphy*, *graph*-ite.
[4] Strictly *right hand, sc.* χείρ.
[5] καίνω, same as κτείνω; *cf.* ἀπο-κτενῶν VII.
[6] Same derivation as κρίνω; *cf.* κρῖνας XLIX.
[7] *Cf.* κατέκαυσεν XLIII. § 10.
[8] From ἥκω, *come.* Associated with what verb?
[9] ὑπό and ἀκούω; *cf.* Lat. **obedio,** = **ob** + **audio.**

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate : (*a*) *Ἡμεῖς γ' ὀκνοίημεν ἂν τούτοις τοῖς ἡγεμόσιν ἕπεσθαι οἷς δοίητε, μὴ ἡμᾶς αὐτῷ τῷ λόχῳ ἀπολέσωσιν.* (*b*) *Εἰ δὴ ἡ τῆς ἐκκλησίας γνώμη δικαιοτέρᾳ φανείη τῶν τοῖς ἑτέροις δοξάντων, ἀξιοῖμεν ἂν τοὺς στρατιώτας στρατηγοὺς γενέσθαι.* (*c*) *Τί οὖν ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας;*[1] *εἰπόντος δὲ τοῦ ἰδιώτου ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθείς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ δυνάστης αὐτόν, Λέγεις οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι;* (*d*) *Συμβουλεύοιμι ἂν ἐγὼ τὸν ἀνδράποδον τοῦτον λάθρᾳ ἀπολέσαι ὡς δύναται τάχιστα.*

2. Translate : (*a*) I replied that they thought it was the time for Orontas to suffer for the bad deeds which he had done. (*b*) He has written many letters to his paymaster (saying) that he would have as many allies as possible when he came. (*c*) It is no secret that when he read the letter he had many suspicions, and then put him to death. (*d*) He told me not to receive you as friends.

3. Review carefully the list of nouns in Lesson XXX., until, from hearing or seeing the English words only, the Greek words can readily be given ; make a constant effort to associate each new word with some already familiar Greek word, an occasional Latin equivalent, or an English derivate or cognate.

LESSON LIII.

ANABASIS I. VI. 7 to the end.

1. NOTES.

7. *ὅτι σε ἠδίκησα, wherein I (have) wronged you ;* the antecedent of *ὅτι* is subject of *ἔστιν*. *ὅτι οὔ, "No;"* note the accent; *cf.* XLIV. § **13**. *οὐδὲν . . . ἀδικούμενος, being injured nothing, i. e. in no respect ;* in the act. voice *ἀδικέω* takes a cognate accusative (*cf.* the rel. part of *ὅτι* above) ; note, in the passive this cognate accusative is still retained. *ὅτι ἐδύνω, what harm you could* (*sc.* *ποιεῖν*). *μεταμέλειν σοι,* that it was-a-counter-care, or change of mind, for you, *i. e. that you repented.*

[1] From *γίγνομαι* : where made ?

Digitized by Google

§ 8. *γενοίμην*, *sc.* *τῷ . . . ἀδελφῷ . . . φίλος καὶ πιστός.*

§ 9. *ἀπό-φηναι . . . δοκεῖ*, *declare your opinion*, [*namely*] *what seems best to you.* *τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι*, *as regards this man*; literally as regards the to be (*τὸ εἶναι*, accusative of specification) or condition [of affairs] with reference to this one.

§ 10. *ἔφη*, subject ? *τῆς ζώνης*, *by the girdle*, genitive of the part touched.

§ 11. *ἄλλοι ἄλλως*, **alii aliter.**

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *ἀδικέω*, *κακῶς ποιέω* take a cognate accusative of the wrong done, as well as an accusative of the person or thing injured.

2. *οὐ*, meaning "*no*," or at the end of a sentence, is accented (*οὔ*).

3. The genitive with *λαμβάνω* denotes the *part taken hold of.*

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

The second passive system, H. 322, 468, 471, 472; G. 96, pp. 108, 109 bottom.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. *ἄδικος*,[1] *-ον*, *unjust.*
2. *ἄλλως*, *otherwise*; *differently.*
3. *ἀπο-φαίνω*, *show*; mid. *reveal one's self* or *for one's self.*
4. *ὁ βωμός*, *altar.*
5. *γέ* (enclitic), *at least* (giving emphasis to the preceding word).
6. *ὁ ἐθελοντής*,[2] *volunteer.*
7. *εἰσ-άγω*, *lead* or *conduct into* or *within.*
8. *ἐκποδών*, *out of the way.*
9. *ἐξ-άγω*, *lead out.*
10. *ἦ*, *verily*, *assuredly.*
11. *ὁ θάνατος*, *death.*[3]
12. *θνήσκω*,[4] *die.*
13. *κακῶς ποιέω*, *do evil* or *harm to*, *injure.*
14. *μετα-μέλει*, **poenitet**, *it repents* (impersonal).
15. *ὁμολογέω*, *acknowledge*; *confess.*
16. *οὐκοῦν* (interrogative), **nonne igitur**, *not therefore?*
17. *προσ-κυνέω*,[5] *prostrate one's self before*, *pay homage to.*
18. *προσ-τάττω*, *assign*, *order*, *command.*

[1] *Cf.* *δίκη*, *δίκαιος*, *ἀδικέω.*

[2] Connected in derivation with what verb?

[3] *Cf.* Eng. *thanat*-opsis (view of *death*).

[4] Theme *θαν* (*cf.* *θάνατος*); so 2 aor. = *ἐ-θ α ν-ον.*

[5] *κυνέω*, *kiss*; probably homage in the Orient was originally shown by prostrating one's self and kissing the feet or the garments of the person revered.

Digitized by Google

19. προσ-τίθημι, *place to*; mid. *place one's self to, join; agree.*
20. πώποτε, *ever yet.*
21. ὁ σκηπτοῦχος,[1] *sceptre-bearer.*
22. ὁ συγγενής,[2] *relative, kinsman.*
23. ἡ σχολή,[3] *leisure.*
24. ὁ τάφος, *burial, grave.*
25. τρίτος, **tertius**, *third.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ φρούραρχος, ἴστε τὴν πατρίδα πολλὰ ἀδικηθεῖσαν τόνδε τὸν τρόπον; (*b*) Ἔστι δὴ χρόνος ὑμῖν μεταμέλειν τε καὶ τᾶς γνώμας ἀμείνους ἀποφήνασθαι. (*c*) Ἐγκέλευστοι οὖν τοὺς παῖδας τῆς χειρὸς λαβόντες, ἐπὶ θάνατον ἐξήγαγον. (*d*) Ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. (*e*) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν χώρᾱν· ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ἀμαξιτὸς καὶ ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις κωλύοι. (*f*) Ἡ δὲ ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητά τε καὶ εὐταξίᾱν ἐθαύμασε· ἡμεῖς δὲ ἤσθημεν ἰδόντες τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον. (*g*) Ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρηλάσαμεν, στήσαντες τὰ ἅρματα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης, πέμψαντες τοὺς ἑρμηνέᾱς παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐκελεύσαμεν προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα.

2. Translate: (*a*) Not even if they should be willing to become faithful to me, should I at least believe them; for I do not trust them. (*b*) Whenever we shall know that those high mountains are fortified for us, we shall remain in the plain. (*c*) For the multitude is great (= much), and they advance with a great shout. (*d*) I have taken (ἄγω) you as allies, because I thought (participle) you to be better [than] and superior [to] many barbarians.

3. Write out a translation of the verbs of Lesson XXX.; by means of this be thoroughly prepared to give the corresponding Greek words. Read the latter part of No. 3 in the Exercises of Lesson LII.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The two objects of ἠδίκησα. 2. Construction of ὕστερον, of οὐδέν. 3. In § **8**, the forms γέγονας and Ὀρόντᾱ, the optatives, the clause dependent upon δόξαιμι. 4. In § **9**, τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι. 5. In § **10**, construction of γνώμῃ, ζώνης, οἷς; difference of meaning between ἐπὶ θανάτῳ and ἐπὶ θάνατον. 6. In § **11**, two senses of ὅπως; ἄλλοι ἄλλως; derivation of σκηπτοῦχος. 7. Complete synopsis of ἐξάγω. 8. Principal parts of θνήσκω, ἀποφαίνω, γιγνώσκω; synopsis of the last, 2 aor. act.; analysis of ἔγνως. 9. The genitive with verbs.

[1] From σκῆπτρον and ἔχω.
[2] *Cf.* συγ-γίγνομαι, γένος, Lat. co-**gna**-tus.
[3] *Cf.* σχολαίως XLVIII.

Digitized by Google

LESSON LIV.

ANABASIS I. VII. 1–5.

1. NOTES.

§ 1. **εἰς . . . ἕω**, *toward the approaching* (= *approach of*) *dawn*: nom. **ἕως**. *Cf.* **Ταμ-ώς**, **Ταμ-ῶν** XXIX. Note, **ἕως** forms its accusative singular without the case ending. **κέρως**: for **κέρασ-ος**, from **κέρας**; *cf.* **γένους** for **γένεσ-ος**.

§ 3. **ἀπορῶν**, *because I am in want of*. *Cf.* XXXIV. § 8. **ἧς κέκτησθε**: *cf.* **ᾧ δοίη** XXXVII. § 17. **ἧς ὑμᾶς κτέ**, *on account of which*, etc. Note the genitive of *cause*; *cf.* **ἐπιθῇ ὧν νομίζει** XXXV. § 10.

§ 4. **ἄν**: *cf.* **κἄν** XXXVIII. § 20. **τἄλλα** (*cf.* preceding note), *I seem to be ashamed of the rest*, *i. e.* what will follow, namely, *what men*, etc. **τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτόν**, *to those*, *i. e.* in the eyes of those, *at home*.

§ 5. **διὰ τὸ . . . εἶναι**: *cf.* **τῷ διεσπάσθαι** XLVIII. § 9. **τοιούτῳ . . . τοῦ κινδύνου**, *such* [*a point*] *of danger*. **με-μνῆο**: contraction for **με-μνή-οιο**.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Some nouns of the 2d declension end in **-ως**, and have the accusative singular in **-ων**; **ἕως**, however, omits **-ν**.

2. Nouns whose stem ends in **-αs** form the genitive in **-ως** by contraction.

3. The genitive of *cause* follows **εὐδαιμονίζω**.

4. The dative may denote in whose *view*, or in *relation* to whom, something is true.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of **ἕως** . .	H. 159, 161.	G. 42, 2 and N. 1.
2. Declension of **κέρας** .	H. 181, 183.	G. 56, 2.
3. **μέμνημαι**	H. 365, *b*; 465, *a*; 466, *b*; 530, 6.	G. 118, 1 N.; 200, N. 6.
4. Genitive of *cause*, with verbs of *emotion* . .	H. 744.	G. 173, 1.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἅμα, *together, together with.*
2. ἀν-έχω, *hold up, endure.*
3. ὁ αὐτόμολος,[1] *deserter.*
4. δια-τάττω, *dispose in order, arrange.*
5. διδάσκω,[2] *teach.*
6. ἡ ἐλευθερίᾱ, *freedom.*
7. εὐδαιμονίζω,[3] *deem happy, congratulate.*
8. εὔτολμος, *courageous.*
9. ἡ ἕως, *dawn.*
10. ζηλωτός, *envied; object of envy.*
11. τὸ κέρας,[4] *horn; wing* (of an army).
12. ὁ κίνδῡνος,[5] *danger.*
13. κτάομαι, *acquire;* perf. *possess.*
14. αἱ μέσαι νύκτες, *mid-watches* (of the night), *midnight.*
15. μήν, *verily, of a truth* (postpositive).
16. μιμνήσκω, *I remind;* μέμνημαι, **memini.**
17. παρ-αινέω,[6] *recommend.*
18. πολλαπλήσιος, *manifold.*
19. προσ-λαμβάνω, *take in addition.*
20. πῶς; *how?*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοί τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθῡμότεροι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξήγγελλον. (*b*) Εἰσῆεσαν δὲ παρ᾽ αὐτὸν οἵ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τινές, ἀξιοῦντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσται ἐὰν νικήσωσιν. (*c*) Ὁ δ᾽ ὁρᾷ τοὺς Ἕλληνας νῑκῶντας τὸ καθ᾽ αὑτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας. (*d*) Ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὐτόν, οὐδὲ τότε ἐπειράσατο διώκειν.

2. Translate: (*a*) He hung up the beautiful horns of the animals, which he had killed, in a little cave near the gate of the garden. (*b*) Since we know, we will tell (= teach) you why we congratulated those guides. (*c*) They had shown themselves courageous in battle, and endured well so much of danger, that the king recognized the favor, and made them all objects of envy in the eyes of the rest. (*d*) We shall recollect to show ourselves worthy of the freedom which we have acquired, whenever the enemy come.

[1] From αὐτός, *self,* and the theme μολ, *to go.*
[2] *Cf.* Eng. *didactic.*
[3] From εὐδαίμων.
[4] *Cf.* Eng. rhino-*ceros,* having a *horn* on the nose.
[5] Hence κινδῡνεύω.
[6] *Cf.* ἐπ-αινέω XXXIV. § 7.

Digitized by Google

3. Prepare a translation of the nouns and verbs of Lesson XXX., and practise giving the Greek for each word, varying the order constantly.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Attic second declension. 2. Neuters in -ας. 3. Peculiarities in conjugation of μέμνημαι. 4. Principal parts of μιμνήσκω, and synopsis of μέμνημαι. 5. A tabular view of the uses of the genitive with verbs; illustrations in this Lesson. 6. ἤξειν . . . μαχούμενον in direct discourse. 7. Κλέαρχον . . . ἡγεῖσθαι in direct discourse. 8. ἡμέρᾳ, § 2, construction? 9. ποιοῖτο mode, and why. 10. ἀμείνους. § 3; peculiarities of declension. 11. Construction of πολλῶν βαρβάρων, ἐλευθερίας, ἧς (κέκτησθε). 12. Principal parts and classification of διέταξε, παρήνει, προσέλαβον, κέκτησθε, εὐδαιμονίζω, διδάξω, μεμνήσεσθαι.

LESSON LV.

ANABASIS I. VII. 6–11.

1. NOTES.

§ 7. μὴ οὐκ ἔχω: on the mode, *cf.* καταδύσῃ XXXVII. § 17. ὅτι δῶ, *what to give.* This is not for ὅτι ἂν δῶ (cond. rel.); it is the indirect form of the direct question, "*what shall I give*" (τί δῶ). Note, the subjunctive (like the Lat. **quid dicam**) is used in a question as to what may be done with *propriety* or *advantage.* οἷς δῶ: *cf.* preceding note.

§ 9. ὄπισθεν ἑαυτῶν: *cf.* εἶσω τῶν ὀρέων XXIX. οἴει γάρ; *do you think then-indeed?* Note this sense of γάρ in questions, — γάρ = γέ + ἄρα; *cf.* ἦ γὰρ ἀνάγκη LIII. νὴ Δί': *cf.* μὰ τοὺς θεούς XLII. Δί', = Δία: accusative of Ζεύς; H. 216; G. 60, 5, 10.

§ 10. ἀσπίς: singular where the plural might have been expected; but *cf.* the English use, *e. g.* "*a thousand horse.*" This is called the *collective* use of the noun.

Digitized by Google

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Questions of deliberation as to what *may be* done, have their verb in the subjunctive. In the indirect discourse after a primary tense this mode is retained, the interrogative being changed to an indefinite relative pronoun.

2. ***νή, μά,*** adverbs of *swearing*, are followed by the accusative of the person sworn by.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Synopsis of τῑμάω	H. 337.	G. 98.
2. Synopsis of ποιέω	H. 339.	G. 98.
3. Cardinal numerals, 1 — 10,000	H. 288.	G. 76.
4. εἰμί as enclitic	H. 480, 1, 2.	G. 28, N. 1 end.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀμαχεί,[1] *without a battle.*
2. ἡ ἄρκτος,[2] *bear; Great Bear; north.*
3. δια-λέγομαι,[1] *converse with.*
4. δρεπανη-φόρος,[3] -ον, *scythe-bearing.*
5. ἐγ-κρατής,[4] -ές, *in-power, powerful over.*
6. ἐμ-πίπλημι,[5] *fill in, satisfy.*
7. ἑξακισχιλιοι, *six thousand.*
8. ἡ ἐξοπλισίᾱ,[6] *the arming, equipment.*
9. ἠρόμην, 2 aor. *I asked.*
10. ὁ καιρός, *occasion.*
11. τὸ καῦμα,[7] *heat.*
12. κρατέω,[4] *rule, have power over.*
13. ἡ μεσημβρίᾱ,[8] *mid-day; south.*
14. μεχρι οὗ, *until where; to the place where.*
15. νή, *yea, by;* affirmative adverb of swearing.
16. ὄπισθεν, *behind.*
17. παρα-κελεύομαι, *recommend.*
18. πατρῷος,[1] *paternal, hereditary.*
19. πώς, *in some way;* ὧδέ πως, *about thus.*
20. σατραπεύω,[1] *govern as satrap.*
21. ὁ στέφανος,[9] *crown.*
22. ὁ χειμών, *winter.*

[1] Derivation?
[2] Hence Eng. *arct*-ic.
[3] δρέπανον, *scythe*, + φέρω.
[4] *Cf.* κρατέω; *cf.* ἐγκρατής.
[5] From theme πλη. *Cf.* πλῆθος, πλήρης, **ple**-o, *ple*-nty.
[6] Derivation?
[7] Derivation?
[8] From μέσος and ἡμέρα.
[9] Hence Eng. *Stephen.*

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) *Ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἴχνη πολλά* (*b*) *Ἀνέβησαν οὖν ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας μέχρι τοῦ τῆς Φρυγίας ἐσχάτου τείχους.* (*c*) *Πάλιν δ' ἤρετο, Οὐκοῦν ὑμεῖς οἰκνοῖτε ἂν τὸν ποταμὸν ταύταις ταῖς γεφύραις διαβαίνειν, αἷς ποιοῖεν;* (*d*) *Οὐκοῦν φοβοῖο ἂν τοῖς ἡγεμόσι τούτοις ἕπεσθαι οἷς δοῖεν;*

2. Translate: (*a*) We deem it right to know what we also shall have if you conquer (aor.). (*b*) Not many are able to endure both the winter of the north and the mighty heat of the south. (*c*) I will make you powerful over many cities, if you learn to conquer yourself. (*d*) Yea! by the gods, (the) men cannot conquer themselves without a battle; but if they conquer indeed, many crowns are due (= owed) to them.

3. Review the entire Vocabulary of Lesson XXX. Do not think you have mastered it before being able to give the Greek from the English, and *vice versa*, without hesitation.

4. Synopsis (*a*) of *οἰκέω*; (*b*) of *νῑκάω*; (*c*) of *λαμβάνω*.

5. Parts, classification, and theme of (*a*) *ἀκούω*, (*b*) *ἔχω*, (*c*) *πίμπλημι*.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Mode with verbs of *fearing*. 2. Mode in questions of deliberation; direct and indirect discourse. 3. Tabular view of the genitive with adjectives and adverbs. 4. Adverbs of *swearing*. 5. Derivation of *γάρ*; its use in questions. 6. First and second perfect stems. 7. The forms *ἔστι* and *ἐστί*. 8. The cardinal numerals.

Digitized by Google

LESSON LVI.

ANABASIS I. VII. 12–17.

1. NOTES.

§ 12. ὑστέρησε κτέ, = ἀφίκετο ὕστερος τῆς μάχης, *later than* (= *too late for*) *the battle. Cf.* πρoτέρᾱ Κύρου κτέ XXXI.

§ 15. παρετέτατο: H. 519, A and 5; G. page 356, and § **109**, 6.

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Synopsis of λείπω	H. 344.	G. 96, II.
2. Synopsis of τίθημι	H. 349.	G. 123.
3. Formation of perfect stems . . .	H. 446, 447, 450, 452.	G. 110, IV. (*b*), (*d*).

3. VOCABULARY.

1. αὐτομολέω,[1] *I desert.*
2. τὸ βάθος, -ους, *depth.*
3. βαθύς, -εῖα, -ύ, *deep.*
4. δια-λείπω, *leave between; lie at intervals.*
5. ἡ διῶρυξ,[2] *canal, trench.*
6. εἰσ-βάλλω, *throw into; enter.*
7. τὸ ἔρυμα, *protection; rampart.*
8. μεταξύ, adv., *between.*
9. ἡ ὀργυιά,[3] *a fathom.*
10. ὀρύττω, *I dig.*
11. ὀρυκτός, *dug.*
12. παρα-τείνω, *stretch beside, extend.*
13. πλεθριαῖος, *extending a plethrum.*
14. πλέω, *I sail.*
15. σῑταγωγός,[4] -όν, *grain-carrying.*
16. ἡ τάφρος, *ditch, trench.*
17. ὑστερέω,[4] *am* or *come* (*too*) *late.*

[1] From αὐτόμολος LIV.
[2] From διά and ὀρύττω. See 10.
[3] Strictly, the span of the outstretched hands.
[4] Derivation?

Digitized by Google

4. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) *Τότε δὲ καλέσᾱς τὸν ἑρμηνέᾱ ἀπέδωκεν αὐτῷ δᾱρεικοὺς τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ τρίτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ θῡόμενος εἶπεν ὅτι ὁ φρούραρχος οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν.* (*b*) *Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν, Οὐκ οὖν ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' ἀληθῆ λέγῃς, ὑπισχνοῦμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα.* (*c*) *Τοῦτο τὸ χρῡσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρῆλθον αἱ τρεῖς ἡμέραι.* (*d*) *Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλῡε βασιλεὺς τὴν τῶν πολεμίων στρατιᾶν διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις καταλελυκέναι πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον.*

2. Translate: (*a*) He was fifteen days too late for the review of the armies of the great king. (*b*) Yea! by Zeus, they do not indeed know what they are doing; for if they join battle with the king, let them not think that the scythe-bearing chariots can be prevented from cutting (infin.) them all down. (*c*) They were mightily angry with the guides when they heard this, and refused to go forward. (*d*) When, however, they knew that the journey (= way) was against the great king at Babylon, they voted not to cross the river.

3. Make a list of the meanings of the verbs in Lesson XXXIX.; from this be prepared to recite without hesitation the corresponding Greek verbs, as their meanings are pronounced by the instructor.

4. Review, in the List of *first occurrences*, words 196 to 300.

5. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts of *πλέω*; of *ῥέω*. 2. Construction of *ἡμέραις*, § **12**. 3. Crasis in § **13**; other instances met with. 4. Construction of *στρατεύματι*, § **14**. 5. Synopsis of *συντεταγμένῳ*; formation of the perfect active. 6. Principal parts, themes, and analysis of *παρατέτατο*. 7. Construction of *τείχους, ποταμοῦ, ποδῶν, εὖρος*, § **15**. 8. Declension of *τείχους, εὖρος, βαθεῖα*. 9. Participle with *πυνθάνεται*. 10. Case governed by *ὑστερέω*.

Digitized by Google

LESSON LVII.

ANABASIS I. VII. 18–VIII. 2.

1. NOTES.

§ **18.** *δέκα ἡμερῶν*, on any one *of* the *ten* days, *i. e. within ten days. Cf.* however *τοῦ μηνός* XXXVIII. *ad fin.* Uses of dative and accusative in expressions of time? *ἐὰν δ' ἀληθεύσῃς . . . ὑπισχνοῦμαι*: form of conditional statement? Evolve the future idea in the conclusion; *cf. καταπράξειεν* XXII. Note, the aorist has the sense of the Lat. future perfect.

§ **19.** *ἀπ-εγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι, had concluded not to fight.* On the prefix, *cf. ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι* XLIV. The prepositional prefix governs the genitive as it would if standing as an independent preposition.

§ **20.** *τοῖς στρατιώταις*: *cf. οὐδενὶ κρείττονι* XXXI. § **26.**

Chap. **VIII.** § **1.** *ἱδροῦντι τῷ ἵππῳ*: *cf. συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι* LVI. § **14.**

§ **2.** *ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπι-πεσεῖσθαι, would fall upon them(selves)*, etc.: from *ἐπι-πίπτω*, theme *πετ, πτω*.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Time *within which* is expressed by the genitive.

2. In future conditions *with probability*, expressions may be used in the apodosis equivalent to the future indicative; in the protasis, the aorist subjunctive is nearly equivalent to the Latin *future perfect.*

3. The prefix *ἀπό* frequently has a negative sense. It may govern the genitive, as when standing as a preposition.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Synopsis of *φαίνω*	H. 343.	G. 96, III.
2. Synopsis of *δίδωμι*.	H. 350.	G. 123.

Digitized by Google

3. Augment of the pluperfect . . .	H. 358.	G. 99, 101, 4.
4. Attic reduplication	H. 368.	G. 102.
5. Principal parts of ἀκούω, ἐλαύνω .	H. 507, 1, 521, 1.	G. pp. 330–338.
6. Genitive with compound verbs .	H. 751.	G. 177.
7. κάθ-ημαι	H. 484.	G. 127, V.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀληθεύω, *speak the truth.*
2. ὁ Ἀμπρακιώτης, *Ambraciot.*[1]
3. ἀνά, *up;* ἀνὰ κράτος, *up to* the full measure of *strength, e. g., at full speed.*
4. ἀνα-ταράττω,[2] *stir up, confuse.*
5. ἀπο-γιγνώσκω,[3] *come to the conclusion not to, abandon the idea.*
6. ἄρα, *therefore.*
7. ἄτακτος,[4] -ον, *out of order.*
8. αὐτίκα, *immediately.*
9. βαρβαρικῶς, *barbarously; in the Persian tongue.*
10. βοάω, *bawl* or *cry out.*
11. ἑλληνικῶς, *in the Greek fashion* or *tongue.*
12. ἑνδέκατος,[4] -η, -ον, *eleventh.*
13. ἐπι-πίπτω, *fall upon.*
14. ἠμελημένως,[5] *carelessly.*
15. ἡνίκα, *when;* like the Lat. **quum** with the ind.
16. ἱδρόω, *sweat, perspire.*
17. τὸ κράτος, -ους, *power, strength.* See ἀνά above.
18. ὁ μάντις, *seer, soothsayer.*
19. μέλλω, *I intend, am likely.*
20. πλήθω,[6] *be full;* ἀγορὰ πλήθουσα, *full market, i. e.* about 10.30 A.M.
21. πλησίον, *near.*
22. ἡ πορεία,[7] *journey.*
23. προ-θύομαι, *conduct a sacrifice.*
24. προ-φαίνω, *appear in the distance.*
25. τὸ τάλαντον,[8] *talent.*
26. ὁ τάραχος, *confusion.*

[1] Ambracia was in Epirus, near the gulf which bore its name, — the Ambracian Gulf.

[2] *Cf.* τάραχ-ος below, for the theme.

[3] *Cf.* γνώ-μη; ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται XXXII.

[4] Derivation ?

[5] Perfect middle participle of ἀ-μελέω made into an adverb. *Cf.* XXXV. § 11; XLV. § 16.

[6] Give other words showing same theme.

[7] *Cf.* Lesson XLVII., Vocab., note [3].

[8] A *sum* of money, about $1,100.

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) **Ἦν** *μὲν γὰρ ἀπόγνωμεν αὐτίκα* **ἔπεσθαι** *καὶ* **ἡμῖν** *ἐπιπέσωσι,* **ὑμεῖς** *δόξετε* **αἴτιοι** *εἶναι* **ἄρξαντες** *τὸν τάραχον.* (*b*) **Τῷ** *Ἀμπρακιώτῃ χάριν* **εἴσεται** *ὡς ἀληθεύοντι· μέλλει δὴ αὐτὸν* **ἀποδώσειν.** (*c*) **Τῇ** *δὲ ἑνδεκάτῃ* **ἄτακτοι** *διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς* **ἄλλους** *ἀποκρῖνασθαι.* (*d*) **Οἱ** *μάντεις βοήσαντες ἠμελημένως τὴν στρατιὰν* **ἐτάραξαν.** (*e*) **Ἀναβᾶς** *ἐπὶ τὸν* **ἵππον** *καὶ τὰ παλτὰ* **εἰς** *τὰς χεῖρας* **λαβών,** *τοῖς τε* **ἄλλοις** *πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν τὰ* **ὅπλα** *λαμβάνειν καὶ καθίστασθαι* **εἰς** *τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν* **ἕκαστον.**

2. Translate: (*a*) And at (= in) this time, riding-along, himself, with Pigres the interpreter and two or three others, he cried-out to Clearchus to lead the army against [the] middle (= middle the) of the enemy, because the king was (ind. disc.) there. (*b*) "And if we conquer this," said he, "everything has been done for us." (*c*) We were riding at full speed, with our horses sweating mightily, in order to announce that the king was near. (*d*) But being perplexed and distressed by these matters, they sent after the soothsayers. (*e*) And they told us to be of good cheer, as these matters would be settled (= set themselves down) as desired (= into the needed, **δέω**). (*f*) This was done carelessly, and without the knowledge of the messengers.

3. Review carefully the Vocabulary of Lesson XXXIX., so as to be able to give the English from the Greek, and *vice versa*, without hesitation.

4. Review the words of Chapter II. in the List of *first occurrences*.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Expressions of *time*. 2. Modes in the indirect discourse. 3. How to change the direct discourse in § **18** into the indirect discourse as completely as possible (study Chap. II. § **2**). 4. *Aorist* subjunctive in conditional clauses. 5. The mutes before **μ**. 6. Peculiarity in **ἔδωκε, ἔθηκα**; synopsis of this tense, active voice. 7. Analysis and principal parts of **ἀπεγνωκέναι**; of **ἀνατεταραγμένον**. 8. Different kinds of reduplication. 9. Declension of **κράτος, σφίσιν, μάντις**. 10. Principal parts of **ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι**; synopsis of this tense and voice.

Digitized by Google

LESSON LVIII.

ANABASIS I. VIII. 3–8.

1. NOTES.

§ 3. *ἐν-έ-δῡ* : *cf.* *ἀν-έ-βη-ν*, *ἔ-γνω-ν*, *ἔ-στη-ν* , they are 2d aorists, formed from the pure theme. Note, each theme ends in a vowel, and that the personal endings are attached directly. This is not the case, *e. g.*, with *ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν*, *ἔ-βαλ-ε-ς*, — themes ending in a consonant, — for a vowel stands between the theme and the ending. The conjugation of these last belongs to the *-ω* system (*λύω*) ; but the few 2d aorists of vowel themes belong to the *-μι* system, whatever be the system to which the present belongs, — so *ἔλιπ-ο-ν*, *ἔδῡ-ν* ; *βαλ-εῖν*, *βῆ-ναι* ; *φυγ-ών*, *γνούς* or *βάς* or *δῦς*. *καθ-ίσ-τασθαι εἰς . . . τάξιν ἕκαστον*, *each one to set himself* (dir. mid.) *down*, *i. e. fall into line.*

§ 4. *ἐχόμενος*, holding on, *next.*

§ 8. *χρόνῳ συχνῷ* : *cf.* *ἡμέραις πέντε* LVI. § 12. *ἐπὶ πολύ*, *into, at, a great* [*distance*]. *Cf.* *ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγᾱς* LVI. § 15.

2. OBSERVATION.

There are 2d aorists (*a*) of the *-ω* form, following the model of *ἔλιπον*; (*b*) of the *μι* form, following the model of *ἔστην*.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Short *a* in the nominative, 1st declension	H. 139, *c*, *d*.	G. 37, N. 2.
2.	Comparison of adverbs . .	H. 259.	G. 75.
3.	Future system of liquid verbs	H. 326.	G. 96, III.
4.	Conjugation of *ἔστην* and *ἔδῡν*	H. 335.	G. 123.
5.	Second aorists of the *-μι* form	H. 489, 1, 3, 15, 17.	G. 125, 3.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀστράπτω, *flash.*
2. ἡ δείλη, *early evening.*
3. δια κινδῡνεύω, *brave the danger.*
4. ἐγγύς, *near;* ἐγγύτερον, *nearer.*
5. ἐν-δυω, *enter into; put on.*
6. ἐξ-οπλίζω,[1] *arm completely.*
7. ὁ θώρᾱξ,[2] -ᾱκος, *breastplate.*
8. κατα-πηδάω,[3] *leap down.*
9. κατα φανής,[4] -ές, *in plain view.*
10. ὁ κονι ορτός, *a stirring* or *cloud of dust.*
11. ἡ λόγχη, *spear-head; spear, lance.*
12. λευκός, -ή, -όν, *white.*
13. ἡ μάχαιρα, *short sword, dagger.*
14. ἡ μελανίᾱ,[5] *blackness; black object.*
15. ἡ νεφέλη, *cloud.*
16. ὁπλίζω, -ίσω or -ιῶ, *put on heavy armor; arm.*
17. ὅσον, *so much as;* with num., *about.*
18. τὰ παραμηρίδια, *the thigh-pieces* of armor.
19. πελταστικός, *consisting of targeteers.*
20. τὰ προμετωπίδια, armor-pieces before the forehead, *head-pieces.*
21. τὰ προστερνίδια,[6] armor-pieces before the breast, *breast-pieces.*
22. ἡ σπουδή, *zeal, haste.*
23. συχνός, -ή, -όν, *continuous, considerable* in length.
24. τάχα, *quickly.*
25. χαλκός,[7] *bronze, bronze object.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ὁ μέντοι εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσᾱς παρεκελεύετο ἵμῖν τὴν κραυγὴν ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο (*b*) Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν προῄει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. (*c*) Καὶ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς μὲν λευκοὺς θώρακας ἐνδῦντες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων· δυνάστης τις ἐλέγετο τούτων ἡγεῖσθαι· ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὁπλῖται σὺν ἀσπίσι ταῖς πρὸς τοὺς πόδας παρατεινούσαις. (*d*) Ἡνίκα δ' ἐν τῇ δείλῃ τὰς δορκάδας τε καὶ ὄνους ἀγρίους ἐδίωκον χρόνον συχνόν, κονιορτός τις ἐφάνη ἐπὶ πολὺ ὡς πολλῶν στρουθῶν τὰς πτέρυγας αἰρουσῶν ὥσπερ ἱστίοις χρωμένων καὶ ἀποδιδρᾱσκουσῶν.

[1] *Cf.* ἐξοπλισίᾳ LV. § 10.
[2] Hence Eng. *thorax.*
[3] *Cf.* XLVIII. § 8.
[4] κατά has the sense of *thoroughness,* as in καταπράξειε(ν) XXII. *Cf.* ἀφανεῖς XLII. *ad init.*
[5] *Cf.* Eng. *melan*-choly, gloom.
[6] From πρό and στέρνον, *sternum,* the breast-bone.
[7] Hence χαλκοῦς XXVII.

Digitized by Google

2. Translate: (*a*) There was a certain dark-object on the plain at a great distance, which appeared like a cloud coming on with much water. (*b*) Yea! by Zeus, the bronze spears flashed mightily, and the thigh-pieces and the breast-pieces and the golden front-pieces which the royal horses had. (*c*) We put on our golden breastplates with great haste. (*d*) We shall try to show ourselves (= appear) worthy of the freedom which we have acquired, and on account of which so-many men deem us happy. (*e*) We have advised you to put (= make) this man out-of-the-way quickly, so that we may be able to do good to our friends.

3. (*a*) The translation, vocabulary, and grammatical principles in Lesson XLVI. (*b*) The vocabularies of Lessons X. and XX.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Two kinds of 2d aorist. 2. Analysis, principal parts, and classification of **ἐνέδῡ**, **ἀναβᾶς**, **ἔσχε**, **ἔστησαν**, **καθίστατο**. 3. Principal parts and classification of **ὡπλισμένοι** and **ἥστραπτε**; euphonic changes illustrated in the principal parts of each. 4. Final **ᾰ** in **μάχαιρᾰ**, **γέφῡρᾰ**. 5. Comparison of **ταχέως**, **ἡδέως**, **εὐνοϊκῶς**.

LESSON LIX.

ANABASIS I. VIII. 9–14.

1. NOTES.

§ 9. **ἄλλοι δ' ἱππεῖς . . . τοξόται**, *and* [there were upon the left wing] *other horsemen and other bowmen, i.e. others, — namely, horsemen,* etc., or *horsemen and bowmen besides.* **κατὰ ἔθνη**, *tribe by tribe: cf.* **κατ' ἴλᾱς** XXVII. **ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος**: in apposition with **οὗτοι**, distributing **οὗτοι** into tribes; *cf.* **διαλείπουσι ἑκάστη παρασάγγην** LVI. This is called *distributive* apposition. **ἐπορεύετο**: singular, on account of the nearness of **ἔθνος**; *cf.* **ἄθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες** XXVI. § **10.**

Digitized by Google

§ **10.** καλούμενα : *cf.* XXVI. § **13.** ἀπο-τεταμένα : *cf.* παρ-ετέτατο LVI. ὡς διακόπτειν, = ὥστε διακόπτειν. ὅτῳ, = ᾧτινι (ὅστις) : *cf.* ὅτι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι XXXIII.; οἵτινες ἐπιτήδειοι XXXVIII. γνώμη, *expectation*: *cf.* LV. § **8.** ὡς ἐλῶντα καὶ διακόψοντα, *that they should drive* (fut. of ἐλαύνω) *into*, etc. : *cf.* ὡς στρατηγήσοντα ἐμέ κτέ, XXXVII. § **15.**

§ **11.** ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο, *was deceived this, i. e. in this* : *cognate accusative* ; *cf.* ὅτι ἠδίκησα LIII. ὡς ἀνυστόν, [as far] *as possible* : *cf.* ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα XXXVII. § **15.** ἐν ἴσῳ, *in even* [line].

§ **13.** αὐτῷ μέλοι : *cf.* XLV. § **16.** καλῶς ἔχοι : *cf.* οὕτως ἔχει XXXV. § **9** ; κακῶς ἐχόντων : *cf.* L. § **16.**

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Greek says, "hoplites and other horsemen," for "hoplites and others, — namely, horsemen."

2. An appositive distributing the sense of its substantive is said to be in distributive apposition.

3. A verb may be thrown out of agreement with its subject through various causes.

4. ὡς may take the place of ὥστε, with the infinitive.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Declension of ὅστις	H. 280 and *a*.	G. 86.
2. Declension of τέτταρες	H. 290.	G. 77.
3. Conjugation of πείθω, perfect middle and 1st aorist passive	H. 328.	G. 97, 3.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀνυστός, *practicable, possible.*
2. ὁ ἄξων, -ονος, *axle.*
3. ἀπο-σπάω, -άσω, *draw off* or *away.*
4. ἀπο-τείνω, -ενῶ, *stretch off, extend.*
5. βλέπω, *look.*
6. βραδύς -εῖα, -ύ, *slow* ; -έως, *slowly.*
7. ὁ γερρο-φόρος, *soldier bearing a wicker-shield.*
8. δια-κόπτω, -ψω, *cut through* or *in pieces.*
9. ὁ δίφρος, *chariot.*

Digitized by Google

10. τὸ δρέπανον, *scythe.*
11. τὸ ἔθνος,[1] *tribe, nation.*
12. ἑκατέρωθεν,[2] *from* or *on both*
13. ἡσυχῇ, *quietly.* [*sides.*
14. ἴσος,[3] *equal, even.*
15. κυκλόω,[2] *encircle, surround.*
16. λευκο-θώρᾱξ,[2] -ᾱκος, *wearing a white breastplate.*
17. ξύλινος,[2] *wooden.*
18. ὅμως, *nevertheless.*
19. περί-ειμι,[4] *excel, surpass.*
20. πλάγιος, *oblique;* εἰς πλάγιον, *obliquely* and outwards.
21. τὸ πλαίσιον, *square, rectangle.*
22. ποδ-ήρης, -ες, *reaching the feet.*
23. ἡ σῑγή, *silence.*
24. τὸ στῖφος,[5] -ους, *dense mass. crowd.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔτρεχον· λέγουσι δέ τινες ὡς καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ παλτὰ ἔβαλον φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις. (*b*) Καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν ἀνὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ τρέχειν δρόμῳ ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἕπεσθαι. (*c*) Καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ ληφθῆναί τις ἐλέγετο. (*d*) Ἀλλ' ἔχὼν τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ τι ποιήσοι βασιλεύς. καὶ γὰρ ἤδει αὐτὸν ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι τοῦ Περσικοῦ. (*e*) Καὶ ὁ φοινῑκιστὴς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὅμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ εὐωνύμου κέρως.

2. Translate: (*a*) From both sides of the river [there] assembled a crowd of soldiers with wicker shields as noiselessly as practicable, with the expectation of cutting the hostile tribes to pieces. (*b*) Their shields reached to their feet, and their spears were wooden. (*c*) If they would look they might see that scythes extend sideways from the axles of the chariots, and that they are equal to those which the Thracians use. (*d*) It is said that Apollo surpasses all the gods in musical-skill; when a certain one contended with him he flayed him, and hung up the skin in a cave surrounded with beautiful trees of all sorts.

3. Review carefully the Vocabularies of Lessons X., XX., XXX., and XXXIX. Write out translations of the more difficult words, and be prepared to give any Greek word without hesitation as rapidly as the corresponding English word is given. Do this with great care.

[1] *Cf.* Eng. *ethno*-logy.
[2] Derivation?
[3] *Cf.* Eng. *iso*-sceles, *iso*-thermic.
[4] περι- as in περι-γίγνομαι.
[5] *Cf.* στίβος LII.

Digitized by Google

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Peculiarity in the use of ἄλλος. 2. Different senses of κατά. 3. Formation of perfect and pluperfect forms, active and middle, with some of their peculiarities. 4. Cognate accusative. 5. Result and purpose clauses. 6. Subjunctive of deliberation. 7. Four verbs which are construed with the supplementary participle. 8. Declension of ποδήρεσι, στῖφος. 9. Comparison of βραδύς and βραδέως. 10. Classification and parts of βλέπω, κόπτω, τείνω, and ψεύδω. 11. Partitive and distributive apposition. 12. Explanation of the optatives in the Lesson.

LESSON LX. — REVIEW.

1. TEXT: ANABASIS I. VI. 1 — I. VIII. 13.

Read carefully the instructions given in Review Lessons X. and LI.

2. VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

1. ὁ ἄξων.
2. ἡ ἄρκτος.
3. ὁ αὐτόμολος.
4. τὸ βάθος.
5. ὁ βωμός.
6. τὸ γένος.
7. ὁ γερροφόρος.
8. ἡ δείλη.
9. ἡ δεξιά.
10. ἡ διῶρυξ.
11. ὁ δίφρος.
12. τὸ δρέπανον.
13. ὁ ἐθελοντής.
14. τὸ ἔθνος.
15. ἡ ἐλευθερίᾱ.
16. ἡ ἐξοπλισίᾱ.
17. ἡ ἐπιστολή.
18. τὸ ἔρυμα.
19. ἡ ἕως.
20. ὁ θώρᾱξ.
21. τὸ ἴχνος.
22. ὁ καιρός.
23. τὸ καῦμα.
24. τὸ κέρας.
25. ὁ κίνδῡνος.
26. ὁ κονιορτός.
27. ἡ κόπρος.
28. τὸ κράτος.
29. ἡ κρίσις.
30. ἡ λόγχη.
31. ὁ μάντις.
32. ἡ μάχαιρα
33. ἡ μελανίᾱ.
34. αἱ μέσαι νύκτες.
35. ἡ μεσημβρίᾱ.
36. ἡ νεφέλη.
37. ἡ ὀργυιά.
38. τὰ παραμηρίδια.
39. τὸ πλαίσιον.
40. ἡ πορείᾱ.
41. τὰ προμετωπίδια.
42. ὁ προσήκων.
43. τὰ προστερνίδια.
44. ἡ σῖγή.
45. ὁ σκηπτοῦχος.
46. ἡ σπουδή.
47. ὁ στέφανος.
48. ὁ στίβος.
49. τὸ στῖφος.
50. ὁ συγγενής.
51. ὁ σύμβουλος.

Digitized by Google

52. ἡ σχολή.
53. τὸ τάλαντον.
54. ὁ τάραχος.
55. ὁ τάφος.
56. ἡ τάφρος.
57. τὸ ὑπόμνημα.
58. ὁ χαλκός.
59. ὁ χειμών.
60. ὁ χῖλός.

VERBS.

1. ἀληθεύω.
2. ἀναγιγνώσκω.
3. ἀναταράττω.
4. ἀνέχω.
5. ἀπογιγνώσκω.
6. ἀποσπάω.
7. ἀποτείνω.
8. ἀποφαίνω.
9. ἀστράπτω.
10. αὐτομολέω.
11. βλέπω.
12. βοάω.
13. γράφω.
14. διαγγέλλω.
15. διακινδῡνεύω.
16. διακόπτω.
17. διαλέγομαι.
18. διαλείπω.
19. διατάττω.
20. διδάσκω.
21. εἰκάζω.
22. εἰσάγω.
23. εἰσβάλλω.
24. ἐμπίπλημι.
25. ἐνδῡ́ω.
26. ἐνεδρεύω.
27. ἐξαγγέλλω.
28. ἐξάγω.
29. ἐξοπλίζω.
30. ἐπιπίπτω.
31. εὐδαιμονίζω.
32. ἠρόμην.
33. θνήσκω.
34. ἱδρόω.
35. κακῶς ποιέω.
36. κατακαίνω.
37. καταπηδάω.
38. κρατέω.
39. κτάομαι.
40. κυκλόω.
41. μέλλω.
42. μεταμέλει.
43. μιμνήσκω.
44. ὁμολογέω.
45. ὁπλίζω.
46. ὀρύττω.
47. παραινέω.
48. παρακαλέω.
49. παρακελεύομαι.
50. παρατείνω.
51. περίειμι.
52. πλέω.
53. πλήθω.
54. προθῡ́ομαι.
55. προκατακαίω.
56. προσκυνέω.
57. προσλαμβάνω.
58. προσπολεμέω.
59. προστάττω.
60. προστίθημι.
61. προφαίνω.
62. σατραπεύω.
63. ὑποδέχομαι.
64. ὑστερέω.
65. φράζω.
66. φυλάττω.

ADJECTIVES.

1. ἄδικος.
2. ἀνυστός.
3. ἀπόρρητος.
4. ἄτακτος.
5. βαθύς.
6. βραδύς.
7. δρεπανηφόρος.
8. ἐγκρατής.
9. ἑνδέκατος.
10. ἑξακισχῖλιοι.
11. ἕτοιμος.
12. εὔτολμος.
13. ζηλωτός.
14. ἴσος.
15. καταφανής.
16. λευκοθώρᾱξ.
17. λευκός.
18. ξύλινος.
19. ὀρυκτός.
20. πατρῷος.
21. πελταστικός.
22. πλάγιος.
23. πλεθριαῖος.
24. ποδήρης.
25. σῖταγωγός.
26. συχνός.
27. τρίτος.
28. ὑπήκοος.
29. χρήσιμος.
30. ὠφέλιμος.

Digitized by Google

ADVERBS.

1. ἄλλως.
2. ἅμα.
3. ἀμαχεί.
4. ἄρα.
5. αὐτίκα.
6. βαρβαρικῶς.
7. βραδέως.
8. γέ.
9. ἐγγύς.
10. ἑκατέρωθεν.
11. ἐκποδών.
12. ἑλληνικῶς.
13. ἦ.
14. ἠμελημένως.
15. ἡσυχῇ.
16. μεταξύ.
17. μέχρι (οὗ).
18. μήν.
19. νή.
20. ὅμως.
21. ὄπισθεν.
22. ὅσον.
23. οὐκοῦν.
24. πλησίον.
25. πώποτε.
26. πῶς, πώς.
27. τάχα.

CONJUNCTION.

ἠνίκα.

REPOSITION.

ἀνά.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. **Declension** : (*a*) Short *a* in the 1st declension, H. 139, *c*, *d* ; G. 37, N. 2. (*b*) ἕως, H. 159, 161 ; G. 42, 2 and N. 1. (*c*) κέρας, H. 181, 183 ; G. 56, 2. (*d*) ὅστις, H. 280 and *a* ; G. 86. (*e*) τέτταρες, H. 290 ; G. 77.

2. **Cardinal Numbers** : H. 288 ; G. 76.

3. **Comparison of Adverbs** : H. 259 ; G. 75.

4. **Synopses** of (*a*) τῑμάω, H. 337; G. 98. (*b*) ποιέω, H. 339 ; G. 98. (*c*) φαίνω, H. 343 ; G. 96, III. (*d*) λείπω, H. 344 ; G. 96, II. (*e*) τίθημι, H. 349 ; G. 123. (*f*) δίδωμι, H. 350 ; G. 123.

5. **Verb-formation** : (*a*) Perfect stems, H. 446, 447, 450, 452 ; G. 110, IV. (*b*), (*d*). (*b*) Attic reduplication, H. 368 ; G. 102. (*c*) Augment of the pluperfect, H. 358 ; G. 101, 4. (*d*) Future system of liquid verbs, H. 326 ; G. 96, III. (*e*) Second passive system, H. 322, 438, 471, 472 ; G. 96, pages 108, 109 bottom, 110 top. (*f*) πείθω, perfect middle and 1st aorist passive system, H. 328 ; G. 97, 3. (*g*) ἔστην and ἔδῡν, H. 335 ; G. 123. (*h*) μέμνημαι, H. 365, *b*, 465, *a*, 466, *b*, 530, 6 ; G. 118, 1, N., 200, N. 6. (*i*) κάθημαι, H. 484 ; G. 127, V. (*j*) εἰμί as enclitic, H. 480, 1, 2 ; G. 28, N. 1 end. (*k*) Second aorist of the -μι form, H. 489, 1, 3, 15, 17 ; G. 125, 3. (*l*) Principal parts of ἀκούω, ἐλαύνω, H. 507, 1, 521, 1 ; G. 330, 338.

6. **Syntax** : (*a*) Genitive of *cause*, with verbs of *emotion*, H. 744 ; G. 173, 1. (*b*) Genitive with compound verbs, H. 751 ; G. 177.

Digitized by Google

LESSON LXI.

ANABASIS I. VIII. 14–18.

1. NOTES.

§ **14.** *οὐ πάνυ πρὸς . . . στρατεύματι*, *not very near* (lit. *in front of*), etc. *ἑκατέρωσε*, *to either direction*: *cf.* *ἑκατέρωθεν*, *from either direction* XLIX. § **13**.

§ **15.** *ὡς συν-αντῆσαι*, *with a view to meet.* Note the force of the infinitive. *ἐπιστήσᾶς*, *sc.* *τὸν ἵππον*: *cf.* XXVIII. *ad init.*

§ **16.** *θορύβου ἤκουσε*, *heard a noise.* Why the genitive? *Cf.* *ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους . . . στόλου* XXIII. § **5**. *καὶ ὅς*, *and he.*

§ **17.** *ἀλλὰ δέχομαι*, [*I wondered*], *but I accept, i. e. welcome* [*it now*]. *χώραν*: *cf.* L., end. *δι-ειχέτην*: 3d person *dual* impf. Note the ending.

§ **18.** *πορευομένων*: note the omission of the substantive. *Cf.* LII. *ad init.* *τι* and *τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον*, *sc.* *μέρος* XLVIII. § **8**. *δρόμῳ*: manner. *Cf.* *ὀργῇ* XLVIII. § **8** ; *κύκλῳ* XLVII. § **4**.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Purpose* is denoted by the infinitive, as well as by *ὅπως* with the future indicative, or (more usually) *ἵνα*, or *ὡς*, with the subjunctive (or optative).

2. *ἀκούω* is construed with either the genitive or the accusative of the object heard, but with the genitive only of the source from which one hears.

3. The ending *-την* indicates the 3d person *dual*, past time.

4. The ending *-θεν* denotes motion *from*; *-σε*, motion *toward.*

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Perfect middle and 1st passive systems of vowel and liquid verbs	H. 328.	G. 97, 3, 4.
2. Synopsis of *τελέω*	H. 340, 423, 461, 463.	G. 109, 2, 110, II. 2, N. 1.

Digitized by Google

3. Synopsis of στέλλω	H. 342, 448.	G. 109, 4.
4. Tenses in other modes than the indicative	H. 851.	G. 202, 1, 2.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀντίος, *opposite*; ἀντίος ἰέναι, *go to meet, go against.*
2. ἀπο-βλέπω, *look off* or *away.*
3. δεύτερος, *second.*
4. δέχομαι, *receive, accept.*
5. δι-έχω, have between, *am apart, separated* or *distant.*
6. τὸ δόρυ, spear-shaft, *spear.*
7. δουπέω, *make a din, clash.*
8. ἑκατέρω-σε, *to*, or *in, in either direction.*
9. ἐκ-κῡμαίνω, *bend out* (or *forth*) *like a wave.*
10. ἐλελίζω, *raise a war-cry.*
11. ὁ Ἐνῡάλιος, *Enyálios, Mars.*
12. ὁ Ζεύς, *Zeus.*
13. θέω, *run.*
14. ὁ θόρυβος, *noise.*
15. ἱερός, *sacred*; τὰ ἱερά, *sacrifices.*
16. κατα-θεάομαι, *view*, look down upon or *watch intently.*
17. οἷον, adv., *as, just as.*
18. ὁμαλῶς, *evenly, in even line.*
19. παιᾱνίζω, *sing a paean* or *war-song.*
20. πελάζω, *approach, draw near.*
21. συν-αντάω, *confront, meet.*
22. τὸ σύν-θημα, *compact*; *watch-word, password.*
23. τὸ σφάγιον, sacrificial *victim.*
24. ὁ σωτήρ, *savior.*
25. φθέγγομαι, *sound, shout, cry out, yell.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Χρῄζει δίκην αὐτῷ ἐπιθεῖναι. (*b*) Ὡς δ' ἐλελίξαντες τῷ Διὶ σωτῆρί τε καὶ Ἐνυαλίῳ ἐπαιάνασαν τὸ δεύτερον, ἀντίοι τοῖς ἐχθροῖς ὁμαλῶς ἔθεον. (*c*) Ἐδούπησεν δὲ τὰ ὅπλα ἡνίκ' ἐκ τοῦ ἅρματος ἐπὶ γῆν ἔπεσεν. (*d*) Ἐπειδὰν προβάλωνται τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ βασιλεὺς παρελάσῃ πρὸ αὐτῶν, ἡμεῖς δὴ φθεγξώμεθα. (*e*) Ἀναβᾶς δ' ἐπὶ τὸν πρᾶνῆ γήλοφον καταθεῶ ἑκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἴς τε τὴν μεσημβρίαν καὶ τὴν ἄρκτον. (*f*) Ἔνθα δὴ δέδοικε μὴ ὄπισθεν αὐτοῦ γενόμενος βασιλεὺς κατακόψῃ τὸ πελταστικὸν καὶ πρόεισιν ἀντίος· καὶ ἐπιπεσὼν σὺν τοῖς κρατίστοις (καὶ ἦσαν ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι) νῖκᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ διώκει τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους καὶ ἀποκτείναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ φοινικιστήν τινα ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. (*g*) Διαστάντες οἱ ἱππεῖς ἐθήρων.

Digitized by Google

2. Translate: (*a*) I wonder because you have not yet received the letter which your (art.) wife wrote to you. (*b*) They did not know how great the noise would be when they uncovered (partic.) their shields and made a din with them against their spears. (*c*) When they neared (gen. abs.) his tent, a certain part of the army bent out like a wave; those therefore (who were) left behind went on a run. (*d*) Since the sacrifices are favorable, let victory, and death to the king and those with him, be our watchword. (*e*) Let us send (subjunct.) men to capture the heights in advance (*προ-*, prepositional pref.).

3. Learn the verbs of Lesson LI.; write on a slip of paper the English, and then from the English give the Greek, pronouncing both aloud as much as possible.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The adverbial endings *-σε* and *-θεν*. 2. Different ways of expressing purpose. 3. *ἐπιστάς* and *ἐπιστήσᾱς*. 4. Construction with *ἀκούω*. 5. *καὶ ὅς, ὁ δέ*. 6. Personal ending *-την*. 7. *ἀλλά* and *γάρ* in answers. 8. Analysis, parts, and classification of (*a*) *μένον*, (*b*) *ἀποβλέπων*, (*c*) *πελάσᾱς*, (*d*) *συναντῆσαι*, (*e*) *δέχομαι*, (*f*) *ἐφθέγξαντο*. 9. Inflection of *προῄει*. 10. Reason for the mode of *συναντῆσαι* **(15)**, of *παραγγέλλοι* **(15)**, of *εἴη* **(16)**.

LESSON LXII.

ANABASIS I. VIII. 19–24.

1. NOTES.

§ **19.** *πρὶν . . . ἐξικνεῖσθαι*: *cf. πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι* XLIV. § **13**, Notes. *κατὰ κράτος*, *according to their strength*, *i.e. at full speed*: *cf. κατὰ ἔθνη* LIX. § **9**. Meaning of *κατὰ γῆν*. *Cf. ἀνὰ κράτος* LVII. § **1**.

§ **20.** *κενὰ ἠνιόχων*: *cf. ὑμῶν ἔρημος* XXXIV. § **6**. *ἔστι ὅστις*, *somebody*. *Cf. ἦν . . . σταθμῶν οὓς . . . ἤλαυνεν*, *he made some of his marches long*, lit. *there were of his marches* [*those*] *which*, etc. XLVII. § **7**. *ἐκπλαγείς*: for *ἐκ-πλαγ-ε-ντ-ς*.

Digitized by Google

§ 21. *καθ' αὑτούς* : *cf.* *κατ' ἀντιπέρᾱς* Ἀβύδου XV. *οὐδ' ὥς, not even* THUS. Note, *ὥς* in this sense is accented. Meaning of *καὶ ταῦτα*? *Cf.* XLIII. *ad fin.* *ᾔδει αὐτὸν ὅτι ἔχοι* : so Matthew XXV. 24, — *I knew thee that thou art a hard man.*

§ 22. *αὐτῶν ἑκατέρωθεν* : *cf.* *πέρᾱν τοῦ Εὐφράτου* XLIX. § 10. *εἰ χρῄζοιεν . . . ἂν αἰσθάνεσθαι.* Form of conditional statement? Form in the direct discourse?

§ 23. *ἔξω . . . κέρᾱτος* : *cf.* *ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν* XLI. § 5. On the genitive form, *cf.* *κέρως* LIV. § 1.

§ 24. *δείσᾱς, fearing* : from *δέ-δοι-κα* LV. § 7, there being no Attic present. On *-οι-* in the perfect stem, *cf.* *λείπω, λέλοιπα.* *ἐμ-βαλών, he charged* or *fell upon.* *Cf.* *ἐμ-βάλλει* XXV. § 8, *ἐν-έβαλεν* XLIX. § 11.

2. OBSERVATION.

The verb *ἐστί* may be so closely construed with the relative pronoun that both may be rendered by the English *some*. In this case, the forms *ἐστί* and *εἰσί* take the accent on the penult, — *ἔστι, εἴσι.*

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Synopsis of *ῥίπτω*	H. 345, 355, *a*, 365, 61.	G. 15, 2, 101, 2.
2. Synopsis of *πείθω*	H. 347.	G. page 351.
3. Modes with verbs of *fearing* .	H. 887.	G. 218.
4. *ἔστιν οἵ*	H. 998.	G. 152, N. 2.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. *ἀ-σφαλής, -ές, safe ; ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ, in a safe place.*
2. *ἐκ-κλίνω, bend out* of line ; *give way.*
3. *ἐκ-πλήττω, strike out* of one's senses, *dismay.*
4. *ἔμ-προσθεν, in front.*
5. *ἐξ-άγω, lead out, astray ; tempt.*
6. *ἐξ-ικνέομαι, arrive at, reach.*
7. *ἐπι-κάμπτω,* bend in ; *draw* the wings of an army *together.*
8. *ἥμισυς, -εια, -υ, half.*
9. *ὁ ἡνίοχος, rein-holder, driver.*
10. *ὁ ἱππόδρομος, horse-race.*
11. *ἡ ἰσχύς, might, strength.*

Digitized by Google

12. κενός, *empty.*
13. ἡ κύκλωσις, *encirclement;* εἰς κύκλωσιν, *in order to encircle.*
14. προ-οράω, *see in front.*
15. συ-σπειράω, *coil together.*
16. τὸ τόξευμα, *bow-shot; arrow.*
17. τοξεύω, *shoot with a bow, strike with an arrow.*
18. τρέπω, *turn.*
19. ἡ φυγή, *flight.*
20. ὥς, *thus.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ἥιδει δὴ αὐτὸν ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ ὄντα. (*b*) Ἥιδειμεν αὐτὸν ὅτι συσπειραμένην ἔχοι Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν τὴν σὺν αὐτῷ. (*c*) Εἰσῆκται εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν σκηπτούχων. (*d*) Οὐδ' ὡς ἐξεπλάγη ὡς εἶδε αὐτοὺς ἐλαύνοντας τὰ δρεπανηφόρα πρὸς αὐτὸν κενὰ ἡνιόχων. (*e*) Ἐνταῦθα διέσχον ἀλλήλων ὅσον τετταράκοντα στάδια, οἱ μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὑτοὺς ὡς πάντα νῑκῶντες, οἱ δ' ἁρπάζοντες ὡς ἤδη πάντα νῑκῶντες. (*f*) Ἐπεὶ δ' ἤσθοντο βασιλέα ὅτι ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις εἴη σὺν τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ, βασιλεὺς δ' αὖ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νῑκῷεν τὸ καθ' αὑτοὺς καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσω οἴχονται διώκοντες, ἐνταῦθα δὴ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀθροίζει τε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ συντάττεται, ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο Πρόξενον καλέσας εἰ πέμποιέν τινας ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸν σταθμὸν ἀφ' οὗ ὥρμηντο.

2. Translate: (*a*) But after this he never saw him, either (*i. e.* neither) living or (nor) dead (perf. part.). (*b*) How many (*i. e.* as many as) indeed of those about the king died, Ktesiās tells; for he was with (= beside) him: but Cyrus himself died, and eight, the best of those about him, fell upon his body (= him). (*c*) Much use is there of good drivers in a horse-race. (*d*) Before I gave thee thy talents, thou knewest (me) that I was a hard man. (*e*) They were filled with consternation as they saw the king's force drawing in its wings before them as if to encircle them. (*f*) He now wants the Greeks to follow against the king; I therefore say that it is necessary that you cross the river Euphrates before it is evident what the rest will say (= reply) to Cyrus.

3. Review the Noun and Verb lists of Lesson LI.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Use of modes after πρίν. 2. Uses and senses of κατά. 3. The accent ἔστι. 4. ἔστι ὅστις. 5. -οι- in λέλοιπα, δέδοικα. 6. Parts,

Digitized by Google

classification, and analysis of ἔτρεψε, ἐπέκαμπτεν, συνεσπειραμένην, ἐξήχθη, ἐκπλαγείς. 7. Synopsis of ἐκκλίνουσιν, active voice. 8. Construction of ἡνιόχων **20**; declension of ἰσχύς **22**, κέρᾱτος **23**; conjugation of ᾔδει, indicative, **21**. 9. The phonetic rules illustrated in the synopsis of ῥίπτω and πείθω. 10. What mode to be used after ἔδεισε (*he feared*).

LESSON LXIII.

ANABASIS I. VIII. 25 to the end.

1. NOTES.

§ **25.** εἰς τὸ διώκειν: *cf.* ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν LXII. § **23.** πλὴν . . . κατελείφθησαν, *except that . . . were left.* πλήν, conj., as in LXII. § **20**, and XXIX. *ad fin.*

§ **26.** ἠν-έ-σχετο, *he did not endure, control himself. Cf.* ἂν δὲ ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε, § **4**. Note, in ἠνέσχετο both the temporal and the syllabic augment. ἵετο, *he threw himself. Cf.* ἵεντο κτέ XLVIII. § **8.**

§ **27.** καὶ . . . μαχόμενοι κτέ, *and as the king . . . fought, Ktesias says how many of those about the king perished.* βασιλεύς is nominative, but has no verb, for Xenophon changes the construction of his sentence at ὁπόσοι.

§ **28.** πεπτωκότα: *cf.* ἐκπεπτωκότας XIII. On the construction, *cf.* Ταμῶν . . . ἔχοντα XXIX. § **21.** περι-πεσεῖν (aor.): *cf.* ἐπι-πεσεῖσθαι LVII. *ad fin.*

§ **29.** ἐπι-σφάξαι: theme σφαγ (*cf.* σφάγια LXI. § **15**), pres. σφάττω; so theme πρᾱγ, pres. πράττω. εἶχε, ἐφόρει, ἐτετίμητο, *i. e.* Ἀρταπάτης.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The idea of *purpose* is expressed in many different ways.

2. πίπτω (πετ) assumes the theme πτω in the perfect.

3. Many verb themes in **-γ** have the present stem in **-ττ**.

4. ἀν-έχομαι, *endure,* has two augments, — one before and one after the preposition.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Synopsis of ἀλλάττω. H. 346. { G. 97, 4, and N. 2 end; page 331.
2. Synopsis of δείκνῡμι. H. 352. G. 123.
3. Conditional sentences { H. 893–895, 898, 900. { G. 220 (*a*), 1, 2; (*b*), 1, 2; 221–225.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀκοντίζω, *hurl* (*hit with*) *the spear.*
2. βίαιος, *powerful*; adv. -ως, *powerfully, violently.*
3. δια-σπείρω, *scatter seed broadcast*; pass. (of an army), *become separated.*
4. ἑκάτερος, *each* (of two).
5. ἐπι-σφάττω, *slay upon* or *over.*
6. ἡ εὔνοια, *good will, devotion.*
7. ὁ θεράπων, *attendant, servant.*
8. ἰάομαι, *dress* or *heal* (a wound).
9. ὁ ἰᾱτρός, *physician.*
10. καθ ορᾰ́ω, *behold over in the distance.*
11. κατα-λείπω, *leave behind.*
12. κεῖμαι, *lie, lie fallen.*
13. ὁ ὁμο-τράπεζος, *table companion.*
14. ὁ ὀφθαλμός, *eye.*
15. παίω, *strike.*
16. περι-πίπτω, *fall* (round) *upon.*
17. πίπτω, *fall.*
18. ἡ πιστότης, *faithfulness.*
19. σπάω, *draw.*
20. τὸ στέρνον, *breast.*
21. σχεδόν, *almost, almost only.*
22. τιτρώσκω, *wound.*
23. τὸ τραῦμα, *a wound.*
24. ἡ τροπή, *a turning, rout.*
25. φορέω, *continually wear.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Θεῶνται δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ τῑμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι, καὶ ἄλλους ἀτῑμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες ἐπίστανται ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι. (*b*) Τὸ δὲ ἥμισυ τῆς βασιλέως ἰσχύος ἐκπλαγὲν ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς ἱπποδρόμοις ἐξεκλίθη τῆς τάξεως καὶ ἐτρέφθη εἰς φυγὴν πρὶν τοξεύματα ἐξικνεῖσθαι. (*c*) Οὐδ' ὡς ἐξάγεται ἐπικάμψαι εἰς κύκλωσιν. (*d*) Ἄγαμαι δὴ τοὺς ἐμοὺς θεράποντας διὰ τὴν εὔνοιαν καὶ πιστότητα, ἣν ἐπέδειξαν· εἰ ἀσθενοῖεν, μέλοι ἄν μοι αὐτοὺς ἰᾶσθαι. (*e*) Ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς θόρυβος ἐγένετο καὶ τάραχος· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐνόμιζον ὅτι ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπίπτοιεν ἄν, εἰ μὴ τοὺς θώρᾱκας ἐνδῦντες καθίσταντο εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστος.

Digitized by Google

2. Translate: (*a*) He drew the dagger which he continually wore in his girdle, and struck the physician violently beneath the left eye. (*b*) I had thought that it was almost afternoon when the rout occurred. (*c*) Since the wound was upon the whole (a) large (one), he fell from his horse, and many of his most faithful table-companions fell over him. (*d*) Many of the servants of each lay by the side of the river where they had been slain over the body of the dead Cyrus. (*e*) I shall try to heal this wound as quickly as possible, in order that we may have leisure to put our enemies out of the way.

3. Review carefully the Nouns, Verbs, and Adjectives of Lesson LI. Select the more difficult ones for special study.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts, classification, and analysis of (*a*) διασπείρονται, (*b*) κατελείφθησαν, (*c*) ἠνέσχετο, (*d*) τιτρώσκει, (*e*) ἐπισφάξαι, (*f*) καθορᾷ. 2. Ways of expressing *purpose*. 3. Uses of πλήν. 4. Present system of ἵημι; principal parts. 5. Declension of στῖφος, τραῦμα, τὶς, πιστότης. 6. Inflection of ἐτετίμητο. 7. Euphonic principles illustrated in the synopsis of ἀλλάττω. 8. General conditions; past conditions. 9. Themes ending in -γ; present stem.

LESSON LXIV.

ANABASIS I. IX. 1–5.

1. NOTES.

§ 1. παρὰ πάντων: nearly equivalent to ὑπὸ πάντων. What is the difference? Κύρου . . . ἐν πείρᾳ γενέσθαι, *to have been acquainted with Cyrus.*

§ 2. ἔτι παῖς ὤν, *while yet a boy.* πάντα, *in all respects.* On the construction, *cf.* τὸ εὖρος XLIII. § 9.

§ 3. κατα-μάθοι ἄν τις: why the optative? *cf.* ὀκνοίην ἄν XXXVII.

Digitized by Google

ἰδεῖν ἔστι : *cf.* οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν XLVI. § **2**, ἔστι λαμβάνειν XLVI. § **3**. Note, that ἐστί becomes paroxytone (ἔστι) when the verb denotes *possibility;* as also when it denotes *existence* : *cf.* ἔστι δ' ὅστις LXII. § **20**.

§ **4**. εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες, *at once, while children; in their very childhood.*

§ **5**. τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις . . . πείθεσθαι, *and to obey his elders more even than those did who were inferior to him.* ἑαυτοῦ, construed after ὑποδεεστέρων; on the case of each, *cf.* προτέρᾳ Κύρου XXXI. § **25**.

φιλιππότατος, *sc.* ἐδόκει εἶναι. ἔργων (explained by τοξικῆς and ἀκοντίσεως) is construed after the two following adjectives.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. παρά with the genitive may denote *agency*, but not commonly.

2. English : "I am acquainted with Cyrus;" Greek : "I become in (= come into) a trial or experience of Cyrus."

3. ἐστί in certain positions or with certain meanings becomes ἔστι.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Synopsis of θηράω . . .	H. 338.	
2.	Synopsis of δηλόω . . .	H. 341.	G. 98.
3.	Synopsis of κομίζω . . .	H. 348, 425.	G. 110, II. 2 (*c*).
4.	Conditional relative clauses	H. 912–918.	G. 233.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. αἰδήμων, -ονος, *modest.*
2. αἰσχρός, *shameful, disgraceful.*
3. ἡ ἀκόντισις, *throwing the javelin.*
4. βασιλικός, *kingly, royal.*
5. τὸ ἔργον, WORK, *deed.*
6. ὁ ἡλικιώτης, *an equal in age, companion, comrade.*
7. κατα-μανθάνω, *learn thoroughly.*
8. μανθάνω, *learn.*
9. μελετηρός, *studious in practising.*
10. παιδεύω, *educate.*
11. ἡ πεῖρα, *trial, experience, acquaintance.*
12. ἡ σωφροσύνη, *prudence, temperance; self-control.*
13. ἡ τοξική, *archery.*
14. ὑποδεέστερος, *wanting somewhat, inferior.*
15. φίλιππος, *fond of horses.*
16. φιλομαθής, -ές, *fond of learning.*

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) *Ἐν συχνῇ δὲ πείρᾳ τῶν Κύρου ἡλικιωτῶν ἦσαν, καὶ ἐνόμισαν αὐτὸν πάντα πάντων αἰδημονέστατον εἶναι.* (*b*) *Ἔτι παῖδες ὄντες, ὅτ' ἐπαιδεύθησαν, πολλὴν ἀρετήν τε καὶ σωφροσύνην κατέμαθον.* (*c*) *Εὐθὺς παῖς ὢν ἐθεᾶτο τοὺς φιλίππους καὶ τοὺς τῶν εἰς τὸν ἱππόδρομον ἔργων φιλομαθεῖς καὶ μελετηρούς.* (*d*) *Ὅτε δὲ αὐτῷ ὥρᾱ ἐγένετο, ἐθήρευε ἀφ' ἵππου καὶ πρὸς τὰ θηρία ἐφάνη ὡς κίνδῡνον φιλῶν. Καὶ ἄρκτον ποτὲ ἐφ' αὐτὸν ἰοῦσαν οὐκ ἐφοβεῖτο, ἀλλὰ συμ-πεσὼν αὐτῇ ἐσπάσθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου· αὐτὴν δὲ κατέκανεν.*

2. Translate: (*a*) Yea, by Zeus, I know that if they should become enemies to each-other, many would go-away from the king to those even [who are] inferior to him. (*b*) It is a good [thing] to be fond of javelin-throwing and of archery, and, on the whole, of all things [which pertain] to war. (*c*) It is indeed most disgraceful that he is inferior to his attendants in faithfulness. (*d*) We all fear that he will die, if he has been wounded severely beneath the eye.

3. Review carefully the Vocabulary of Lesson LI.; note the more difficult words and go over them repeatedly. Review numbers 454–500 in the List of *first occurrences*.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts, theme, and classification of *μανθάνω*. 2. Comparison of *αἰδήμων*, *φιλομαθής*, *ἄξιος*, *κράτιστος*. 3. The genitives in § **1**. 4. The genitives in § **5**. 5. The *Attic future*. 6. Kinds of conditional relative clauses. 7. *ἔστι* (paroxytone). 8. General conditions. 9. General conditions, indirect discourse. 10. Illustrations of general conditions, direct and indirect discourse. 11. Familiar words suggested by words in the "Vocabulary." 12. Different methods of comparing adjectives. 13. Formation and comparison of adverbs. 14. The adverbial endings *-σε* and *-θεν*.

Digitized by Google

LESSON LXV.

ANABASIS I. IX. 6–10.

1. NOTES.

§ 6. *ἐπεὶ δέ*: correlative with *πρῶτον μέν* § 2. *καὶ . . . μέντοι*, *and withal* or *moreover*. *τέλος δέ*, *but finally*; note, this takes the place of *τὰ δέ*, correlative with *τὰ μέν*; on the construction of *τέλος*, *cf.* *τὸ ἀρχαῖον* XII., *τόνδε τὸν τρόπον* XV.

πολλοῖς: *cf.* *τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτόν* LIV. § 4.

§ 7. *καθ-ήκει*, *comes* as a duty; but *cf.* *καθ-ήκοντα* XL. *ad fin.*

ἐπέδειξεν αὐτὸν ὅτι . . . ποιοῖτο: *cf.* *ᾔδει αὐτὸν . . . ὅτι ἔχοι* LXII. § 21. *ὅτι . . . ποιοῖτο*, *that he made it of the most importance.* Explain the optative. Note the sense of *περὶ πλείστου*.

εἴ τῳ σπείσαιτο: *cf.* *εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν* XXII. NN. *τῷ*, encl., = *τινί*, **alicui**, dative of association.

§ 8. *μηδὲν ἂν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς παθεῖν*: *cf.* *ἂν εἶναι τίμιος* XXXIV. 6, NN.; *παρά*, *contrary to.*

§ 9. *προ-έ-σθαι*, from *προ-ίημι*: *cf.* *ἀφ-ῖέναι* XXXVIII. 19, *ἵεντο* XLVIII. 8, *ἵησι* XLIX. 12.

§ 10. *ἔλεγεν ὅτι*, direct discourse, "*I would never abandon them, when* (= *if*) *I once* (= *surely*) *became their friend.*" This would be expressed by *ἄν* with the optative in the main clause, with the imperfect indicative in the subordinate clause.

μείους: *cf.* *πλείους* XXXIV. § 7. *κάκιον πράξειαν*: *κ. πράττω* = *fare badly*; *cf.* XXII. *ad init.*

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. *τὰ μέν* is not necessarily followed by so strict a correlative as *τὰ δέ*.

2. The subject of a subordinate clause, instead of appearing as such, may be made the object of the main clause of a sentence.

3. The infinitive takes *ἄν* when it stands in the place of a finite verb which would have taken it.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Syllabic augment before vowel initial H. 359. G. 104.
2. Vowel of the subjunctive . . . . H. 373. G. 114.
3. Mode suffix of the optative . . . H. 374. G. 115.
4. Accent in the optative of -μι verbs . H. 388. G. 220, N. 1.
5. Vowel changes in the 2d perfect . . H. 451. { G. 110, IV. (*d*); 109, 3.
6. Infinitive with ἄν . . . . . H. 964. G. 211.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἅπαξ, *once, once for all.*
2. βοηθέω, *assist.*
3. ἐπι-φέρω, *bear upon;* mid., *rush upon.*
4. ἡ ἡλικιᾱ, *age, time of life.*
5. κατα-πέμπω, *send down* (to the sea-coast).
6. κατα-σπάω, *draw down.*
7. μακαριστός, *deemed happy, blessed.*
8. μείων, *less in number, fewer.*
9. πρέπει, *it becomes* or *befits.*
10. προ-ἵημι, *give up, abandon, surrender.*
11. σπένδω, *pour* a libation; mid., *pour a libation with another, i. e. make a treaty.*
12. ἡ σπονδή, *libation;* plural, *treaty.*
13. συμ-πίπτω, *fall together with, grapple with.*
14. συν-τίθημι, *put together;* mid., *agree.*
15. τὸ τέλος, *end.*
16. τοι-γαρ-οὖν, *and so then, therefore.*
17. τρέω, *tremble, shrink from in fear.*
18. φιλό-θηρος, *fond of the hunt* or *chase.*
19. φιλο-κίνδῡνος, *fond of danger.*
20. ἡ ὠτειλή, *scar.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Καὶ οὗτοι ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μείναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοιντο ἢ ἀπ-ίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. (*b*) Ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἀμφὶ δείλην ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. (*c*) Ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρᾱς τοῦτο ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος. (*d*) Τοιγαροῦν οὐ πρέπει εἶναι οὕτω φιλόθηροί τε καὶ φιλοκίνδῡνοι ὥστε πολλὰ πάσχειν ὧν τὰς ὠτειλὰς φοροῦμεν διὰ τοῦ βίου. (*e*) Οὐδ' εἰ ἔτι μὲν μείους γένοιντο ἔτι δὲ κάκῑον πράξειαν, οὐκ ἄν ποτε προοίμην, ἐπεὶ ἅπαξ ἐμοῦ φίλοι ἐγένοντο.

Digitized by Google

2. Translate: (*a*) When it befitted his time of life, Cyrus was educated with the other boys at the king's gates. (*b*) If anybody was ever an enemy to me, he trusted that, when I made an agreement or a treaty with him, he would suffer nothing contrary to the agreement (Lesson LXI.) or to the treaty. (*c*) When he was drawn from his horse, he showed how fond of danger and of hunting he was; for grappling with the bear, he, to be sure, suffered somewhat, so that he always bore the scars, but he at length killed her with his dagger. (*d*) If the enemy ever caused trouble to his country, Cyrus used to be sent down against them by the king.

3. In the List of *first occurrences* review words numbered 500–609.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Principal parts, theme, and classification of **σπείσαιτο, συνθοῖτο, εἵλοντο, συμπεσών, προέσθαι.** 2. (*a*) Analysis of each of the preceding forms; (*b*) synopsis of each in the tense and voice in which it appears. 3. The form **μείους**; its comparison. 4. Past general conditions. 5. The topics included in the Grammar Lesson. 6. A synopsis of **ἵημι**, present system.

LESSON LXVI.

ANABASIS I. IX. 11–16.

1. NOTES.

§ **11.** **φανερὸς δ' ἦν . . . πειρώμενος**: *cf.* **ἐπιβουλεύων φανερὸς γέγονας** LIII. § **8.**

ἀγαθὸν . . . ποιήσειεν αὐτόν, *do him good or*, etc.; observe the two accusatives. **νῑκᾶν**, *i. e. excel, surpass.* **ἕστε νῑκῷη**, *until he should surpass;* direct discourse, "*until I excel,*" **ἕστε ἂν νῑκῶ**: *cf.* **εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν** XXII. **εὖ . . . κακῶς ποιοῦντας**: *cf.* **κακῶς ποιῶ** XLII. § **8.** **ἀλεξόμενος**, *by giving them like for like; cf.* however **ἀλέξασθαι** XXXIV. § **6.**

Digitized by Google

§ 12. πλεῖστοι δή, *the very greatest number.* αὐτῷ . . . ἡμῶν, *to him, the* **one** *man of the men of our times.* Note the contrast indicated by πλεῖστοι . . . ἑνί. Note also the force of ἐπί.

§ 13. ὡς: *cf.* XXXIII. § 5. εἶᾱ: *cf.* XLIII. *ad init.* ἀφειδέστατα, superlative of the adverb; strictly a neuter plural, cognate accusative: *cf.* ἄριστα § 5. ἦν: *cf.* οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν XLVI. § 2.

§ 14. εἰς πόλεμον: *cf.* εἰς τὴν τροφήν XVI. ἑώρᾱ: imperfect of ὁράω. Note the syllabic and temporal augment. ἧς κατεστρέφετο χώρᾱς, *of what country*, etc., *i. e. of the country, which*, etc. Note the appearance of the antecedent in the relative clause.

§ 15. ὥστε κτέ, *so that the good appeared, . . . and the bad were deemed*, etc.

§ 16. εἰς δικαιοσύνην . . . ἐπιδείκνυσθαι, *to distinguish himself in the matter of* (lit. unto) *justice.* ἀδίκου: neuter used as substantive; *cf.* ἄδικος LIII. § 8.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. φανερός εἰμι, like φαίνω, may be followed by a supplementary participle.

2. Conditional or relative clauses, having ἄν and the subjunctive, may in the indirect discourse omit ἄν and change the verb to the optative.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	Future perfect stem	H. 466.	G. 110, IV. (*c*).
2.	Theme modified in 1st aorist passive	H. 469–70.	G. 110, VI.
3.	Conjugation of ἵημι	H. 476.	G. 127, III.
4.	Conjugation of κεῖμαι . . .	H. 482.	G. 127, VI.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀδεῶς, *fearlessly.*
2. ἀφειδής, *unsparing*; -ῶς, adv., *unsparingly.*
3. ἡ ἀφθονίᾱ, *abundance.*
4. διαφερόντως (*differently*), *exceedingly, especially.*
5. ἡ δικαιοσύνη, *justice.*
6. ὁ δοῦλος, *slave.*
7. ἐκ-φέρω, *bring forth; report.*
8. ἐπι-θῡμέω, *set the heart upon, desire.*
9. ἕστε, *until.*

Digitized by Google

10. ἡ εὐχή, *prayer, vow.*
11. ὁ κακοῦργος, *evil-doer.*
12. κατα-γελάω, *laugh at, deride.*
13. κατα-στρέφω, *overturn, subdue.*
14. ὅποι, *whither.*
15. πλούσιος, *rich.*
16. προ-χωρέω, *advance; aid.*
17. στείβω, *tread.*
18. στέρομαι, mid. and pass. of στερέω.
19. τὸ σῶμα, *body.*
20. φιλο-κερδέω, *fond of gain.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον ἄλλος παραγενόμενος εἶπεν ὅτι ἦστινος πρᾶξεως Κῦρος ἐπιθῦμοῖτο, οἱ δοῦλοι ἤθελον πάντες' πάντα ἃ ἐκέκτητο προέσθαι εἰς ὅτι αὐτοῖς χρῆσθαι βούλοιτο. (*b*) Ἐτῑμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν τοὺς βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τὴν γῆν τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας Ἕλληνας. (*c*) Εἴς γε μὴν σωφροσύνην ἐάν τινες αὐτῷ φανεροὶ γένωνται ἐπιδείκνυσθαι βουλόμενοι, περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖται τούτους ζηλωτοτάτους ποιεῖν τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν. (*d*) Ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν καὶ θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἐπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι οὐ φαίνοιτο Κῦρος οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς παρείη· οὐ γὰρ ᾔδεσαν αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' εἰκαζον ἢ διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψόμενόν τι ἐλαυνόμενον εἰς τὸ πρόσω.

2. Translate: (*a*) Whenever evil-doers and unjust people used to laugh at him, he did not suffer it, but he made them the slaves of others. (*b*) They were so fond of danger that their bodies bore the scars of many battles. (*c*) Take whatever you think will aid you for your journey, and proceed without fear through Cyrus's kingdom. (*d*) There is indeed an abundance of men who will be willing to surrender all they have to Cyrus, wherever any one thinks he will perceive it.

3. Review with care the list of nouns in Lesson LX., and in the List of *first occurrences* the words numbered 610–660.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. κακὸν ποιῶ αὐτόν. 2. (*a*) The optatives in the lesson, (*b*) the supplementary participles. 3. Comparison of the adverb. 4. ἐφ' ἡμῶν. 5. Parts, classification, analysis, and synopsis of (*a*) στειβομένᾱς, (*b*) κατεστρέφετο, (*c*) στερομένους, (*d*) καταγελᾶν, (*e*) εἶᾱ. 6. Construction of ποδῶν (**13**), αὐτῷ (**14, 16**), φιλοκερδούντων (**16**). 7. The forms ὡμολόγητο διαφερόντως, ἑώρᾱ, εὐδαιμονεστάτους. 8. The antecedent in the relative clause. 9. ἀγαθὸν ποιῶ as a transitive construction. 10. Comparison of the adverb.

Digitized by Google

LESSON LXVII.

ANABASIS I. IX. 17–19.

1. NOTES.

§ 17. *ἄλλα τε . . . ἐχρήσατο, whilst a great many things were done for him with justice, he always had an army well worth the name; cf. τά τε ἄλλα ἐτίμησε . . . καί κτέ* XXXII. **§ 3.**

κατὰ μῆνα; cf. τοῦ μηνός XXXVIII. *ad fin.*

18. *αὐτῷ . . . ὑπηρετήσειεν: cf. Κύρῳ . . . ὑπάρχειν* **§ 17**; *ὑπῆρχε Κύρῳ* IX. *ἐλέχθησαν*, from *λέγω*.

§ 19. *οὐδένα . . . ἀφείλετο: cf. ἀφαιρεῖσθαι . . . Ἕλληνας . . . γῆν* XXXIII. **4.**

Κῦρον ἔκρυπτεν, **Cyrum celabat,** *used to conceal from Cyrus.*

2. OBSERVATION.

κρύπτω is construed with the accusative of the person from whom a thing is hidden, as well as with the accusative of the thing concealed.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. *ἔστι*	H. 480.	G. 28, 3, N. 1 end.
2. Principal parts of *πλέω, γιγνώσκω, ὑπάρχω, προστάττω, ὑπηρετέω, ἐάω, λέγω, γίγνομαι, ὁράω, ἀφαιρέω.*		
3. Agreement of the verb with two or more subjects . .	H. 606, 607.	G. 135.
4. Verbs of *plenty* and *want* . .	H. 743.	G. 172.
5. Verbs of *separation*. . . .	H. 748.	G. 174.
6. Genitive of *time*.	H. 759.	G. 179.

Digitized by Google

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀεί, *always.*
2. ἀληθινός, *true, worthy the name.*
3. ἀπο-κρύπτω, *hide away, conceal.*
4. ἀχάρ.στος, *thankless, unthanked.*
5. δεινός, *terrible; clever.*
6. δια-χειρίζω, *have in hand, manage.*
7. δικαίως, *justly.*
8. ἥκιστα, **minime**, *least of all.*
9. θαρραλέως, *boldly.*
10. κατα σκευάζω, *prepare fully, improve.*
11. κερδαλέως, *gainful.*
12. τὸ κέρδος, *gain, profit.*
13. ὁ οἰκονόμος, *house-steward; manager.*
14. πέπαμαι, *have gained, possess.*
15. πλουτέω, *am wealthy.*
16. ἡ προθῡμίᾱ, *zeal.*
17. προσ-δίδωμι, *give in addition, add.*
18. ἡ πρόσοδος, *approach, revenue.*
19. ὑπ-ηρετέω, *render service, serve.*
20. ὁ ὑπηρέτης, *servant, assistant.*
21. φανερῶς, *evidently.*
22. φθονέω, *begrudge, envy.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ὕστερον δέ. ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι κερδαλεώτερον ἔσται βασιλεῖ ὑπηρετεῖν, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίᾱν καὶ ἔλεξεν τοιάδε. (*b*) Καὶ μὴν εἰπόν τινες ὅτι πολλὰ ὑπισχνοῖτο τότε διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κινδῦνου προσιόντος. (*c*) Εἶτα δ' ἐξῆγον αὐτὸν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ οἷς προσετάχθη. (*d*) Ἐᾶν αὐτῷ πεισθῶμεν, οὔτε πονήσαντες οὔτε κινδῦνεύσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτῖμησόμεθα οἰκονόμων. (*e*) Καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλεῖστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι ἄλευρον ἦν, καὶ τὰς ἁμάξας μεστὰς σῖτου καὶ οἴνου, ἃς παρεσκευάσατο ἵνα, εἴ ποτε ἰσχῡρῶς τὸ στράτευμα λάβοι λῑμός, διαδοίη τοῖς Ἕλλησιν· ἦσαν δ' αὗται τετρακόσιαι ὡς ἐλέγοντο ἅμαξαι.

2. Translate: (*a*) If we heard that any servant or steward was evidently improving the country which he was governing, we would never allow his zeal to be unrewarded, but we used always to give him more. (*b*) We therefore worked most gladly and acquired many things boldly, and whatever we possessed we never hid from the king. (*c*) Not only do they manage many things for us with-justice, but they show that they are soldiers and stewards worthy the name. (*d*) Let us not seem to begrudge those who become wealthy openly.

Digitized by Google

3. Make a careful review of the Vocabulary of Lesson LX.; select the harder words and make a special study of them. Continue in the List of *first occurrences* as far as No. 780.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Peculiar use of ἄλλα § **17**. 2. κατὰ μῆνα; τοῦ μηνός. 3. Various verbs meaning *to aid;* case-construction with each. 4. Verbs construed with two accusatives. 5. Classification of the ten verbs of the Grammar Lesson. 6. ἔστιν. 7. Verbs construed with the genitive. 8. Familiar words suggested by the new words of the Vocabulary. 9. Analysis of the conditional sentences in the Text. 10. Case construction after χράομαι, φθονέω. 11. Analysis of ὁρᾷ, ἐπόνουν, ἐκτῶντο (§ **19**).

LESSON LXVIII.

ANABASIS I. IX. 20–24.

1. NOTES.

§ **20**. ὅ τι τυγχάνοι, *in whatever he might happen*, etc., *i. e. if he happened to . . . anything.* πρὸς πάντων: *cf.* πρὸς θεῶν LII. § **6**. ὁμολογεῖται . . . θεραπεύειν. Note, instead of the imperfect indicative ἦν (or ἐγένετο) ὁμολογουμένως (*he was confessedly the best man*, etc.), in the conclusion of this past general condition an equivalent form is used: *it is acknowledged by all that he was;* lit. *he is acknowledged*, etc.

§ **21**. αὐτὸ τοῦτο, κτέ, *that very thing, on account of which he, . . .* (namely) *that he might have, . . . he himself sought*, etc., *i. e. he himself* [did] *seeking*, etc. Observe, αὐτὸ τοῦτο has no strict construction. Give a previous instance of this same peculiarity. *Cf.* Lesson LXIII.

§ **22**. εἷς γε ὢν ἀνήρ, κτέ, *for one man, he used for many reasons to receive*, etc.; *cf.* ἑνί γε ἀνδρί LXVI. **12** and note. μάλιστα πάντων, *most of all, i. e.* rather than do anything else with them.

§ **23**. "With regard to gifts to be worn, his body could not wear them all; a man's best ornaments were his friends."

Digitized by Google

§ 24. "That he greatly excelled in kindnesses is easily explained; that he excelled in attentiveness and a love to please others was remarkable."

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Frequently the conclusion of a general supposition does not have its verb in the mode and tense required by a strict rule; instead of "*he was confessedly*, or *he was, as all knew*," the form "*he is confessed* (or *known*) *to have been*," may be used.

2. Sometimes the construction of a sentence is such that its latter part seems to have no strict grammatical connection with the first part.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Principal parts and classification of *κρίνω, τυγχάνω, οἶομαι, αἰσθάνομαι, λαμβάνω, σκοπέω, πέμπω.*		
2. Dative of *advantage*	H. 767.	G. 184, 1, 2, 3.
3. Dative of *interest* in looser relations	H. 771.	G. 184, 3 N. 1.
4. Dative with ἅμα	H. 772 and *c*.	G. 186, ex.
5. Dative of *accompaniment* in military expressions . . .	H. 774 and *a*.	G. 188, 5 and N.
6. Dative of *time*	H. 782.	G. 189.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀγαστός, *to be admired, admirable.*
2. δια δίδωμι, *give to different ones, distribute.*
3. ἡ ἐπιμέλεια, *care, attentiveness.*
4. εὔνους (contr. from εὔνοος), *well-minded, well-disposed.*
5. θαυμαστός, *wonderful.*
6. θεραπεύω, *serve, attend.*
7. ὁ καλλωπισμός, personal *adornment.*
8. κατ-εργάζομαι, *work out, accomplish.*
9. κοσμέω, *set in order, adorn.*
10. προ-θῡμέομαι, *am zealous, eager.*
11. σκοπέω, *look at, observe.*
12. ὁ συνεργός, *fellow-worker.*
13. χαρίζομαι, *gratify, oblige.*

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Κύρου ἀποκόπτεται ἡ κεφαλὴ καὶ ἡ χεὶρ ἡ δεξιά. Βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ διώκων ἐπιπίπτει τῷ Κύρου στρατεύματι· καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἵστανται, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου (*camp*) εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν οὗ ὥρμηντο· τέτταρες δ' ἐλέγοντο παρασάγγαι εἶναι τῆς ὁδοῦ. (*b*) Καὶ γὰρ οὖν πλεῖστοι δὴ αὐτῷ ἑνί γε ἀνδρὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἑαυτοῦ ἐπεθύμησαν συνεργοὶ εἶναι καὶ θεραπεύειν, ὅτι τυγχάνοι βουλόμενος κατεργάζεσθαι. (*c*) Ὅπου δ' οὐ πολὺς εἴη χῖλός, αὐτὸς δ' ἐδύνατο παρασκευάζεσθαι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἔχειν ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, διαδιδοὺς ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χῖλὸν τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα ἄγουσι ἵπποις.

2. Translate: (*a*) For one man, he did most to make men love him and help (in) whatever he might chance to desire to accomplish. (*b*) Whomsoever he sees willing to incur dangers and knows to be well disposed, him he makes it of the highest importance to gratify in many things. (*c*) Now the flesh of these wild animals was sweet. (*d*) Whenever we used to hear of men who wore many personal adornments, we used to think that our best ornaments were our (the) good and faithful and zealous friends of whom we had many.

3. Review the Vocabularies of Lessons X., XX., XXX., and XXXIX.; make a search for the more difficult words the chief study.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Conditional relative sentences. 2. *πρός* with the genitive. 3. Irregularities in the form of the verb in conclusions of conditional sentences. 4. *εἴς γε ὢν ἀνήρ*. 5. Analysis of the conditional sentences in the Lesson. 6. Declension of *εὖνους* (20), *ὅτου* (21), and *σῶμα* (23). 7. Analysis of *κοσμηθῆναι* (23), *διεδίδου* (22), *κρίνειε* (20). 8. The optatives in the Lesson. 9. Familiar words suggested by the new words in the Vocabulary.

Digitized by Google

LESSON LXIX.

ANABASIS I. IX. 25–31.

1. NOTES.

§ **25.** *οὔπω . . . ἐπιτύχοι, not yet of* (*i. e. for*) *a long time,* etc.; *τούτου, i. e.* the wine sent by Cyrus; *οἴνῳ, cf. σφίσιν* LVII. *ad fin.*

σοί, H. **261**; G. **79.**

§ **26.** *τούτοις ἥσθη*; *cf.* XXVIII. **18.**

§ **28.** *μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, were likely to see* (indefinite frequency); *cf.* the meaning of *ἔμελλε* LVII. **1**; *ὄψεσθαι,* classed as future of *ὁράω,* though from a different theme; *cf.* (*a*) *αἱρέω, εἷλον,* (*b*) *φημί, εἶπον, εἴρηκα.*

§ **29.** *καὶ τόδε* (*sc. ἐστίν*), *the following fact also is,* etc. *καὶ οὗτος . . . ἢ ἑαυτῷ, and he found that he, whom he supposed faithful to himself, was a better friend,* etc.; *cf. δοθῆναι οἱ* XIV.; *φίλτερον,* the usual comparative of *φίλος. καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι*: in apposition with *πολλοί. ἂν τυγχάνειν*: *cf. ἂν τίμιος εἶναι* XXXIV.; the condition is in *ὄντες ἀγαθοί* (= *εἰ ἀγαθοὶ εἶησαν*). Note the genitive construed with *τυγχάνειν.*

§ **30.** *τεκμήριον . . . ὅτι καὶ αὐτός, indication of the fact that he was both himself,* etc.; the *τεκμήριον* which Xenophon has in mind is in **§ 31,** hence *γάρ* at the beginning of it.

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. The *time within which* an act occurs may be expressed by the genitive case.

2. Several important verbs show a change of theme in their principal parts.

3. *μέλλω* (*I am likely* or *about to*), implying futurity, may itself be construed with a future infinitive.

Digitized by Google

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. The principal parts of δέω (*want*), ἥδομαι, βούλομαι, δύναμαι, ἔχω, ἄγω, ἐμ-βάλλω, προσ καλέω, ἀκούω, εὑρίσκω.
2. Perfect with present meaning . . H. 849. G. 200, N. 6.
3. Tenses of the optative and infinitive in the indirect discourse . . . H. 852. G. 203.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀγαπάω, *love.*
2. ὁ ἄρτος, *bread.*
3. βέβαιος, *firm.*
4. ὁ βῖκος, *pitcher.*
5. γεύω, *give a taste;* mid., *taste.*
6. δηλόω, *reveal, make evident.*
7. δια-πέμπω, *send around, distribute.*
8. ὁ δοῦλος, *slave.*
9. ἐκ-πίνω, *drink up.*
10. ἐπι-λέγω, *say with reference thereto.*
11. ἐπι-τυγχάνω, *happen upon.*
12. ἐπι χειρέω, *take in hand, attempt.*
13. ἡμί-βρωτος, *half-eaten.*
14. ἡμι-δεής, *half-wanting* or *empty; half-full.*
15. τὸ ἥμισυ, neut. of the adj., *half.*
16. ὀρθῶς, *rightly.*
17. πεινάω, *am hungry.*
18. προσ-καλέω, *call unto myself, summon.*
19. σπάνιος, *scarce, rare.*
20. σπουδαιολογέομαι, *talk earnestly.*
21. ὁ συν-τράπεζος, *mess-mate, table-companion.*
22. τὸ τεκμήριον, *sign, indication.*
23. τήμερον, *to-day.*
24. ἡ τῑμή, *honor.*
25. ὁ χήν, *goose.*

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ φοινικιστής, ἀνὴρ ὢν τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν μέγαν γενομένων τῑμιώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος· τοῦτο παρὰ πάντων ὡμολόγηται τῶν αὐτοῦ δοκούντων ἐν πείρᾳ τε καὶ φιλίᾳ γενέσθαι. (*b*) Ἔνθα δὴ εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες ἔμαθον αἰδήμονες εἶναι καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ὑποδεεστέρους. (*c*) Ἐπιδείκνῡσι αὐτὸν ὅτι περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖται,

Digitized by Google

ἐάν τῳ σπείσηται καὶ ἐάν τῳ συνθῆται, μηδὲν ψεύδεσθαι. (*d*) Καὶ εἴ τις ἡμῖν ἐχθρὸς ἐγένετο, σπεισαμένων ἡμῶν ἐπίστευε πάντα καλῶς ἂν ἔχειν. (*e*) Ξυνιδεῖν δ' ἔστι τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν ὁ Κῦρος ὡς δυνάμενος κρινειν ὀρθῶς τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ βεβαίους.

2. Translate: (*a*) Whenever I receive pitchers of sweeter wine, I shall send all to you, but not for a long time have I received wine sweeter than this. (*b*) They are confessed by all to be zealous co-workers for all whom they know to be well-disposed and faithful. (*c*) That also which happened to him about full market is a great indication that he always had his army drawn up for battle; for when a horseman appeared riding at full speed and announced that the enemy were coming, the soldiers immediately stood under arms and waited until Cyrus should order them what they should do.

3. A careful study of the Vocabulary of Lesson LI. and LX.; review in the List of *first occurrences* from No. 781 to 865.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. How to express *time*. 2. Tenses of the indicative, optative, infinitive, participle. 3. The optatives in the Lesson. 4. Declension of ἡμιδείς (**25**) ὑπηρέτης, πεινῶντες (**27**). 5. Inflection of τῑμᾰ́ (**28**), ἀπῆει (**29**). 6. Analysis of δηλοίη, πεφιλῆσθαι (**28**). 7. Comparison of φίλος. 8. The participle πεπτωκότα (**30**).

LESSON LXX.

ANABASIS I. x. 1–6.

1. NOTES.

§ 1. ἀποτέμνεται, διώκων, εἰσπίπτει; explain the use of the singular. οἱ μὲν μετὰ Ἀριαίου, *Ariaeus and his men.*

§ 2. τέτταρες . . . ὁδοῦ, *there were said to be four parasangs of the road, i. e. the distance was said to be four parasangs.* τά τε ἄλλα διαρπάζουσι, καὶ . . . λαμβάνει, *not only plunder much of other things, but* (*i. e. while they plunder*, etc.) *also take*, etc.; *cf.* LXVII. **17**.

Digitized by Google

§ 3. ληφ-θεῖσα, theme λαβ. τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέᾱ, *cf.* οἱ μετὰ Ἀριαίου § 1. πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, *to* [*sc.* τούτους, *those*] *of the Greeks.* Why not allow πρός to be construed with the genitive here? ὅπλα ἔχοντες, *i. e. on guard.* οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν, *but some of them* (*i. e.* the Greeks) *also.* ἔσωσαν, from σώζω. ἐντὸς αὐτῶν, *within their army* or *line.*

§ 5. Τισσαφέρνους, *cf.* Κύρου LIX. § 13. εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, *forward.* πλησιαίτατος from πλησίον: note the formation. πέμποιεν . . . ἴοιεν, *whether they should send . . . or go;* direct discourse, "*shall we send . . . or go?*" the subjunctive of deliberation; observe the change from direct to indirect discourse. ἀρήξοντες: tense?

2. OBSERVATIONS.

1. A verb followed by two or more subjects frequently agrees with the nearer in number.

2. An adjective modifying two or more substantives may be singular when *one* person or thing is especially held in mind by the writer.

3. πλησίον and φίλος show irregularities of comparison.

4. The subjunctive of deliberation may become optative in the indirect discourse after a secondary tense.

3. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1.	The adverb ἄν	H. 857–862.	G. 207–211.
2.	Subjunctive of *deliberation* .	H. 866, 3.	G. 256.
3.	Modes in *result* clauses . .	H. 925–927.	G. 237, 238.

4. VOCABULARY.

1. ἀπο-τέμνω, *cut off.*
2. ἀνα-λαμβάνω, *take up* to or with one's self.
3. ἀντι-τάττω, *draw up against.*
4. ἀρήγω, *aid, assist.*
5. γυμνός, *lightly clad.*
6. εἰσ-πίπτω, *fall into.*
7. ἔνθεν, *thence; whence.*
8. ἐντός, *within.*
9. Κύρειος, *of Cyrus.*
10. ἡ παλλακίς, *mistress.*
11. σοφός, *wise, accomplished.*
12. τὸ στρατόπεδον, *camp.*
13. στρέφω, *turn.*
14. σώζω, *save.*

Digitized by Google

5. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμποι λέξοντα ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. (*b*) Ἐπεὶ δὲ τετελεύτηκεν, ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε βασιλέα καὶ ὡς ὁρᾶτε οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται. (*c*) Καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μείναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοιντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. (*d*) Οὗτος γὰρ πρῶτον οὐκ ἔφυγεν, ἀλλὰ διήλασε παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας· διελαύνων δὲ κατέκανε μὲν οὐδένα, διαστάντες δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπαιον καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐτόξευον.

2. Translate: (*a*) They deliberated whether they should take up those who had again fled or fall upon the camp and cut off those (who were) stationed there on guard. (*b*) This was the end of that day. (*c*) She was said to be a beautiful and accomplished woman; wherefore those (who were) drawn up to aid her did not flee, but saved her and all her property. (*d*) When the brave soldiers wheeled (= turned) in that direction to receive the king, he did not lead against them, but fled to the station from which he had set out. (*e*) But when they saw-in-advance the scythe-bearing chariots, they did not fear, but opened their line (*i. e.* stood apart).

3. The review of the words in the List of *first occurrences* numbered 831–921.

6. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. The agreement of the verb; irregularities. 2. Agreement of the adjective; irregularities. 3. Familiar words suggested by the Vocabulary. 4. Principal parts of the new verbs in the Vocabulary. 5. The changes in the theme vowel of *στρέφω* in the different tense systems. 6. The principles in the Grammar Lesson. 7. *οἱ μετὰ Ἀριαίου*, *Ἀριαῖος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ*. 8. Comparison of *πλησίον* and *φίλος*. 9. Subjunctive of deliberation; the same in the indirect discourse.

Digitized by Google

LESSON LXXI.

ANABASIS I. x. 7–12.

1. NOTES.

§ 7. Ἕλληνας: here with the force of an adjective. κατέκανε: *cf.* LXV. § 6.

§ 8. ὡς μεῖον ἔχων ἀπ-ηλλάγη, *when he withdrew, having less, i. e. the worst of it;* μεῖον is comparative of μῑκρός. τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, in apposition with στρατόπεδον.

§ 9. ἀνα-πτύσσειν τὸ κέρας: *to bend* or *wheel the wing around;* thus the army would be brought to face the enemy, while its rear rested on the river.

§ 10. καὶ δὴ βασιλεύς, *the king already also.*

§ 11. ἐκ πλείονος ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν, *from a greater distance than before:* they did not wait for the Greeks to come so near as they had before.
τὸ πρόσθεν, adverbial accusative.

§ 12. πεζοί: partitive apposition with οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέᾱ. ἱππέων: *cf.* χόρτου XLIX. § 10. ὥστε . . . μὴ γιγνώσκειν, *so that [the Greeks] . . . what was being done.* ἀετόν τινα κτέ, *a kind of eagle, outstretched (i. e. with wings outstretched) upon a shield, on the top of a (spear) shaft.*

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Principal parts of φεύγω, ἐλαύνω, καίνω, ἵστημι, παίω, ἀλλάττω, στρέφω, ἱκνέομαι, δέδοικα, κόπτω.
2. Comparison of κακός, μῑκρός, ὀλίγος, πολύς, καλός . . H. 254. G. 73.
3. Indirect discourse . . . . { H. 928–930, 932, 934, 937. } G. 241, 248.

Digitized by Google

3. VOCABULARY.

1. ὁ ἀετός, *eagle.*
2. ἀμφοτέρωθεν, *from* or *on both sides.*
3. ἀνα-πτύσσω, fold up; *open out* (hence, to deploy the wings of an army to meet any new attack of the enemy.
4. ἀνα-τείνω, *stretch up* or *out, extend.*
5. ἀπ-αλλάττω, *change away, withdraw, come off* from an encounter.
6. αὖθις, *again.*
7. ἐπι-διώκω, *pursue.*
8. ὁ λόφος, *hill.*
9. ὁμοῦ, *together.*
10. παρ-αμείβω, mid., *change a battle-line* or *order.*
11. παρα-τάττω, *draw up* or *arrange beside.*
12. ἡ πέλτη, *light* (*crescent-formed*) *shield.*
13. περι-πτύσσω, *fold about, enfold, surround.*
14. προσ-άγω, *lead against, attack.*
15. τὸ σημεῖον, *sign, standard.*
16. σύν-ειμι, *go with, come together.*
17. ἡ σύν-οδος, *coming together, encounter.* [*in with.*
18. συν-τυγχάνω, *happen* or *fall*
19. τὸ σχῆμα, *form, shape.*
20. φρόνιμος, *sagacious.*

4. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐχώρουν οἱ Ἕλληνες, οἱ ἱππεῖς λιπόντες τὸν λόφον ἀπηλλάγησαν· ἦν δ' ὁ λόφος ψιλὸς τῶν ἱππέων. (*b*) Μετὰ τὴν πρώτην σύνοδον συνῆσαν πάλιν παραμειψάμενοι εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα τοῖς Ἕλλησιν. (*c*) ὃ δὲ δὴ ἔγραψα ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ συνόδῳ, τῷδε δῆλον ἦν· τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων τὰ ὅπλα αὐτῷ διδόναι ἐκέλευε, τότε δὲ ἀγγέλους καὶ ἑρμηνέᾶς ἔπεμψε περὶ σπονδῶν. (*d*) Ἀριθμὸς δὲ τῆς ὁδοῦ ἣν ἦλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίᾶς μέχρι τῆς μάχης σταθμοὶ τρεῖς καὶ ἐνενήκοντα, παρασάγγαι πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ πεντακόσιοι, στάδιοι πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑξακισχίλιοι καὶ μύριοι· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης ἐλέγοντο εἶναι εἰς Βαβυλῶνα στάδιοι ἑξήκοντα καὶ τριᾶκόσιοι.

2. Translate: (*a*) The standard of the enemy was supposed to be a bronze eagle, having its wings raised, as-if about to fly. (*b*) We shall pursue them, if we are able, as far as the so-called wall of Media. (*c*) And when he heard the watch-word passing a second-time (adv. acc.) through the army, he asked what the noise was. (*d*) A rumor spread (went) through the army that the march was to be against the king.

Digitized by Google

(*e*) They put the river in their rear, fearing lest the enemy might surround them and cut them down.

3. Review of words numbered 922–988 in the List of *first occurrences*.

5. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. Familiar words suggested by the Vocabulary. 2. Euphonic principles illustrated in the principal parts of the verbs in the Grammar Lesson. 3. Summary of the principles of the indirect discourse. 4. Optatives in § **9**. 5. Analysis of the participles in §§ **9**, **10**.

LESSON LXXII.

ANABASIS I. x. 13–19.

1. NOTES.

§ **13**. ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν, *some in one direction, others in another.* τέλος: *cf.* LXV. § **6**.

§ **15**. ἀνὰ κράτος, *cf.* LVII. § **1**. σχέδον . . . ἦν, *about the time this took place.*

§ **16**. θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα, *grounding their arms; cf.* L. § **14**. ἤδεσαν: from οἶδα.

§ **17**. ἄγοιντο, *cf.* πέμποιεν LXX. § **5**.

§ **18**. σῖτίον ἢ ποτόν, *meat or drink.*

2. GRAMMAR LESSON.

1. Principal parts of λείπω, ἀγγέλλω δύω, τίθημι, παύω, φαίνω, οἶδα, θνήσκω, διώκω, μένω.		
2. The infinitive construction with *adjectives* or *nouns*	H. 952.	G. 261.
3. The infinitive construction with ὥστε or πρίν	H. 953, 955.	G. 266, 274.

Digitized by Google

3. VOCABULARY.

1. ἄδειπνος, -ον, *without dinner.*
2. ἀθρόος, *in a body* or *mass.*
3. ἄλλοθεν, *from* or *in a different direction.*
4. ἀνα-βιβάζω, *lead up, make go* [*up.*
5. ἀνα-παύω, mid., *stop and regain breath* or *strength.*
6. ἀν-άριστος, -ον, *without breakfast.*
7. ὁ δορπηστός, *time of the evening meal.*
8. δύω, *enter.*
9. ἡ ἔνδεια, *want, need.*
10. ὁ ἥλιος, *sun.*
11. οὐδαμοῦ, *nowhere.*
12. ποτός, *drinkable, drink.*
13. προ-ελαύνω, *ride forward.*
14. τὸ σῖτίον, *food.*
15. σφοδρός, *vehement, violent, excessive.*
16. ψιλόω, *make bare, desert.*

4. EXERCISES.

1. Translate: (*a*) Πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι, ἐκκλίνουσι οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ὁ λόφος ἐψιλώθη. (*b*) Ἥσθημεν δὴ πάντες, ὁρῶντες τὴν τοῦ δῦομένου ἡλίου λαμπρότητα καὶ τῶν νεφελῶν. (*c*) Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ ὁ ἥλιος ἐδύετο, ὁ Θρᾷξ ἔχων τούς τε ἱππέας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς τετταράκοντα καὶ τῶν πεζῶν Θρᾳκῶν ὡς τριακοσίους ἠὐτομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέᾱ· Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἡγεῖτο κατὰ τὰ δόξαντα, οἱ δ' εἵποντο· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον σταθμὸν παρὰ Ἀριαῖον καὶ τὴν ἐκείνου στρατιὰν ἀμφὶ μέσᾱς νύκτας· καὶ ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα συνῆλθον οἱ Θρᾷκες καὶ τὸ πολὺ τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρὰ Ἀριαῖον· καὶ συνέθεντο οἵ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ κράτιστοι μήτε προδώσειν ἀλλήλους σύμμαχοί τε ἔσεσθαι.

2. Translate: (*a*) Cyrus, annoyed and grieved by these things, sent for Clearchus: but he refused to go; without the knowledge of the soldiers, however, he sent a messenger to him and told him not to fear. (*b*) We shall not lead our soldiers up those difficult hills, but permit them to stop when they have pursued the enemy and made the plain wholly bare. (*c*) He did not know whether he should first pause and then enter the tent, or go in immediately. (*d*) If the enemy had found the meat and drink hidden in the camp of Cyrus and plundered it, great and excessive need would have fallen upon all with him.

3. Review of the words numbered 989–1117 in the List of *first occurrences.*

Digitized by Google

5. TOPICS FOR STUDY.

1. ἄλλος ἄλλοθεν. 2. τίθημι τὰ ὅπλα. 3. Subjunctive of deliberation in indirect discourse. 4. The grammatical principles illustrated in No. 1, Grammar Lesson. 5. Construction of ἱππέων and τέλος § **13**. 6. Inflection of ἔστησαν § **16**. 7. The optatives in §§ **16–18**. 8. Inflection and analysis of ἐφάνη § **19**.

6. REVIEW.

It is of great importance to review the ninth and tenth chapters. This can be done successfully if great care is taken (*a*) to understand the translation correctly; (*b*) to grasp the meaning of each of the new words in these two chapters; (*c*) to study the more complicated uses of modes and tenses illustrated in the ninth chapter; and (*d*) to pick out, classify, and tabulate the instances of conditional clauses in both direct and indirect discourse. Follow in general the plan of Review adopted in Lessons X. and XX.

Digitized by Google

THE FIRST BOOK

OF

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS.

CHAPTER I.

When Darius was at the point of death, he desired his sons Artaxerxes and Cyrus to be summoned to him (1). The former shortly after becomes king, and the latter, during his stay at court, is accused of plotting against the new king (2, 3). Upon returning to his province, Cyrus nurses his resentment against his accusers and against the king, who had been upon the point of putting him to death, and decides to raise an army in secret in order to thrust Artaxerxes from the throne (4). He summons his several commanders to collect Spartan mercenaries, as if to subdue his enemy Tissaphernes and to champion the exiles of Miletus (5–8). Through the aid of Clearchus, he raises a second army and stations it in the Thracian Chersonese (9). A third army, under the command of Aristippus, he secretes in Thessaly (10). A fourth, with Proxenus as general, he prepares as if for a campaign against the Pisidians, and other generals are placed in command of smaller forces, ready to come to aid him in the war against Tissaphernes, which serves as a blind to conceal from the king the true intentions of his brother against him (11).

1. Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠσθένει Δαρείος καὶ ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω παρεῖναι. **2.** ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανε· Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην

Digitized by Google

ἐποίησε, καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὁπλίτας ἀνέβη τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν Παρράσιον. **3.** ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρεῖος καὶ κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. **4.** ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθείς, βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλά, ἢν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην. **5.** ὅστις δ' ἀφικνοῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἴησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. **6.** τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέα. ὧδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογήν. ὁπόσας εἶχε φυλακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουρἀρχοις ἑκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομέναι, τότε δὲ ἀφειστήκεσαν πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου· **7.** ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης

Digitized by Google

προαισθόμενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, ἀποστῆναι πρὸς Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν ἀπέκτεινε τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας συλλέξας στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα. **8.** πρὸς δὲ βασιλέα πέμπων ἠξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἳ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ ᾐσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμούντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν Τισσαφέρνους ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων. **9.** ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τούτῳ συγγενόμενος ὁ Κῦρος ἠγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μυρίους δαρεικούς. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον στράτευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θρᾳξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλησποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφὴν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἑκοῦσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα. **10.** Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὢν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους

Digitized by Google

ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὡς οὕτω περιγενόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἓξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλεύσηται. οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στράτευμα. **11.** Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ξένον ὄντα ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς εἰς Πισίδας βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ. Σοφαίνετον δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τοῖς Μιλησίων. καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι.

CHAPTER II.

As soon as it seemed that his plot was ready to be put into execution, which Tissarphernes had foreseen and reported to the king, Cyrus collects his forces and sets out from Sardis, as if against the people of the Pisidians (1–5). He proceeds through Lydia (5) and then through Phrygia, where new forces join him (6). At the city of Celaenae, a new supply of auxiliaries arrives and a review of the forces is made (7–9). When they arrive at the plain of Caÿster, the soldiers become clamorous for their pay for the three months of their service (10, 11). This Cyrus gives them, being enabled to do so by the pecuniary assistance lent by the queen of the Cilicians, who had come to him (12). They then reach Thymbrium, pass the fountain of Midas (13), and make their way into Lycaonia (19), at which point the queen departs for Cilicia (20), which country Cyrus and his army then enter (21–25). At Tarsus he meets Syennesis, king of the Cilicians (26, 27).

Digitized by Google

1. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἤδη πορεύεσθαι ἄνω, τὴν μὲν πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πισίδας βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ παραγγελλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἥκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα, καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα· καὶ Ξενίᾳ τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, ἥκειν παραγγέλλει λαβόντα τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν ὁπόσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. **2.** ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἐπείθοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα παρῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις. **3.** Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις ὁπλίτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους, Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὁπλίτας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, γυμνῆτας δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὁπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ὁπλίτας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους, Πασίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους μὲν ὁπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρεγένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατευομένων. **4.** οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισίδας τὴν παρασκευήν, πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα ᾗ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα

Digitized by Google

ἱππέας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους. **5.** καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δή, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἴρηκα ὡρμᾶτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν. τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα· γέφυρα δὲ ἐπῆν ἑπτὰ ἐζευγμένη πλοίοις. **6.** τοῦτον διαβὰς ἐξελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίας σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας ὀκτὼ εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτά· καὶ ἦκε Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ὁπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους, Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους. **7.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Κελαινάς, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασίλεια ἦν καὶ παράδεισος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὁπότε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ῥεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. **8.** ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασίλεια ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσύου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ Μαρσύου τὸ εὖρός ἐστιν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ σοφίας, καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς

Digitized by Google

καλεῖται Μαρσύας. **9.** ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασίλεια καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὁπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾷκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρῆτας διακοσίους. ἅμα δὲ καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρακούσιος ἔχων ὁπλίτας τριακοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἀρκὰς ἔχων ὁπλίτας χιλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὁπλῖται μὲν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους. **10.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Πέλτας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσε καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἆθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες χρυσαῖ· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δώδεκα εἰς Κεράμων ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην πρὸς τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρᾳ. **11.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς Καΰστρου πεδίον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπῄτουν. ὁ δὲ ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε καὶ δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπου ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι. **12.** ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλίκων βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν

Digitized by Google

στρατιᾷ τότε ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα φυλακὴν περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίους· ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ συγγενέσθαι Κῦρον τῇ Κιλίσσῃ. **13**. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ᾗ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον θηρεῦσαι οἴνῳ κεράσας αὐτήν. **14**. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Τυριάειον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδεῖξαι ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων. **15**. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην, οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ στῆναι, συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί. **16**. ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ δὲ παρήλαυνον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἴλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις· εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, παρελαύνων ἐφ' ἅρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἁρμαμάξης. εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικοῦς καὶ κνημῖδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένας. **17**. ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασε, στήσας τὸ ἅρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης, πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἑρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προεῖπον

Digitized by Google

τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλόμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἐπῆσαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θᾶττον προϊόντων σὺν κραυγῇ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. **18**. τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολύς, καὶ ἥ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἁρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες τὰ ὤνια ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλωτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασε. Κῦρος δὲ ἥσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδών. **19**. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα. ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν. **20**. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καππαδοκίας σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε εἰς Θόανα, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσην Μεγαφέρνην, φοινικιστὴν βασίλειον, καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων δυνάστην, αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ. **21**. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἁμαξιτὸς ὀρθία ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Συέννεσις

Digitized by Google

εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν· διὸ ἔμειναν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπὼς εἴη Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στράτευμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ ὅτι τριήρεις ἥκουε περιπλεούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμῶν ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. **22.** Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηνὰς οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς πεδίον μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρρυτον, καὶ δένδρων παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων· πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην καὶ κέγχρον καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθὰς φέρει. ὄρος δ' αὐτὸ περιέχει ὀχυρὸν καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντῃ ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν. **23.** καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσούς, τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἔνθα ἦν τὰ Συεννέσιος βασίλεια τοῦ Κιλίκων βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου δὲ τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς Κύδνος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέθρων. **24.** ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς χωρίον ὀχυρὸν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεῖα ἔχοντες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς. **25.** Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ προτέρα Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τῶν ὀρέων τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος ἀπώλοντο· οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἁρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλίκων, οἱ δὲ ὑπολειφθέντας καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὑρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο στρά-

Digitized by Google

τευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα πλανωμένους ἀπολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὁπλῖται. **26.** οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, τήν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοὺς διήρπασαν, διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν ὀργιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. Κῦρος δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσήλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετεπέμπετο τὸν Συέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενί πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρῳ ἰέναι ἤθελε, πρὶν ἡ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστεις ἔλαβε. **27.** μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Συέννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ τίμια, ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον καὶ στρεπτὸν χρυσοῦν καὶ ψέλια καὶ ἀκινάκην χρυσοῦν καὶ στολὴν Περσικήν, καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι διαρπάζεσθαι· τὰ δὲ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἥν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν.

CHAPTER III.

While the army delays at Tarsus, the soldiers begin to suspect the designs of Cyrus and refuse to go any farther (1). Clearchus, at the risk of his life, but in vain, tries to force his men; he then moves them to obedience by means of tears and a shrewd address in which he recites the causes of his grief over their disobedience (2–4), pretending, however, absolute devotion to them, whatever they may do, and asserting his willingness to go and suffer with them whatever may be necessary (5, 6). These words win the applause of the soldiers and two thousand, serving under other generals, desert them and join his standard (7). Cyrus is perplexed, but is secretly reassured by Clearchus (8), who, taking his soldiers apart, again addresses them, hinting significantly at the difficulties which would

Digitized by Google

beset their separation from Cyrus (9–12). Others follow in the same strain (13), one speaker however takes the opposite side (probably inspired by Clearchus), urging that they return to Greece as quickly as possible, even demanding that Cyrus furnish them with ships for the purpose (14). Upon this, Clearchus rises, disclaiming any willingness to further such a plan as that (15), and exhibiting the perils which would assail them if they started homeward (16, 17). Finally it is decided that they ask Cyrus what his plans are (18, 19). He answers them that he intends to punish Abrocomas, and gives them, upon their demanding it, half again as much pay; so that they follow him, although still suspecting his purposes (20, 21).

1. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω· ὑπώπτευον γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἰέναι· μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὑτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι· οἱ δὲ αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου, ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο προϊέναι. **2.** Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, ὕστερον δ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν αὑτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον ἑστώς· οἱ δὲ ὁρῶντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιάδε. **3.** Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο καί με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα ἐτίμησε καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε δαρεικούς· οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ καθηδυπάθησα, ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἐδαπάνων. **4.** καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐπολέμησα, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐτιμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς ἐξε-

Digitized by Google

λαύνων βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας Ἕλληνας τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμην, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοίην αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. **5**. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δή μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα τῇ Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ψευσάμενον μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα, αἱρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅτι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. καὶ οὔποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ Ἕλληνας ἀγαγὼν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἱλόμην. **6**. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἐθέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἕψομαι καὶ ὅτι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ὦ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὢν οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὔτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὔτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε. **7**. ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἵ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ βασιλέα πορεύεσθαι ἐπῄνεσαν· παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλέαρχον. **8**. Κῦρος δὲ τούτοις ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλέαρχον· ὁ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ἤθελε, λάθρᾳ δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων αὐτῷ ἄγγελον ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν ὡς καταστησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ δέον. μεταπέμπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι. **9**. μετὰ

Digitized by Google

δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τούς θ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ τὰ ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκεῖνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιῶται, ἐπεί γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι ἡμῖν μισθοδότης. ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἶδα· **10.** ὥστε καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον αἰσχυνόμενος ὅτι σύνοιδα ἐμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα καὶ δεδιὼς μὴ λαβών με δίκην ἐπιθῇ ὧν νομίζει ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἠδικῆσθαι. **11.** ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρα εἶναι ἡμῖν καθεύδειν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ βουλεύεσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως τε μένομεν αὐτοῦ σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἕξομεν· ἄνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε ἰδιώτου ὄφελος οὐδέν. **12.** ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος φίλος ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾖ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾖ, ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἱππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν ἣν πάντες ὁμοίως ὁρῶμέν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ καθῆσθαι. ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὅ τι τις γιγνώσκει ἄριστον εἶναι. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. **13.** ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκέλευστοι, ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἴη ἡ ἀπορία ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι. **14.** εἷς δὲ δὴ εἶπε

Digitized by Google

προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν ὡς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατηγοὺς μὲν ἑλέσθαι ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἀγοράζεσθαι — ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ στρατεύματι — καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· ἐλθόντας δὲ Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῷ ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κῦρον ὅστις διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας ἀπάξει. ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῷ, συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ καὶ προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι μήτε Κῦρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες, ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον. **15.** Ὡς μὲν στρατηγήσοντα ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· ὡς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἕλησθε πείσομαι ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων. **16.** μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στόλον Κύρου ποιουμένου, ἐπιδεικνὺς δὲ ὡς εὔηθες εἴη ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λυμαινόμεθα τὴν πρᾶξιν. εἰ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν Κῦρος δῷ, τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν Κῦρον προκαταλαβεῖν; **17.** ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην μὲν ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς αὐταῖς ταῖς τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ᾧ δοίη ἕπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος

Digitized by Google

ἀπιὼν Κύρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν. ἀλλ' ἐγώ φημι ταῦτα μὲν φλυαρίας εἶναι· **18.** δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἄνδρας ἑλθόντας πρὸς Κῦρον οἵτινες ἐπιτήδειοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκεῖνον τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρῆσθαι· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἡ πρᾶξις ᾖ παραπλησία οἵαπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρῆτο τοῖς ξένοις, ἕπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ συναναβάντων· **19.** ἐὰν δὲ μείζων ἡ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν φαίνηται καὶ ἐπιπονωτέρα καὶ ἐπικινδυνοτέρα, ἀξιοῦν ἢ πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φιλίαν ἀφιέναι· οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἑπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι ἑποίμεθα καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν· ὅτι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας πρὸς ταῦτα βουλεύεσθαι. **20.** ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἑλόμενοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμπουσιν οἳ ἠρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούοι Ἀβροκόμαν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κἂν μὲν ᾖ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρῄζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἢν δὲ φύγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. **21.** ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἱρετοὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγοι πρὸς βασιλέα, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἕπεσθαι. προσαιτοῦσι δὲ μισθόν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὗ πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδαρεικὰ τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδείς ἔν γε τῷ φανερῷ.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER IV.

After the soldiers have been persuaded to continue their course still farther to the east, they journey on and cross the Psarus and Pyramus rivers, making for Issus, the frontier town between Cilicia and Syria (1). At this place Cyrus is joined by his fleet of Greek ships and marines; the Spartan Cheirisophus comes with the ships, furnishing his quota of seven hundred hoplites. Greek deserters from Abrocomas also join his forces (2, 3). Coming to Issus, Cyrus finds his way blocked by the so-called Gates of Syria, and a force under the command of Syennesis manning one of the walls (4, 5). Upon learning that Cyrus is in Cilicia, Abrocomas, from whom Cyrus had expected opposition, flees with his large army; and Cyrus, passing Issus, marches through Syria to Myriandum, a Phoenician town. Xenias and Pasion desert him here, piqued at the favor shown Clearchus (6, 7). But Cyrus declares that he will not pursue them, preferring that no one shall serve unwillingly in his cause; at this the soldiers are greatly pleased, and march with better will (8, 9). Passing the Chalus and the source of the Dardas, and destroying the royal residence and gardens of the Syrian king, located at the latter place, Cyrus reaches the Euphrates (10, 11). Here the generals learn that Cyrus intends to march against the king, and are ordered to influence the soldiers to continue. These at first are angry, claiming that they have been duped by the generals; they demand still more pay and are promised it (12, 13). But Menon, meanwhile, seeking the special favor of Cyrus, by seeming zealous in his cause, urges his soldiers to cross the Euphrates while the rest of the army is uncertain (14–17). This they, and subsequently the rest of the army, do with an ease which seems to the inhabitants of the place to be miraculous. They then reach the river Araxes, and finding well stocked villages there, rest three days (18, 19).

1. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος τρία

Digitized by Google

πλέθρα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος στάδιον. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα εἰς Ἰσσούς, τῆς Κιλικίας ἐσχάτην πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. **2.** ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρῳ παρῆσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς ναύαρχος Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐταῖς Ταμῶς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς ἑτέρας Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει φίλη ἦν, καὶ συνεπολέμει Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτόν. **3.** παρῆν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, μετάπεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἑπτακοσίους ἔχων ὁπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρῳ. αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμουν παρὰ τὴν Κύρου σκηνήν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρὰ Ἀβροκόμα μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ Κῦρον τετρακόσιοι ὁπλῖται καὶ συνεστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ βασιλέα. **4.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ πύλας τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα δύο τείχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν τὸ πρὸ τῆς Κιλικίας Συέννεσις εἶχε καὶ Κιλίκων φυλακή, τὸ δὲ ἔξω τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ φυλάττειν. διὰ μέσου δὲ ῥεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα, εὖρος πλέθρου. ἅπαν δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν στάδιοι τρεῖς· καὶ παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν βίᾳ· ἦν γὰρ ἡ πάροδος στενὴ καὶ τὰ τείχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθήκοντα, ὕπερθεν δ' ἦσαν πέτραι ἠλίβατοι· ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς τείχεσιν ἀμφοτέροις ἐφειστήκεσαν

Digitized by Google

πύλαι. **5.** ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο, ὅπως ὁπλίτας ἀποβιβάσειεν εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν βιασομένους τοὺς πολεμίους εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις, ὅπερ ᾤετο ποιήσειν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμαν, ἔχοντα πολὺ στράτευμα. Ἀβροκόμας δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης παρὰ βασιλέα ἀπήλαυνεν, ἔχων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα μυριάδας στρατιᾶς. **6.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας πέντε εἰς Μυρίανδον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ· ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὥρμουν αὐτόθι ὁλκάδες πολλαί. **7.** ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἑπτά· καὶ Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς στρατηγὸς καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς ἐμβάντες εἰς πλοῖον καὶ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια ἐνθέμενοι ἀπέπλευσαν, ὡς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν φιλοτιμηθέντες ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας, ὡς ἀπιόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα, εἶα Κῦρος τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, διῆλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκοι αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν ηὔχοντο ὡς δειλοὺς ὄντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, οἱ δ' ᾤκτειρον εἰ ἁλώσοιντο. **8.** Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπεν, Ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων. ἀλλ' εὖ γε μέντοι ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασιν· οἶδα γὰρ ὅπῃ οἴχονται· οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγασιν· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἑλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον· ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῇ τις χρῶμαι,

Digitized by Google

ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβὼν καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσυλῶ. ἀλλὰ ἰόντων, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. καίτοι ἔχω γε αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι φρουρούμενα· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τούτων στερήσονται, ἀλλ' ἀπολήψονται τῆς πρόσθεν ἕνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ ἀρετῆς. **9.** καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ ἀθυμότερος ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδιον καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων μεγάλων καὶ πραέων, οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἀδικεῖν οὐκ εἴων, οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνουν Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν εἰς ζώνην δεδομέναι. **10.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Δάρδατος ποταμοῦ, οὗ τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου. ἐνταῦθα ἦν τὰ Βελέσυος βασίλεια τοῦ Συρίας ἄρξαντος, καὶ παράδεισος πάνυ μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὧραι φύουσι. Κῦρος δ' αὐτὸν ἐξέκοψε καὶ τὰ βασίλεια κατέκαυσεν. **11.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων Θάψακος ὄνομα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε. καὶ Κῦρος μεταπεμψάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς

Digitized by Google

λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπείθειν ἕπεσθαι. **12.** οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότας κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἐὰν μή τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῷ, ὥσπερ τοῖς προτέροις μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς Κῦρον. **13.** ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελλον· ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἑκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὴν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἥκωσι, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῆ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν πάλιν. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπείσθη. Μένων δὲ πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται, πότερον ἕψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὔ, συνέλεξε τὸ αὑτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε. **14.** Ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτιμήσεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι; νῦν δεῖται Κῦρος ἕπεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅτι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ. **15.** ἢν μὲν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἕπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τοῦ διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὡς προθυμοτάτοις οὖσιν ὑμῖν χάριν εἴσεται Κῦρος καὶ ἀποδώσει· ἐπίσταται δ' εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος· ἢν δὲ ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπιμεν μὲν ἅπαντες τοὔμπαλιν, ὑμῖν δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις πιστοτάτοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ εἰς λοχα-

Digitized by Google

γίας, καὶ ἄλλου οὑτινος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι τεύξεσθε Κύρου. **16.** ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπείθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο διαβεβηκότας, ἥσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι πέμψας Γλοῦν εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ· ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει, ἢ μηκέτι με Κῦρον νομίζετε. **17.** οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγάλαις ὄντες ἠῦχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχῆσαι, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας διέβαινε· συνείπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν. καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. **18.** οἱ δὲ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπώποθ' οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατὸς γένοιτο πεζῇ εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις, ἃ τότε Ἀβροκόμας προϊὼν κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος διαβῇ. ἐδόκει δὴ θεῖον εἶναι καὶ σαφῶς ὑποχωρῆσαι τὸν ποταμὸν Κύρῳ ὡς βασιλεύσοντι. **19.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας σταθμοὺς ἐννέα παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς τὸν Ἀράξην ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι πολλαὶ μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER V.

The journey is continued through the Arabian desert, along the north bank of the Euphrates (1). Many wild animals of various sorts are met with, and some of them the horsemen pursue. Difficulties in giving chase to the wild ass and the ostrich (2, 3). The army arrives at Corsōte and takes in provisions, and then continues on its way to Pylae, many of the beasts of burden suffering from hunger and thirst. The inhabitants of the country quarry grinding-stones for a living and sell them at Babylon (4, 5). During this journey through the desert, provisions sell for an exorbitant price in the army; the march was very rapid, Cyrus and his retinue frequently dismounting and lending a helping hand whenever a wagon was stalled in the mud. It was the impression of all that Cyrus was hastening so as to find the king unprepared (6–9). At Charmande the soldiers cross the river and buy provisions (10). Outbreak in the Greek army, the soldiers of Menon venting their ill-will against Clearchus and his rigorous method of punishment. Clearchus and his Thracian soldiers march against the camp of Menon. Most unfortunate results might have followed, notwithstanding the mediation of Proxenus, had not Cyrus opportunely arrived upon the scene (11–17).

1. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίον ἅπαν ὁμαλὲς ὥσπερ θάλαττα, ἀψινθίου δὲ πλῆρες· εἰ δέ τι καὶ ἄλλο ἐνῆν ὕλης ἢ καλάμου, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη ὥσπερ ἀρώματα· **2.** δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν ἐνῆν, θηρία δὲ παντοῖα, πλεῖστοι ὄνοι ἄγριοι, πολλαὶ δὲ στρουθοὶ αἱ μεγάλαι· ἐνῆσαν δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες καὶ δορκάδες· ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἱππεῖς ἐνίοτε ἐδίωκον. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄνοι,

Digitized by Google

ἐπεί τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες ἕστασαν· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἔτρεχον θᾶττον· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν οἱ ἵπποι, ταὐτὸν ἐποίουν, καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ διαστάντες οἱ ἱππεῖς θηρῷεν διαδεχόμενοι. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἁλισκομένων ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, ἀπαλώτερα δέ. **3.** στρουθὸν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν ἱππέων ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπέσπα φεύγουσα, τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ δρόμῳ, ταῖς δὲ πτέρυξιν αἴρουσα, ὥσπερ ἱστίῳ χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας, ἄν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ, ἔστι λαμβάνειν· πέτονται γὰρ βραχὺ ὥσπερ πέρδικες καὶ ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι. τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν ἥδιστα ἦν. **4.** πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. ἐνταῦθα ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ Κορσωτή· περιερρεῖτο δ' αὖτη ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα κύκλῳ. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. **5.** ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρισκαίδεκα παρασάγγας ἐνενήκοντα τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπασα ἡ χώρα· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικοῦντες ὄνους ἀλέτας παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ὀρύττοντες καὶ ποιοῦντες εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦγον καὶ ἐπώλουν καὶ ἀνταγοράζοντες σῖτον ἔζων. **6.** τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σῖτος ἐπέλιπε, καὶ πρίασθαι οὐκ ἦν εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδίᾳ ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου βαρβαρικῷ, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. ὁ δὲ σίγλος δύναται ἑπτὰ ὀβολοὺς καὶ

Digitized by Google

ἡμιωβόλιον Ἀττικούς· ἡ δὲ καπίθη δύο χοίνικας Ἀττικὰς ἐχώρει. κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο. **7.** ἦν δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὓς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὁπότε ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. καὶ δή ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος ταῖς ἁμάξαις δυσπορεύτου ἐπέστη ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς ἁμάξας. **8.** ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ σχολαίως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς κρατίστους συνεπισπεῦσαι τὰς ἁμάξας. ἔνθα δὴ μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας ἦν θεάσασθαι. ῥίψαντες γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροῦς κάνδυς ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος ἑστηκώς, ἵεντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις περὶ νίκης καὶ μάλα κατὰ πρανοῦς γηλόφου, ἔχοντες τούς τε πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις καὶ ψέλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ σὺν τούτοις εἰσπηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν πηλὸν θᾶττον ἢ ὥς τις ἂν ᾤετο μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν τὰς ἁμάξας. **9.** τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος ὡς σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διατρίβων ὅπου μὴ ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἕνεκα ἤ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου ἐκαθέζετο, νομίζων, ὅσῳ μὲν θᾶττον ἔλθοι, τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι, ὅσῳ δὲ σχολαίτερον, τοσούτῳ πλέον συναγείρεσθαι βασιλεῖ στράτευμα. καὶ συνιδεῖν δ' ἦν τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν ἡ βασιλέως ἀρχὴ πλήθει μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ οὖσα, τοῖς δὲ μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ διεσπάσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενής,

Digitized by Google

εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων τὸν πόλεμον ποιοῖτο. **10.** πέρᾱν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, σχεδίαις διαβαίνοντες ὧδε. διφθέρας ἃς εἶχον στεγάσματα ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου κούφου, εἶτα συνῆγον καὶ συνέσπων, ὡς μὴ ἅπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ τούτων διέβαινον καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, οἶνόν τε ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου πεποιημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος καὶ σῖτον μελίνης· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ πλεῖστον. **11.** ἀμφιλεξάντων δέ τι ἐνταῦθα τῶν τε Μένωνός του στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν Κλεάρχου ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν· ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. **12.** τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· Κῦρος δὲ οὔπω ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι προσήλαυνε· τῶν δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν ξύλα σχίζων τις ὡς εἶδε Κλέαρχον διελαύνοντα, ἴησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ οὗτος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἥμαρτεν· ἄλλος δὲ λίθῳ καὶ ἄλλος, εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης. **13.** ὁ δὲ καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα, καὶ εὐθὺς παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ὁπλίτας αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε μεῖναι τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα θέντας, αὐτὸς δὲ λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾷκας καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ

Digitized by Google

στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλεῖστοι Θρᾷκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλῆχθαι καὶ αὐτὸν Μένωνα, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι. **14.** ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος — ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσιὼν καὶ τάξις αὐτῷ ἑπομένη τῶν ὁπλιτῶν — εὐθὺς οὖν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρων ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὅπλα καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλεάρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαινεν ὅτι αὐτοῦ ὀλίγου δεήσαντος καταλευσθῆναι πρᾴως λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος, ἐκέλευσέ τε αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ μέσου ἐξίστασθαι. **15.** ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐπῄει καὶ Κῦρος καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· εὐθὺς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν ἧκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. **16.** Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅτι ποιεῖτε. εἰ γάρ τινα ἀλλήλοις μάχην συνάψετε, νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον· κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὁρᾶτε βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. **17.** ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο· καὶ παυσάμενοι ἀμφότεροι κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VI.

Marching down the Euphrates from the vicinity of Charmande, Cyrus finds evidence of the nearness of the king's cavalry (1). The treachery of Orontas. He persuades Cyrus to give him 2,000 cavalry, promising to kill or capture the hostile cavalry in the neighborhood; he writes a letter to the king; disclosing the plan and his purpose to revolt, and places it in the hands of one whom he thought trustworthy, to be forwarded to the king (2, 3). It falls however into Cyrus's hands. Orontas is arrested, and a council is summoned, to which Clearchus is invited (4, 5). Cyrus states the object of the council (the trial of Orontas), recites his former acts of indulgence towards the culprit, and cross-examines him, eliciting the confession that he has acted with injustice towards his benefactor (6–8). Clearchus urges the execution of Orontas, and Cyrus, taking the latter by the girdle, delivers him to a faithful servant, who performs the execution so secretly that nothing was ever afterwards seen of Orontas dead or alive (9–11).

1. Ἐντεῦθεν προϊόντων ἐφαίνετο ἴχνη ἵππων καὶ κόπρος· εἰκάζετο δ' εἶναι ὁ στίβος ὡς δισχιλίων ἵππων. οὗτοι προϊόντες ἔκαον καὶ χιλὸν καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. Ὀρόντας δὲ Πέρσης ἀνὴρ γένει τε προσήκων βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας, καταλλαγεὶς δέ. **2.** οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίη ἱππέας χιλίους, ὅτι τοὺς προκατακάοντας ἱππέας ἢ κατακάνοι ἂν ἐνεδρεύσας ἢ ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἂν ἕλοι καὶ κωλύσειε τοῦ κάειν ἐπιόντας, καὶ ποιήσειεν ὥστε μήποτε δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα βασιλεῖ διαγγεῖλαι. τῷ

Digitized by Google

δὲ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι, καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἑκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων. **3.** ὁ δ' Ὀρόντας νομίσας ἑτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἱππέας γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέα ὅτι ἥξοι ἔχων ἱππέας ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φράσαι τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ ἱππεῦσιν ἐκέλευεν ὡς φίλιον αὐτὸν ὑποδέχεσθαι. ἐνῆν δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλίας ὑπομνήματα καὶ πίστεως. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὡς ᾤετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδωσιν. **4.** ἀναγνοὺς δὲ αὐτὴν ὁ Κῦρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόνταν, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἑπτά, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσεν ὁπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνήν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὁπλίτας. **5.** Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον, ὅς γε καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτιμηθῆναι μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλήνων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξῆλθεν, ἐξήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὡς ἐγένετο· οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν. **6.** ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου ὧδε. Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος ὅ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντα τουτουί. τοῦτον γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθείς, ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν καὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν προσπολεμῶν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ δεξιὰν

Digitized by Google

ἔλαβον καὶ ἔδωκα, **7.** μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Ὀρόντα, ἔστιν ὅ τι σε ἠδίκησα; ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὔ. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτα, Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὡς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμολογεῖς, οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος ἀποστὰς εἰς Μυσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν ὅ τι ἐδύνω; ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντας. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὁπότ' αὖ ἔγνως τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος βωμὸν μεταμέλειν τέ σοι ἔφησθα καὶ πείσας ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; καὶ ταῦθ' ὡμολόγει ὁ Ὀρόντας. **8.** Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας; εἰπόντος δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθείς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτόν, Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι; Ἡ γὰρ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντας. ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος, Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός; ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ' ἄν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι. **9.** πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν, Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι γνώμην ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. Συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέῃ τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ σχολὴ ᾖ ἡμῖν τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι τοὺς ἐθελοντὰς φίλους εὖ ποιεῖν. **10.** ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσθέσθαι. μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, κελεύοντος Κύρου ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόνταν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς· εἶτα δ' ἐξῆγον αὐτὸν οἷς

Digitized by Google

προσετάχθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἷπερ πρόσθεν προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν, καίπερ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο. **11**. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσήχθη τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα οὔτε ζῶντα Ὀρόνταν οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε πώποτε οὐδὲ ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς ἔλεγεν· εἴκαζον δὲ ἄλλοι ἄλλως· τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη.

CHAPTER VII.

Babylonia is at length reached; during his progress through it, Cyrus reviews his men and learns of the condition of the king's army (1, 2). In an address to the Greeks he exhorts them to prove themselves worthy men, assuring them that the king's army, though large, is harmless. He promises great rewards if they endure the first shock. These promises he declares he will not forget (3–5); for in a kingdom so great as that of Persia the difficulty is not in finding the means to fulfil his promises, but the persons worthy of them (3–7). The soldiers are pleased and beg him to remain in the rear during the fight. Another review is made, the Greeks amounting to about 13,000, and the barbarians to 100,000 (8–10). The enemy amount to over a million men and possess 200 scythe-bearing chariots; their cavalry numbers 6,000 (11–13). The advance is now made more cautiously as they near the king's army and pass, one after another, the many deep trenches, which were cut to impede an enemy's progress. Some of these extended almost to the Euphrates itself, leaving only an extremely narrow width of ground over which Cyrus might lead his army (14–17). The generosity of Cyrus towards the priest Silanus (18). Surprised that the king does not meet him in battle, Cyrus continues on his way somewhat negligent in his discipline, many of the soldiers placing their arms in the baggage-wagons.

Digitized by Google

1. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας· ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἕω ἥξειν βασιλέα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι μαχούμενον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἡγεῖσθαι, Μένωνα δὲ τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ εὐωνύμου, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ διέταξε. **2.** μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἥκοντες αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ περὶ τῆς βασιλέως στρατιᾶς. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνεβουλεύετό τε πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο καὶ αὐτὸς παρῄνει θαρρύνων τοιάδε. **3.** Ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ νομίζων ἀμείνους καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων ὑμᾶς εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο προσέλαβον. ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς κέκτησθε καὶ ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω. εὖ γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἑλοίμην ἂν ἀντὶ ὧν ἔχω πάντων καὶ ἄλλων πολλαπλασίων. **4.** ὅπως δὲ καὶ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἷον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα, ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω. τὸ μὲν γὰρ πλῆθος πολὺ καὶ κραυγῇ πολλῇ ἐπίασιν· ἂν δὲ ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε, τὰ ἄλλα καὶ αἰσχυνεῖσθαί μοι δοκῶ οἵους ἡμῖν γνώσεσθε τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν ὄντων. καὶ εὖ τῶν ἐμῶν γενομένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν οἰκαδε βουλόμενον ἀπιέναι τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτὸν ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν, πολλοὺς δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ ἐλέσθαι ἀντὶ τῶν οἴκοι.

Digitized by Google

5. ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης παρὼν φυγὰς Σάμιος, πιστὸς δὲ Κύρῳ, εἶπε, Καὶ μήν, ὦ Κῦρε, λέγουσί τινες ὅτι πολλὰ ὑπισχνεῖ νῦν διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κινδύνου προσιόντος, ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηταί τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαί σέ φασιν· ἔνιοι δὲ οὐδ' εἰ μεμνῆό τε καὶ βούλοιο δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνεῖ. **6.** ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔλεξεν ὁ Κῦρος, Ἀλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡ ἀρχὴ ἡ πατρῴα πρὸς μὲν μεσημβρίαν μέχρι οὗ διὰ καῦμα οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ ἄρκτον μέχρι οὗ διὰ χειμῶνα· τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων πάντα σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. **7.** ἢν δ' ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι. ὥστε οὐ τοῦτο δέδοικα μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ὅτι δῶ ἑκάστῳ τῶν φίλων, ἂν εὖ γένηται, ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ἱκανοὺς οἷς δῶ. ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ στέφανον ἑκάστῳ χρυσοῦν δώσω. **8.** οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοί τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθυμότεροι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξήγγελλον. εἰσῆσαν δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἵ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινὲς ἀξιοῦντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσται, ἐὰν κρατήσωσιν. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιμπλὰς ἁπάντων τὴν γνώμην ἀπέπεμπε. **9.** παρεκελεύοντο δὲ αὐτῷ πάντες ὅσοιπερ διελέγοντο μὴ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὄπισθεν ἑαυτῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ὧδέ πως ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· Οἴει γάρ σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν; Νὴ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἴπερ γε Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδός ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ ἀμαχεὶ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι. **10.** ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν

Digitized by Google

μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἀσπὶς μυρία καὶ τετρακοσία, πελτασταὶ δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι, τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μυριάδες καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι. **11.** τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδες καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα διακόσια. ἄλλοι δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἱππεῖς, ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἦρχεν· οὗτοι δ' αὖ πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως τεταγμένοι ἦσαν. **12.** τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες τέτταρες, τριάκοντα μυριάδων ἕκαστος, Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας, Ἀρβάκης. τούτων δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα· Ἀβροκόμας δὲ ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης ἡμέραις πέντε, ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων. **13.** ταῦτα δὲ ἤγγελλον πρὸς Κῦρον οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως πρὸ τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην οἳ ὕστερον ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων ταὐτὰ ἤγγελλον. **14.** ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ· ᾤετο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέα· κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον τάφρος ἦν ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ὀργυιαὶ πέντε, τὸ δὲ βάθος ὀργυιαὶ τρεῖς. **15.** παρετέτατο δὲ ἡ τάφρος ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας τείχους. ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχες, ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ῥέουσαι· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς σιταγωγά· εἰσβάλλουσι

Digitized by Google

δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, διαλείπουσι δ' ἑκάστη παρασάγγην, γέφυραι δ' ἔπεισιν. ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος· **16.** ταύτην δὲ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ μέγας ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάροδον Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρῆλθε καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου. **17.** ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο βασιλεύς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἴχνη πολλά. **18.** ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος Σιλανὸν καλέσας τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δαρεικοὺς τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἑνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ προθυόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κῦρος δ' εἶπεν, Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' ἀληθεύσῃς, ὑπισχνοῦμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ χρυσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρῆλθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι. **19.** ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἠμελημένως μᾶλλον. **20.** τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπί τε τοῦ ἅρματος καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὑτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν ἤγετο καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VIII.

The Battle of Cunaxa. It is about noon, when a horseman, galloping at full speed, announces the approach of the king's army. The news creates great confusion; but Cyrus bids his soldiers prepare for the contest and fall into line (1–3). Position of the Greek army and of the forces of the barbarians (4, 5). Cyrus takes his position at the centre of the line, with his head uncovered, surrounded by his 600 bravest men (6, 7). Shortly after noon the enemy appear, their cavalry in white breast-coverings and led by Tissaphernes. In front of them are the scythe-bearing chariots, to be sent at random among the Greeks (8–10). As the king approaches silently and slowly, Cyrus orders Clearchus to lead his men against him, at the middle of the line, hoping to cut him down and to win the victory at once. But Clearchus, fearing lest he be surrounded, hesitates to withdraw from the Euphrates; the entire Greek line maintaining its position, whilst the ranks are filling up, and the watchword of success, "Zeus the Savior, and Victory," is passed along (11–16). As soon as the enemy are almost within bow-shot, the Greeks charge and put them to flight, the chariots fail to do any harm, and the victory seems already to belong to Cyrus (17–20). But fearing that the enemy may turn him in the rear, he charges with his 600 against the king's centre, disperses many of the latter's body guard, and even wounds the king, when he is himself struck beneath the eye by a javelin. In the confusion, Cyrus is killed, a few of his most devoted followers fall with him, and his most faithful sceptre-bearer, Artapates, covers his master's body with his own corpse (21–28).

1. Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν καὶ πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἡνίκα Πατηγύας ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον πιστῶν προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἱδροῦντι τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ εὐθὺς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόα καὶ βαρβαρι-

Digitized by Google

κῶς καὶ ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. **2.** ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι· **3.** Κῦρός τε καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος τὸν θώρακα ἐνέδυ καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστον. **4.** ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μένων δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. **5.** τοῦ δὲ βαρβαρικοῦ ἱππεῖς μὲν Παφλαγόνες εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ Ἀριαῖός τε ὁ Κύρου ὕπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν, **6.** Κῦρος δὲ καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς τούτου ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι κατὰ τὸ μέσον, ὡπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ παραμηριδίοις καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος δὲ ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο λέγεται δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας ψιλαῖς ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ διακινδυνεύειν. **7.** οἱ δ' ἵπποι πάντες οἱ μετὰ Κύρου εἶχον καὶ προμετωπίδια καὶ προστερνίδια· εἶχον δὲ καὶ μαχαίρας οἱ ἱππεῖς Ἑλληνικάς. **8.** καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὔπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἠνίκα δὲ δείλη ἐγίγνετο, ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ συχνῷ ὕστερον ὥσπερ μελανία τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολύ.

Digitized by Google

ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίγνοντο, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε καὶ αἱ λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίγνοντο. **9.** καὶ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ γερροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὁπλῖται σὺν ποδήρεσι ξυλίναις ἀσπίσιν. Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι· ἄλλοι δ' ἱππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται. πάντες δ' οὗτοι κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο. **10.** πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἅρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἐκ τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον ἀποτεταμένα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς δίφροις εἰς γῆν βλέποντα, ὡς διακόπτειν ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. ἡ δὲ γνώμη ἦν ὡς εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα καὶ διακόψοντα. **11.** ὃ μέντοι Κῦρος εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο τοῖς Ἕλλησι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ κραυγῇ ἀλλὰ σιγῇ ὡς ἀνυστὸν καὶ ἡσυχῇ ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως προσῇσαν. **12.** καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόα ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἴη· κἂν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νικῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποίηται. **13.** ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος τὸ μέσον στῖφος καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εὐωνύμου βασιλέα — τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει περιῆν βασιλεὺς ὥστε μέσον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου ἔξω ἦν — ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ

Digitized by Google

τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθείη ἑκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλοι ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι. **14.** καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα ὁμαλῶς προῄει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στρατεύματι κατεθεᾶτο ἑκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἴς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους. **15.** ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, πελάσας ὡς συναντῆσαι ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι. ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευε πᾶσιν ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια καλά. **16.** ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἴη. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ ὃς ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὅτι εἴη τὸ σύνθημα. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη. **17.** ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούσας Ἀλλὰ δέχομαί τε, ἔφη, καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν ἀπήλαυνε· καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τὼ φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἡνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἦρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. **18.** ὡς δὲ πορευομένων ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον ἤρξατο δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγξαντο πάντες οἷον τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθεον. λέγουσι δέ τινες ὡς καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἐδούπησαν φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις. **19.** πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν

Digitized by Google

κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἕπεσθαι. **20.** τὰ δ' ἅρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κενὰ ἡνιόχων. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, διίσταντο· ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν ἱπποδρόμῳ ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοξευθῆναί τις ἐλέγετο. **21.** Κῦρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' αὑτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ τι ποιήσει βασιλεύς. καὶ γὰρ ᾔδει αὐτὸν ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. **22.** καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὑτῶν ἡγοῦνται, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι, ἢν ᾖ ἡ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἑκατέρωθεν, καὶ εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι χρήζοιεν, ἡμίσει ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα. **23.** καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὑτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὅμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν. **24.** ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ ὄπισθεν γενόμενος κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα

Digitized by Google

αὐτῶν. **25.** ὡς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὁρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καταλείφθησαν, σχεδὸν οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι. **26.** σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὢν καθορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκεῖνον στῖφος· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ ἧκε ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὥς φησι Κτησίας ὁ ἰατρός, καὶ ἰᾶσθαι αὐτὸς τὸ τραῦμά φησι. **27.** παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου, ὁπόσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέθνησκον Κτησίας λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν· Κῦρος δὲ αὐτός τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. **28.** Ἀρταπάτης δ' ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν σκηπτούχων θεράπων λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ πεπτωκότα εἶδε Κῦρον, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ. **29.** καὶ οἱ μέν φασι βασιλέα κελεῦσαί τινα ἐπισφάξαι αὐτὸν Κύρῳ, οἱ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπισφάξασθαι σπασάμενον τὸν ἀκινάκην· εἶχε γὰρ χρυσοῦν· καὶ στρεπτὸν δ' ἐφόρει καὶ ψέλια καὶ τἆλλα ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι Περσῶν· ἐτετίμητο γὰρ ὑπὸ Κύρου δι' εὔνοιάν τε καὶ πιστότητα.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER IX.

The Character of Cyrus. Like the greater Cyrus, this prince evinced even in boyhood, as well as in his maturer years, the qualifications of a king; he was a brighter and "stronger" scholar than Artaxerxes and his other companions (1–4), his bearing towards his elders and even towards his inferiors being one of marked respect and deference. He was fond of horses and horsemanship, and showed himself assiduous in practising archery and in the use of the javelin (5). As a young man he was fond of the hunt, and on one occasion, in an encounter with a bear, he showed great bravery and skill (6). As satrap he was a man of integrity towards friend and foe, loyal to all whom he esteemed as friends, and inclined to make both his friendship and his hostility strongly marked (7–12). The wicked and the unjust he punished with relentless severity; whilst those in his army who proved their bravery and their daring, were rewarded with high offices of state (13–15). The honest were rewarded with riches and preferment; those who served him faithfully and earnestly were promoted to positions of greater responsibility (16–21). Many of the gifts he used to receive, he distributed among his friends with characteristic messages. No one of Greeks or barbarians was probably beloved by a greater number of friends (22–28). No servant ever deserted him, whilst many on the king's side flocked to him; at the decisive battle at Cunaxa all his friends and table-companions about him fell, fighting to the end, — all, except Ariaeus, who led the left wing; for he and his whole army fled, on learning of Cyrus's death (29–31).

1. Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὢν Περσῶν τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν ἀρχαῖον γενομένων βασιλικώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος, ὡς παρὰ πάντων ὁμολογεῖται τῶν Κύρου δοκούντων ἐν πείρᾳ γενέσθαι. **2.** πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἔτι παῖς ὢν ὅτ'

Digitized by Google

ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισί, πάντων πάντα κράτιστος ἐνομίζετο. **3.** πάντες γὰρ οἱ τῶν ἀρίστων Περσῶν παῖδες ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις παιδεύονται· ἔνθα πολλὴν μὲν σωφροσύνην καταμάθοι ἄν τις, αἰσχρὸν δ' οὐδὲν οὔτ' ἀκοῦσαι οὔτ' ἰδεῖν ἔστι. **4.** θεῶνται δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι, καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες μανθάνουσιν ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι. **5.** ἔνθα Κῦρος αἰδημονέστατος μὲν πρῶτον τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν ἐδόκει εἶναι, τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὑποδεεστέρων μᾶλλον πείθεσθαι, ἔπειτα δὲ φιλιππότατος καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις ἄριστα χρῆσθαι· ἔκρινον δ' αὐτὸν καὶ τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων, τοξικῆς τε καὶ ἀκοντίσεως, φιλομαθέστατον εἶναι καὶ μελετηρότατον. **6.** ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ ἡλικίᾳ ἔπρεπε, καὶ φιλοθηρότατος ἦν καὶ πρὸς τὰ θηρία μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος. καὶ ἄρκτον ποτὲ ἐπιφερομένην οὐκ ἔτρεσεν, ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν κατεσπάσθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔπαθεν, ὧν καὶ τὰς ὠτειλὰς εἶχε, τέλος δὲ κατέκανε· καὶ τὸν πρῶτον μέντοι βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν. **7.** ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς σατράπης Λυδίας τε καὶ Φρυγίας τῆς μεγάλης καὶ Καππαδοκίας, στρατηγὸς δὲ καὶ πάντων ἀπεδείχθη οἷς καθήκει εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζεσθαι, πρῶτον μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὐτὸν ὅτι περὶ πλείστου ποιοῖτο, εἴ τῳ σπείσαιτο καὶ εἴ τῳ συνθοῖτο καὶ εἴ τῳ ὑπόσχοιτό τι, μηδαμῶς ψεύδεσθαι. **8.** καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἐπίστευον μὲν αὐτῷ αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι, ἐπίστευον δ' οἱ ἄνδρες·

Digitized by Google

καὶ εἴ τις πολέμιος ἐγένετο, σπεισαμένου Κύρου ἐπίστευε μηδὲν ἂν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς παθεῖν. **9.** τοιγαροῦν ἐπεὶ Τισσαφέρνει ἐπολέμησε, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις ἑκοῦσαι Κῦρον εἵλοντο ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους πλὴν Μιλησίων· οὗτοι δὲ ὅτι οὐκ ἤθελε τοὺς φεύγοντας προέσθαι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν. **10.** καὶ γὰρ ἔργῳ ἐπεδείκνυτο καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ ἄν ποτε προοῖτο, ἐπεὶ ἅπαξ φίλος αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο, οὐδ' εἰ ἔτι μὲν μείους γένοιντο, ἔτι δὲ κάκιον πράξειαν. **11.** φανερὸς δ' ἦν καὶ εἴ τίς τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσειεν αὐτόν, νικᾶν πειρώμενος· καὶ εὐχὴν δέ τινες αὐτοῦ ἐξέφερον ὡς εὔχοιτο τοσοῦτον χρόνον ζῆν ἔστε νικῴη καὶ τοὺς εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς ποιοῦντας ἀλεξόμενος. **12.** καὶ γὰρ οὖν πλεῖστοι δὴ αὐτῷ ἑνί γε ἀνδρὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν ἐπεθύμησαν καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα προέσθαι. **13.** οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἄν τις εἴποι ὡς τοὺς κακούργους καὶ ἀδίκους εἶα κατα-γελᾶν, ἀλλὰ ἀφειδέστατα πάντων ἐτιμωρεῖτο· πολλάκις δ' ἦν ἰδεῖν παρὰ τὰς στειβομένας ὁδοὺς καὶ ποδῶν καὶ χειρῶν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν στερομένους ἀνθρώπους· ὥστ' ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀρχῇ ἐγένετο καὶ Ἕλληνι καὶ βαρβάρῳ μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι ἀδεῶς πορεύεσθαι ὅπῃ τις ἤθελεν, ἔχοντι ὅτι προχωροίη. **14.** τούς γε μέντοι ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον ὡμολόγητο διαφερόντως τιμᾶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἦν αὐτῷ πόλεμος πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· στρατευόμενος οὖν καὶ αὐτὸς εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας οὓς ἑώρα ἐθέλοντας κινδυνεύειν, τούτους καὶ ἄρχοντας ἐποίει ἧς κατεστρέφετο χώρας, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλοις δώροις ἐτίμα· **15.** ὥστε φαί-

Digitized by Google

νεσθαι τοὺς μὲν ἀγαθοὺς εὐδαιμονεστάτους, τοὺς δὲ κακοὺς δούλους τούτων ἀξιῶν εἶναι. τοιγαροῦν πολλὴ ἦν ἀφθονία αὐτῷ τῶν ἐθελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις οἴοιτο Κῦρον αἰσθήσεσθαι. **16**. εἴς γε μὴν δικαιοσύνην εἴ τις φανερὸς γένοιτο ἐπιδείκνυσθαι βουλόμενος, περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο τούτους πλουσιωτέρους ζῆν ποιεῖν τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου φιλοκερδούντων. **17**. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἄλλα τε πολλὰ δικαίως αὐτῷ διεχειρίζετο καὶ στρατεύματι ἀληθινῷ ἐχρήσατο. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, οἳ χρημάτων ἕνεκα πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ἔπλευσαν, ἔγνωσαν κερδαλεώτερον εἶναι Κύρῳ καλῶς ὑπάρχειν ἢ τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος. **18**. ἀλλὰ μὴν εἴ τίς γέ τι αὐτῷ προστάξαντι καλῶς ὑπηρετήσειεν, οὐδενὶ πώποτε ἀχάριστον εἴασε τὴν προθυμίαν. τοιγαροῦν κράτιστοι δὴ ὑπηρέται παντὸς ἔργου Κύρῳ ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι. **19**. εἰ δέ τινα ὁρῴη δεινὸν ὄντα οἰκονόμον ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου καὶ κατασκευάζοντά τε ἧς ἄρχοι χώρας καὶ προσόδους ποιοῦντα, οὐδένα ἂν πώποτε ἀφείλετο, ἀλλ' ἀεὶ πλείω προσεδίδου· ὥστε καὶ ἡδέως ἐπόνουν καὶ θαρραλέως ἐκτῶντο καὶ ὅσα ἐπέπατό τις ἥκιστα Κῦρον ἔκρυπτεν· οὐ γὰρ φθονῶν τοῖς φανερῶς πλουτοῦσιν ἐφαίνετο, ἀλλὰ πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων χρήμασι. **20**. φίλους γε μὴν ὅσους ποιήσαιτο καὶ εὔνους γνοίη ὄντας καὶ ἱκανοὺς κρίνειε συνεργοὺς εἶναι ὅτι τυγχάνοι βουλόμενος κατεργάζεσθαι, ὁμολογεῖται πρὸς πάντων κράτιστος δὴ γενέσθαι θεραπεύειν. **21**. καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ τοῦτο οὗπερ αὐτὸς ἕνεκα φίλων ᾤετο δεῖσθαι, ὡς συνεργοὺς ἔχοι, καὶ αὐτὸς

Digitized by Google

ἐπειρᾶτο συνεργὸς τοῖς φίλοις κράτιστος εἶναι τούτου ὅτου αἰσθάνοιτο ἕκαστον ἐπιθυμοῦντα. **22.** δῶρα δὲ πλεῖστα μὲν οἶμαι εἷς γε ἀνὴρ ἐλάμβανε διὰ πολλά· ταῦτα δὲ πάντων δὴ μάλιστα τοῖς φίλοις διεδίδου, πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἑκάστου σκοπῶν καὶ ὅτου μάλιστα ὁρῴη ἕκαστον δεόμενον. **23.** καὶ ὅσα τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ πέμποι τις ἢ ὡς εἰς πόλεμον ἢ ὡς εἰς καλλωπισμόν, καὶ περὶ τούτων λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα οὐκ ἂν δύναιτο τούτοις πᾶσι κοσμηθῆναι, φίλους δὲ καλῶς κεκοσμημένους μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ νομίζοι. **24.** καὶ τὸ μὲν τὰ μεγάλα νικᾶν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ἐπειδή γε καὶ δυνατώτερος ἦν· τὸ δὲ τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων καὶ τῷ προθυμεῖσθαι χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε μᾶλλον δοκεῖ ἀγαστὰ εἶναι. **25.** Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου ἡμιδεεῖς πολλάκις ὁπότε πάνυ ἡδὺν λάβοι, λέγων ὅτι οὔπω δὴ πολλοῦ χρόνου τούτου ἡδίονι οἴνῳ ἐπιτύχοι· τοῦτον οὖν σοὶ ἔπεμψε καὶ δεῖταί σου τήμερον τοῦτον ἐκπιεῖν σὺν οἷς μάλιστα φιλεῖς. **26.** πολλάκις δὲ χῆνας ἡμιβρώτους ἔπεμπε καὶ ἄρτων ἡμίσεα καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐπιλέγειν κελεύων τὸν φέροντα, Τούτοις ἤσθη Κῦρος· βούλεται οὖν καὶ σὲ τούτων γεύσασθαι. **27.** ὅπου δὲ χιλὸς σπάνιος πάνυ εἴη, αὐτὸς δὲ δύναιτο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἔχειν ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, διαπέμπων ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα ἄγουσιν ἵπποις ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλόν, ὡς μὴ πεινῶντες τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ φίλους ἄγωσιν. **28.** εἰ δὲ δή ποτε πορεύοιτο

Digitized by Google

καὶ πλεῖστοι μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὡς δηλοίη οὓς τιμᾷ. ὥστε ἐγὼ μέν γε ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω οὐδένα κρίνω ὑπὸ πλειόνων πεφιλῆσθαι οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων. **29.** τεκμήριον δὲ τούτου καὶ τόδε. παρὰ μὲν Κύρου δούλου ὄντος οὐδεὶς ἀπῄει πρὸς βασιλέα, πλὴν Ὀρόντας ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ οὗτος δὴ ὃν ᾤετο πιστόν οἱ εἶναι ταχὺ αὐτὸν ηὗρε Κύρῳ φίλτερον ἢ ἑαυτῷ· παρὰ δὲ βασιλέως πολλοὶ πρὸς Κῦρον ἀπῆλθον, ἐπειδὴ πολέμιοι ἀλλήλοις ἐγένοντο, καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἀγαπώμενοι, νομίζοντες παρὰ Κύρῳ ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ ἀξιωτέρας ἂν τιμῆς τυγχάνειν ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ. **30.** μέγα δὲ τεκμήριον καὶ τὸ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου αὐτῷ γενόμενον ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθὸς καὶ κρίνειν ὀρθῶς ἐδύνατο τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὐνους καὶ βεβαίους. **31.** ἀποθνήσκοντος γὰρ αὐτοῦ πάντες οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου πλὴν Ἀριαίου· οὗτος δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοῦ ἱππικοῦ ἄρχων· ὡς δ' ἤσθετο Κῦρον πεπτωκότα, ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν οὗ ἡγεῖτο.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER X.

After the head and right hand of Cyrus have been cut off (1), the king falls upon his camp and puts Ariaeus to flight. Everything is pillaged, except where the few Greeks left on guard make a stout resistance (2, 3). Learning of the king's movements, the Greeks return from their pursuit; unwilling to meet them, the king collects his men, wheels around to the left, and joins Tissaphernes, who had borne down upon the Greek peltasts to his own discomfiture (4–8). In order to escape being surrounded, the Greeks remain close to the river; the enemy move against them, but flee before the charge of the Greeks (9–11). Their cavalry halt upon a hill; but upon the approach of the Greeks they leave it, fleeing at full speed (12–15). Here the Greeks rest, wondering at the absence of Cyrus; they decide to return to camp, only to find it plundered of everything; and so they spend the night there, supperless (16–19).

1. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Κύρου ἀποτέμνεται ἡ κεφαλὴ καὶ ἡ χεὶρ ἡ δεξιά. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ διώκων εἰσπίπτει εἰς τὸ Κύρειον στρατόπεδον· καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἵστανται ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν ἔνθεν ὥρμηντο· **2.** τέτταρες δ' ἐλέγοντο παρασάγγαι εἶναι τῆς ὁδοῦ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ τά τε ἄλλα πολλὰ διαρπάζουσι, καὶ τὴν Φωκαΐδα τὴν Κύρου παλλακίδα τὴν σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν λεγομένην εἶναι λαμβάνει. **3.** ἡ δὲ Μιλησία ἦν νεωτέρα ἢ ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἐκφεύγει γυμνὴ πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, οἳ ἔτυχον ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις ὅπλα ἔχοντες καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν ἁρπαζόντων

Digitized by Google

ἀπέκτειναν, οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέθανον· οὐ μὴν ἔφυγόν γε, ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην ἔσωσαν καὶ τἆλλα ὁπόσα ἐντὸς αὐτῶν καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι ἐγένοντο πάντα ἔσωσαν. **4.** ἐνταῦθα διέσχον ἀλλήλων βασιλεύς τε καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια, οἱ μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὑτοὺς ὡς πάντα νικῶντες, οἱ δ' ἁρπάζοντες ὡς ἤδη πάντα νικῶντες. **5.** ἐπεὶ δ' ᾔσθοντο οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις εἴη, βασιλεὺς δ' αὖ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νικῷεν τὸ καθ' αὑτοὺς καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν οἴχονται διώκοντες, ἔνθα δὴ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀθροίζει τε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ συντάττεται, ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο Πρόξενον καλέσας, πλησιαίτατος γὰρ ἦν, εἰ πέμποιέν τινας ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀρήξοντες. **6.** ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς δῆλος ἦν προσιὼν πάλιν ὡς ἐδόκει ὄπισθεν. καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς ταύτῃ προσιόντος καὶ δεξόμενοι, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ταύτῃ μὲν οὐκ ἦγεν, ᾗ δὲ παρῆλθεν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου κέρατος ταύτῃ καὶ ἀπῆγεν, ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας αὐτομολήσαντας καὶ Τισσαφέρνην καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ. **7.** ὁ γὰρ Τισσαφέρνης ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ οὐκ ἔφυγεν, ἀλλὰ διήλασε παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πελταστάς· διελαύνων δὲ κατέκανε μὲν οὐδένα, διαστάντες δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπαιον καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτούς· Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἦρχε τῶν πελταστῶν καὶ ἐλέγετο φρόνιμος γενέσθαι. **8.** ὁ δ' οὖν Τισσαφέρνης ὡς μεῖον ἔχων ἀπηλλάγη, πάλιν μὲν οὐκ

Digitized by Google

ἀναστρέφει, εἰς δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικόμενος τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκεῖ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ ὁμοῦ δὴ πάλιν συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο. **9.** ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἑλλήνων κέρας, ἔδεισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ περιπτύξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτοὺς κατακόψειαν· καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ κέρας καὶ ποιήσασθαι ὄπισθεν τὸν ποταμόν. **10.** ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο, καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παραμειψάμενος εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν φάλαγγα ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον μαχούμενος συνήει. ὡς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγγύς τε ὄντας καὶ παρατεταγμένους, αὖθις παιανίσαντες ἐπῆσαν πολὺ ἔτι προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. **11.** οἱ δ' αὖ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλὰ ἐκ πλείονος ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν ἔφευγον· οἱ δ' ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι κώμης τινός· ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· **12.** ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κώμης γήλοφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ ἀνεστράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέα, πεζοὶ μὲν οὐκέτι, τῶν δὲ ἱππέων ὁ λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη, ὥστε τὸ ποιούμενον μὴ γιγνώσκειν. καὶ τὸ βασίλειον σημεῖον ὁρᾶν ἔφασαν ἀετόν τινα χρυσοῦν ἐπὶ πέλτῃ ἐπὶ ξύλου ἀνατεταμένον. **13.** ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐχώρουν οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσι δὴ καὶ τὸν λόφον οἱ ἱππεῖς· οὐ μὴν ἔτι ἀθρόοι ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν· ἐψιλοῦτο δ' ὁ λόφος τῶν ἱππέων· τέλος δὲ καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. **14.** ὁ οὖν Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἀλλ' ὑπ' αὐτὸν στήσας τὸ στράτευμα πέμπει Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου τί ἐστιν ἀπαγγεῖλαι.

Digitized by Google

15. καὶ ὁ Λύκιος ἤλασέ τε καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. σχεδὸν δ' ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν καὶ ἥλιος ἐδύετο. **16.** ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ Κῦρος φαίνοιτο οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς παρείη· οὐ γὰρ ᾔδεσαν αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' εἴκαζον ἢ διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψόμενόν τι προεληλακέναι· **17.** καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μείναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοιντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἀμφὶ δορπηστὸν ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. **18.** ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλεῖστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν ἦν, καὶ τὰς ἁμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ οἴνου, ἃς παρεσκευάσατο Κῦρος, ἵνα εἴ ποτε σφοδρὰ τὸ στράτευμα λάβοι ἔνδεια, διαδοίη τοῖς Ἕλλησιν — ἦσαν δ' αὗται τετρακόσιαι ὡς ἐλέγοντο ἅμαξαι — καὶ ταύτας τότε οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ διήπρασαν. **19.** ὥστε ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι· πρὶν γὰρ δὴ καταλῦσαι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα οὕτω διεγένοντο.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

A LITERAL TRANSLATION OF CHAPTERS I.-III.

CHAPTER I.

1. (I.) Of-Darius and of-Parysatis are-born boys two, elder indeed Artaxerxes, younger however Cyrus. (II.) When however was-sick Darius and was-suspecting an-end of-the (of-)life, he-was-wishing the-two two-boys both to-be-present. **2.** (III.) The on-the-one-hand in-truth elder being-present was-happening; Cyrus on-the-other-hand he-sends-after from the government, of-which him satrap he-made. (IV.) Also general and him he-appointed of-all, as-many-as into Castolus's plain collect-themselves. (V.) Goes-up therefore the Cyrus taking Tissaphernes as a-friend, also of-the Greeks and having heavy-armed-men he-went-up three-hundred, commander and of-them Xenias a-Parrhasian. **3.** (VI.) When however ended Darius and sat-down into the kingdom Artaxerxes, Tissaphernes slanders the Cyrus by (*i. e.* before) the brother, that he-is-plotting-against him. (VII.) The (= he) however is-persuaded and arrests Cyrus as about-to-kill; the however mother begging-off him sends-off again to the government. **4.** (VIII.) The (= he) however as [= when] was-gone-away, after-incurring-danger, and after-being-dishonored, plans, in-order-that never again he-shall-be-in-the-power-of the brother, but, if he-may-be-able, shall-rule instead-of that-one. (IX.) Parysatis on-the-one-hand indeed the mother was-aiding the Cyrus, loving him rather than the reigning Artaxerxes. **5.** Whoever however might-arrive of-the from-beside king unto him, all so disposing he-was-sending-away, so-as to-him rather friends to-be than to-king. (XI.) also of-the by-the-side-of himself and barbarians he-was-taking-care, that to-fight both able they-might-be and in-a-friendly-way they-might-have-[themselves] to-him. **6.** The however Greek force he-was-collecting, as-much-as he-could, hiding-for-himself, in-order-that as-unprepared-as-possible he-might-take king. (XII.) As-follows therefore he-was-making-for-himself the levy. As-many-soever he-had guards in the cities he-announced to-the captains-of-the-guard each to-take men Peloponnesian as-many as-possible

Digitized by Google

and as-good as-possible, as plotting Tissaphernes-against the cities. And-for were the Ionian cities of-Tissaphernes, the-ancient (= formerly) from king having-been-given, then however they-had-revolted unto Cyrus all except Miletus; **7.** (XIII.) in Miletus however Tissaphernes perceiving-in-advance those same [things] [them] devising-for-themselves, to-revolt unto Cyrus, the (= some) indeed he-killed-off, the (= others) however he-cast-out. The however Cyrus, taking up the fleeing [ones], after-collecting an-army, was-besieging Miletus both by land and by sea and was-endeavoring to lead-down [= back] the having-fallen-out (= fugitives.) (XIV.) And this again another pretext was to-him of-the to-collect an-army. **8.** Unto however king sending, he-was-demanding, brother being of-him, to-be-given to-himself those the cities rather than Tissaphernes to-be-commander of-them, and the mother coöperated with-him these [things]; so that king the on-the-one-hand against himself conspiracy not was-perceiving. (XV.) With-Tissaphernes however he-was-thinking him warring, about the armies to-be-wasting-money; so-that in-no-wise was-he-angry, them warring. And for the Cyrus was-sending-off the becoming (*i. e.* incoming) revenues to-king from the cities, of-which (*i. e.* which) of-Tissaphernes he-was-happening having. **9.** Another however army for-him was-being-collected in Chersonesus, the down opposite Abydus, this the way. Clearchus was a-Lacedaemonian fugitive; (XVI.) with-him after-associating, (the) Cyrus both admired him and gives to-him ten-thousand darics. The (= he) however, after-taking the money, an-army collected from those the means, and was-warring, from Chersonesus setting-out, with-the Thracians, the above [the] Hellespont living, and he-was-aiding the Greeks; so-that also means they-were-contributing for-him into the support of-the soldiers, the Hellespontine cities, willing. (XVII.) This and again, thus being-supported, was-escaping-notice for-him the army. **10.** And Aristippus the Thessalian was-happening being a-guest-friend to-him, and being-hard-pressed under (= by) the at-home opponents he-comes to Cyrus and asks him into (= about) two-thousand mercenaries and pay of-three months, as thus being-superior possibly of-the opponents. (XVIII.) But Cyrus gives to-him about four-thousand and pay of six months and demands of-him not sooner to-become-reconciled unto the opponents before he-may-deliberate-together with-him. And thus the army in Thessaly was-escaping-notice being-supported for-him. **11.** (XIX.) Proxenus however the Boeotian, a-guest-friend being, he ordered, taking men as-many as-possible, to-become-at-[his]-side, as wishing to-march into (= against) the Pisidians, as the Pisidians [were] furnishing affairs (= trouble) to-the of-himself country. And Sophaenetus the Stymphalian

Digitized by Google

and Socrates the Achaean, these also [being] guest-friends, he ordered to-come, taking men as-many as-possible, as being-about-to-war-with Tissaphernes together-with the fugitives, the of-[the] Milesians. And were-doing thus those.

CHAPTER II.

1. (XXI.) When however it-was-seeming-best to-him now to-advance upward, the on-the-one-hand pretext he-was-making as wishing to-drive-out Pisidians wholly from the country; and he-collects as against-these both the barbaric and the Greek [army]. There also announces both to-the Clearchus taking to-come how-great was to-him an-army, and to-the Aristippus, reconciled unto the [opponents] at-home, to-send-away unto himself what he-had army; and to-Xenias, the Arcadian, who for-him had-charge of-the in-the-cities mercenary [army] to-come he-announces, having-taxed the others except howsoever-many sufficient were the citadels to-guard. **2.** (XXII.) He-called and also the Miletus besieging, and the fugitives he-ordered with him to-take-the-field, promising to-them if well he-might-have-accomplished [those things] upon which (= for the purpose of which) he-was-marching, not previously to desist until he might-lead-down (= back) them homeward. The however gladly were-obeying; they-trusted for to-him; and taking the arms they were-present into Sardis. **3.** Xenias on-the-one-hand in-truth the from the cities heavy-armed-men to (= about) four-thousand taking became-present into Sardis, Proxenus on-the-other-hand was-present having heavy-armed-men indeed about five-hundred and one-thousand, light-armed-men however five-hundred, Sophaenetus however the Stymphalian having heavy-armed-men one-thousand, Socrates however the Achaean, heavy-armed-men having about five-hundred, Pasion however the Megarean, three-hundred indeed heavy-armed-men indeed three-hundred however targeteers having arrived; was however both that [one] and the Socrates of-the about Miletus being in the field. **4.** (XXIII.) Those indeed into Sardis for him arrived. Tissaphernes however, after-watching those-things, and after-concluding greater to be than as-if against the Pisidians the preparation, proceeds to king, by-what [way] he was-able most-quickly, horsemen having about five-hundred. **5.** And king on-the-one-hand indeed, when he-heard of-Tissaphernes the Cyrus's military-preparation, prepared-in-turn.

6. (XXIV.) Cyrus but having whom I-have-mentioned set-forth from Sardis; and he-marches through the Lydia days'-journeys three, parasangs

Digitized by Google

twenty and two to the Maeander river. Of-this the width two plethra; a-bridge however was-upon having-been-joined by-means-of-boats. **6.** This after-crossing, he-marches through Phrygia day's-journey one parasangs eight into Colossae, city (well-) inhabited, prosperous and large. There he-waited days seven; and came Menon the Thessalian, hoplites having one-thousand and peltasts five-hundred, Dolopians and Aenianians and Olynthians. **7.** Thence he-marches days'-journeys three parasangs twenty into Celaenae, of-the Phrygia city inhabited, large and prosperous. There to-Cyrus royal-abodes was and park large, of-wild animals full, which that-one used-to-hunt from horse, whenever to-exercise he-might-wish himself not-only but-also the horses. Through middle however of-the park flows the Maeander river; the and sources of-it are forth-from the royal-abodes; it-flows and also through the Celaenae city. **8.** (XXV.) There-is and also of-great king royal-abodes in Celaenae fortified upon the sources of-the Marsyas river beneath the acropolis; flows and also this through the city and empties into the Maeander; of-the and Marsyas the width is of twenty and five feet. There is-said Apollo to-have-flayed [it is said that Apollo flayed] Marsyas after-conquering [him] contending with-himself concerning [musical-] wisdom, and the skin to-have-hung-up [and that he hung up] in the cave whence the sources; through and this [fact] the river is-called Marsyas. **9.** There Xerxes, when forth-from the Greece after-being-defeated by-the battle he-was-retreating, is-said to-have-built [it is said that he built] these both (the) royal-abodes and the of-Celaenae citadel. There waited Cyrus days thirty; and came Clearchus the Spartan fugitive having hoplites one-thousand and peltasts Thracians eight-hundred and bowmen Cretan two-hundred. At-the-same-time and also Sosis was-present the Syracusan having hoplites three-hundred and Sophaenetus the Arcadian having hoplites one-thousand. And there Cyrus review and enumeration of-the Greeks made in the park and became the all-together hoplites indeed ten-thousand and one-thousand, peltasts however about the two-thousand. **10.** (XXVI.) Thence he-marches days'-journeys two, parasangs ten, into Peltae, a-city inhabited. There he-remained days three; in which Xenias the Arcadian the Lycaean sacrificed and contest placed; the and prizes were flesh-combs golden; viewed and the contest also Cyrus. Thence he-marches days'-journeys two, parasangs twelve, to Ceramōn market, city inhabited, remotest at the Mysian country. **11.** Thence he-marches days'-journeys three, parasangs thirty, into Cayster's plain, city inhabited. There he-remained days five; and to-the soldiers was-owed pay more than of-three-months, and frequently going to the gates they-were-demanding [it] from

Digitized by Google

[him]. But the, promises speaking, was-putting-off and evident was being-troubled; not for was-it according-to the of-Cyrus manner, having, not to-give-back. **12.** There arrives Epyaxa, the of-Syennesis wife, the Cilicians' king to-the-side-of Cyrus; and she-was-said to-have-given [it was said that she gave] to-Cyrus means much. To-the and accordingly army then gave Cyrus pay of-four months. Had and the Cilician a-guard around herself, Cilicians and Aspendians; it-was-said however to-have-had-intercourse Cyrus [that C. had, etc.] with-the Cilician. **13.** Thence he-marches days'-journeys two, parasangs ten, into Thymbrium, city inhabited. There was beside the road spring, the of-Midas called, the Phrygians' king, upon which is-said Midas to-have-caught [it is said that M. caught] the Satyr, with-wine by-mixing it. **14.** Thence he-marches days'-journeys two, parasangs ten, into Tyriaeum, city inhabited. There he-remained days three. And is-said to-have-requested the-Cilician of-Cyrus [it is said that . . . requested Cyrus] to-show the army to-herself; wishing accordingly to-show, review he-makes in the plain of-the Greeks and of-the barbarians. **15.** (XXVII.) He-ordered and the Greeks, as custom to-them into battle, so to-be-drawn-up and to-stand, to-marshal and, each-one, the of-himself. They-were-drawn-up accordingly in fours; had and the on-the-one-hand right Menon and the with him, the left but Clearchus and the of-that-one, the but middle the other generals. **16.** Was-viewing accordingly Cyrus first indeed the barbarians; the (= they) but were-marching-by having-been-drawn-up according-to squads and according to regiments; thereupon but the Greeks, riding-along upon chariot and the Cilician upon (= in) carriage. They-had and, all, helmets brazen and tunics purple and greaves and the shields having-been-uncovered. **17.** (XXVIII.) When-indeed but all he rode-beside (= along), after-stationing the chariot before the phalanx middle, sending Pigres the interpreter to-the-side-of the generals of-the Greeks he-ordered to-present the arms and to-advance entire the phalanx. They but said-in-front these orders to-the soldiers; and when the-trumpet-had-sounded, after-presenting the arms, they-advanced. From but this, more-quickly advancing with shout, from the spontaneous running became to-the soldiers to the tents. **18.** Of-the and barbarians fear much, and the both Cilician fled upon her carriage and the from (*i. e.* in) the market leaving-behind their wares fled. The but Greeks with laugh unto their tents went. The and Cilician, seeing the splendor and the order of-the army wondered. Cyrus but was-pleased, the from the Greeks into the barbarians fear beholding. **19.** Thence he-marches days'-journeys three, parasangs twenty, into Iconium, of the Phrygia city remote. There he-remained three days.

Digitized by Google

Thence he-marches through the Lycaonia days'-journeys five, parasangs thirty. This the country he-turned-over to-plunder to-the Greeks, as hostile being. **20.** Thence Cyrus the Cilician into the Cilicia sends-away the quickest way; and he-sent-with her the soldiers whom Menon had and him. Cyrus but with the others marches through Cappadocia days'-journeys four, parasangs five and twenty, into Thoana, city inhabited, large and prosperous. There he-remained days three; in which Cyrus slew man Persian, Megaphernes, a-wearer-of-the-purple royal, and another certain of-the subordinates chief-officer, accusing to-be-conspiring-against him. **21.** (XXIX.) Thence he-was-attempting to-throw-into into the Cilicia; the but entrance was road for-wagons steep mightily and impossible to-enter for-an-army, if any-one was-preventing. Was-said however also Syennesis to-be upon the heights guarding the entrance; wherefore they-waited a-day in the plain. On-the but following came messenger saying that having-left was Syennesis the heights, when he-knew that the of-Menon army already in Cilicia was within the mountains, and because triremes he-was-hearing sailing-around from Ionia into Cilicia Tamos having, the of-Lacedaemonians and of himself, Cyrus. **22.** Cyrus and accordingly went-up upon the mountains, nobody preventing, and he-saw the tents where the Cilicians were-guarding. Thence and he-went-down into plain large and beautiful, [well-]watered, and of-trees of-all-kinds full and of-vines; much and also sesame and millet and panic and wheat and barley it-bears. A-mountain however it surrounds, steep and high on-all-sides from sea to sea. **23.** After-descending and through this plain he marched days'-journeys four, parasangs five and twenty, to Tarsi, of-the Cilicia city large and prosperous. There was the of-Syennesis royal-abodes, the Cilicians' king; through middle and of-the city flows a-river Cydnus by-name width of-two plethra. **24.** This the city abandoned the inhabiting, with Syennesis into fortress steep upon the mountains, except the the shops having; remained and also the along-the-side-of the sea living in Soli and in Issi. **25.** (XXXI.) Epyaxa but the of-Syennesis wife earlier than-Cyrus by-five days into Tarsi arrived; in however the crossing of-the mountains, the into the plain two companies of-the of-Menon army were-destroyed; the on-the-one-hand were-saying while-plundering something to-have-been-cut-down [that they while . . . were cut down] by the Cilicians, the on-the-other-hand after-being-abandoned and not being-able to-find the other (= the rest of the) army nor the roads, then, wandering-about, to-have-perished [that they were abandoned and . . . that they perished]; and they-were however-it-may-be these one-hundred hoplites. **26.** The but others when they-came, the both

Digitized by Google

city, the Tarsus, they-plundered, on-account-of the loss of-the fellow-soldiers being-angered, and the royal-abodes the in it. Cyrus however when marched-into into the city, was-sending-after the Syennesis unto himself; but he neither before for-nobody yet stronger than-himself into hands to-come said [*i. e.* that he had come, etc.] nor then for-Cyrus to-come was-he-willing before the wife him persuaded and pledges he-received. **27.** After but these, when they-were-come together with-one-another, Syennesis indeed gave to-Cyrus means much into the army, Cyrus and to-him gifts which is-[= are]-thought by king (*i. e.* at court) honorable, horse golden-bridled and necklace golden and bracelets and dagger golden and gown Persian and the country no-longer to-be-ravaged; the and having-been-plundered slaves, if anywhere they-may-happen-in [with them], to-receive-back.

CHAPTER III.

1. (XXXII.) There remained Cyrus and the army days twenty; the for soldiers not said to-go of-the forward; were-suspecting for now against king to-go; to-be-hired however not upon that they-said. First however Clearchus the of-himself soldiers was-compelling to-go; the however him both were-hitting and the pack-animals, the of-that-one, when he-might-begin to-go-forward. **2.** Clearchus however then indeed little escaped not to-be-stoned-to-death, later however when he-knew that not he-will-be-able to compel, he-led-together assembly of-the of-himself soldiers. And first indeed he wept much time standing; the however, looking, wondered and were-silent; thereupon however he-said such-(things). **3.** Men soldiers, (do) not wonder that hardly I-bear because-of-the present affairs. To-me for guest-friend Cyrus became and me fleeing from the fatherland the both other (-things) he-honored and ten-thousand he-gave darics; which I taking not into the private deposited for-me, nor wasted-in-luxury, but into (=for) you I-was-expending. **4.** (XXXIII.) And first indeed against the Thracians I-warred, and in-behalf-of the Greece, I-was-punishing with you, from the Chersonesus them driving-out wishing to-take-away-for-themselves the inhabiting Greeks the land. When-indeed however Cyrus called, taking you I-proceeded, in-order-that, if anything he-might-need, I-might-aid him in-return-for what well I-suffered by that-one. **5.** When however you (do) not wish to-proceed-together, necessity indeed for-me either, you betraying, the of-Cyrus friendship to-use, or, toward that-one being deceitful, with you to-be. If on-the-one-hand indeed just-things

Digitized by Google

I-shall-do not I-know, I-shall-prefer however, be-that-as-it-may, you, and with you, whatever may-be-necessary I-shall-suffer. And never shall-say nobody that I, Greeks leading to the barbarians, betraying the Greeks, the of-the barbarians friendship preferred. **6.** (XXXIV.) But when you to-me (do) not wish to-obey, I with you will follow and, whatever may-be-necessary, I shall suffer. I-think, for, you to-me to-be both fatherland and friends and allies, and with you on-the-one-hand would (*ἄν*) I-think be honored, wherever I-may-be, of-you however deprived being, not able I think would (I) be neither (*ἄν*) friend to-aid neither (*ἄν*) enemy to-ward-off. As me therefore going (gen. abs.) wherever may also you, so the opinion have. **7.** These he-said; the however soldiers, the both of-himself that-one and the others, these hearing, that not he-said to-the-side-of king to-proceed, applauded; from-the-side-of however Xenias and Pasion more than two-thousand, taking the arms and the baggage encamped to-the-side-of Clearchus. **8.** Cyrus however by-these being-perplexed both and being-distressed, was-sending-after Clearchus; the (= he) however to-go on-the-one-hand not was-willing, secretly however of-the soldiers sending to-him messenger he-was-saying to-be-of-cheer as being-about-to-settle (gen. abs.) these into the needing. To-send-after however he-bade him. He-himself however not said to-go. **9.** (XXXV.) After however these, collecting the both of-himself soldiers and the coming-to to-him and of-the others the wishing, he spoke such. Men soldiers, the on-the-one-hand indeed of-Cyrus, evident that, thus have toward us just-as the our toward that-one; neither for we of-that-one still soldiers, when at-least not we-follow-together him, nor that-one still to-us paymaster. That moreover to-be-wronged he-thinks by us I-know. **10.** So-that even he sending-after (gen. abs.) not I-am-willing to-go, the on-the-one-hand greatest, being ashamed because I-am-conscious to-myself all (things) having-deceived him, then also fearing lest, taking me, justice he-lay-upon on-account-of-what he-thinks by-me to-have-been-wronged. **11.** To-me accordingly seems not season to-be for-us to-sleep nor to-be-negligent of-ourselves, but to-deliberate whatever it-is-necessary to-do out-of these. And while both we-remain here, to-be-considered to-me it-seems to-be how most-safely we-shall-remain, if and now it-seems-best to-go-away, how most-safely we-shall-go-away, and how the necessary we-shall-have; without for these neither of-a-general nor of-a-private use no. **12.** (XXXVI.) The however man of-much indeed a-worthy friend, to-whom a-friend he-may-be, most-hard however enemy, to-whom hostile he-may-be; he-has however a-force both infantry and cavalry and naval which (we) all equally see both and under-

Digitized by Google

stand; and for not-at-all far do-we-seem to-me from-him to-sit. So-that season to-say whatever any-one knows best to-be. These saying, he ceased. **13.** Out-of however this, were-rising the on-the-one-hand out-of the spontaneous, about-to-say what they-knew, the on-the-other-hand also by that (-one) instructed, showing of-what-nature was the difficulty, without the of-Cyrus knowledge, both to-remain and to-go-away. **14.** One however indeed said, pretending to-hasten as-quickly as-possible to proceed into the Greece generals on-the-one-hand to-choose, others, as-quickly as-possible, if Clearchus (does) not wish to-lead-away. The however necessaries to-buy — the however market was in the barbarian army — and to-pack-up; going however Cyrus to-ask boats, that they-might-sail-away; if however (he-shall) not give these, a leader to-ask Cyrus, whoever through friendly the country shall-lead-away. If however not-even a-leader he-shall-give, to-form-in-line the quickest [way], to-send however also about-to-seize-in-advance the heights, in-order-that not shall-anticipate neither Cyrus neither the Cilicians seizing, of-whom many and much property we-have having-plundered. This-one indeed such said; after however him Clearchus said so-much. **15.** (XXXVII.) That on-the-one-hand about-to-command me this the military-plan (let) no-one of-you say; many, for, I-see-in through which by-me this not must-be-done; that on-the-other-hand to-the man, whom ye-may-choose, I-shall-obey in-what [way] possible most, in-order-that you-may-know that also to-be-ruled I-understand as any-one even else assuredly of-men. **16.** After him another stood-up, showing on-the-one-hand the folly of-the the boats to-ask ordering, just-as back the expedition Cyrus making (gen. abs.); showing on-the-other-hand that foolish it-was a-leader to-ask from-beside this-one for-whom we-harm the business. If however even to-the leader we-shall-trust, whom Cyrus may-give, what prevents also the heights for-us to-order Cyrus to-seize-in-advance? **17.** I, for, should-hesitate on-the-one-hand into the boats to-embark, which to-us he-might-give, lest us with-themselves the triremes he-sink, I-should-fear on-the-other-hand the leader, whom he-might-give, to-follow, lest us he-lead whence not it-will-be-possible to-come-out; I-should-wish however, unwilling, going-away, Cyrus (gen. abs.) to-elude him gone-away; which not possible is. But I say these on-the-one-hand follies to-be. **18.** (XXXVIII.) It-seems-best however to-me men, gone to Cyrus, whoever suitable, with Clearchus to-ask that-one what [use] he-wishes us to-use; and if on-the-one-hand the-business be similar to-just-what also formerly he-used the mercenaries, to-follow also us and not worse to-be than-the formerly him gone-up-with. **19.** If however greater the business than-the former ap-

Digitized by Google

pear and more-laborious and more-dangerous, to-claim-as-a-right either persuading us to-lead or, being-persuaded, toward friendship to-send-away; thus, for, both following, friends to-him and zealous we-would-follow and, going-away, safely we-would-go-away; whatever however at these-[things] he-may-say to-report hither; us however, hearing, at these-[things] to-deliberate. **20.** Seemed-best these, and men choosing with Clearchus they-send who ask Cyrus the seeming-best to-the army. The however replied that he-heard Abrocomas, hostile man, upon the Euphrates river to-be, being-distant twelve days'-journey; to-him accordingly he-said to-wish to-go; and-if on-the-one-hand he-be there, the justice he-said to-desire to-lay-upon him, if on-the-other-hand he-fled, we there at these shall-deliberate. **21.** Hearing however these, the chosen report to-the soldiers; to-the however suspicion indeed was that he-was-leading against king, yet however it-seemed-best to-follow. They-ask in-addition however pay; the however Cyrus promises a-half-obol-more to-all to-be-about-to-give than-what before they-bore, instead-of a-daric three half-darics of-the month to-the soldier; that however against king he-was-leading not-even there heard nobody in at-least the evident.

Digitized by Google

A FREE TRANSLATION OF CHAPTERS I., II.

CHAPTER I.

1. Of Darius and Parysatis are born two sons; the elder, Artaxerxes; the younger, Cyrus. But when Darius was sick and suspected the end of his life to be near, he wished both of his sons to be present. **2.** Now the elder happened to be present; but Cyrus is summoned from the province of which he had made him satrap, as he had appointed him general also of all who assemble in the plain of Castolus. So Cyrus goes up, taking Tissaphernes as a friend; and having also three hundred hoplites of the Greeks and Xenias the Parrhasian as their commander. **3.** But when Darius died and Artaxerxes was established on the throne, Tissaphernes accuses Cyrus to his brother, charging that he was plotting against him. And the king believes him and arrests Cyrus, with the purpose of putting him to death; but his mother begs Cyrus off and sends him back again to his province. **4.** But as he went back, after incurring danger and disgrace, he plans that he may never again be in the power of his brother, but rule as king in his stead, if he shall be able. Now both the mother, Parysatis, was assisting Cyrus, since she loved him more than the reigning Artaxerxes, **5.** And if any one came to him from the king, Cyrus used to send them back, so disposed that they were more friendly to him than to the king. And he saw to the barbarians about him, that they might be both able to fight and friendly to him. **6.** His Greek force he collected, hiding it as much as possible, in order that he might take the king thoroughly unprepared. He made his collection as follows. He ordered the captains of all the garrisons which he had in the cities to procure men of Peloponnesus, as many and as good as possible, declaring that Tissaphernes was conspiring against his cities. For the Ionian cities had formerly been given by the king to Tissaphernes, but at this time had all revolted to Cyrus, except Miletus. **7.** And Tissaphernes perceiving that in Miletus they were deliberating upon similar measures, namely, to revolt to Cyrus, slew

Digitized by Google

some and banished others. But Cyrus, taking the fugitives under his protection and collecting an army, besieged Miletus by land and sea and endeavored to restore them. And this was a second pretext he had for collecting an army. **8.** And sending to the king, he kept urging that, because he was a brother of his, those cities should be given to himself rather than be in the province of Tissaphernes, and his mother was co-operating with him in this; so that the king did not detect the conspiracy against himself, but he thought that by warring with Tissaphernes, he was squandering his means upon his armies; so that he felt no anger at their being at war. For Cyrus continually sent in the incoming revenues to the king from the cities which belonged to Tissaphernes, but happened to be in his possession. **9.** But another army was collected for him in the Chersonesus which lies directly opposite Abydus, in the following manner. Clearchus was an exile from Sparta; Cyrus came to know him and admired him, and gave him ten thousand darics. And he took the money and raised an army with these means, and sallying forth from the Chersonesus, carried on war with those Thracians who lived beyond the Hellespont, and continually aided the Greeks; so that the cities of the Hellespont voluntarily contributed means for him for the support of his soldiers. And this army also was thus supported for him in secret. **10.** And Aristippus the Thessalian happened to be a guest-friend of his, and, hard pressed by his adversaries at home, he comes to Cyrus and asks him for two thousand darics and three months' pay, believing that thus he would get the better of his adversaries. But Cyrus gives him about four thousand darics and six months' pay, and begs him not to conclude with his adversaries before he shall have consulted him. And thus again the army in Thessaly was supported for him in secret. **11.** But Proxenus the Boeotian, a guest-friend of his, he bade to take as many men as possible and come to him, stating that he desired to march against the Pisidians, on the ground that the Pisidians were giving his country trouble. And Sophaenetus the Stymphalian and Socrates the Achaean — they too being friends — he bade to take as many men as possible and come to him, saying that he was about to fight Tissaphernes with the aid of the exiles from Miletus. And so they did.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER II.

1. But when at length it seemed to him good to go inland, he made as his pretext a desire to banish the Pisidians wholly from their country; and he collects ostensibly against these both his barbarian and Greek forces. He also sends word to Clearchus to take whatever army he had and to come there, and to Aristippus to make peace with his opponents at home and to send him the army which he had; and to Xenias the Arcadian, who had charge of the mercenary force in the cities, he sends word to come, taking all his men, excepting as many as were necessary to guard the citadels. **2.** He called those also who were besieging Miletus, and urged the fugitives to take the field with him, promising them that, if he should successfully accomplish the objects for which he was taking the field, he would not rest until he should restore them to their homes. And they cheerfully obeyed, for they trusted him, and took their arms and came to Sardis. **3.** So now both Xenias came to Sardis, with the garrison of the cities, — about four thousand hoplites, — and Proxenus came with about fifteen hundred hoplites and five hundred light-armed soldiers, and Sophaenetus the Stymphalian with one thousand hoplites, and Socrates the Achaean with about five hundred hoplites, and Pasion the Megarian came with three hundred hoplites and three hundred targeteers; both Pasion and Socrates were among those in the field before Miletus. **4.** These came to him at Sardis; but Tissaphernes, seeing these movements and thinking the preparation to be too great to be directed against the Pisidians, proceeds as rapidly as possible to the king with about five hundred horsemen. **5.** And the king, in truth, when he heard from Tissaphernes of the equipment of Cyrus, made preparations against him.

But Cyrus, with the forces which I have mentioned, sets out from Sardis, and marches through Lydia, three days' journey, twenty-two parasangs, to the river Maeander; the width of this was two plethra, and there was a bridge over it, made of boats. **6.** This he crosses and marches one day's journey, eight parasangs, through Phrygia to Colossae, — a populous city, prosperous and large. There he remained seven days, and Menon the Thessalian arrived with a thousand hoplites and five hundred targeteers, — Dolopians, Aenianians, and Olynthians. **7.** Thence he marches a three days' journey, twenty parasangs, to Celaenae, a populous city of Phrygia, large and prosperous. Cyrus had a royal palace there, and a park full of

Digitized by Google

wild animals, which he used to hunt on horseback whenever he desired to exercise himself and his horses. Through the middle of the park flows the Maeander river, and its sources rise under the palace; it flows through the city Celaenae. **8.** The great king also has a strongly built palace in Celaenae, over the sources of the river Marsyas, at the foot of the citadel; this river also flows through the city and empties into the Maeander; the width of the Marsyas is twenty-five feet. It is said that here Apollo conquered Marsyas, who contended with him in musical skill, and flayed him and hung his skin in the cave from which the sources issue; and for this reason the river is called Marsyas. **9.** It is said that Xerxes, when he was returning from Greece after his defeat in the famous battle, built that palace there, and the citadel of Celaenae. There Cyrus remained thirty days; and Clearchus the Lacedaemonian exile arrived with a thousand hoplites, eight hundred Thracian peltasts, and two hundred Cretan bowmen. And at the same time Sosis the Syracusan came with three hundred hoplites, and Sophaenetus the Arcadian with a thousand hoplites. And there Cyrus reviewed and enumerated the Greeks in the park, and the entire number of hoplites was eleven thousand, and of the peltasts about two thousand. **10.** Thence he marches two days' journey, ten parasangs, to Peltae, a populous city. There he remained three days, during which Xenias the Arcadian celebrated the Lycaean sacrifices and gave an athletic contest; and the prizes were golden strigils; and Cyrus also viewed the contest. Thence he marches two days' journey, twelve parasangs, to Ceramon-agora, a populous city, and on the frontier toward the country of Mysia. **11.** Thence he marches three days' journey, thirty parasangs, to Cayster-plain, a populous city. There he remained five days, and more than three months' pay was due the soldiers, and they went frequently to headquarters and demanded it. But he put them off by uttering promises, and he was evidently annoyed; for it was not according to the character of Cyrus not to give when he had the means. **12.** There Epyaxa the wife of Syennesis, king of the Cilicians, came to Cyrus; and it was said that she gave Cyrus a great deal of money. Whether so or not, Cyrus then gave the army four months' pay. And the Cilician queen had about herself a guard of Cilicians and Aspendians; and it was said also that Cyrus had intercourse with the Cilician. **13.** Thence he marches a two days' journey, ten parasangs, to Thymbrium, a populous city. There was there, by the roadside, the so-called fountain of Midas, king of the Phrygians, at which it is said that Midas caught the Satyr by mixing it with wine. **14.** Thence he marches a two days' journey, ten parasangs, to Tyriaeium,

Digitized by Google

a populous city. There he remained three days. And it is said that the Cilician queen asked Cyrus to show her the army. Wishing therefore to show it to her, he makes a review of the Greeks and the barbarians in the plain. **15.** And he ordered the Greeks to be so arranged and to so take their place as was their custom for battle, and each general to marshal his own men. They were therefore arranged four deep, and Menon with his soldiers held the right wing, and Clearchus and his men the left wing, while the other generals held the middle. **16.** Now Cyrus viewed first the barbarians, and they marched by, drawn up in troops and companies; and then he viewed the Greeks, riding past them in a chariot, the Cilician queen in a carriage. And they all had brazen helmets and purple tunics, and greaves, and shields which they had uncovered. **17.** But when he had ridden past all, he stopped his chariot in front of the middle of the phalanx, and sent Pigres the interpreter to the generals of the Greeks, and ordered them to present arms, and the whole phalanx to advance. The generals gave these announcements to the soldiers, and when the trumpet had sounded, they presented arms and advanced. And as the soldiers thereupon advanced more swiftly with shouting, they began to run of their own accord toward their tents. **18.** But great was the fear of the barbarians, and not only the Cilician queen fled in her chariot, but those in the market-place left their wares and fled. The Greeks went to their tents with a laugh; and the Cilician queen wondered as she beheld the brightness and the good order of the army. But Cyrus was amused when he saw the fear inspired by the Greeks into the barbarians. **19.** Thence he marches a three days' journey, twenty parasangs, into Iconium, a frontier city of Phrygia. There he remained three days. Thence he marches through Lycaonia a five days' journey, thirty parasangs. This country he allowed the Greeks to plunder, on the ground that it was hostile. **20.** From this place Cyrus sends back the Cilician queen, by the shortest road, to Cilicia; and he sent with her the soldiers whom Menon led, and with them Menon himself. But Cyrus marches with the rest a four days' journey, twenty-five parasangs, through Cappadocia, to Thoana, a populous city, large and prosperous. There he remained three days; during which Cyrus put to death a Persian man, Megaphernes, a wearer of the royal purple, and a certain other powerful man of his subordinates, charging them with conspiracy against him. **21.** From this place he attempted to enter Cilicia; but the entrance was a wagon road, very steep and impossible for an army to enter, if any one prevented. And besides, Syennesis was said to be upon the heights, guarding the entrance; wherefore they remained a day in the plain. But

Digitized by Google

on the following day a messenger came saying that Syennesis had left the heights, since he learned that Menon's army was already in Cilicia, within the mountains, and because he heard that Tamos had command of triremes belonging to the Lacedaemonians and Cyrus himself which were sailing around from Ionia to Cilicia. **22.** And so Cyrus went upon the mountains, since no one hindered, and he saw the tents where the Cilicians kept guard. And thence he descended into a large and fertile plain, full of all kinds of trees and of vines; and it produces a great deal of sesame and panic, and millet and wheat and barley. And a mountain, steep and tenable as a stronghold, surrounds it on all sides from sea to sea. **23.** And descending through this plain he marched a four days' journey, twenty-five parasangs, to Tarsus, a large and prosperous city of Cilicia. And there was the royal residence of Syennesis, the Cilician king; and through the middle of the city flows a river, Cydnus by name, two plethra in width. **24.** This city, all the inhabitants, except those who had shops, deserted together with Syennesis for a strong fortress upon the mountains; but those remained, who dwelt by the sea-coast in Soli and in Issus. **25.** And Epyaxa, the wife of Syennesis, arrived in Tarsus five days before Cyrus; but in the passage of the mountains down into the plain two companies of Menon's army were destroyed. Some said that they were cut down while perpetrating some act of plunder; and others, that after being left behind, and losing the rest of the army and the roads, they then wandered about and were destroyed. At any rate, these were a hundred hoplites. **26.** But when the rest came in they sacked the city of Tarsus, as well as the palace in it, because they were angered at the loss of their comrades. But when Cyrus marched into the city he kept summoning Syennesis to come to him; but he not only declared that he had never before come into the power of any one stronger than himself, but was then unwilling to come to Cyrus before his wife had persuaded him and he had himself received pledges. **27.** But after this, when they were together, Syennesis gave Cyrus a great deal of money for his army: and Cyrus gave him gifts, which are considered honorable at court, — namely, a horse with a golden bridle, a golden necklace, bracelets, a golden short sword, and a Persian gown; also the promise that his country should no longer be plundered, and that the slaves should be returned which had been carried off in plunder if they should be found anywhere.

Digitized by Google

THE WORDS OF BOOK I. OF THE ANABASIS

Arranged in the order of their ***first*** *occurrence.*

CHAPTER I.

1. **καί**, *and*, *also*.
2. **γίγνομαι**, 2 aor. **ἐγενόμην**, *to be born, become, be*.
3. **παῖς, παιδός**, *boy*.
4. **δύο, δυοῖν**, *two*.
5. **πρέσβυς, εως**, *old man*; **πρεσβύτερος, -ύτατος**, *older, oldest*.
6. **μέν . . . δέ**, *on the one hand . . . on the other*; often best rendered as here by emphasizing the preceding word.
7. **νέος, -ώτερος, -ώτατος**, *young, younger, youngest*.
8. **ἐπεί**, *when*; **ἐπάν** or **ἐπήν** (= **ἐπεί** + **ἄν**) w. subj. *whenever, when*.
9. **δέ**, *and, but*.
10. **ἀσθενέω**, impf. **ἠσθένουν**, fut. **-ήσω**, *to be sick*.
11. **ὑπ-οπτεύω**, impf. **ὑπώπτευον**, fut. **-εύσω**, *to suspect*.
12. **τελευτή, -ῆς**, *end*.
13. **ὁ, ἡ, τό**; **τοῦ, τῆς, τοῦ**, *the*.
14. **βίος, -ου**, *life*.
15. **βούλομαι, -ήσομαι**, *to wish*.
16. **ἀμφότεροι, -αι, -α**, *both*.
17. **πάρ-ειμι**, impf. **παρ-ῆν**, *to be present, arrive*.
18. **οὖν**, *therefore, now*.
19. **τυγχάνω**, 2 aor. **ἔτυχον**, *to happen*.
20. **μετα-πέμπομαι**, *to send after*.
21. **ἀπό**, with gen., *from*.
22. **ἀρχή, -ῆς**, *beginning, government, province*.
23. **ὅς, ἥ, ὅ**, *who, which, what*.
24. **αὐτός, -ή, -ό**, *self*, in the nom. and before the art.; *same*, after it; *him, her it*, alone.
25. **σατράπης, -ου**, *a satrap*.
26. **ποιέω, -ήσω**, *to make*.
27. **στρατηγός, -οῦ**, *general*.
28. **ἀπο-δείκνῡμι, -δείξω**, *to show forth; appoint*.
29. **πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν**; **παντός**, etc., *all, every*.
30. **ὅσος, -η, -ον**, *as much* (pl. *many*) *as*.
31. **εἰς**, with acc. *into*; with numerals, *about*.
32. **πεδίον, -ου**, *plain*.
33. **ἀθροίζω, -οίσω**, *to collect*; mid. *assemble*.
34. **ἀνα-βαίνω**, 2 aor. **ἀν-έβην**, *to go up*.
35. **λαμβάνω**, 2 aor. **ἔλαβον**, *to take, receive*.

Digitized by Google

36. **ὡς**, *as, as if, when; to* (Ch. II. § 4); with super. intens., *as possible* (§ 5). See H.[1] 651.
37. **φίλος**, -η, -ον, *friendly*; as subs. *a friend.*
38. **ἔχω**, impf. **εἶχον**, fut. **ἕξω** or **σχήσω**, *to have, to hold.*
39. **ὁπλίτης**, -ου, *heavy-armed soldier.*
40. **τριᾱκόσιοι**, -αι, -α, *three hundred.*
41. **ἄρχων**, -οντος, *commander.*
42. **τελευτάω**, -ήσω, *to end* (life), *die.* See 12.
43. **καθ-ίστημι**, *to settle*; 2 aor. **κατ-έστην**, *become settled.*
44. **βασιλείᾱ**, -ᾱς, *kingdom.*
45. **δια-βάλλω** (to throw through), *to slander.*
46. **πρός**, with gen. *from*; with dat. *at, beside*; acc. *to, toward; against.*
47. **ἀδελφός**, -οῦ, *brother.*
48. **ἐπι-βουλεύω**, -εύσω, *to plot against.* See 61.
49. **ὁ δέ** (not preceded by **ὁ μέν**), *and he, but he.*
50. **πείθω**, **πείσω**, *to persuade*; mid. *obey.*
51. **συλ-λαμβάνω**, 2 aor. **συν-έλαβον**, *to seize.* See 35.
52. **ἀπο-κτείνω**, **-κτενῶ**, **ἀπ-έκτεινα**, *to kill.*
53. **μήτηρ**, **μητρός**, *mother.*
54. **ἐξ-αιτέω**, -ήσω, *demand from* or *off*, mid. *beg off.*
55. **ἀπο-πέμπω**, **-ψω**, *to send away* or *back.* See 20.
56. **πάλιν**, *back; again.*
57. **ἐπί**, with gen. *upon*; with dat. *upon, on, dependent upon* (= *in the power of*); with acc. *upon, against.*
58. **ἀπ-έρχομαι**, 2 aor. **ἀπ-ῆλθον**, *to go away* or *back.*
59. **κινδῡνεύω**, -εύσω, *to incur danger.*
60. **ἀτιμάζω**, -άσω, **ἠτίμασα**, *to dishonor.*
61. **βουλεύω**, -εύσω, *to plan*; mid. *deliberate.* See 48.
62. **ὅπως**, *how, how that, in order that.*
63. **μήποτε**, *never* (with subj., imper., etc.). See H. 1018, G.[2] 283, 1 and 2.
64. **ἔτι**, *still, yet.*
65. **εἰμί**, impf. **ἦν**, fut. **ἔσομαι**, *to be*, with gen. or dat. *belong to.* See 17.
66. **ἀλλά**, *but.*
67. **ἤν** (not **ἦν**, see 65), or **ἐάν**, *if*, with subj.
68. **δύναμαι**, impf. **ἐδυνάμην**, *to be able.*
69. **βασιλεύω**, **εὑσω**, *to be king.* See 44.
70. **ἀντί**, with gen., *instead of.*
71. **ἐκεῖνος**, -η, -ο, *that.*
72. **δή**, *now, indeed:* often best rendered by emphasizing preceding word.
73. **ὑπ-άρχω**, impf. **ὑπ-ῆρχον**, fut.

[1] Hadley's Greek Grammar, revised by Allen.
[2] Goodwin's Greek Grammar, edition of 1879.

Digitized by Google

-ξω, *to begin* (see 137); *to be* (§ 4, *to favor*, a rare sense).

74. **φιλέω**, -ήσω, *to love.*

75. **μᾶλλον**, *more, rather.*

76. **ἤ**, *than*; **ἠ . . . ἤ**, *either . . . or.*

77. **ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι**, *whoever, whichever, whatever.* See 23.

78. **ἀφ-ικνέομαι**, 2 aor. ἀφ-ῑκόμην, *to arrive.* See 17.

79. **παρά**, with gen. *from*; with dat. *by, near*; with acc. *to.*

80. **βασιλεύς**, -έως, *king.* See 69.

81. **οὕτω(s)**, *so, thus.*

82. **δια-τίθημι**, *to dispose* or *affect.*

83. **ὥστε**, *so as, so that.*

84. **ἑαυτοῦ**, -ῆς, *himself, herself.*

85. **βάρβαρος**, -ου, *foreign, barbarian.*

86. **ἐπι-μελέομαι**, impf. ἐπ-εμελούμην, *to care for*, with gen.

87. **πολεμέω**, -ήσω, *to carry on war.*

88. **τε . . . καί**, *both . . . and.*

89. **ἱκανός**, -ή, -όν, *enough, competent.*

90. **εὐ-νοϊκῶς**, *well disposed.*

91. **δύναμις**, -εως, ἡ, *force, power*; see 68.

92. **μάλιστα**, *most, especially*: **ὡς μάλιστα**, *as much as possible.* See 75.

93. **κρύπτω**, -ψω, *to hide, cover*; ἐπι-, *to cover over, conceal.*

94. **ὅτι**, *that, because*, *cf.* 77; with super., intens. like **ὡς** (see 36), *as possible.*

95. **ἀπαράσκευος**, -ον; -ότερος, -ότατος, *unprepared.*

96. **ὧδε**, *thus, as follows.* See 81.

97. **συλλογή**, -ῆς, *collection, levy.*

98. **ὁπόσος**, -η, -ον, *as great as, as many as.*

99. **φυλακή**, -ῆς, *a garrison.*

100. **ἐν**, with dat., *in.*

101. **πόλις**, -εως, ἡ, *city.*

102. **παρ-αγγέλλω**, fut. -ελῶ, *send word to, command.*

103. **φρούρ-αρχος**, -ου, *a garrison-commander.*

104. **ἕκαστος**, -η, -ον, *each*; plur. *several.*

105. **ἀνήρ**, ἀνδρός, *man* (Lat. *vir*).

106. **πολύς**, πλείων, πλεῖστος, *much* or *many, more, most.*

107. **ἀγαθός**, -ή, -όν; ἀμείνων; ἄριστος, or βελτίων, βέλτιστος, *good, better, best.*

108. **γάρ**, *for.*

109. **ἀρχαῖος**, -ᾱ, -ον (in the beginning, see 22), *old, ancient*; **τὸ ἀρχαῖον**, *formerly.*

110. **ἐκ, ἐξ**, with gen., *out of, from.*

111. **δίδωμι, δώσω** (H. 350; G. 123, 3), *to give.*

112. **τότε**, *then.*

113. **ἀφ-ίστημι**, ἀπο-στήσω (H. 351, G. 123, 3), to make to stand away, *remove*; mid., with pf. and 2 aor. act., intrans., *stand aloof, revolt.*

114. **πλήν**, *except.*

115. **προ-αισθάνομαι**, 2 aor. προ-ησθόμην, *to perceive beforehand.*

116. **οὗτος**, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this*, contrast **αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό**, *self, same, him*, etc.

Digitized by Google

117. **ὁ μέν . . . ὁ δέ**, *the one . . . the other;* plur. *these . . . those; some . . . others.*
118. **ἀπο-κτείνω**, **-κτενῶ**, **ἀπ-έκτεινα**, *to kill.*
119. **ἐκ-βάλλω**, **ἐκ-βαλῶ**, 2 aor. **ἐξ-έβαλον**, *throw out, expel.* See 45.
120. **ὑπο-λαμβάνω**, 2 aor. **ὑπ-έλαβον**, *to take under one's protection.* See 35, 51.
121. **φεύγω**. 2 aor. **ἔφυγον**, *to flee, be in exile.*
122. **συλ-λέγω**, **-ξω**, **συν-έλεξα**, *to collect.*
123. **στράτευμα**, **-ατος**, **τό**, *army.*
124. **πολιορκέω**, **-ήσω**, *besiege.*
125. **κατά**, *down;* with gen. *down from;* with acc. *down along, according to, by.*
126. **γῆ**, **γῆς**, *earth, land.*
127. **θάλαττα**, **-ης**, *sea.*
128. **πειράομαι**, *to attempt.*
129. **κατ-άγειν**, *to lead back, restore.*
130. **ἐκ-πίπτω**, pf. **ἐκ-πέπτωκα**, *to fall out, be driven out,* **οἱ ἐκ-πεπτωκότες**, *the exiles.*
131. **αὖ**, *again.*
132. **ἄλλος**, **-η**, **-ο**, *another.*
133. **πρόφασις**, **-εως**, **ἡ**, *pretext.*
134. **πέμπω**, **-ψω**, *to send.* See 20, 55.
135. **ἀξιόω**, impf. **ἠξίουν**, fut. **-ώσω**, *to deem worthy, demand* (as deserved).
136. **οὗ**, **οἷ**, **ἕ**, *himself.* See H. 677, *a*, G. 144, 2.
137. **ἄρχω**, impf. **ἦρχον**; fut. **-ξω**, *to begin* (mid.); *to rule* (act.). See 22.
138. **συμ-πράττω**, **-ἄξω**, *to do* (something) *with* (another), *co-operate with.*
139. **ἐπιβουλή**, **-ῆς**, *plot.* See 48.
140. **οὐ**, **οὐκ** or **οὐχ**, *not.* H. 88. G. 13, 2.
141. **αἰσθάνομαι**, impf. **ᾐσθανόμην**, 2 aor. **ᾐσθόμην**, *to perceive.* See 115.
142. **νομίζω**, fut. **-ιῶ** (to regard as custom, see 323), *think, suppose.*
143. **ἀμφί**, *about.*
144. **δαπανάω**, **-ήσω**, *to spend* (money).
145. **οὐδείς**, **οὐδεμία**, **οὐδέν**, *no one, nothing.*
146. **ἄχθομαι**, *to be vexed.*
147. **δασμός**, **-οῦ**, *revenue.*
148. **κατ-αντιπέρᾱς**, adv. with gen., *opposite.*
149. **ὅδε**, **ἥδε**, **τόδε**, *this, the following.*
150. **τρόπος**, **-ου**, *turn, manner.*
151. **φυγάς**, **-άδος**, *fugitive, exile.* See 121.
152. **συγ-γίγνομαι**, impf. **συν-εγι-γνόμην**, 2 aor. **συν-εγενόμην**, *to become* (see 2) *with, become acquainted with, be with.*
153. **ἄγαμαι**, 1 aor. pass. **ἠγάσθην**, *to admire.*
154. **μύριοι**, **-αι**, **-α**, *ten thousand.*
155. **δᾱρεικός**, **-οῦ**, *a daric* ($3.60).
156. **χρῦσίον**, **-ου**, *money;* **χρῦσός**, **-οῦ**, *gold.*

Digitized by Google

157. **χρῆμα**, -ατος, τό, *a thing* used; chief. plur., *goods, money.*
158. **ὁρμάω**, impf. ὥρμων, -ήσω, *set out, hasten.*
159. **ὑπέρ**, with gen., *over, in behalf of;* with acc., *over, beyond.*
160. **οἰκέω**, impf. ᾤκουν, fut. -ήσω, *dwell, inhabit.*
161. **ὠφελέω**, -ήσω, *aid, assist.*
162. **συμ-βάλλω**, *to throw* or *bring together;* mid. *contribute.* See 45, 119.
163. **τροφή**, -ῆς, *nourishment, support.*
164. **στρατιώτης**, -ου, *soldier.*
165. **ἑκών**, -οῦσα, -όν, *voluntary.*
166. **τρέφω**, *to nourish, support.* See 163.
167. **λανθάνω**, 2 aor. ἔλαθον, *to escape notice;* often = *secretly.*
168. **ξένος**, -ου, a *foreigner* who became *a guest-friend* to some one or entered military service abroad, *a mercenary.*
169. **πιέζω**, *to press, oppress.*
170. **ὑπό**, *under* (dat or acc.); *by* (gen.).
171. **οἴκοι**, *at home.* H. 220, G. 190, n. 2.
172. **ἀντι-στασιώτης**, -ου, *member of a στάσις* or *faction, an opponent.*
173. **ἔρχομαι**, 2 aor. ἦλθον, *to go, come.*
174. **αἰτέω**, impf. ᾔτουν, fut. -ήσω, *ask, demand.*
175. **δισχίλιοι**, -αι, -α, *two thousand.*
176. **τρεῖς**, τρία, gen. τριῶν, *three.*
177. **μήν**, μηνός, ὁ, *month.*
178. **μισθός**, -οῦ, *pay.*
179. **περι-γίγνομαι**, 2 aor. περι-εγενόμην, *become above, overcome.* See 2, 152.
180. **ἄν**, postpos. particle. See H. 857; G. 207.
181. **τετρακισχίλιοι**, -αι, -α, *four thousand.*
182. **ἕξ**, *six.*
183. **δέομαι**, δεήσομαι, *to want.*
184. **μή**, *not.* See H. 1018, G. 283.
185. **πρόσθεν**, *before, formerly;* π. . . . πρίν, *before that.*
186. **κατα-λύω**, *dis-solve, to end* (esp. a war).
187. **πρίν**, *before.* See 185.
188. **συμ-βουλεύω**, *advise.* See 61.
189. **κελεύω**, -εύσω, *order.*
190. **παρα-γίγνομαι**, impf. παρ-εγιγνόμην, 2 aor. παρ-εγενόμην, *to come to, arrive.* See 2, 152, 179.
191. **στρατεύομαι**, *engage in war, make an expedition.*
192. **πρᾶγμα**, -ατος, τό, *deed, affair;* pl. *affairs, business; trouble.*
193. **παρ-έχω**, impf. παρ-εῖχον, *to furnish.* See 38.
194. **χώρᾱ**, -ᾱς, *country, land.*
195. **σύν**, with dat., *with.*

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER II.

196. **δοκέω**, δόξω, ἔδοξα, *to think; seem, seem good.*
197. **ἤδη**, *already, now.*
198. **πορεύομαι**, -εύσομαι, pass. dep., *to proceed.*
199. **ἄνω**, -τέρω, -τάτω, *up, upwards.*
200. **παντά-πᾶσι(ν)**, *altogether, wholly.*
201. **βαρβαρικός**, -ή, -όν, *barbarian, foreign.*
202. **ἐνταῦθα**, *there.*
203. **ἥκω**, *to come, arrive.* H. 827, G. 200, n. 3.
204. **συν-αλλάττω**, -άξω, *to change* (and bring) *together, to reconcile.*
205. **προ-ίστημι**, -στήσω, -έστησα, trans. *to set before* or *over;* intrans. *to set over, command:* 2 aor. -έστην, -έστηκα.
206. **ξενικός**, -ή, -όν, *mercenary.*
207. **ἀκρό-πολις**, -εως, ἡ, *acropolis, citadel.*
208. **φυλάττω**, -άξω, *to guard.*
209. **καλέω**, ἑσω. ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, *call, summon.*
210. **ὑπ-ισχνέομαι**, 2 aor. ὑπ-εσχόμην, *to promise.*
211. **εἰ**, *if.*
212. **καλῶς**, *honorably, well.*
213. **κατα-πράττω**, -ξω, *to do effectually, accomplish.*
214. **παύω**, παύσω, ἔπαυσα, *make to cease;* mid. *to cease, pause.*
215. **οἴκα-δε**, *homeward.* H. 217, G. 61.
216. **ἡδέως**, ἥδιον, ἥδιστα, *pleasantly, gladly.*
217. **πιστεύω**, -εύσω, *trust, believe.*
218. **ὅπλον**, -ου, usually pl. *armor.*
219. **πεντακόσιοι**, -αι, -α, *five hundred.*
220. **χίλιοι**, -αι, -α, *a thousand.*
221. **γυμνής**, -ῆτος, *light-armed soldier.*
222. **πελταστής**, -οῦ, *peltast.* See 1268.
223. **κατα-νοέω**, *observe* carefully. See 821.
224. **μέγας**, μεγάλη, μέγα; μείζων (H. 68, G. 16, 7 (*b*)); μέγιστος, *great.*
225. **ἡγέομαι**, -ήσομαι, *lead, consider* (*cf.* L. **duco**).
226. **παρα-σκευή**, -ῆς, *preparation.*
227. **ᾗ** (sc. ὁδῷ, *in which way*), *as.*
228. **ταχύς**, -εῖα, -ύ; θάττων (H. 74, G. 17, 2, n. at end); τάχιστος *quick.*
229. **ἱππεύς**, -έως, *horseman.*
230. **ἀκούω**, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, *to hear.*
231. **στόλος**, -ου, *expedition.*
232. **ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζομαι**, *to prepare against* or *in turn.* See 226.
233. **φημί** fut. ἐρῶ (IV., **8**), 2 aor. εἶπον (III. **7**), pf. εἴρηκα, *say;* οὔ φημι, *deny, refuse.*

Digitized by Google

234. **ἐξ-ελαύνω**, fut. **ἐξ-ελῶ**, **ἐξ-ήλασα**, *to march.*
235. **διά**, with gen. *through;* with acc. *on account of.*
236. **σταθμός**, **-οῦ**, *station, day's march.*
237. **παρασάγγης**, **-ου** (Persian), *parasang, league.*
238. **εἴκοσι(ν)**, *twenty.*
239. **ποταμός**, **-οῦ** *river.*
240. **εὖρος**, **-ους**. **τό**, *breadth, width.*
241. **πλέθρον**, **-ου**, *plethron* (101 ft.).
242. **γέφῡρα**, **-ᾱς**, *bridge.*
243. **ἔπ-ειμι**, impf. **ἐπ-ῆν**, *to be upon.*
244. **ζεύγ-νῡμι**, **ζεύξω** **ἔζευξα**, **ἔζευγ-μαι** (L. **ju(n)g o**), *to* YOKE, *join together.*
245. **πλοῖον**, **-ου**, *boat.*
246. **ἑπτά**, *seven.*
247. **δια-βαίνω**, 2 aor. **δι-έβην**, *go through, cross.*
248. **εἷς** **μίᾱ**, **ἕν**, gen. **ἑνός**, *one.*
249. **ὀκτώ**, *eight.*
250. **εὐδαίμων**, **-ον**, gen **-ονος**, *prosperous.*
251. **μένω** **μενῶ**, **ἔμεινα**, *to remain.*
252. **ἡμέρα**, **-ᾱς**, *day.*
253. **ἐντεῦθ-ν**, *thence.*
254. **βασίλεια**, **-ων**, plur. of adj. (see 80), *royal palace.*
255. **παράδεισος**, **-ου**, *park;* deriv. PARADISE.
256. **ἄγριος**, **-ᾱ**, **-ον**, *wild;* fr. **ἀγρός**, **-οῦ** (L. **ager**), *field, country.*
257. **θηρίον**, **-ου**, dim. (in form only) of **θήρ**, **θηρός**, *a wild animal.*
258. **πλήρης**, **-ες**, gen. **-ους**, *full.*
259. **θηρεύω**, **-εύσω**, *hunt, catch.* See 257.
260. **ἵππος**, **-ου**, *horse.* See 229.
261. **ὁπότε**, *when, whenever.*
262. **γυμνάζω**, **-άσω**, *to train* (see 1243), *exercise.*
263. **μέσος**, **-η**, **-ον**, *middle;* **τὸ μέσον**, *centre* (= **μεδ-yos**, L. **med-ius**).
264. **ῥέω**, **ῥεύσομαι**, 2 aor. **ἐ-ρ-ρύην**, *to flow.*
265. **πηγή**, **-ῆς** *fountain, source,* chief. in plur.
266. **ἐρυμνός**, **-ή** **-όν**, *fortified;* from **ἐρύομαι**, *to defend.*
267. **ἐμ-βάλλω**, **-βαλῶ**, 2 aor. **ἐν-έβαλον**, *to throw into;* of a river, *to empty.*
268. **πέντε**, *five.*
269. **πούς**, **ποδός** **ὁ** (L. **pe(d)s**), FOOT.
270. **λέγω**, **λέξω**, **ἔλεξα**, *to say, speak.*
271. **ἐκ-δέρω**, **-δερῶ**, **ἐξ-έδειρα**, *to skin* (*off*, **ἐκ**), *flay.*
272. **νικάω**, **-ήσω**, *to conquer.*
273. **ἐρίζω**, **-ίσω** (**ἔρις**, **-ιδος**, *strife*), *strive with.*
274. **περί**, with gen., *about* = *concerning;* dat. and acc. *around, about.*
275. **σοφίᾱ**, **-ᾱς**, *skill, wisdom.*
276. **δέρμα**, **-ατος**, **τό**, *skin.* See 271.
277. **κρεμά-ννῡμι**, **κρεμάσω**, **ἐκρέμασα**, *to hang* (trans.).
278 **ἄντρον**, **ου**, *cave;* L. **antrum.**
279. **ὅθεν**, *whence, where.*
280. **ὅτε**, *when.*

Digitized by Google

281. **ἡττάομαι**, pass. dep. *ἡττηθήσομαι*, pf. *ἧττημαι*, *ἡττήθην*, *to be ἧττων* (comp. of *κακός*), *inferior, worsted, defeated.*

282. **μάχη**, -ης, *battle.*

283. **ἀπο-χωρέω**, -ήσω, *withdraw, retreat.*

284. **οἰκο-δομέω**, -ήσω, *ᾠκοδόμησα*, *to build.*

285. **τριάκοντα**, *thirty.*

286. **ὀκτακόσιοι**, -αι, -α, *eight hundred.*

287. **τοξότης**, -ου, *a bowman; τόξον*, -ου, *a bow.*

288. **διακόσιοι**, -αι, -α, *two hundred.*

289. **ἅμα**, *at the same time; with*, with dat.

290. **ἐξ-έτασις**, -εως, ἡ, *inspection* (*ἐξ ετάζω, to inspect*).

291. **ἀριθμός**, -οῦ, *number, numbering.*

292. **σύμ-πᾶς**, *σύμ-πᾶσα*, *σύμ-πᾶν*, *all together, all in a body; τὸ σύμ πᾶν, on the whole.* See V. 9.

293 **δέκα**, *ten.*

294. **θύω**, *θύσω*, *ἔθῡσα*, *sacrifice.*

295. **ἀγών**, -ῶνος, ὁ *contest.*

296. **τίθημι**, *θήσω ἔθηκα*, *put, place; institute: τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, to stack arms, stand under arms.*

297. **ἆθλον**, -ου, *prize.*

298. **στλεγγίς**, ίδος, ἡ *flesh-scraper* or *comb.*

299. **χρῡσοῦς**, -ῆ, -οῦν, *golden; χρῡσός*, -οῦ, *gold.*

300. **θεωρέω**, -ήσω, *to view, inspect.*

301. **δώδεκα**, *twelve.*

302. **ἀγορά**, ᾶς, *market-place, market.*

303. **ἔσχατος**, -η, -ον, *last, farthest.*

304. **ὀφείλω**, *ὀφειλήσω*, *ὠφείλησα*, *to owe.*

305. **πολλάκις**, *often.* See 106.

306. **εἶμι**, impf. *ᾖα* or *ᾔειν*, inf. *ἰέναι*, part. *ἰών*, *to go.* II. 477, *a*; G. 127, II., N. 2.

307. **θύρᾱ**, -ᾶς, *door, gate.*

308. **ἀπ-αιτέω**, -ήσω, *ἀπ-ήτησα*, *demand back.*

309. **ἐλπίς**, -ίδος, ἡ, *hope, promise.*

310. **δι-άγω**, -άξω, *lead through;* of time, *continue.*

311. **δῆλος**, -η, -ον, *evident.*

312. **ἀνιάω**, *ἀσω*, *to grieve;* fr. *ἀνίᾱ*, -ᾶς, *grief.*

313. **ἀπο-δίδωμι**, -δώσω, *ἀπ-έδωκα*, *to give back, to pay.* See 109.

314. **γυνή**, -αικός, ἡ. *woman, wife.*

315. **στρατιά**, -ᾶς, *army.*

316. **τέτταρες**, -α; gen. -ων, *four.*

317. **φύλαξ**, -ακος, *guard.*

318. **ὁδός**, -οῦ, ἡ, *way, road.*

319. **κρήνη**, -ης, *spring, fountain.*

320. **οἶνος**, ου, for *Foῖνος*, L. **vinum**, WINE.

321. **κεράννῡμι**, *κεράσω*, *ἐκέρασα*, *to mix, mingle.*

322. **ἐπι-δείκνῡμι**, -δείξω, *ἐπ-έδειξα*, *to show forth, exhibit.* See 28.

323. **νόμος**, -ου, *law, custom.*

324. **τάττω**, *τάξω*, *ἔταξα*, *to arrange, order.*

325. **ἵστημι**, *στήσω*, *ἔστησα*, trans., *to make to stand* (*station, halt*, etc.); 2 aor. *ἔστην*, pf. *ἕστηκα*, plupf. *ἑστήκειν* (or

Digitized by Google

εἰσ-), intrans., *to stand.* See 113.

326. **συν-τάττω**, **-ξω**, *to arrange together, draw up.* See 324.

327. **δεξιός**, **ά**, **όν**, *right;* **ἐν δεξιᾷ**, *on the right.*

328. **εὐώνυμος**, **-ον**, *left.*

329. **πρῶτος**, **-η**, **-ον**, *first;* **πρῶτον**, adv., *first, at first.*

330. **παρ-ελαύνω**, **-ελῶ**, **-ήλασα**, *to ride along.*

331. **ἴλη**, **-ης**, *troop* (of horse).

332. **τάξις**, **-εως**, **ἡ**, *order* (esp. in milit. sense, *array, rank; company*, etc.). See 324.

333. **εἶτα**, *then.*

334. **ἅρμα**, **-ατος**, **τό**, *chariot.*

335. **ἁρμ-άμαξα**, **-ης**, *carriage* (covered).

336. **κράνος**, **-ους**, **τό**, *helmet.*

337. **χαλκοῦς**, **-ῆ**, **-οῦν**, *copper, bronze.*

338. **χιτών**, **-ῶνος**, **ὁ**, *tunic.*

339. **φοινικοῦς**, **-ῆ**, **-οῦν**, *purple* (*cf.* **Φοίνικες**, *Phoenicians*, first to discover its use).

340. **κνημίς**, **-ίδος**, **ἡ**, *a greave.*

341. **ἀσπίς**, **-ίδος**, **ἡ**, *shield.*

342. **ἐκ-καλύπτω**, **-ψω**, *to uncover.*

343. **ἐπειδή**, *when, since;* stronger than **ἐπεί**. See 72.

344. **πρό**, with gen., *before; in behalf of.*

345. **φάλαγξ**, **-αγγος**, **ἡ**, *phalanx.*

346. **ἑρμηνεύς**, **-έως**, **ὁ** *interpreter.*

347. **προ-βάλλω**, **-βαλῶ**, 2 aor. **-έβαλον**, *to throw before;* mid., of arms, *to present.* See 45.

348. **ἐπι-χωρέω**, **-ήσω**, *to advance.* See 283.

349. **ὅλος**, **-η**, **-ον**, *whole, all.*

350. **προ-εῖπον**, 2 aor. of **προ-λέγω**, *to speak forth, proclaim.*

351. **σαλπίζω**, **-ιγξω ἐσάλπιγξα**, *to sound the* **σάλπιγξ** or *trumpet.*

352. **ἔπ-ειμι**, impf. **ἐπ-ήειν**, *to go* (or *come*) *on, forward* or *against.* See 306.

353. **πρό-ειμι**, *to go forward.*

354. **κραυγή**, **-ῆς**, *shout.*

355. **αὐτόματος**, **-ον**, *of one's own accord*, deriv. AUTOMATON.

356. **δρόμος**, **-ου**, *a running.*

357. **σκηνή**, **-ῆς**, *a tent.*

358. **φόβος** **-ου**, *fear.*

359. **κατα-λείπω**, **-ψω**, 2 aor. **κατ-έλιπον**, *to leave behind, leave.*

360. **ὤνια**, **-ων**, **τά**, *wares.* See 767.

361. **γέλως**, **-ωτος**, **ὁ**, *laughter.*

362. **ὁράω**, impf. **ἑώρων**, fut. **ὄψομαι**, 2 aor. **εἶδον**, *to see.*

363. **λαμπρότης**, **-ητος**, **ἡ**, *splendor* (fr. adj. **λαμπρός**, *bright*).

364. **θαυμάζω**, **άσω**, *to wonder at, admire.*

365. **ἥδομαι**, pass. dep., **ἡσθήσομαι**, **ἥσθην**, *to be pleased.*

366. **ἐπι-τρέπω**, **-ψω**, **-έτρεψα**, *turn over to, entrust, permit.*

367. **δι-αρπάζω**, **-άσομαι**, *to plunder* (thoroughly).

368. **πολέμιος**, **-ᾱ**, **-ον**, *hostile;* **οἱ πολ.**, *the enemy.*

369. **συμ-πέμπω**, **-ψω**, *to send with.*

Digitized by Google

370. **φοινικιστής**, -οῦ. *purple-wearer* (see 339), *courtier* (rare).
371. **βασίλειος**, -α, -ον, *royal*. See 80.
372. **ἕτερος**, -ᾱ, -ον, *other* (of two)
373. **τις, τι**, *some* or *any one, a certain*.
374. **ὑπ-αρχος**, -ου, *an under commander, lieutenant*.
375. **δυνάστης**, -ου, *powerful man, chief*. See 68.
376. **αἰτιάομαι, ἀσομαι**, *to accuse*.
377. **εἰσ-βάλλω**, *to throw into*· of an army, *to enter*; of a river, *to empty*.
378. **εἰσ-βολή**, -ῆς, *entrance*.
379. **ἁμαξιτός**, -όν, *for* or *belonging to a wagon*. See 787.
380. **ὄρθιος**, -ᾱ, -ον, *steep*.
381. **ἰσχυρῶς**, *mightily*, = *very* as in colloq. Eng.
382. **ἀμήχανος**, -ον, *impracticable*.
383. **εἰσ-έρχομαι**, 2 aor. **εἰσ-ῆλθον**, *to go into, enter*. See 58.
384. **κωλύω**, -ύσω, *to hinder*.
385. **ἄκρος**, -ᾱ, -ον, *highest*; **τὰ ἄκρα**, *the heights*.
386. **διό** (= **δι' ὅ**), *wherefore*.
387. **ὑστεραῖος**, -ᾱ, -ον, *following*; **τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ**, *on the following day*.
388. **ἄγγελος**, -ου, *messenger*.
389. **λείπω**, -ψω, 2 aor. **ἔλιπον**, *to leave*.
390. **εἴσω**, *within*; **τὸ εἴσω**, *the inner*.
391. **ὄρος**, -ους, **τό**, *mountain*.
392. **τριήρης**, -ες; gen. -ους, *trireme*.
393. **περι-πλέω**, -πλεύσομαι, *to sail around*.
394. **οὗ**, *where*.
395. **κατα-βαίνω**, 2 aor. **κατ-έβην**, *to go down, descend*. See 34.
396. **καλός**, -ή, -όν; **καλλίων, κάλλιστος**, *beautiful*.
397. **ἐπί-ρ-ρυτος**, -ον, *overflowed* (see 264), *well-watered*.
398. **δένδρον**, -ου, *tree*.
399. **παντοδαπός**, -ή, -όν, *of every kind*.
400. **σύμ-πλεως**, -ων (all) together *full of, quite full of*.
401. **ἄμπελος**, -ου, ἡ, *vine*.
402. **σήσαμον**, -ου, *sesame* (rare).
403. **μελίνη**, -ης, *panic*, kind of *millet* (rare).
404. **κέγχρος**, -ου, *millet* (rare).
405. **πῦρός**, -οῦ, *wheat*, usu. plur.
406. **κριθή**, -ῆς, *barley*.
407. **φέρω**, fut. **οἴσω**, *to bear, carry*.
408. **περι-έχω**, *to hold* (its way) *round, surround*.
409. **ὀχυρός**, -ά, -όν (tenable, from **ἔχ-ω**), *strong*.
410. **ὑψηλός**, -ή, -όν, *lofty*.
411. **πάντῃ**, *on every side*.
412. **ἐλαύνω**, fut. **ἐλῶ, ἤλασα**, *drive, ride*. See 234.
413. **ὄνομα**, -ατος, **τό**, *name*.
414. **ἐκ-λείπω**, -ψω, 2 aor. **ἐξ-έλιπον** *to leave out, behind, desert*. See 389.
415. **ἐν-οικέω**, -ήσω, **ἐν-ῴκησα**, *to inhabit*.
416. **μετά**, with gen, *with*; with acc. *after*; **μ. ταῦτα**, *after this*.

Digitized by Google

417. **χωρίον**, -ου, *place*, esp. *a stronghold*.
418. **καπηλεῖον**, -ου, *shop, inn*.
419. **πρότερος**, -ᾱ, -ον (comp. of *πρό*, see 344), *before, sooner*.
420. **ὑπερ-βολή**, -ῆς, *crossing over*, *cf.* 378.
421. **λόχος**, -ου, *company* (of 100 men).
422. **ἀπ-όλλῡμι**, fut. -ολέσω or -ολῶ, -ώλεσα, *to destroy*; pass. *to perish*.
423. **ἁρπάζω**, -άσομαι, *to seize, plunder*. See 367.
424. **κατα-κόπτω**, -ψω, 2 aor. pass. *κατ-εκόπην*, *to cut down* or *in pieces*.
425. **ὑπο-λείπω**, -ψω, 2 aor -έλιπον, *to leave behind*. See 414.
426. **εὑρίσκω**, εὑρήσω, 2 aor. ἔῡρον, *to find*.
427. **οὐδέ**, *nor, not even*.
428. **πλανάομαι**, -ήσομαι, *to wander*.
429. **ἑκατόν**, *a hundred*.
430. **ὄλεθρος**, -ου, *destruction*. See 422.
431. **συ-στρατιώτης**, -ου, *fellow-soldier*.
432. **ὀργίζομαι**, fut. ισῦμαι, *to be angry*. See 790.
433. **εἰσ-ελαύνω**, *to rude* or *march into*. See 412.
434. **οὔτε**, *nor*; οὔτε . . . οὔτε, *neither . . . nor*.
435. **πώ**, *yet*.
436. **κρείττων**, -ον, *better, stronger*, comp. of *ἀγαθός*. See 107.
437. **χείρ**, χειρός, ἡ, *hand*.
438. **ἐθέλω**, less often *θέλω*, fut. *ἐθελήσω*, *to be willing, to wish*.
439. **πίστις**, -εως, ἡ, *faith, fidelity; pledge*.
440. **ἀλλήλων**, -οις, *each other*.
441. **δῶρον**, -ου, *gift*.
442. **τίμιος**, -α, -ον, *honorable, honored*.
443. **χρῡσο-χάλινος**, -ον, *with gold-(studded) bridle*.
444. **στρεπτός**, -ή, -όν, *twisted*; as subs. *necklace*.
445. **ψέλιον**, -ου, *bracelet*.
446. **ἀκινάκης**, -ου (Persian), *short-sword*.
447. **στολή**, -ῆς, *robe*.
448. **μηκέτι**, *no longer* (with subj., imper., etc.).
449. **ἁφ-αρπάζω**, -άσομαι, *to plunder from*. See 423, 367.
450. **ἀνδράποδον**, -ου, *slave*.
451. **πού**, indef., *somewhere, anywhere*. (*ποῦ, where?*).
452. **ἐν-τυγχάνω**, 2 aor. *ἐν-έτυχον*, *to happen upon, fall in with*. See 19.
453. **ἀπο-λαμβάνω**, fut. ἀπο-λήψομαι, 2 aor. *ἀπ-έλαβον*, *to receive from* or *back*. See 35.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER III.

451. **πρόσω** or **πόρρω** (III. **12**), *forward, further*, so **εἰς τὸ π.**; with gen. *far from* (III. **12**).
455. **μισθόω, -ώσω**, *to hire.*
456. **βιάζομαι, -άσομαι**, mid. dep., *to force.*
457. **βάλλω**, βαλῶ, 2 aor. **ἔβαλον**, *to throw, hit.*
458. **ὑπο-ζύγιον, -ου** [ζυγόν, YOKE], *beast of burden.*
459. **μικρός, -ά, -όν**, *little, small.*
460. **ἐκ-φεύγω**, 2 aor. **ἐξ ἔφυγον**, *to flee out* or *away, escape.* See 121.
461. **κατα-πετρόω, -ώσω**, *to stone* (down) *to death.*
462. **ὕστερον**, *afterwards*, adj. **ὕστερος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *after, later.*
463. **γιγνώσκω**, 2 aor. **ἔγνων**, *to know.*
464. **συν-άγω**, 2 aor. **συν-ήγαγον**, *bring together, collect.* See 129.
465. **ἐκ-κλησίᾱ, -ᾱς**, *assembly.* See 209.
466. **δακρύω, -ύσω**, *to weep.*
467. **χρόνος, -ου**, *time.*
468. **σιωπάω, -ήσομαι**, *to be silent.*
469. **τοιόσδε, -άδε, -όνδε**, *such*; **τοιάδε**, *such as follows.*
470. **χαλεπῶς**, *hardly, angrily.*
471. **ἐγώ**, gen. **ἐμοῦ**, *I.*
472. **πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ**, *father-land.*
473. **τιμάω, -ήσω**, *to honor.*
474. **ἴδιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *own, private.*
475. **κατα-τίθημι, -θήσω**, *to put down* or *away.* See 296.
476. **καθ-ηδυ-παθέω, -ήσω**, *to squander in luxury* (rare).
477. **ὑμεῖς**, gen. **ὑμῶν**, *you* (plur.).
478. **τιμωρέω, -ήσω**, *to avenge*; mid. *avenge one's self on, punish.*
479 **ἀφ-αιρέω**, *take from, deprive.*
480. **ἵνα**, *in order that, that.*
481. **εὖ**, *well.*
482. **πάσχω, πείσομαι**, 2 aor. **ἔπαθον**, *to suffer*; **εὖ** (or **κακῶς**) **π. ὑπὸ —**, *to be well* (or *ill*) *treated by*
483. **συμ-πορεύομαι**, *proceed with.*
484. **ἀνάγκη, -ης**, *necessity*; with or without **ἐστί**, *it is necessary.*
485. **προ-δίδωμι**, 2 aor. **προ-έδωκα**, *give up, betray.* See 111.
486. **φιλίᾱ, -ᾱς**, *friendship.*
487. **χράομαι, -ήσομαι**, mid. dep. *to use*, with dat.
488. **ψεύδω, ψεύσω**, *to deceive* (by lies); mid. *lie, be false.*
489. **δίκαιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *just.*
490. **οἶδα**, subj. **εἰδῶ**, opt. **εἰδείην**, imper. **ἴσθι**, inf. **εἰδέναι**, pt. **εἰδώς**, 2 plpf. **ᾔδειν**, *to know.*
491. **αἱρέω, -ήσω**, 2 aor. **εἷλον**, *to take*; mid. *to choose.* See 479.
492. **οὔποτε**, *never.* See 63.
493. **ἄγω, ἄξω**, 2 aor. **ἤγαγον**, *to lead, carry.* See 464.

Digitized by Google

494. **ἕπομαι**, impf. **εἱπόμην**, *to follow*, with dat.
495. **σύμ-μαχος**, **-ου**, *ally*. See 282.
496. **οἴομαι** or **οἶμαι**, **οἰήσομαι**, **ᾠήθην**, *to think*.
497. **ὅπου**, *where*; **ὅ. ἄν**, *wherever* (with subj.).
498. **ἔρημος**, **-ον**, *barren, desert*; with gen. *deprived of, without*.
499. **ἐχθρός**, **-ά**, **-όν**, *hostile*: as subs. *enemy*.
500. **ἀλέξω**, **ἀλέξομαι**, **ἠλεξάμην**, *to ward off*: mid. *requite*.
501. **ὅπῃ**, *where, whither*; **ὅ. ἄν**, *wherever* (with subj.).
502. **γνώμη**, **-ης**, *judgment, opinion*. See 463.
503. **σκευοφόρος**, **-ον**, *baggage animals*; plur. usu. *baggage*.
504. **στρατοπεδεύομαι**, **-εύσομαι**, *to encamp*.
505. **ἀπορέω**, **-ήσω**, *to be at a loss*.
506. **λυπέω**, **-ήσω**, *to pain, grieve*.
507. **λάθρᾳ**, *secretly, without the knowledge of*.
508. **θαρρέω**, **-ήσω**, *be courageous*.
509. **δεῖ**, **δέῃ**, **δέοι**, **δεῖν**, part. **δέον**, *it is necessary, there is need*.
510. **προσ-έρχομαι**, 2 aor. **προσ-ῆλθον**, *to come to*. See 383.
511. **ὥσπερ**, *just as, as*.
512. **ἡμέτερος**, **-ᾱ**, **-ον**, *our, ours*.
513. **γέ**, encl. part., *at least*; often best translated by emphasis on the word before it.
514. **συν-έπομαι**, *to follow with, accompany*. See 494.
515. **μισθο-δότης**, **-ου**, *paymaster*. See 178 and 111.
516. **μέντοι**, *indeed, yet, however*.
517. **ἀδικέω**, **-ήσω**, *to be unjust, injure*.
518. **αἰσχύνω**, *to shame*; pass. *be ashamed*.
519. **σύν-οιδα**, 2 pf. *am conscious*.
520. **ἐμαυτοῦ**, *of myself*.
521. **ἔπειτα**, *thereupon, next, moreover*.
522. **δείδω**, epic pres., whence **ἔδεισα**, **δέδοικα**, and 2 pf. **δέδια**, with pres. sense, *to fear*.
523. **δίκη**, **-ης**, *justice, punishment*.
524. **ἐπι-τίθημι**, *put upon*; **ἐ. δίκην**, *inflict punishment*.
525. **ὥρᾱ**, **-ᾱς**, *time, season*.
526. **καθ-εύδω**, *to sleep*.
527. **ἀμελέω**, **-ήσω**, *to be careless, neglect*. Cf. 86.
528. **χρή**, inf. **χρῆναι** *it is necessary, one must*.
529. **ἕως**, *while, until*.
530. **αὐτοῦ**, gen. of place, *here*.
531. **σκεπτέος**, **-ᾱ** **-ον**, verb. adj., *to be considered*.
532. **ἀσφαλῶς**, **-έστερον**, **-έστατα**, *safely*.
533. **ἄπ-ειμι**, *to go away*. See 306.
534. **ἐπιτήδειος**, **-ᾱ** **-ον**, *suitable*; **τὰ ἐ.** *provisions*.
535. **ἄνευ**, prep. with gen., *without*.
536. **ἰδιώτης**, **-ου** *a private person*. See 474.
537. **ὄφελος**, **τό**, *profit*.
538. **ἄξιος**, **-ᾱ**, **-ον**, *worth, worthy*. See 135.

Digitized by Google

539. **χαλεπός**, -ή, -όν, HARD, *difficult, harsh.* See 470.

540. **πεζός**, -ή, -όν, *foot-*; **οἱ π.** *infantry*; **πεζῇ**, *on foot* (IV. **18**).

541. **ἱππικός**, -ή, -όν, *pertaining to a horse; cavalry.* See 260.

542. **ναυτικός**, -ή, -όν, *naval.*

543. **ὁμοίως**, *in like manner.*

544. **ἐπίσταμαι**, *to know, understand.*

545. **κάθ-ημαι**, *sit down, be encamped.*

546. **ἄριστος**, -η, -ον, *best.* See 107.

547. **ἀν-ίστημι**, -ίστην, ἀνα στήσω, -έστησα, trans. *to raise up*; 2 aor. -έστην, -έστηκα and mid. intrans., *to rise up, stand.* See 325.

548. **ἐγ-κέλευστος**, -ον, *urged on.* See 189.

549. **οἷος**, -ᾱ, -ον, *of what sort*; **τοιόσδε** or **τοιοῦτος** *such*, **οἷος** *as.*

550. **ἀπορίᾱ**, -ᾱς, *difficulty.* See 505.

551. **προσ-ποιέομαι**, *to make* or *claim for one's self, pretend.* See 26.

552. **σπεύδω**, σπεύσω, *to hasten.*

553. **ἀπ-άγω**, *to lead back* or *away.* See 464, 493.

554. **ἀγοράζω**, -άσω, *to buy.* See 302.

555. **συ-σκευάζω**, *to make ready* (by putting) *together, to pack up.* See 232.

556. **ἀπο-πλέω**, -πλεύσομαι, *to sail away.*

557. **ἡγεμών**, -όνος, *leader.*

558. **φίλιος**, -ᾱ, -ον, *friendly.*

559. **μήδε**, *nor, not even* (with subj., imper., etc., H. 1018, G. 283).

560. **προ-κατα-λαμβάνω**, -λήψομαι, *to seize beforehand.* See 35.

561. **φθάνω**, φθάσω, ἔφθασα, *to be first, anticipate.*

562. **μήτε . . . μήτε**, *neither . . . nor.* See 559.

563. **κατα-λαμβάνω**, 2 aor. -έλαβον, *to seize.*

564. **ἀν-αρπάζω**, -άσω, *snatch up, carry off.* See 423.

565. **τοιοῦτος**, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο, *such* (as precedes).

566. **τοσοῦτος**, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο, *so much, so great*; (in plur.) *so many.*

567. **στρατηγέω**, -ήσω, *to be general, command.* See 27.

568. **στρατηγίᾱ**, -ᾱς, *generalship, command; military plan.*

569. **μηδείς**, μηδεμίᾱ, μηδέν, *no, no one, none* (with subj., imper., etc.).

570. **ἐν-οράω**, ἐν ὄψομαι, *to see in* or *therein.* See 362.

571. **ποιητέος**, -ᾱ, -ον, verb. adj., *to be made* or *done.* See 26.

572. **δυνατός**, -ή, -όν, *able, possible.* See 68.

573. **ἄνθρωπος**, -ου, *man.* See 103.

574. **εὐ-ήθεια**, -ᾱς, *simpleness, folly.*

575. **εὐ-ήθης**, -ες, *simple, foolish.*

576. **λῡμαίνομαι**, λῡμανοῦμαι, *to maltreat, mar.*

577. **πρᾶξις**, -εως, ἡ, *doing, business.*

Digitized by Google

578. **ὀκνέω**, *-ήσω, shrink from, hesitate.*
579. **ἐμ-βαίνω**, *-βήσομαι, to go into, embark.* See 34.
580. **κατα-δύω**, *to sink* (down).
581. **φοβέω**, *-ήσω, to frighten;* mid. *fear.* See 358.
[582. **οἷός τε**, *οἵᾱ τε, οἷόν τε, such as to* (with infin.), *able.* See 549.]
583. **ἐξ-έρχομαι**, 2 aor. *-ῆλθον, to go out* or *forth.* See 383.
584. **ἄκων**, *ἄκουσα, ἄκον, unwilling.* See 165.
585. **φλυαρίᾱ**, *-ᾱς, nonsense, folly.*
586. **ἐρωτάω**, *-ήσω*, 2 aor. *ἠρόμην, to ask.*
587. **τίς**, *τί*, gen. *τίνος, who? which? what?*
588. **παρα-πλήσιος**, *-ᾱ, -ον, similar to* or *like.* See 989.
589. **οἷος-περ**, *οἵᾱ-περ, οἷον-περ* (*περ* intens.), *just such as, just as.* See 549.
590. **κακός**, *-ή, -όν, bad, cowardly.*
591. **συν-ανα βαίνω**, 2 aor. *συν-ανέβην, to go up with.* See 34.
592. **φαίνω**, *φανῶ, ἔφηνα, to show;* mid. and pass. *appear.*
593. **ἐπί-πονος**, *-ον, toilsome.* See 694.
594. **ἐπι κίνδῡνος**, *-ον, dangerous.* See 941.
595. **ἀφ-ίημι**, *-ήσω, -ἧκα, -εἷκα, let go, send away.*
596. **πρό θῡμος**, *-ον, eager, zealous* (*θῡμός, -οῦ, heart, mind*).
597. **ἀν-αγγέλλω**, *-ελῶ, to report* (back). See 388.
598 **δεῦρο**, *hither.*
599. **ἀπο-κρίνομαι**, *-οῦμαι, to answer.* See 840.
600. **ἀπ-έχω**, *to hold off*, intrans. *be away, be distant.* See 38.
601. **ἐκεῖ**, *there.*
602. **χρῄζω**, chiefly in pres., *to want, desire.*
603. **αἱρετός**, *-ή, -όν*, verb. adj., *chosen.* See 491.
604. **ὑπ οψίᾱ**, *-ᾱς, suspicion.* See 11.
605. **ὅμως**, *nevertheless.*
606. **προσ-αιτέω**, *to ask further* or *in addition.* See 174.
607. **ἡμι-ὅλιος**, *-ᾱ, -ον, a half + the whole, a half more.*
608. **ἡμι-δᾱρικόν**, *-οῦ, half-daric.*
609. **φανερός**, *-ά, όν, plain, manifest.* See 592.

CHAPTER IV.

610. **στάδιον**, *-ου*, plur. *-οι, stadium, furlong* (606 ft.).
611. **πεντε-καί-δεκα**, *fifteen.*
612. **ναῦς**, *νεώς, ἡ, ship.* See 542.
613. **ναύ-αρχος**, *-ου, admiral.*
614. **συμ-πολεμέω**, *to join in war with.* See 87.
615. **μετά-πεμπτος**, *-ον, sent after.* See 20.
616. **ἑπτακόσιοι**, *-αι, -α, seven hundred.*

Digitized by Google

617. **ὁρμέω**, *-ήσω*, *to anchor.*

618. **μισθο-φόρος**, *-ου*, *pay-receiving, a mercenary* (soldier).

619. **τετρακόσιοι**, *-αι*, *-α*, *four hundred.*

620. **συ στρατεύομαι**, *to join in a campaign* or *expedition.* See 123.

621. **πύλη**, *-ης*, *gate.*

622. **τεῖχος**, *-ους*, *τό*, *wall.*

623. **ἔσωθεν**, *within;* **τὸ ἐ.**, *the inner.*

624. **ἔξω**, *without;* **τὸ ἐ.**, *the outer.*

625. **ἅ-πᾶς**, *ἅ-πᾶσα*, *ἅ πᾶν*, *all together, all.*

626. **παρ-έρχομαι**, 2 aor. **παρ ἦλθον**, *to go* or *pass by.* See 173.

627. **βίᾱ**, *-ᾱς*, *force.* (L. **vis**.)

628. **πάρ-οδος**, *-ου*, *way-past, a pass.* See 318.

629. **στενός**, *-ή*, *-όν*, *narrow.*

630. **καθ-ήκω**, *to come down, reach.* See 203.

631. **ὑπερθε(ν)**, *from above.* See 159.

632. **πέτρᾱ** *-ᾱς*, *rock.* See 461.

633. **ἠλίβᾰτος**, *-ον* (poet.), *steep,* said of bare, jagged cliffs.

634. **ἐφ-ίστημι**, **ἐπι-στήσω**, *-έστησα*, trans., *to set up, upon* or *over, to set=halt;* **ἐφ-έστηκα**, 2 aor. **ἐπ-έστην**, intrans., *to be set over, stand by* or *near.* See 113.

635. **ἕνεκα**, with gen., *on account of.*

636. **ἀπο-βιβάζω**, *άσω*, causal of *απο-βαίνω*, *make go off, disembark.*

637. **ὅσ-περ**, *ἥ-περ*, *ὅ-περ*, *the very one who* or *thing which.* See 23.

638. **ἀνα-στρέφω**, *-ψω*, *to turn back, to retreat, to rally.*

639. **ἀπ-ελαύνω**, *-ελῶ*, *to drive away, march away.* See 412.

640. **μῡριάς**, *άδος*, *ἡ*, *a myriad* (10,000).

641. **ἐμπόριον**, *-ου*, *trading port* (*emporium*).

642. **αὐτόθι**, *here, there.*

643. **ὁλκάς**, *-άδος*, *ἡ*, *merchant vessel.*

644. **ἐν τίθημι**, *-θήσω*, *-έθηκα*, *to put in* or *on.* See 296.

645. **φιλο-τιμέομαι**, *-ήσομαι*, *to love honor* (**τῑμή**), *be jealous.*

646. **ἐάω**, impf. **εἴων** (*-ᾱς*, *-ᾱ*). **ἐάσω**, **εἴᾱσα**, *to permit.* H. 359, G. 104.

647. **ἀ-φανής**, *-ές*, *unseen, invisible.*

648. **δι-έρχομαι**, 2 aor. **δι-ῆλθον**, *to go through, to spread.* See 626.

649. **λόγος**, *-ου*, *word, speech; rumor.* See 270.

650. **διώκω**, *-ξω*, *to pursue.*

651. **εὔχομαι**, impf. **εὐ-** or **ηὐχόμην**, *-ξομαι*, *to pray, vow.*

652. **δειλός**, *-ή*, *-όν*, *cowardly;* *v. l.* **δόλιος**, *-ᾱ*, *-ον*, *treacherous.*

653. **οἰκτείρω**, *-ερῶ*, *to pity.*

654. **ἁλίσκομαι**, **ἁλώσομαι**, **ἑάλωκα**, 2 aor. **ἑάλων**, *to be taken, seized.*

655. **συγ-καλέω**, *-έσω*, *to call together.* See 209.

Digitized by Google

656. **ἀπο-λείπω, -ψω, -λέλοιπα,** 2 aor. **-έλιπον,** *to leave behind, abandon.* See 389.

657. **ἀπο-διδράσκω, -δράσομαι, -δέδρᾱκα,** 2 aor. **-έδρᾱν,** *to run away* (esp. by stealth).

658. **οἴχομαι,** *to be* or *have gone.* H. 827, G. 200, N. 3.

659. **ἀπο-φεύγω, -ξομαι,** 2 aor. **-έφυγον,** *to flee from, escape* (out of reach). See 121.

660. **θεός, -οῦ,** *god.*

661. **ἐπειδάν,** *whenever* (with subj., H. 913, G. 231, N.).

662. **κακῶς, -ῖον, -ιστα,** *badly, ill.*

663. **ἀπο-σῠλάω,** *to strip off, rob.*

664. **καίτοι,** *and yet.*

665. **τέκνον, -ου,** *child.*

666. **φρουρέω,** *to guard, watch.*

667. **στερέω, -ήσω,** *to deprive;* pass. **στέρομαι** and **στερίσκομαι.**

668. **ἀρετή, -ῆς,** *goodness, excellence.*

669. **ἄ-θῡμος, -ον,** *disheartened.* See 596.

670. **ἀνά-βασις, -εως, ἡ,** *going up* (into Persia), *expedition,* whence the name *Anabasis.*

671. **ἡδύς, ἡδεῖα, ἡδύ,** *sweet, pleasant.* See 216.

672. **ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὁ,** *fish.*

673. **πρᾶος, -εῖα, πρᾶον,** *mild, gentle.*

674. **περιστερά, -ᾶς,** *dove.*

675. **κώμη, -ης,** *village.*

676. **σκηνόω, -ώσω,** *to encamp;* **-έω,** *to be encamped.* See 357.

677. **ζώνη, -ης,** *girdle;* **εἰς τὴν ζ.,** *for pin money.*

678. **πάνυ,** *very.*

679. **φύω, φύσω, ἔφῡσα,** *to produce;* **φύσις, εως,** *nature.*

680. **ἐκ-κόπτω, -ψω,** *to cut out, off,* or (of trees) *down.* See 424.

681. **κατα-καίω,** Att. **-κάω, -καύσω,** *to burn down.*

682. **ἀνα-πείθω,** *to persuade* (up to), *induce.* See 50.

683. **ἀπ-αγγέλλω, -ελῶ,** *to report* (from), *announce.* See 597.

684. **χαλεπαίνω, -ανῶ,** *to be severe, angry.* See 539.

685. **πάλαι,** *long ago.*

686. **πατήρ, πατρός,** *father.* See 472.

687. **ἀργύριον, -ου** (dim. of **ἄργυρος, -ου,** *silver*), *piece of silver* (silver), *money.*

688. **μνᾶ, -ᾶς,** *mina* (100 drachmae = $17.50).

689. **ἐπήν** or **ἐπάν,** *whenever, when* (with subj. See 661).

690. **ἐντελής, -ές,** *at its end, full, complete.*

691. **μέχρι,** *until, as far as.*

692. **πότερον,** *whether.*

693. **χωρίς,** *apart, without.*

694. **πονέω, -ήσω,** *to toil;* **πόνος, -ου,** *toil.*

695. **προ-τιμάω, -ήσω,** *to honor before* (another). See 473.

696. **νῦν,** *now.*

697. **ψηφίζομαι, -ιοῦμαι,** *to vote* (by **ψῆφος,** *a pebble*), *to resolve.*

698. **αἴτιος, -ᾱ, -ον,** *responsible, the cause;* **τὸ αἴ.,** *the cause.*

699. **χάρις, -ιτος, ἡ,** *grace, favor, gratitude;* **χάριν εἰδέναι,** *to be grateful.*

Digitized by Google

700. **ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι**, *to vote otherwise* or *against.*
701. **ἔμ-παλιν**, **τὸ ἔμ.** or **τοὔμ.**, *backward, back.*
702. **μόνος, -η, -ον**, *alone.*
703. **πιστός, -ή, -όν**, *faithful*; **τὰ πιστά**, *tokens of good faith, pledges.* See 439.
704. **φρούριον, -ου**, *garrison.* See 666.
705. **λοχᾱγίᾱ, -ᾱς**, *captaincy.*
706. **ἐπ-αινέω, -έσομαι, -ήνεσα**, *to praise, commend.*
707. **μέλει, μελήσει**, impers. with dat., *it is a care to*; **μ. μοι**, *I take care.*
708. **εὐτυχέω, -ήσω** (**τύχη**, *fortune*), *to be fortunate.*
709. **μεγαλο-πρεπῶς** (adj. **-ής, -ές**, *befitting the great*), *magnificently.*
710. **βρέχω, ἔβρεξα, ἐβρέχθην**, *to wet.*
711. **μαστός, -οῦ**, *breast.*
712. **οὐπώ-ποτε**, *not yet at any time, never before.*
713. **δια-βατός, -ή, -όν**, *to be crossed, passable.* See 247.
714. **θεῖος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *of* or *from god* (**θεός**), *divine.*
715. **σαφῶς**, *clearly*; from **σαφής, -ές**, *clear.*
716. **ὑπο-χωρέω, -ήσω**, *to go back* (lit. *under*), *withdraw.* See 283.
717. **ἐννέα**, *nine.*
718. **πεντήκοντα**, *fifty.*
719. **μεστός, -ή, -όν**, *full.*
720. **σῖτος, -ου**, pl. **τὰ σῖτα**, *grain, provisions.*
721. **ἐπι-σιτίζομαι, -ιοῦμαι**, *to provision one's self, lay in provisions.*

CHAPTER V.

722. **τόπος, -ου**, *place.*
723. **ὁμαλής, -ές**, *even, level.*
724. **ἀψίνθιον, -ου** *wormwood.*
725. **ἔν-ειμι**, impf. **ἐν ἦν**, *to be in* or *therein.* See 65.
726. **ὕλη, -ης**, *wood, copse.*
727. **κάλαμος, -ου**, *reed* (L. **calamus**).
728. **εὐ-ώδης, -ες**, *sweet-smelling, fragrant.*
729. **ἄρωμα, -ατος, τό**, *spice* (Eng. *aróma*).
730 **παντοῖος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *of every kind.*
731. **ὄνος, -ου**, *ass.*
732. **στρουθός, -οῦ**, *sparrow*; **ἡ σ. μεγάλη**, *the ostrich.*
733. **ὠτίς, -ίδος, ἡ**, *bustard.*
734. **δορκάς, άδος, ἡ** [**δέρκ-ομαι**, *to see*], *gazelle* (deriv. *Dorcas*).
735. **ἐνίοτε**, *sometimes.*
736. **προ-τρέχω**, 2 aor. **προ-έδραμον**, *to run forward* or *before.*
737. **τρέχω, δραμοῦμαι**, 2 aor. **ἔδραμον**, *to run.* See 356.
738. **πλησιάζω, -άσω**, *to draw near.* See 990.

Digitized by Google

739. **δι-ίστημι**, trans., *to set at intervals;* intrans., *to stand at intervals* or *apart.* See 325.

740. **θηράω**, **-άσω**, *to chase, hunt.* See 259.

741. **δια-δέχομαι**, **-ξομαι**, *to receive* (through a line or) *in succession, succeed.*

742. **κρέας**, gen. **κρέως**, plur. **κρέα**, **κρεῶν**, **τό**, *flesh.*

743. **ἐλάφειος**, **-ον**, *of deer;* **τὰ ἐ.**, *venison.*

744. **ἁπαλός**, **-ή**, **-όν**, *tender.*

745. **ἀπο-σπάω**, **-άσω**, *to draw off* or *away.*

746. **πτέρυξ**, **-υγος**, **ἡ**, *wing.* See 749.

747. **αἴρω**, **ἀρῶ**, **ἦρα**, *to raise.*

748. **ἱστίον**, **-ου**, *sail.*

749. **πέτομαι**, **πτήσομαι**, 2 aor. **ἐπτόμην**, *to fly.*

750. **βραχύς**, **-εῖα**, **-ύ**, *short;* **βραχύ**, *a short distance.*

751. **πέρδιξ**, **-ῑκος**, **ὁ**, *partridge.*

752. **ἀπ-αγορεύω**, chiefly in pres. and impf., *to speak from* or *against, renounce; to give out, fail.*

753. **πλεθριαῖος**, **-ᾱ**, **-ον**, *of a plethron* (in size, length, etc.).

754. **περι-ρ-ρέω**, **-ρεύσομαι**, *to flow around.* See 264.

755. **κύκλος**, **-ου** *circle.*

756. **τρισ-καί-δεκα**, *thirteen.*

757. **ἐνενήκοντα**, *ninety.*

758. **λιμός**, **-οῦ**, *hunger, famine.*

759. **χόρτος**, **-ου**, *grass, fodder.*

760. **ψιλός**, **-ή**, **-όν**, *bare.*

761. **ἀλέτης**, **-ου** (**ἀλέω**, *to grind*), *a grinder;* **ὄνος ἀ.**, *a millstone.*

762. **ὀρύττω**, **-ξω**, *to dig.*

763. **πωλέω**, **-ήσω**, *to sell.*

764. **ἀντ-αγοράζω**, *to buy in exchange.* See 554.

765. **ζάω**, impf. **ἔζων**, **ζήσω**, *to live;* **ζωή**, **-ῆς**, *life.*

766. **ἐπι-λείπω**, **-ψω**, 2 aor. **ἐπ-έλιπον**, *to leave behind, to fail.* See 656.

767. **ὠνέομαι**, impf. **ἐωνούμην**, 2 aor. **ἐπριάμην**, *to buy.* H. 359, G. 104. See 360.

768. **καπίθη**, **-ης**, *a kapithe* (Persian), about 2 quarts.

769. **ἄλευρον**, **-ου**, chiefly in plur., *wheat flour.*

770. **ἄλφιτον**, **-ου**, chiefly in plur., *barley-meal.*

771. **σίγλος**, **-ου**, *siglos, shekel,* = 7½ Attic obols or 25 cents.

772. **ὄβολος**, **-ου**, *obol,* Attic coin, = 3½ cents.

773. **ἡμι-ωβόλιον**, **τό**, *a half-obol.*

774. **χοῖνιξ**, **-ικος**, **ἡ**, *choenix,* = about a quart.

775. **χωρέω**, **-ήσω**, *to make place* (**χώρα**) *for,* and so, *to contain.* See 283.

776. **ἐσθίω**, 2 aor. **ἔφαγον**, *to eat.*

777. **δια-γίγνομαι**, *to go* (lit. *become*) *through; to pass, to live* (of time, etc.). See 179.

778. **μακρός**, **-ά**, **-όν**, *long.*

779. **ὕδωρ**, **ὕδατος**, **τό**, *water.*

Digitized by Google

780. **δια-τελέω**, -έσω or -ῶ, *bring to an end* (τέλος), *complete* (*e. g.* a distance).
781. **χιλός**, -οῦ, *fodder*.
782. **ποτέ**, encl., *at any time, at some time* (πότε, *when?*).
783. **στενο-χωρία**, -ας, *a narrow place*. See 629.
784. **πηλός**, -οῦ, *mud*.
785. **δυσ-πόρευτος**, -ον, *difficult to pass*. See 198.
786. **στρατός**, -οῦ, *army*.
787. **συν-εκ-βιβάζω**, *to join* (σύν) *in bringing out*. See 636.
788. **ἅμαξα**, -ης, *wagon*.
789. **σχολαίως**, *leisurely*; from adj., σχολαῖος, *leisurely, slow*.
790. **ὀργή**, -ῆς, *anger*.
791. **κράτιστος**, -η, -ον (from κράτος, *strength*), *best* (as super. of ἀγαθός), *strongest*. See 107.
792. **συν-επι-σπεύδω**, *to join* (σύν) *in hastening on*. See 552.
793. **ἔνθα**, *there, then*.
794. **μέρος**, -ους, τό, *part, portion*.
795. **εὐταξίᾱ**, -ας, *good order, discipline*.
796. **θεάομαι**, ἀσομαι, *to behold* (deriv. *theatre*).
797. **ῥίπτω**, -ψω, *to throw*.
798. **πορφυροῦς**, -ᾶ, -οῦν, *purple*.
799. **κάνδυς**, -υος (Persian), *overcoat, caftan* (rare).
800. **ἵημι**, ἥσω, ἧκα, εἷκα, *to send, let go*; mid., *send one's self, hasten*. See 595.
801. **νίκη**, -ης, *victory*. See 272.
802. **πρᾱνής**, -ές (or πρηνής, L. **prōnus**), *headlong; steep* (of a hill).
803. **γήλοφος**, -ου, ὁ (γῆ + λόφος, *crest*), *hill*.
804. **πολυ-τελής**, -ές, *very expensive*.
805. **ποικίλος**, -η, -ον (cf. L. **pictūra**), *many-colored*.
806. **ἀναξυρίδες**, -ων, αἱ (Persian), *breeches, trowsers*.
807. **ἔνιοι**, -αι, -α, *some*.
808. **τράχηλος**, -ου, *neck*.
809. **εὐθύ**ς), adv. (from adj. εὐθύς, *straight*), *immediately*.
810. **εἰσ-πηδάω**, *to leap into*.
811. **μετέωρος**, -ον, *in mid air, raised aloft* (deriv. *meteor*).
812. **ἐκ-κομίζω**, -ιῶ, *to carry out*.
813. **δια-τρίβω**, -ψω, *to rub away*; of time, *waste, delay*.
814. **ἐπιστιτισμός**, -οῦ, *provisioning* (*one's self*). See 720.
815. **ἀναγκαῖος**, -ᾱ, -ον, *necessary*; οἱ ἀ, *relations*, cf. L. **necessarii**.
816. **καθ-έζομαι**, ἐκαθεζόμην, *to sit*.
817. **μάχομαι**, -οῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, *to fight*. See 282.
818. **συν-αγείρω**, -αγερῶ, *to gather together, collect*.
819. **συν-εῖδον**, 2 aor. of συν-οράω, *to see together* or *in one view*.
820. **προσ-έχω**, *to hold to*; π. τὸν νοῦν, *turn one's attention to*.
821. **νοῦς**, νοῦ, ὁ, *mind*.
822. **πλῆθος**, -ους, τό, *multitude, extent, number*.
823. **ἰσχυρός**, -ά, -όν, *strong*. See 381.

Digitized by Google

824. **μῆκος**, *-ους*, *τό*, *length.*
825. **δια-σπάω**, *-άσω*, *to tear asunder, separate.*
826. **ἀσθενής**, *-ές*, *weak.* See 10.
827. **πόλεμος**, *-ου*, *war.* See 87.
828. **πέραν**, *beyond, across.*
829. **σχεδία**, *-ας*, *raft.*
830. **διφθέρᾱ**, *-ας*, *a* (tanned) *skin* (deriv. *diphtheria*).
831. **στέγασμα**, *-ατος*, *τό*, *a covering* (for tents).
832. **πίμπλημι**, **πλήσω**, **ἔπλησα**, *to fill.*
833. **κοῦφος**, *light;* **κοῦφος χόρτος**, *hay.*
834. **συ-σπάω**, *-άσω*, *to draw together.* See 825.
835. **ἅπτω**, **ἅψω**, *to fasten;* commonly mid. *fasten one's self to, touch.*
836. **κάρφη**, *-ης*, *hay* (rare).
837. **βάλανος**, *-ου*, *ἡ*, *an acorn* (or similar fruit; in V. **10** = *date*).
838. **φοῖνιξ**, *-ῑκος*, *ὁ*, *date-palm.*
839. **ἀμφι-λέγω**, *to talk about, dispute about, wrangle.*
840. **κρίνω**, **κρινῶ**, **ἔκρῑνα**, *to judge.*
841. **πληγή**, *-ῆς*, *blow;* **πλήττω**, **πλήξω**, *to strike.*
842. **διά βασις**, *-εως*, *crossing* (place, act, or means). See 670.
843. **κατα-σκοπέω**, *-σκέψομαι*, *-εσκεψάμην*, *to view closely, inspect.*
844. **ἀφ-ιππεύω**, *to ride away* or *back* (on horseback). See 229.
845. **προσ-ελαύνω**, *-ελῶ*, *to drive, ride, march up* or *to.* See 412.
846. **οὔπω**, *not yet.*
847. **ξύλον**, *-ου*, *wood;* in X. **12** *a pole.*
848. **σχίζω**, **σχίσω**, *to split* (deriv. *schism*).
849. **δι ελαύνω**, *-ελῶ*, *to ride* or *march through.* See 234.
850. **ἀξίνη**, *-ης*, *axe.*
851. **ἁμαρτάνω**, *-τήσομαι*, 2 aor. **ἥμαρτον**, *to miss, to fail.*
852. **λίθος**, *-ου*, *stone.*
853. **κατα-φεύγω**, 2 aor. *-έφυγον*, *to flee for refuge.* See 659.
854. **γόνυ**, **γόνατος**, *τό*, L. **genu**, E. (cog) KNEE.
855. **τετταράκοντα**, *forty.*
856. **ἐκ-πλήττω**, *-ξω*, *to strike out, drive out* (esp. of one's senses). See 841.
857. **πρόσ-ειμι**, impf. *προσ-ήειν*, *to go to, approach.* See 353.
858. **ὀλίγος**, *-η*, *-ον*, *small* in number; plur. *few.*
859. **κατα-λεύω**, *to stone down* or *to death.* Cf. 461.
860. **πράως**, *mildly.*
861. **πόθος**, *-ους*, *τό*, *suffering* (deriv. sym-*pathy*). See 482.
862. **ἐξ-ίστημι**, trans. (pres., impf., f., and 1 aor.), *to set out;* intrans. (2 aor., pf., and mid.), *to stand out.* See 634.
863. **πυνθάνομαι**, 2 aor. **ἐπυθόμην**, *learn* (by inquiry).
864. **παλτόν**, *-οῦ*, *javelin.*
865. **συν-άπτω**, *-άψω*, *to join.* See 835.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER VI.

866. **ἴχνος**, *-ους*, *τό*, or **ἴχνιον**, *-ου* (dim. only in form), *a track* or *trace*.

867. **κόπρος**, *-ου*, *dung*.

868. **εἰκάζω**, *-άσω*, *to conjecture*.

869. **στίβος**, *-ου*, *beaten path*, *track*.

870. **καῦ**, or **καίω**, *to burn* (deriv. *caustic*).

871. **χρήσιμος**, *-ον*, *useful*. See 487.

872. **γένος**, *-ους*, *τό*, *birth*, *race*.

873. **προσ-ήκω**, *am come to*, *reach to* or *extend*; commonly, *belong to*; part., *related to*. See 630.

874. **κατ-αλλάσσω**, *-ξω*, *to change* or *exchange*, esp. from enmity, *to reconcile*. See 204.

875. **προ-κατα-κάω** (or *-καίω*), *to burn up before* others. See 681.

876. **κατα-καίνω**, 2 aor. **κατ-έκανον**, = **κατα-κτείνω**, *to kill*.

877. **ἐν-εδρεύω** (**ἐν ἕδρᾳ**, *sitting in ambush*), *to lie in ambush*.

878. **δι-αγγέλλω**, *-ελῶ*, *to carry word through*, *announce*. See 683.

879. **ὠφέλιμος**, *-ον*, *helpful*. See 161.

880. **ἕτοιμος**, *-η* (or *-ος*), *-ον*, *ready*.

881. **γράφω**, *-ψω*, *to write*.

882. **ἐπιστολή**, *-ῆς*, *a letter*.

883. **φράζω**, **φράσω**, *to tell* (deriv. PHRASE).

884. **ὑπο-δέχομαι**, *-δέξομαι*, *to receive under* (one's protection), *receive kindly*. See 741.

885. **ὑπό-μνημα**, *-ατος*, *τό*, *reminder*.

886. **ἀνα-γιγνώσκω**, *-γνώσομαι*, 2 aor. **ἀν-έγνων**, *to know again*, *to read*. See 463.

887. **τρισχίλιοι**, *-αι*, *-α*, *three thousand*.

888. **παρα-καλέω**, *-καλῶ*, *to call* (to one's side) *in*, *invite*; *exhort*. See 209.

889. **σύμ-βουλος**, *-ου*, *counsellor*. See 61.

890. **ἐξ-αγγέλλω**, *-ελῶ*, *to report outside*, *bring out news*. See 878.

891. **κρίσις**, *-εως*, *ἡ*, *judgment*, *trial*. See 840.

892. **ἀπό-ρ-ρητος**, *-ον*, *not* (**ἀπό**) *to be told*, *secret*.

893. **πράττω**, *-ξω*, *to do*, *perform*; with adv. (**εὖ**, **καλῶς**, **κακῶς**, etc.), *to fare* (*well*, *ill*, etc.).

894. **ἐμός**, *-ή*, *-όν*, *my*, *mine*.

895. **ὑπήκοος**, *-ον* (**ὑπ-ακούω**, *to hearken to*), *obedient*, *subject*. See 230.

896. **προσ-πολεμέω**, *-ήσω*, *to war against*. See 614.

897. **οὐκοῦν**, *not therefore? not then?* **nonne?**

898. **ὁμολογέω**, *-ήσω*, *to speak together*, *to agree*.

Digitized by Google

899. **σεαυτοῦ**, **-ῷ**, *of thyself.*
900. **βωμός**, **-οῦ**, *altar.*
901. **μετα-μέλει**, **-μελήσει**, *it concerns one differently* (**μετά**), *it repents one* (dat.). See 707.
902. **τρίτος**, **-η**, **-ον**, *third.* See 176.
903. **ἄδικος**, **-ον**, *unjust.* See 523.
904. **ἦ**, *truly, verily.*
905. **ἀπο-φαίνω**, **-φανῶ**, *to show forth.* See 592.
906. **ἐκποδών**, *out from one's feet, out of the way.*
907. **σχολή**, **-ῆς**, *leisure.*
908. **ἐθελοντής**, **-οῦ**, *volunteer;* as adj., *willing.* See 438.
909. **προσ-τίθημι**, *to put to, add;* mid., *add one's self to, agree.* See 296.
910. **θάνατος**, **-ου**, *death.*
911. **συγ-γενής**, **-ές**, *kindred.* See 152.
912. **ἐξ-άγω**, **-άξω**, *to lead out.* See 464, 553.
913. **προσ-τάττω**, **-ξω**, *to give an order to one, to enjoin, command.* See 326.
914. **προσ-κυνέω**, **-ήσω**, *do obeisance to.*
915. **καίπερ**, *although.*
916. **εἰσ-άγω**, **-άξω**, *to lead into.* See 553.
917. **σκηπτοῦχος**, **-ου**, *sceptre-bearer.*
918. **θνήσκω**, chiefly in pf. **τέθνηκα**; other tenses fr. **ἀπο-θνήσκω**, **-θανοῦμαι**, 2 aor. **-έθανον**, *to die, be slain.* See 910.
919. **πώποτε**, *ever yet.*
920. **ἄλλως**, *in another way, otherwise.* See 132.
921. **τάφος**, **-ου**, *burial, a grave;* **θάπτω** (= **ταφ-τω**), *to bury* (deriv. epi-*taph*).

CHAPTER VII.

922. **νύξ**, *νυκτός*, ἡ, L. **nox**, E. NIGHT.
923. **ἕως**, **ἕω**, ἡ, *dawn, morning.*
924. **κέρας**, *κέρως*, τό, *horn; wing* of an army.
925. **δια-τάττω**, **-ξω**, *to draw up, arrange.* See 326.
926. **αὐτό-μολος**, **-ου** (**μολεῖν**, *to go*), *deserter.*
927. **λοχ-ᾱγός**, **-οῦ**, *leader of a* **λόχος**, *captain.* See 421.
928. **πῶς**, *how?*
929. **παρ-αινέω**, impf. **παρ-ῄνουν**, **-έσομαι** (**αἰνέω**, *commend*), *to recommend, exhort.* See 706.
930. **θαρρύνω** (**θάρρος**, **-ους**, *courage*), *to encourage.*
931. **ἀμείνων**, **-ον** (compar. of **ἀγαθός**), *better.* See 107.
932. **προσ-λαμβάνω**, 2 aor. **-έλαβον**, *to take in addition.* See 51.
933. **ἐλευθερίᾱ**, **-ᾱς**, *freedom.*
934. **κτάομαι**, **-ήσομαι**, *acquire, gain;* pf. **κέκτημαι**, *to possess.*

Digitized by Google

935. **εὐδαιμονίζω**, *to account ἐυδαίμων (happy), congratulate.* See 250.

936. **πολλαπλάσιος, -ᾱ, -ον**, *many times as many, manifold more.*

937. **διδάσκω, -άξω**, *to teach.*

938. **ἀν-έχω, -έξω** or **-σχήσω**, 2 aor. **-έσχον**, *hold up;* mid. *endure, restrain one's self.* See 600.

939. **εὖ-τολμος, -ον** (**τολμάω**, *to dare*), *courageous.*

940. **ζηλωτός, -ή, -όν**, verb. adj., *to be envied;* **ζηλόω**, *vie with, envy.*

941. **κίνδῡνος, -ου**, *danger.* See 59.

942. **μιμνήσκομαι**, *μνήσομαι, to remind one's self of;* **μέμνημαι** (as pres.), *to remember.*

943. **πατρῷος, ᾱ, -ον**, *paternal, hereditary.* See 686.

944. **μεσημβρίᾱ, -ᾱς**, *mid-day; south.*

945. **καῦμα, -ατος, τό**, *heat.* See 870.

946. **ἄρκτος, -ου, ἡ**, *bear, Great Bear, the north.*

947. **χειμών, ῶνος, ὁ**, *winter, cold.*

948. **σατραπεύω, -εύσω**, *to be satrap* (of or over). See 25.

949. **ἐγ-κρατής, -ές**, *in power over, master of.*

950. **στέφανος, -ου**, *crown* (deriv. STEPHEN).

951. **εἰσ-ειμι**, impf. **εἰσ-ῄειν**, *to go into.* See 352.

952. **κρατέω, -ήσω**, *to overpower, conquer.*

953. **ἐμ-πίμπλημι, -πλήσω**, *to fill* (in) *full;* here, *satisfy* (rare sense). See 832.

954. **παρα-κελεύομαι**, *to urge on, exhort.* See 189.

955. **ὅσοσ-περ, -η-περ, -ον-περ**, *just as much, great,* or *many as.* See 30.

956. **δια-λέγομαι**, *to converse with.* See 270.

957. **ὄπισθε(ν)**, *behind.*

958. **καιρός, -οῦ**, *time,* esp. *fit time.*

959. **πώς**, encl. *somehow* or *somewhere;* **ὧδέ πως**, *about as follows.*

960. **νή**, affirm. part. of swearing, *by, yes by.*

961. **εἴ-περ**, *if indeed.*

962. **ἀμαχεί**, *without a battle.* See 282.

963. **ἐξ-οπλισίᾱ, -ᾱς**, *act* or *process of arming.* See 1007.

964. **δρεπανη-φόρος, -ον**, *scythe-bearing.*

965. **ἑξακισχίλιοι, -αι, -α**, *six thousand.*

966. **ὑστερέω, -ήσω**, *to be* (behind), *later than.* See 462.

967. **ἀγγέλλω, -ελῶ, ἤγγειλα**, *to announce, bring tidings.*

968. **αὐτομολέω, -ήσω**, *to desert.* See 926.

969. **τάφρος, -ου ἡ**, *ditch.*

970. **ὀρυκτός, -ή, -όν**, *dug.* See 762.

971. **βαθύς, -εῖα, -ύ**, *deep.*

972. **ὀργυιά, -ᾶς** (**ὀρέγω**, *to stretch* out the arms), *a fathom.*

973. **βάθος, -ους, τό**, *depth.*

Digitized by Google

974. **παρα-τείνω**, *-τενῶ*, *-έτεινα*, *τέτακα*, *-μαι*, *-ετάθην*, *to stretch along.*

975. **διῶρυξ**, *-υχος*, *ἡ*, *canal.*

976. **σῖτ-αγωγός**, *-οῦ*, *grain-carrying.*

977. **δια-λείπω**, *to leave* (a space) *between*, *be* or *stand apart.* See 766.

978. **μεταξύ**, *between* (with gen.).

979. **ἔρυμα**, *-ατος*, *τό*, *defence.* See 266.

980. **μάντις**, *-εως*, *ὁ* (*μαίνομαι*, *rave*, der. MANIA), *prophet*, *soothsayer.*

981. **ἑνδέκατος**, *-η*, *-ον*, *eleventh.*

982. **ἄρα**, postpos. illative particle, *then.*

983. **ἀληθεύω**, *-εύσω*, *to speak the truth.*

984. **τάλαντον**, *-ου*, *a talent*, $1125.

985. **ἀπο-γιγνώσκω**, *-γνώσομαι*, 2 aor. *-έγνων*, *-έγνωκα*, *to decide* (lit. *know*) *against* or *abandon the idea of.* See 463.

986. **ἠμελημένως**, adv., *carelessly.* See 527.

987. **πορεία**, *-ᾶς*, *journey*, *march.* See 198.

988. **ἀνα-ταράττω**, *-άξω*, *to stir up*, *confuse.*

CHAPTER VIII.

989. **πλήθω**, chief. in pres. part.; pass. of *πίμπλημι* (see 832), *to be full.*

990. **πλησίον**, *near.* See 738.

991. **μέλλω**, *μελλήσω*, *ἐμέλλησα*, *to be about*, *intend.*

992. **ἡνίκα**, *when.*

993. **προ-φαίνω**, act. *to show forth*; mid. *to appear before* or *in front.* See 592.

994. **ἀνά**, prep. with acc., *up*, *up along*; *ἀ. κράτος*, *with all* (lit. *up to*) *one's might.*

995. **κράτος**, *-ους*, *τό*, *might*, *power.*

996. **ἱδρόω**, *-ώσω*, *to sweat.*

997. **βοάω**, *-ήσομαι*, *ἐβόησα*, *to shout* (*βοή*, *-ῆς*, *shout*).

998. **βαρβαρικῶς**, *in barbarian* (language).

999. **παρα-σκευάζω**, *-άσω*, *to prepare.* See 232.

1000. **τάραχος** *-ου*, *confusion.* See 988.

1001. **αὐτίκα**, *at once*, *immediately.*

1002. **ἄτακτος**, *-ον*, *disarranged*, *in disorder.* See 324.

1003. **ἐπι-πίπτω**, *-πεσοῦμαι*, 2 aor. *-έπεσον*, *to fall upon.* See 130.

1004. **κατα-πηδάω**, *-ήσομαι*, *to leap down.* See 810.

1005. **θώραξ**, *-ᾱκος*, *ὁ*, *breastplate.*

1006. **ἐν-δύνω**, or *-δύομαι*, 2 aor. *-έδῡν*, *to enter*; of clothes, etc., *to put on.*

Digitized by Google

1007. **ἐξ-οπλίζω**, -ιῶ, *to arm completely*. See 963.
1008. **σπουδή**, -ῆς, *haste*. See 552.
1009. **πελταστικός**, -ή, -όν, *consisting of targeteers*. See 222.
1010. **ἑξακόσιοι**, -αι, -α, *six hundred*.
1011. **ὁπλίζω**, -ιῶ, *to arm*.
1012. **παραμηρίδια**, -ων, τά, *thigh* (μηρός) *pieces* of armor.
1013. **κεφαλή**, -ῆς, *head*.
1014. **δια-κινδῡνεύω** (*v. l.*), -εύσω, *to pass through* (διά) or *incur danger*. See 59.
1015. **προμετωπίδιον**, -ου (μέτ-ωπον, the space between the eyes (ὤψ), *forehead*), *a frontlet*.
1016. **προστερνίδιον** (πρό + στέρνον, *breast*), *breastplate* (for horses).
1017. **μάχαιρα**, -ᾱς, *a short sword*. See 817.
1018. **καταφανής**, -ές, *clearly visible*. See 592.
1019. **δείλη**, -ης, *afternoon*.
1020. **κονιορτός**, -οῦ (κόνις, *dust*; ὄρ-νῡμι, *to raise*), *cloud of dust*.
1021. **νεφέλη**, -ης, *cloud*.
1022. **λευκός**, -ή, -όν, *white*.
1023. **συχνός**, -ή, -όν, *considerable*; συχνόν, *sc.* χωρίον, *at a considerable distance*.
1024. **μελανίᾱ**, -ᾱς, *blackness* (μέλας, *black*).
1025. **ἐγγύς**, -ύτερον, -τατα, *near*.
1026. **τάχα**, *quickly*.
1027. **χαλκός**, -οῦ, *copper, bronze*.
1028. **ἀστράπτω**, *to lighten, flash*.
1029. **λόγχη**, -ης, *lance*.
1030. **λευκο-θώραξ**, -ᾱκος, adj., wearing *white breastplate*.
1031. **γερρο-φόροι**, -ων (*carrying the γέρρον, wicker-shield*), *soldiers with wicker-shields*.
1032. **ποδ-ήρης**, -ες, *reaching to the feet*. See 269.
1033. **ξυλινός**, -ή, -όν, *wooden*. See 847.
1034. **ἔθνος**, -ους, τό, *nation*.
1035. **πλαίσιον**, -ου, *a square*.
1036. **δρέπανον**, -ου, *scythe*. See 964.
1037. **ἄξων**, -ονος, ὁ, *axle*.
1038. **πλάγιος**, -ᾱ, -ον, *slanting*; εἰς π., *obliquely*.
1039. **ἀπο-τείνω**, -τενῶ, *to stretch out, extend*. See 974.
1040. **δίφρος**, -ου, *chariot-board*.
1041. **βλέπω**, -ψομαι, ἔβλεψα, *to look*.
1042. **δια-κόπτω**, -κόψω, *to cut through* or *in two*. See 680
1043. **σῑγή**, -ῆς, *silence*.
1044. **ἀνυστός**, -όν (verb. of ἀνύω, *accomplish*), *practicable*.
1045. **ἡσυχῇ**, *quietly* (ἥσυχος, *quiet*).
1046. **ἴσος**, -η, -ον, *equal, even*; ἐν ἴσῳ, *in even* (line).
1047. **βραδέως**, *slowly* (βραδύς, *slow*).
1048. **στῖφος**, -ους, τό, *a* (dense) *mass* or *body*.
1049. **περί-ειμι**, impf. -ῆν, *to be above* or *superior*. See 725.
1050. **κυκλόω**, -ώσω, *to encircle*. See 755.

Digitized by Google

1051. **ἑκατέρωθεν**, *on each side.*
1052. **ὁμαλῶς**, *evenly.* See 723.
1053. **κατα-θεάομαι**, **-άσομαι**, *to look down upon.* See 796.
1054. **ἑκατέρωσε**, *to each side.*
1055. **ἀπο-βλέπω**, *to look* (from all else at) *intently.* See 1041.
1056. **πελάζω**, *approach.*
1057. **συν-αντάω**, **-ήσω**, *to meet with.*
1058. **ἱερά**, **-ῶν**, **τά**, *omens* (**ἱερός**, *sacred*).
1059. **σφάγιον**, **-ου**, *victim* (**σφάττω**, *to slay*).
1060. **θόρυβος**, **-ου**, *a* (confused) *noise, tumult.*
1061. **σύν-θημα**, **-ατος**, **τό**, thing which is agreed upon (**συν-τίθημι**, *to agree*), *watchword.*
1062. **δεύτερον**, *a second time* (**δεύτερος**, *second*).
1063. **σωτήρ**, **-ῆρος**, *savior.*
1064. **δέχομαι**, **-ξομαι**, *to receive, accept.*
1065. **οὐκέτι**, *no longer.*
1066. **δι-έχω**, impf. **-εἶχον**, *to hold apart;* oftener intrans. *be apart* or *distant.* See 600.
1067. **παιανίζω**, **-ίσω** or **-ιῶ**, *to sing the paean* or *war song.*
1068. **προ-έρχομαι**, *to go forward.* See 383.
1069. **ἀντίος**, **-α**, **-ον**, *opposite, against.*
1070. **ἐκ-κῡμαίνω**, *to swell out* (**κῦμα**, *wave*).
1071. **θέω** (chief. in pres. and impf.; for other tenses see 737), *to run.*
1072. **φθέγγομαι**, **-ξομαι**, *to shout, cry out* (der. *di*-PHTHONG).
1073. **ἐλελίζω**, *to raise the war-cry* (**ἐλελεῦ**).
1074. **δόρυ**, **δόρατος**, **τό**, *spear.*
1075. **δουπέω**, **-ήσω**, *to make a sound* (**δοῦπος**, *a dull sound*).
1076. **τόξευμα**, **-ατος**, **τό**, thing which is shot, *an arrow.*
1077. **ἐξ-ικνέομαι**, *come forth to, to reach.* See 78.
1078. **ἐκ-κλίνω**, **-ῶ**, **-ἐκλῖνα**, *to bend out* (of line), *give way.*
1079. **κενός**, **-ή**, **-όν**, *empty* (with gen.).
1080. **ἡνίοχος** (**ἡνία**, *reins;* **ἔχω**, *hold*), *charioteer.*
1081. **προ-εἶδον** (pres. **προ-οράω**), *to see before, foresee.*
1082. **ἱππό-δρομος**, **-ου**, *horse-race* (deriv. HIPPODROME).
1083. **τοξεύω**, **-εύσω**, *to shoot* (with a **τόξον**, *bow*). See 1076.
1084. **ὥς**, *thus.* Note the accent.
1085. **συ-σπειράομαι**, *to be drawn up* (lit. *rolled*) *closely.*
1086. **ἀσφαλής**, **-ές**, *safe.* See 532
1087. **ἰσχύς**, **-ύος**, **ἡ**, *strength, force.*
1088. **ἥμισυς**, **-εια**, **-υ**, *half.*
1089. **ἔμπροσθεν**, *in front.* See 185.
1090. **ἐπι-κάμπτω**, **-κάμψω** *to bend forward.*
1091. **κύκλωσις**, **-εως**, **ἡ**, *encircling;* **εἰς κ.**, *in order to encircle.* See 1050.
1092. **φυγή**, **-ῆς**, *flight.* See 121.
1093. **τρέπω**, **τρέψω**, *to turn.* See 366.

Digitized by Google

1094. **τροπή**, *-ῆς*, *turn, rout* (of an enemy). See 1093.
1095. **δια-σπείρω**, *-σπερῶ*, *to strew, to scatter.*
1096. **σχεδόν**, *nearly, almost.*
1097. **ὁμο-τράπεζος**, *-ου* (*at table* (*τράπεζα*) *with*), *messmate.*
1098. **καθ-οράω**, *κατ-όψομαι*, 2 aor. *κατ-είδον*, *to look down upon, observe.* See 362.
1099. **παίω**, *παίσω*, *to strike, smite*, chief. poet. for *τύπτω*.
1100. **στέρνον**, *-ου*, *breast.*
1101. **τιτρώσκω**, *τρώσω*, *ἔτρωσα*, *to wound.*
1102. **ἰατρός**, *-οῦ*, *physician.*
1103. **ἰάομαι**, *ἰάσομαι*, *to heal.*
1104. **τραῦμα**, *-ατος*, *τό*, *wound.* See 1101.
1105. **ἀκοντίζω**, *-ίσω* or *-ιῶ*, *to shoot* with a javelin (*ἄκων*).
1106. **ὀφθαλμός**, *-οῦ*, *eye.*
1107. **βιαίως**, *forcibly.* See 627.
1108. **ἑκάτερος**, *-ᾱ, -ον*, *each* (of two).
1109. **κεῖμαι**, impf. *ἐκείμην*, *to lie.*
1110. **θεράπων**, *-οντος*, *servant, attendant.*
1111. **πίπτω**, *πεσοῦμαι*, *πέπτωκα*, 2 aor. *ἔπεσον*, *to fall.* See 1003.
1112. **περι-πίπτω** (see 1111), *to fall around, embrace.*
1113. **ἐπι-σφάττω**, *-σφάξω*, *to slay upon.* See 1059.
1114. **σπάω**, *σπάσω*, *ἔσπασα*, *to draw.* See 834.
1115. **φορέω**, *-ήσω* (cf. **φέρω**), *to wear.*
1116. **εὔνοια**, *-ᾱς*, *good will.* See 90, 821.
1117. **πιστότης**, *-ητος*, *ἡ*, *faithfulness.* See 703.

CHAPTER IX.

1118. **βασιλικός**, *-ή*, *όν*, *kingly, royal.* See 80.
1119. **πεῖρα**, *-ᾱς*, *trial, experience.* See 128.
1120. **παιδεύω**, *-εύσω*, *to train, educate.* See 3.
1121. **σωφροσύνη**, *-ης*, *prudence; self-control.*
1122. **κατα-μανθάνω**, *-μαθήσομαι*, 2 aor. *-έμαθον*, *to learn thoroughly.*
1123. **αἰσχρός**, *-ά, -όν*; comp. *αἰσχίων*, superl. *αἴσχιστος*, *shameful, disgraceful.* See 518.
1124. **μανθάνω**, *μαθήσομαι*, 2 aor. *ἔμαθον*, *to learn.*
1125. **αἰδήμων**, *-ον*, *modest* (*αἰδώς*, *modesty*).
1126. **ἡλικιώτης**, *-ου*, *an equal in age* (see 1134), *a comrade.*

Digitized by Google

1127. **ὑπο-δεέστερος**, *wanting somewhat, inferior.* See 183.

1128. **φίλ-ιππος**, *-ον, fond of horses* (deriv. PHILIP).

1129. **ἔργον**, *-ου* (for *Ϝέργον*), WORK, *deed.*

1130. **τοξικός**, *-ή, -όν, of a bow; ἡ τοξική (τεχνή), archery.* See 1083.

1131. **ἀκόντισις**, *-εως, ἡ, throwing the javelin.* See 1105.

1132. **φιλο-μαθής**, *-ές, fond of learning.*

1133. **μελετηρός**, *-ά, -όν, studious* (*μελετάω, to study, practise*).

1134. **ἡλικίᾱ**, *-ᾱς, age, time of life.* See 1126.

1135. **πρέπει**, *it becomes, is fitting.*

1136. **φιλό-θηρος**, *-ον, fond of the chase* (*θήρᾱ*).

1137. **φιλο-κίνδῡνος**, *-ον, fond of danger.*

1138. **ἐπι-φέρω**, *bring up* or *against;* mid. *rush upon* or *against.* See 407.

1139. **τρέω**, *to tremble, flee from.*

1140. **συμ-πίπτω**, 2 aor. *συν-έπεσον, to fall together, grapple with.* See 1003.

1141. **κατα-σπάω**, *to draw down.* See 834.

1142. **ὠτειλη**, *-ῆς, wound, scar.*

1143. **τέλος**, *-ους, τό, end;* often as adv., *finally.*

1144. **κατα-κτείνω**, 2 aor. *-έκανον, to kill.* See 52.

1145. **βοη θέω**, *-ήσω, to aid, assist* (with dat.). See 1071.

1146. **μακαριστός**, *-ή, -όν* (verb. adj. of *μακαρίζω, to deem μάκαρ* or *blessed*).

1147. **κατα-πέμπω**, *-ψω, to send down.* See 55.

1148. **σπένδω**, *σπείσω, to pour a* libation; mid. *to pour a* libation with another, *make a treaty.*

1149. **συν-τίθημι**, *-θήσω, put together;* mid. *agree* (*make an agreement*, IX. **7**). See 1061.

1150. **σπονδή**, *-ῆς, a libation;* plur. *treaty, truce.* See 1148.

1151. **τοι-γαρ-οὖν**, *for indeed then, therefore.*

1152. **προ-ἵημι**, *-ήσω, -ῆκα, εἶκα, -εἶμαι, send before* or *away;* chief. in mid. *let go, give up.* See 800.

1153. **ἅπαξ**, *once.*

1154. **μείων**, *-ον, less, smaller,* used as comp. of *μῑκρός.*

1155. **εὐχή**, *-ῆς, prayer, vow.*

1156. **ἐκ-φέρω**, *-οίσω, to bring out* or *forth; to report.* See 1138.

1157. **ἔστε**, *until.*

1158. **ἐπι-θῡμέω**, *-ήσω, to set one's heart* (*θῡμός*) *upon, desire.* See 596.

1159. **σῶμα**, *-ατος, τό, body.*

1160. **κακοῦργος**, *-ου, evil-doer.* See 1129.

1161. **κατα-γελάω**, *ἄσομαι, to laugh* (down) *at, deride.* See 361.

Digitized by Google

1162. **ἀ-φειδής**, *-ές*; *-έστερος*, *-έστατος*, *unsparing* (*φείδομαι*, *to spare*).
1163. **στείβω**, *to tread.* See 869.
1164. **ἀ-δεῶς**, *fearlessly* (*δέος*, *fear*).
1165. **ὅποι**, *whither.*
1166. **προ-χωρέω**, *-ήσω*, *go on, advance; be of aid.* See 348.
1167. **δια-φερόντως**, *exceedingly* (*δια-φέρω*, *differ, excel*).
1168. **κατα-στρέφω**, *turn down, overturn, subdue.*
1169. **δοῦλος**, *-ου*, *a slave.*
1170. **ἀφθονία**, *-ας* (*ἄ-φθονος*, *not grudged*), *abundance.*
1171. **μήν**, *certainly, assuredly*; **γὲ μήν**, *assuredly, at least, moreover.*
1172. **δικαιοσύνη**, *-ης*, *justice.* See 489.
1173. **πλούσιος**, *-α*, *-ον*, *rich.*
1174. **φιλο-κερδέω**, *-ήσω*, *to be fond of gain.* See 1181.
1175. **δικαίως**, *justly.*
1176. **δια-χειρίζω**, *-ιῶ*, *to have in hand* (*χείρ*), *to manage.*
1177. **ἀληθινός**, *-ή*, *-όν*, *true* (to name), *genuine.* See 983.
[1178. **πλέω**, **πλεύσομαι**, **ἔπλευσα**, *to sail.* See 393.]
1179. **κερδαλέος**, *-ᾱ*, *-ον*, *gainful.*
[1180. **πειθ-αρχέω**, *-ήσω*, *to obey authority* (*ἀρχή*), *to obey.*]
1181. **κέρδος**, *-ους*, *τό*, *gain, profit.* See 1174.
1182. **ὑπ-ηρετέω**, *-ήσω*, *to be a servant* (*ὑπηρέτης*), *to serve.*
1183. **ἀ-χάριστος**, *-ον*, *thankless, unthanked.* See 699.
1184. **προ-θῡμία**, *-ας*, *zeal.* See 596.
1185. **ὑπ-ηρέτης**, *-ου*, *an under rower* (*ἐρέτης*), *a servant.*
1186. **δεινός**, *-ή*, *-όν*, *fearful, terrible, mighty; clever.* See 522.
1187. **οἰκο-νόμος**, *-ου*, *house-steward, manager.*
1188. **κατα-σκευάζω**, *-άσω*, *prepare* or *equip fully* (*to manage well*, IX. **19**). See 999.
1189. **πρόσ-οδος**, *-ου*, *ἡ*, *coming to, approach, revenue.* See 318.
1190. **ἀεί**, *always.*
1191. **προσ-δίδωμι**, *-δώσω*, *to give in addition, add.* See 485.
1192. **θαρραλέως**, *boldly* (*θαρραλέος*, *bold*). See 508.
1193. **πάομαι**, chief. in pf. and plpf. *πέπαμαι*, *ἐπεπάμην*, *have gotten, possess.* See 934.
1194. **ἥκιστα**, *least, least of all.*
1195. **φθονέω**, *-ήσω* (*φθόνος*, *envy*), *to envy.*
1196. **φανερῶς**, *manifestly* See 609.
1197. **πλουτέω**, *-ήσω*, *to be rich.* See 1173.
1198. **ἀπο-κρύπτω**, *-ψω*, *to hide from* or *away.* See 93.
1199. **εὔ-νους**, *-ουν*, *well-disposed.* See 90.
1200. **σύν-εργος**, *-ου*, *fellow-worker.* See 1129.
1201. **κατ-εργάζομαι**, *to work out, accomplish.* See 1129.

Digitized by Google

1202. **θεραπεύω**, *-εύσω, to serve, attend.* See 1110.

1203. **δια-δίδωμι**, *-δώσω, to give to different ones, distribute.* See 1191.

1204. **σκοπέω** (in pres. and impf.), *σκέψομαι* (from *σκέπτομαι*), *ἐσκεψάμην, to look at, observe.*

[1205. **κόσμος**, *-ου, order, adornment*].

1206. **καλλωπισμός**, *-οῦ, adornment* (*κάλλος, beauty; ὤψ, face*).

1207. **κοσμέω** *-ήσω, to adorn.*

1208. **θαυμαστός**, *-ή, -όν, wonderful.* See 364.

1209. **ἐπι-μέλεια**, *care, attention.* See 86.

1210. **προ-θῡμέομαι**, *to be zealous, eager.* See 596.

1211. **χαρίζομαι**, *-ίσομαι* or *-ιοῦμαι.* See 699.

1212. **ἀγαστός**, *-ή, -όν, admirable.* See 153.

1213. **βῖκος**, *-ου* (Semitic), *wine-jar* (rare).

1214. **ἡμι-δεής**, *-ές* (*δέω, to lack*), *half-lacking, half-full.*

1215. **ἐπι-τυγχάνω**, 2 aor. *-έτυχον, to happen upon, meet with.* See 452.

1216. **τήμερον**, or *σήμερον, today.*

1217. **ἐκ-πίνω**, f. *-πίομαι*, 2 aor. *-έπιον, to drink off* or *up.*

1218. **χήν**, *χηνός, ὁ, ἡ, goose.*

1219. **ἡμί-βρωτος**, *-ον, half-eaten.* See 1214.

1220. **ἄρτος**, *-ου, loaf, bread.*

1221. **ἥμισυ**, *-εος, τό, a half.*

1222. **ἐπι-λέγω**, *-λέξω, to say further* or *in reference to.*

1223. **γεύω**, *to give a taste;* mid. *to taste* (with gen.).

1224. **σπάνιος**, *-ᾱ, -ον, scarce, rare.*

1225. **δια-πέμπω**, *-ψω, to send in different directions* or *around.* See 1147.

1226. **πεινάω**, *-ήσω, to be hungry.*

1227. **προσ-καλέω**, *-έσω, to call to, summon.* See 209.

1228. **σπουδαιολογέομαι**, *to talk earnestly.* See 1008.

1229. **δηλόω**, *-ώσω, to make evident, show.*

1230. **τεκμήριον**, *-ου, sign, proof.*

1231. **ἐπι-χειρέω**, *-ήσω, to take in hand* (*χείρ*), *attempt.* See 1176.

1232. **ἀγαπάω**, *-ήσω, to love* (*ἀγάπη, love*).

1233. **τιμή**, *-ῆς, honor.*

1234. **ὀρθῶς**, *rightly.*

1235. **βέβαιος**, *-ᾱ, -ον, firm, steadfast.*

1236. **συντράπεζος**, *-ου, mess-mate.* See 1097.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER X.

1237. **ἀπο-τέμνω**, -τεμῶ, 2 aor. -έταμον, *to cut off.*

1238. **εἰσ-πίπτω**, -πεσοῦμαι, 2 aor. -έπεσον, *to fall into.* See 1003.

1239. **στρατόπεδον**, -ου, *camp.* See 504.

1240. **ἔνθεν**, *thence, whence.*

1241. **παλλακίς**, ίδος, ἡ, *mistress.*

1242. **σοφός**, -ή, -όν, *skilled, wise.*

1243. **γυμνός**, -ή, -όν, *naked* (X. 3, *lightly clad*).

1244. **ἀντι-τάττω**, -άξω, *to draw up against.* See 326.

1245. **σώζω**, σώσω, *to save, rescue.* See 1063.

1246. **ἐντός**, *within*, adv. with gen.

1247. **ἀρήγω**, -ξω, *to aid, succor.*

1248. **στρέφω**, -ψω, 2 aor. p. ἐστράφην, *to turn.*

1249. **ἀνα-λαμβάνω**, 2 aor. -έλαβον, *to take up.* See 51.

1250. **σύν-οδος**, -ου, ἡ, *coming together, meeting* (derivative, SYNOD). See 1189.

1251. **φρόνιμος**, -ον, *prudent.*

1252. **ἀπ-αλλάττω**, -ξω, *to change from* or *off, to set free;* mid. and pass. *be set free, depart.* See 874.

1253. **συν-τυγχάνω**, 2 aor. -έτυχον, *to meet with.* See 1215.

1254. **ὁμοῦ**, adv., *together.*

1255. **προσ-άγω**, -άξω, *to lead to* or *towards* (with obj. omitted, *approach*). See 464.

1256. **περι-πτύσσω**, -ξω, *to fold around, outflank.*

1257. **ἀμφοτέροθεν**, *from* or *on both sides.* See 16.

1258. **ἀνα-πτύσσω**, -ξω, *to unfold* or *fold back.*

1259. **παρ-αμείβομαι**, *to change* (*to pass on, to pass by*).

1260. **σχῆμα**, -ατος, τό, *form* (deriv. SCHEME).

1261. **σύν-ειμι**, impf. -ῆειν, *to go* or *come together, to meet.* See 352.

1262. **παρα-τάττω**, -ξω, *to draw up beside.* See 326.

1263. **αὖθις**, *again, back.*

1264. **ἐπι-διώκω**, -ξω, *to pursue after.* See 650.

1265. **λόφος**, -ου, *crest, hill.*

1266. **σημεῖον**, -ου, *sign, standard.*

1267. **ἀετός**, -οῦ, *eagle.*

1268. **πέλτη**, -ης, *crescent shield.*

1269 **ἀνα-τείνω**, -τενῶ, *stretch up* or *out, extend.* See 974.

1270. **ἀθρόος**, -ᾱ, -ον, *in crowds, in a body.*

1271. **ἄλλοθεν**, *from another place.*

1272. **ψῑλόω**, -ώσω, *to make bare, strip.*

1273. **ἀνα-βιβάζω**, *to make go up, lead up.* See 636.

1274. **ἥλιος**, -ου, *sun.*

Digitized by Google

1275. **δύνω** or **δύομαι**, *to enter; sink into* (the sea), *set.* See 1006.

1276. **ἀνα-παύω**, *to make to cease* or *rest;* mid. *to rest.* See 214.

1277. **οὐδαμοῦ**, *nowhere.*

1278. **προ-ελαύνω**, **-ελῶ**, *to drive* or *ride forward.* See 845.

1279. **δορπηστός**, **-οῦ**, *supper time.*

1280. **σῖτίον**, **-ου**, chief. in plur. *grain, food.* See 720.

1281. **ποτόν**, **-οῦ**, *drink.* See 1217.

1282. **σφοδρός**, **-ά**, **-όν**, *excessive, violent.*

1283. **ἔνδεια**, **-ᾱς**, *want.* See 183.

1284. **ἄ-δειπνος**, **-ον**, *without dinner* (**δεῖπνον**).

1285. **ἀν-άριστος**, **-ον**, *without breakfast* (**ἄριστον**).

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY.

A.

ἄ, ἄ-περ. See **ὅς, ὅσ-περ.**

ἀγάγω, ἀγαγών. See **ἄγω.**

ἀγαθός, *-ή, -όν, good, brave.*

ἄγαμαι, *admire.* **535,**[1] 4; 329.[2]

ἀγαπάω, *-ήσω, love, am pleased.*

ἀγαστός, *-ή, -όν, admirable, praiseworthy.*

ἀγγέλλω, *announce.* 329.

ἄγγελος, *-ου, ὁ, messenger.*

ἀγορά, *-ᾶς, ἡ, assembly; place of assembly, market-place; market, provisions on sale.*

ἀγοράζω, *buy;* mid., *buy* for one's self.

ἄγριος, *-ᾱ, -ον, wild.*

ἄγω, *lead, lead on, bring, convey.* **508,** 6; 330.

ἀγών, *-ῶνος, ὁ, game, contest.*

ἄ-δειπνος, *-ον, supper-less.*

ἀδελφός, *-οῦ, ὁ, brother.*

ἀ-δεῶς, *fearlessly.*

ἀδικέω, *be unjust, act unjustly; harm, wrong, injure.*

ἄ-δικος, *-ον, unjust, bad;* περί τινα, *against any one;* τὸ ἄδικον, *injustice.*

ἀεί, *always.*

ἀετός, *-οῦ, ὁ, eagle.*

Ἀθηναῖος, *-ου, ὁ, Athenian.*

ἆθλον, *-ου, τό, prize* in a contest.

ἀθροίζω, *collect, muster troops;* mid., *come together, assemble, collect.* Cf. **517,** 1; εἰκάζω, 338.

ἀθρόος, *-α, -ον, together, in a body.*

ἄ-θῡμος, *-ον, spirit-less, disinclined;* πρὸς ἀνάβασιν, *toward,* etc.

αἱ, αἵ, αἷς. See **ὁ, ὅς.**

Αἰγύπτιος, *-ᾱ, -ον, Egyptian.*

αἰδήμων, *-ον,* gen. *-όνος, modest, respectful.*

Αἰνιάν, *-ᾶνος, ὁ, Aeniánian.* The Aeniánians lived in Thessaly, occupying the valleys of the Spercheios.

αἱρετός, *-ή, -όν, taken, chosen;* οἱ αἱρετοί, *the delegates.*

αἱρέω, *take, seize, capture;* mid., *take* for one's self, *choose.* **539,** 1; 330.

αἴρω, *raise.* **518,** 2; 330.

αἰσθάνομαι, *perceive, become aware of* or *that.* **522,** 1; 330.

αἰσχρός, *-ά, -όν, disgraceful, base.* **253**; § 72, 1.

αἰσχύνω, *disgrace, shame;* mid., *be ashamed;* ὅτι, *because.* Cf. **519,** 3; 330.

αἰτέω, *ask, ask for;* mid., *ask* for something as a favor, *entreat, beg.*

αἰτιάομαι, *blame, accuse, charge.*

[1] References in this heavy type are to sections in Hadley's (Allen) Grammar.
[2] References in this type are to **pages** in Goodwin's Grammar.

Digitized by Google

αἴτιος, -ία, -ον, *chargeable with; responsible; being* or *acting as the cause of.*

ἀκῑνάκης, -ου, ὁ, *Persian dagger*, short and straight.

ἀκοντίζω, *hurl a javelin, hit* or *wound with a javelin.*

ἀκόντισις, -εως, ἡ, *use* or *hurling of the javelin.*

ἀκούω, *hear, hear about* or *of.* **507**, 1; 330.

ἀκρόπολις, -εως, ἡ, *the highest part of a city, citadel.*

ἄκρος, -ᾱ, -ον, *highest;* τὸ ἄκρον, *top;* τὰ ἄκρα, *heights, hills.*

ἄκων, -ουσα, -ον, gen. -οντος, -ούσης, *un-willing;* Κύρου ἄκοντος, *against the will of Cyrus.*

ἀλέξω, *ward off;* mid., *ward off* from one's self, *defend* one's self, *repel, punish.* **510**, 1; 331.

ἀλέτης, -ου, ὁ, *grinder;* as adj., ὄνος ἀλέτης, *grinding mill, grindstone.*

ἄλευρον, -ου, τό, *flour, wheat-flour,* usually plur.

ἀληθεύω, *speak* or *tell the truth.*

ἀληθινός, -ή, -όν, *true, trusty, genuine.*

ἁλίσκομαι, *be taken, captured, taken as prisoner.* **533**, 1; 331.

ἀλλά, *but;* ἀλλ' ὅμως, *but yet;* at the beginning of a speaker's words, *untranslated,* or like the Eng. *well;* ἀλλὰ δέχομαι, *well, I accept it.*

ἀλλήλων, *one another, each other.*

ἄλλος, *other, rest of, another;* ὁ ἄλλος, *the rest, the other;* τὰ ἄλλα ἐτίμησε, *in other respects* than what immediately follows; τι καὶ ἄλλο (ὕλης), *any other kind of;* ἄλλοι ἄλλως, *some in one way, others in another;* ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν, *in various directions.*

ἄλλως, *differently.* See **ἄλλος.**

ἄλφιτον, -ου, τό, *grains, groats; barley-grains, barley-meal;* usually plur.

ἁλῶ, ἁλώσομαι. See **ἁλίσκομαι.**

ἅμα, *at the same time, together with;* ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, *at daybreak.*

ἅμαξα, -ης, ἡ, *wagon, heavy wagon* for hauling freight.

ἁμαξιτός, -όν, *for wagons, fit for wagons.*

ἁμαρτάνω, *miss, fail, err.* **522**, 2; 331.

ἀ-μαχεί, *without resistance* or *fighting.*

Ἀμβρακιώτης, -ου, ὁ, *an Ambraciot* or *Ambracian.* Ambracia was a city of Epeiros, about 80 stadia, or 7 miles, north of the gulf named after it the Sinus Ambracius.

ἀμείνων, -ον, gen. -ονος, comp. of ἀγαθός, *better, superior.*

ἀμελέω, *be negligent* or *careless of.*

ἀ-μήχανος, -ον, *in-expedient; impracticable; insurmountable.*

ἄμπελος, -ου, ἡ, *vine.*

ἀμφί, *about, around.*

ἀμφι-λέγω, *dispute, quarrel* with words.

Ἀμφιπολίτης, *an Amphipolite.* Amphipolis was a city of Thrace on the river Strymon.

ἀμφότερος, -ᾱ, -ον, *both;* τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω, *both the sons.*

ἄν. Cf. **857**; 207.

ἐάν, for ἐάν, *if.*

ἀνά, *up,* opp. to κατά; ἀνὰ κράτος, *up to one's strength, at full speed.*

ἀνα-βαίνω, *go* or *march up, ascend, embark, proceed from the coast into the interior.* **519**, 7; 333.

ἀνάβασις, -εως, ἡ, *upward march* or *expedition, ascent.*

ἀνα-βιβάζω, *lead up.*

ἀν-αγγέλλω, *report, bring back word.* See **ἀγγέλλω.**

ἀνα-γιγνώσκω, *recognize, read.* **531**, 4; 335.

ἀναγκαῖος, -ᾱ, -ον, *necessary;* τὶ ἀναγκαῖον, *some necessity.*

Digitized by Google

ἀνάγκη, *-ης, ἡ, necessity; ἀνάγκη ἐστίν, it is necessary.*
ἀνα-γνούς. See **ἀνα-γιγνώσκω.**
ἀνα-λαμβάνω, *take up, take up with one, rescue.*
ἀναξυρίδες, *-ων, αἱ, trousers*, such as were worn by the Persians.
ἀνα-παύω, mid., *rest one's self; take*, or *go to, rest.*
ἀνα-πείθω, *persuade, induce.*
ἀν-άριστος, *-ον, without breakfast.*
ἀν-αρπάζω, *snatch up, carry off.*
ἀνα-στάς. See **ἀν-ίστημι.**
ἀνα-στρέφω, *turn back* or *around, retreat, advance.* **508**, 26; 355.
ἀνα-σχέσθαι. See **ἀν-έχω.**
ἀνα-ταράττω, *stir up, confuse.*
ἀνα-τείνω, *stretch* or *hold up, raise.*
ἄνδρα, ἀνδρός. See **ἀνήρ.**
ἀνδράποδον, *-ου, τό, slave, captive.*
ἀν-έβην. See **ἀνα-βαίνω.**
ἄνευ, *without.*
ἀν-έχω, *hold up, sustain;* mid., *endure.*
ἀνήρ, *ἀνδρός, ὁ, man*, meaning about the same as the Lat. **vir.**
ἀνθ', by elision, for **ἀντί.**
ἄνθρωπος, *man*, **homo**; *human being;* sometimes used in a contemptuous sense.
ἀνιάω, *trouble, annoy.*
ἀν-ίστημι, *raise* or *start up;* mid., *rise, stand up.*
ἀντ', by elision, for **ἀντί.**
ἀντ-αγοράζω, *buy in return* or *exchange.*
ἀντί, *against, over against, instead of, in return for.*
ἀντίος, *-ᾱ, -ον, opposite; ἀ. ἰέναι, go against.*
ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζομαι, *make counter preparations.*
ἀντι-πέρᾱς, *opposite.*
ἀντιστασιώτης, *political opponent* or *adversary.*
ἀντι-τάττω, *draw up* or *set in line against.*
ἄντρον, *-ου, τό, cave.*
ἀνυστός, *-όν, practicable, possible.*
ἄνω, *upwards, high up, into the interior* (from the sea-coast).
ἀξίνη, *-ης, ἡ, axe.*
ἄξιος, *-ᾱ, -ον, worth, worthy.*
ἀξιόω, *consider as proper, ask for* as a proper thing.
ἄξων, *-ονος, ὁ, axle.*
ἀπ-αγγέλλω, *bring back tidings* from a place or person, *report.*
ἀπ-αγορεύω, *refuse, give up; give out* through exhaustion, *am fatigued.*
ἀπ-άγω, *bring* or *lead away* or *back.*
ἀπ-αιτέω, *ask for* or *demand* as one's right.
ἀπ-αλλάττω, *get rid of, remove;* mid. and pass., *be freed from; withdraw.* **514**, 1; 331.
ἁπαλός, *-ή, -όν, soft, tender.*
ἅπαξ, *once.*
ἀ-παράσκευος, *un-prepared.*
ἅπᾶς, *-ᾶσα, -ᾶν, entire, all* without exception.
ἀπ-έδωκα. See **ἀπο-δίδωμι.**
ἀπ-έθανον. See **ἀπο-θνήσκω.**
ἄπ-ειμι, *go from* or *away, depart, desert.*
ἀπ-ελαύνω, *drive away, ride* or *march away, retreat.* **521**, 1; 338.
ἀπ-ελθών. See **ἀπ-έρχομαι.**
ἀπ-έρχομαι, *go away, come from, withdraw, desert.* **539**, 2; 340.
ἀπ-έχω, *be away from, be distant; refrain from.*
ἀπ-ήγαγον. See **ἀπ-άγω.**
ἀπ-ῆειν. See **ἄπ-ειμι.**
ἀπ-ήλαυνον. See **ἀπ-ελαύνω.**
ἀπ-ῆλθον. See **ἀπ-έρχομαι.**
ἀπ-ηλλάγην. See **ἀπ-αλλάττω.**
ἀπ-ιέναι, ἄπ-ιμεν. See **ἄπ-ειμι.**
ἀπό, with the gen., *from, from off, away from; by means of.*

Digitized by Google

ἀπο-βιβάζω, *cause to go off* or *away from, disembark* (trans.). **424.**

ἀπο-βλέπω, *look away, look away toward.* **508,** 8 ; 334.

ἀπο-γιγνώσκω, *decide negatively, relinquish* or *abandon* a thought or purpose. **531,** 4 ; 335.

ἀπο-δέδρᾱκα. See **ἀπο-διδράσκω.**

ἀπο-δείκνῡμι, *show ; appoint.* **528,** 3; 336.

ἀπο-διδράσκω, *run off* or *away; sneak away; escape.* **530,** 2 ; 337.

ἀπο-δίδωμι, *give back, return* what is due ; *pay.*

ἀπο-δοῦναι, ἀπο-δώσω. See preceding.

ἀπο-κρῑ́νομαι, *reply.* **519,** 2 ; 345.

ἀπο-κρύπτω, *hide away, conceal ;* mid., *hide* for one's self ; *hoard* money. **513.** 10 ; 345.

ἀπο-κτείνω, *kill, put to death ; deliver to the executioner.* **519,** 4 ; 345.

ἀπο-λαμβάνω, *take back, receive back.* **523,** 5 ; 346.

ἀπο-λείπω, *leave, leave behind ; desert.* **511,** 7; 346.

ἀπο-λήψομαι. See **ἀπο-λαμβάνω.**

ἀπ-όλλῡμι, mid., *be destroyed, perish, die.* **528,** 8 ; 349.

Ἀπόλλων, *-ωνος, ὁ, Apollo.*

ἀπο-πέμπω, *send away* or *back ; τοὺς δασμούς, remit,* etc. **508,** 21; 351.

ἀπο-πλέω, *sail away* or *back, sail homeward.* **512,** 3 ; 352.

ἀπορέω, *be in distress* or *without resource, be perplexed.*

ἀπορῐ́ᾱ, *-ῐ́ᾱς, ἡ, distress, difficulty.*

ἀπό-ρ-ρητος, *-ον, secret.*

ἀπο-σπάω, *draw away from, from* one's pursuer, hence *outstrip.*

ἀπο-στῆναι. See **ἀφ-ίστημι.**

ἀπο-σῡλάω, *strip off, despoil, rob.*

ἀπο-τείνω, *stretch away, extend.* **519,** 5 ; 356.

ἀπο-τέμνω, *cut off.* **521,** 8 ; 356.

ἀπο-φαίνω, *show, reveal ;* mid., *show one's self, appear, show* for one's self, *express* an opinion. **518,** 19 ; 358.

ἀπο-φεύγω, *flee away, run away.* **511,** 15 ; 358.

ἀπο-χωρέω, *go away, retreat, return.*

ἀπο-ψηφίζομαι, *vote against.*

ἅπτω, mid., *touch.* **513,** 1; 332.

ἀπ-ωλόμην. See **ἀπ-όλλῡμι.**

ἄρα, inferential, *therefore, then; probably.*

ἀργύριον, *-ου, τό, silver money, money.*

ἀρετή, *-ῆς, ἡ, virtue, goodness ; good service.*

ἀρήγω, *succor, render aid.*

ἀριθμός, *-οῦ, ὁ, number, enumeration, total amount.*

ἄριστον, *-ου, τό, breakfast.*

ἄριστος, *-η, -ον, best, best* in rank, *noblest ; most advantageous.*

Ἀρκάς, *-άδος, ὁ, Arcadian, native of Arcadia.*

ἄρκτος, *-ου, ἡ, bear, Great Bear, north.*

ἅρμα, *-ατος, τό, chariot* for war.

ἁρμάμαξα, *-ης, ἡ, covered carriage.*

ἁρπάζω, *seize, carry away ; plunder.* **517.** 1; 333.

Ἄρτεμις, *-ιδος, ἡ, Artemis,* the Lat. **Diana.**

ἄρτος, *-ου, ὁ, bread.*

ἀρχαῖος, *-α, -ον, old, ancient ; τὸ ἀρχαῖον, formerly.*

ἀρχή, *-ῆς, ἡ, beginning, rule, government, province.*

ἄρχω, *begin, command.* **508, 7**; 333.

ἅρωμα, *-ατος, τό, spice.*

ἀσθενέω, *am sick* or *feeble.*

ἀσθενής, *-ές, feeble.*

ἀσπίς, *-ίδος, ἡ,* large oval *shield* of the heavy-armed soldiers.

ἀστράπτω, *gleam, flash.*

ἀ-σφαλής, *-ές, firm, safe ; ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ, in a safe place.*

Digitized by Google

ἀ-σφαλῶς, *safely*.
ἄ-τακτος, *-ον*, *disarranged, in disorder*.
ἀτῑμάζω, *dishonor*.
Ἀττικός, *-ή, -όν*, *Attic, Athenian*.
αὖ, *again*.
αὖθις, *again*.
αὕτη, αὗται. See **οὗτος**.
αὐτίκα, *immediately, at once*.
αὐτόθι, *there, in this* or *that place*.
αὐτόματος, *-η, -ον*, *self-moved; ἀπὸ* or *ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, voluntarily, of one's own accord*.
αὐτομολέω, *desert*.
αὐτόμολος, *-ου, ὁ*, *deserter*.
αὐτός, *-ή, -ό*, **ipse**, *self;* ὁ *αὐτός*, **idem**, *same;* in oblique cases it is the ordinary pron. 3d pers.
αὐτοῦ, *in this* or *that place, here, there*.
αὑτοῦ. See **ἑαυτοῦ**.
ἀφ', for *ἀπό* when *ο* is elided before a rough breathing.
ἀφ-αιρέω, *seize* or *take away, rob;* usually mid. **539**, 1; 330.
ἀ-φανής, *-ές*, *unseen, out of sight, gone*.
ἀφειδῶς.
ἀφ-εστήκειν. See **ἀφ-ίστημι**.
ἀφθονία, *-ᾱς, ἡ*, *abundance*.
ἀφ-ίημι, *send away* or *off, dismiss, release*. **534**, 3; 342.
ἀφ-ικνέομαι, *arrive, come to*. **524**, 2; 342.
ἀφ-ιππεύω, *ride away* on horseback.
ἀφ-ίστημι, mid., *stand off* or *away, revolt*. **534**, 5; 342.
Ἀχαιός, *-ά, -όν*, *Achaean*. Achaia was a portion of the Peloponnesus, bordering on the Corinthian Gulf.
ἀ-χάριστος, *-ον*, *without thanks, unrewarded*.
ἄχθομαι, dep., *be displeased*. **510**, 2; 333.
ἀψίνθιον, *-ου, τό*, *wormwood*.

B.

Βαβυλών, *-ῶνος, ἡ*, *Babylon*.
Βαβυλώνιος, *-ᾱ, -ον*, *Babylonian*.
βάθος, *-ους, τό*, *depth*.
βαθύς, *-εῖα, -ύ*, *deep*.
βάλανος, *-ου, ἡ*, *nut*.
βάλλω, *throw, hit*. **518**, 4; 334.
βαρβαρικός, *-ή, -όν*, *barbaric, barbarian*.
βαρβαρικῶς, *in a barbarian way; in the barbarian tongue*.
βάρβαρος, *barbarian;* οἱ *βάρβαροι*, people who were not Greeks, *barbarians*.
βασιλεία, *-ᾱς, ἡ*, *kingdom*.
βασίλειος, *-ον*, *kingly, royal;* τὰ *βασίλεια* [*δώματα*], *royal rooms* or *residence*.
βασιλεύς, *-έως, ὁ*, *king*.
βασιλεύω, *am king*.
βασιλικός, *-ή, -όν*, *kingly, royal*.
βέβαιος, *-α, -ον*, *firm*.
βελτίων, *-ον*, *better*, *βέλτιστος*, *-η, -ον*, *best*.
βίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ*, *force*.
βιάζομαι, *use force, compel*.
βιαίως, *forcibly, violently*.
βῖκος, *-ου, ὁ*, *pitcher*.
βίος, *-ου, ὁ*, *life*.
βλέπω, *look;* of objects, *pointed* or *directed towards*. **508**, 8; 334.
βοάω, *shout out, cry aloud*.
βοηθέω (*βοή, shout; θέω*, run), *hasten with help, bring aid*.
Βοιωτός, *-οῦ, ὁ*, *Boeotian*. Boeotia lay northwest of Attica.
βουλεύω, *plan, counsel;* mid. *deliberate, consult*.
βούλομαι, *wish*. **510**, 4; 334.
βραδέως, *slowly*.
βραχύς, *-εῖα, -ύ*, *short;* *βραχύ* (adv. acc.), *short distance*.
βρέχω, *wet, moisten*. **508**, 9.
βωμός, *-οῦ, ὁ*, *altar*.

Digitized by Google

Γ.

γάρ, postpos., *for; καὶ γάρ*, **etenim**, *for.*

γέ, postpos. and enclitic, *at least, you see, you know.*

γεγένημαι, γέγονα. See **γίγνομαι.**

γέλως, -ωτος, ὁ, *laughter.*

γενέσθαι, γενοίμην. See **γίγνομαι.**

γένος, -ους, τό, *birth.*

γερρο-φόρος, -ου, ὁ, *soldier with* or *carrying a wicker-shield.*

γεύω, mid., *taste.*

γέφῡρα, -ᾱς, ἡ, *bridge.*

γῆ, γῆς, ἡ, *earth, land.*

γή-λοφος, -ου, ὁ, *hill.*

γίγνομαι, *become, am born; result.* 506, 1; 335.

γνοίην, γνώσομαι. See **γιγνώσκω.**

γνώμη, -ης, ἡ, *opinion, plan, expectation.*

γόνυ, γόνατος, τό, *knee.*

γράφω, *write.* 508, 11; 335.

γυμνάζω, *exercise.*

γυμνής, -ῆτος, ὁ, *light-armed soldier.*

γυμνός, -ή, -όν, *half-dressed, naked, exposed* to danger.

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ, *woman, wife.*

Δ.

δ', by elision, for **δέ.**

δακρύω, *weep.*

δαπανάω, -ήσω, *spend* or *squander money.*

δᾰρεικός, -οῦ, ὁ, *daric.* A Persian gold coin, worth about $4.00.

δασμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *tax, revenue.*

δέ, postpos., *but, for,* frequently *and.*

δεδιώς, δέδοικα. See **δείδω.**

δέδο-μαι. See **δίδωμι.**

δεηθῆναι, δεῖ. See **δέω.**

δείδω, *fear, be afraid.* 490, 5; 336.

δείλη, -ης, ἡ, *afternoon, evening.*

δειλός, -ή, -όν, *cowardly.*

δεινός, -ή, -όν, *terrible; able, skilful; τὸ δεινόν, danger.*

δεῖται. See **δέω.**

δέκα, *ten.*

δένδρον, -ου, τό, *tree.*

δέξομαι. See **δέχομαι.**

δεξιός, -ά, -όν, *right; ἡ δεξιά* (χείρ), *right hand, pledge; ἐν δεξιᾷ, on the right* (hand).

δέρμα, -ατος, τό, the *skin* as removed from the body, *hide.*

δεῦρο, *hither.*

δεύτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, *second; τὸ δεύτερον, second time.*

δέχομαι, *receive, accept.* Page 357; 336.

δέω, *need;* mid., *want, desire, beg; δεῖ, it is necessary; τὸ δέον, the desired thing.*

δή, postpos., a strengthening particle, *verily, indeed, just;* in questions, *pray.*

δῆλος, *evident; δῆλον ὅτι, evidently.*

δηλόω, *show, make manifest.*

διά, with gen., *through; διὰ ταχέων, quickly;* with acc. *on account of.*

δια-βαίνω, *go through, cross.* 519, 7; 333.

διάβασις, -εως, ἡ, *place of crossing, ford.*

διαβατός, -ή, -όν, *fordable.*

δια-βάς, δια-βῆναι. See **δια-βαίνω.**

δι-αγγέλλω, *bring word through, report.* G. 329.

δια-γίγνομαι, *come through, subsist; continue, pass* time.

δι-άγω, *lead through; continue; pass time.*

δια-δέχομαι, *receive through* or *in a line, relieve.*

δια-δίδωμι, *distribute.*

δια-κινδῡνεύω, *run all risks, make a desperate attempt.*

Digitized by Google

δια-κόπτω, *cut* or *break through, cut to pieces.*
διᾱκόσιοι, -αι, -α, *two hundred.*
δια-λέγομαι, *converse, confer with.*
δια-λείπω, *leave between, stand at intervals.*
δια-πέμπω, *send around* or *among.*
δι-αρπάζω, *plunder.* 517, 1; 333.
δια-σπάω, *draw apart, separate, scatter.*
δια-σπείρω, *scatter;* mid., intrans.
δια-στάς. See **δι-ίστημι.**
δια-τάττω, *arrange* or *draw up* in line of battle. 514, 9; 356.
δια-τελέω, *finish* anything, as a distance.
δια-τίθημι, *dispose, handle* or *treat* persons. 534, 1; 356.
δια-τρίβω, *wear away, waste time.* 508, 3; 357.
δια-φερόντως, *differently, pre-eminently.*
δια-χειρίζω, *manage, control, administer.*
διδάσκω, *teach, instruct, inform.* 533, 8; 337.
δίδωμι, *give.* 534, 4; 337.
δι-έβαινον, δι-έβην. See **δια-βαίνω.**
δι-ελαύνω, *drive* or *ride through.*
δι-έρχομαι, *come* or *go through;* λόγος διῆλθε, *a rumor spread through* (the army). 539, 2; 340.
δι-έχω, *have between, be apart* or *distant.* 508, 16; 340.
δι-ήλασε. See **δι-ελαύνω.**
δι-ῆλθον. See **δι-έρχομαι.**
δι-ίστημι, *set apart;* mid., *stand apart; open the ranks.* 534, 5; 342.
δίκαιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *just;* n. pl., *justice.*
δίκη, -ης, ἡ, *justice.*
διό, = διὰ ὅ, *on account of which, wherefore.*
δισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *two thousand.*
διφθέρᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, tanned *skin; bag.*
δίφρος, -ου, ὁ, wagon or chariot *seat.*
διώκω, *pursue, chase, rout* an enemy. 494.
διῶρυξ, -υχος, ἡ, *trench, canal.*
δοθῆναι, δοίην. See **δίδωμι.**
δοκέω, *think, suppose;* δοκεῖ, *it seems, seems best;* τὰ δόξαντα, *the things which seemed best* or *were determined upon.* 509, 3; 337.
Δόλοψ, -οπος, ὁ, *Dolopian.* The Dolopes lived in the southwestern parts of the Pindus range.
δόξᾱς, δόξω. See **δοκέω.**
δορκάς, -άδος, ἡ, *gazelle.*
δορπηστός, -οῦ, ὁ, *supper-time, evening.*
δόρυ, -ατος, τό, *spear* used by the Greek hoplite.
δοῦλος, -ου, ὁ, *slave.*
δοῦναι, δούς. See **δίδωμι.**
δουπέω, -ήσω, *rattle, clash.*
δρεπανη-φόρος, -ον, *scythe-bearing.*
δρέπανον, -ου, τό, *scythe.*
δρόμος, -ου, ὁ, *a run, race;* δρόμῳ, *with a run, at full speed.*
δύναμαι, *am able, can* (ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο, *as much* or *as well as he could*); *be worth, valued at.* 535, 5; 337.
δύναμις, -εως, ἡ, *force, ability; military force* or *strength.*
δυνάστης, -ου, ὁ, *man in power, officer.*
δυνατός, -ή, -όν, *able, possible;* ἡ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, *as much as possible.*
δύω, δύσω, *enter;* of the sun, *set.* 507, 3; 337.
δύο, *two.*
δυσ-πόρευτος, -ον, *hard* or *difficult to pass through* or *along.*
δῶ, δώσω. See **δίδωμι.**
δώδεκα, *twelve.*
δῶρον, -ου, τό, *gift.*

Digitized by Google

E.

ἐάν, *if;* followed by the subj.
ἑαυτοῦ, **-ῆς**, **sui**, *of himself.*
ἐάω, *ἐάσω*, *permit, allow.*
ἐγγύς, comp. *ἐγγύτερον* or **-τέρω**, *near.*
ἐγενόμην, **ἐγιγνόμην**. See **γίγνομαι.**
ἐγ-κέλευστος, *-ον, bidden, instructed.*
ἐγ-κρατής, *-ές, in power* or *powerful over.*
ἔγνων. See **γιγνώσκω.**
ἐγώ, *I.*
ἔγωγε, *I for my part,* **equidem.**
ἔδει, **ἐδεῖτο**. See **δέω.**
ἔδεισαν. See **δείδω.**
ἔδωκα. See **δίδωμι.**
ἔζων. See **ζάω.**
ἐθελοντής, *-ου, ὁ, volunteer;* as adj. *willing.*
ἐθέλω, *am willing, choose, desire.* 510, 10; 337.
ἐθέμην. See **τίθημι.**
ἔθνος, *-ους, τό, tribe, nation; κατ' ἔθνη, tribe by tribe.*
εἰ, *if, whether; εἰ μή, unless; εἰ δὲ μή, but if not.*
εἴᾱ, **εἴᾶσα**. See **ἐάω.**
εἰδέναι. See **οἶδα.**
εἶδον. See **ὁράω.**
εἰδῶ, **εἰδῶς**. See **οἶδα.**
εἴην, **εἴησαν**. See **εἰμί.**
εἰκάζω, *liken unto, conjecture, suppose.* G. 338.
εἴκοσι(ν), *twenty.*
εἰλόμην, **εἷλον**. See **αἱρέω.**
εἰμί, *am, exist; ἔστι(ν), it is possible; ἔστι δ' ὅστις, somebody.* 537, 1; 338.
εἶμι, *go, come.* 536, 1; 338.
εἶπον. See **φημί.**
εἴ-περ, *if really.*
εἴρηκα. See **φημί.**
εἰς, *into, against;* with num. *as much as, about.*
εἷς, *μία, ἕν, one.*
εἰσ-άγω, *bring into.*
εἰσ-βάλλω, *throw into, make an entrance into;* of rivers, etc., *empty into.*
εἰσ-βολή, *-ῆς, ἡ, entrance.*
εἶσ-ειμι, *come* or *go into* or *in.*
εἰσ-ελαύνω, *ride* or *march into, enter.*
εἰσ-ελθεῖν. See **εἰσ-έρχομαι.**
εἰσ-έρχομαι, *come into, enter.*
εἰσ-ῆειν. See **εἶσ-ειμι.**
εἰσ-ήλασα. See **εἰσ-ελαύνω.**
εἰσ-ήχθην. See **εἰσ-άγω.**
εἴσομαι, **-εται**. See **οἶδα.**
εἰσ-πηδάω, *-ήσομαι, leap into.*
εἰσ-πίπτω, *fall upon;* of an army, *enter, invade.*
εἴσω, *within.*
εἶτα, *then, in the next place, thereupon.*
εἶχον. See **ἔχω.**
εἷων. See **ἐάω.**
ἐκ. See **ἐξ.**
ἕκαστος, *-η, -ον, each;* plur., *several.*
ἑκάτερος, *-ᾱ, -ον, either, each.*
ἑκατέρωθεν, *on either* or *both sides.*
ἑκατέρωσε, *in both directions.*
ἑκατόν, *one hundred.*
ἐκ-βάλλω, *throw* or *drive out, expel.*
ἐκ-δέρω, *-δερῶ, skin, flay.*
ἐκεῖ, *there, in that place.*
ἐκεῖνος, *-η, -ο, that, that one; he, she, it.*
ἐκ-καλύπτω, *uncover.*
ἐκκλησίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, assembly.*
ἐκ-κλίνω, *bend out of position; give way, flee.*
ἐκ-κομίζω, *bring* or *fetch out.*
ἐκ-κόπτω, *cut out, destroy* by cutting out, *e. g.* trees.
ἐκ-κῡμαίνω, *-ανῶ, bend* (in any direction) like a wave.
ἐκ-λείπω, *leave, abandon, forsake.*
ἐκ-πεπτωκώς. See **ἐκ-πίπτω.**
ἐκ-πίνω, *drain, drink up.*
ἐκ-πίπτω, *fall out, am banished;* **οἱ ἐκπεπτωκότες**, *the exiles.*

Digitized by Google

ἐκ-πλαγείς. See **ἐκ-πλήττω.**
ἐκ-πλήττω, *strike out* of one's senses; *terrify, amaze.*
ἐκ-ποδών, *out of the way.*
ἐκτώμην. See **κτάομαι.**
ἐκ-φέρω, *bring out, publish, report.*
ἐκ-φεύγω, *flee out of danger, escape.*
ἑκών, *-οῦσα, -όν, willing, of one's own accord.*
ἔλαβον. See **λαμβάνω.**
ἐλαύνω, *drive, ride, march.*
ἐλάφαιος, *-ον, of* or *belonging to a deer.*
ἐλεῖν, ἑλέσθαι. See **αἱρέω.**
ἐλελίζω, *raise the war-cry.*
ἔλεξα, ἐλέχθην. See **λέγω.**
ἐλευθερίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, freedom.*
ἐλήφθην. See **λαμβάνω.**
ἐλθεῖν, ἐλθών. See **ἔρχομαι.**
Ἑλλάς, *-άδος, ἡ, Greece.*
Ἕλλην, *-ηνος, ὁ, Greek.*
Ἑλληνικός, *-ή, -όν, Grecian.*
Ἑλληνικῶς, in the Greek way, *in Greek.*
Ἑλλησποντιακός, *-ή, -όν, Hellespontic.*
ἕλοιμι, -οίμην, -όμενος. See **αἱρέω.**
ἐλπίς, *-ίδος, ἡ, hope;* **ἐλπίδας λέγων,** *expressing hopes.*
ἑλῶν. See **ἐλαύνω.**
ἐμαυτοῦ, *-ῆς, of myself.*
ἐμ-βαίνω, *go into, embark.*
ἐμ-βάλλω, *throw into;* of rivers, *flow into, empty;* **ἐ. πληγάς,** *inflict blows, thrash;* **ἐ. χῖλόν,** *give fodder* (to horses); in battle, *charge, fall upon.*
ἔμεινα. See **μένω.**
ἐμός, *-ή, -όν, my.*
ἐμοῦ. See **ἐγώ.**
ἔμ-παλιν, *backwards, back again.*
ἐμ-πίπλημι, *fill, satisfy.*
ἔμ-πλεως, *-ων, full.*
ἐμπόριον, *-ου, τό, port of trade, market.*
ἔμ-προσθεν, *before, in front.*
ἐν, *in, on;* **ἐν τούτῳ,** *at this time.*
ἕν, ἑνός. See **εἷς.**
ἔνδεια, *-ᾱς, ἡ, want, need, lack* (of provisions).
ἐν-δέκατος, *-η, -ον, eleventh.*
ἐν-δύω, mid. and perf. act., *put upon* one's body.
ἐν-έβαλον. See **ἐμ-βάλλω.**
ἐν-εδρεύω, *lie in ambush.*
ἔν-ειμι, *am in* or *on; am in* a place, *am there.*
ἕνεκα, ἕνεκεν, *on account of, for the sake of.*
ἐνενήκοντα, *ninety.*
ἐν-ῆν. See **ἔν-ειμι.**
ἔνθα, *there, here; where; thereupon.*
ἔνθεν, *thence;* **ἔνθεν . . . ἔνθεν,** *on this side . . . on that side, on all sides.*
ἐνί, ἐνός. See **εἷς.**
ἔνιοι, *-αι, -α, some.*
ἐνίοτε, *sometimes, occasionally.*
ἐννέα, *nine.*
ἐν-οικέω, *inhabit;* **οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες,** *the inhabitants.*
ἐν-οράω, *see* in a thing, *perceive, distinguish.*
ἐνταῦθα, *here, there; hereupon, then.*
ἐντελής, *-ές, full, complete.*
ἐντεῦθεν, *thence, thereupon.*
ἐν-τίθημι, *place on, put on board.*
ἐντός, *within.*
ἐν-τυγχάνω, *happen upon, find.*
Ἐνυάλιος, *-ου, ὁ, Enyálius,* epithet of Ares, as god of destructive warfare.
ἐξ, with gen., *out of, forth, from.*
ἐξ-αγγέλλω, *bring out word, report.*
ἐξ-άγω, *bring* or *conduct out; induce, tempt.*
ἐξ-αιτέω, *demand* as a right, *beg off;* mid., *demand, beg for* as a favor.
ἑξακισχίλιοι, *-αι, -α, six thousand.*
ἑξακόσιοι, *-αι, -α, six hundred.*
ἐξ-έβαλον. See **ἐκ-βάλλω.**
ἐξ-ελαύνω, *drive out, march.*

Digitized by Google

ἐξ-ελθεῖν. See **ἐξ-έρχομαι.**
ἐξ-έλιπον. See **ἐκ-λείπω.**
ἐξ-έρχομαι, *come* or *go out, escape.*
ἐξέτασις, *-εως, ἡ, review, examination.*
ἐξ-έφυγον. See **ἐκ-φεύγω.**
ἐξ-ῆλθον. See **ἐξ-έρχομαι.**
ἐξ-ήχθην. See **ἐξ-άγω.**
ἐξ-ικνέομαι, *come as far as, reach.*
ἐξ-ίστημι, mid., *stand out* or *away from.*
ἔξομεν. See **ἔχω.**
ἐξ-οπλίζω, *arm fully* or *completely.*
ἐξοπλισία, *-ᾱς, ἡ, the arming* or *equipping of soldiers.*
ἔξω, adv., *outside; τὸ ἔξω, the outside* or *outer.*
ἔπαθον. See **πάσχω.**
ἐπ-αινέω, *-έσω, applaud, praise.*
ἐπεί, conj., *when, after; since* (causal).
ἐπειδάν, conj. with subj., *whenever.*
ἐπειδή, *when indeed, after.*
ἔπ-ειμι, *am upon* or *over.*
ἔπ-ειμι, *come against, attack, advance.*
ἔπεισα, ἐπείσθην. See **πείθω.**
ἔπειτα, *thereupon, then, afterwards.*
ἐπ-έλιπον. See **ἐπι-λείπω.**
ἐπ-επάμην, -το. See **πάομαι.**
ἐπ-έστην. See **ἐφ-ίστημι.**
ἐπ-ῆειν, -ῆεσαν. See **ἔπ-ειμι** (2).
ἐπ-ῆν. See **ἔπ-ειμι** (1).
ἐπ-ῄνεσαν. See **ἐπ-αινέω.**
ἐπί, with gen., *on, upon; ἐπὶ τετράρων, in fours, four deep; ἐφ' ἡμῶν, in our time;* with dat. *at, upon, for* (purpose); *ἐπὶ τούτῳ, for that object; ἐπὶ θανάτῳ, to death; ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, in the power of,* etc.; with acc. *to, against; ἐπὶ πολύ, to a great distance.*
ἐπ-ίᾶσι(ν). See **ἔπ-ειμι** (2).
ἐπι-βουλεύω, *plot against.*
ἐπιβουλή, *-ῆς, ἡ, conspiracy, plot.*
ἐπι-δείκνῡμι, *show, exhibit.*
ἐπι-διώκω, *pursue.*
ἐπι-θεῖναι, ἐπι-θῶ. See **ἐπι-τίθημι.**
ἐπι-θῡμέω, *desire* or *long for.*
ἐπι-κάμπτω, *bend* or *bring* (the wings of an army) *together.*
ἐπικίνδῡνος, *-ον, dangerous.*
ἐπι-κρύπτω, *cover over, conceal.*
ἐπι-λέγω, *say in reference to* or *in connection with* a thing.
ἐπι-λείπω, *leave, fail, forsake.*
ἐπιμέλεια, *-ᾱς, ἡ, care, attention.*
ἐπι-μελέομαι, *care for, give attention to.*
ἐπίμπλην. See **πίμπλημι.**
ἐπι-πίπτω, *fall upon, attack.*
ἐπίπονος, *-ον, laborious, difficult.*
ἐπί-ρ-ρυτος, *-ον, well-watered.*
ἐπι-σῑτίζομαι, *lay in provisions.*
ἐπι-σῑτισμός, *-οῦ, ὁ, a laying in of provisions.*
ἐπίσταμαι, *know, know how.* **535,** 6; 339.
ἐπι-στήσᾱς. See **ἐφ-ίστημι.**
ἐπιστολή, *-ῆς, ἡ, letter.*
ἐπι-σφάττω, *slay upon* or *over.* **514,** 15; 355.
ἐπιτήδειος, *-ᾱ, -ον, suitable, fitting; τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, provisions.*
ἐπι-τίθημι, *place upon; ἐ. δίκην, inflict punishment.*
ἐπι-τρέπω, *turn* or *give over to, allow.* **508,** 28; 357.
ἐπι-τυγχάνω, *happen upon, find.* **523,** 9; 357.
ἐπι-φέρω, *bring upon;* mid., *rush upon, attack.*
ἐπι-χειρέω, *undertake, attempt.*
ἐπι-χωρέω, *move upon, advance.*
ἐπ-ιών, -οῦσα, -όν. See **ἔπ-ειμι** (2).
ἔπλευσα. See **πλέω.**
ἕπομαι, *follow.* **508,** 13; 339.
ἑπτά, septem, *seven.*
ἑπτα-κόσιοι, *-αι, -α, seven hundred.*
Ἑπτάχα, *-ης, ἡ, Epyaxa.*
ἐπυθόμην. See **πυνθάνομαι.**
ἔργον, *-ου, τό, work, action; τὰ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργα, the deeds of war.*

Digitized by Google

ἐρεῖ. See **φημί.**

ἔρημος, *-ον, deserted, desert; deprived of, without.*

ἐρίζω, *strive* or *contend with.*

ἑρμηνεύς, *-έως, ὁ, interpreter.*

ἔρυμα, *-ατος, τό, defence, protection.*

ἐρυμνός, *-ή, -όν, fortified, strong* (as a fort).

ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, 2 aor. **ἦλθον,** *come, go.* **539,** 2; 340.

ἐρωτάω, *-ήσω, ask.*

ἐσθίω, ἔδομαι, 2 aor. **ἔφαγον,** *eat.*

ἐσοίμην, ἔσται, ἐστέ, ἐστί(ν). See **εἰμί.**

ἕστε, conj., *until.*

ἕστηκα, ἑστώς, ἔστην. See **ἵστημι.**

ἔσχατος, *-η, -ον, last, farthest.*

ἔσχον. See **ἔχω.**

ἔσωθεν, *within; τὸ ἔσωθεν, the inner.*

ἔσωσα. See **σώζω.**

ἔταξα, ἐτάχθην. See **τάττω.**

ἕτερος, *-ᾱ, -ον, one* or *other* of two, *another* of two; plur., *one* or *other*, or *another* of two divisions, parties, etc.

ἐτετῑμήμην. See **τῑμάω.**

ἔτι, *yet, yet more; hereafter, afterwards, still.*

ἕτοιμος, *-η, -ον, ready.*

ἔτρωσα. See **τιτρώσκω,** *wound.*

ἔτυχον. See **τυγχάνω.**

εὖ, adv., *well.*

εὐδαιμονίζω, *congratulate.*

εὐδαίμων, *-ον, fortunate, prosperous.*

εὐήθεια, *-ᾱς, ἡ, folly.*

εὐήθης, *-ες, foolish.*

εὐθύς, *immediately; εὐ. παῖδες ὄντες, immediately from childhood, from very childhood.*

εὔνοια, *-ᾱς, ἡ, good-will.*

εὐνοϊκῶς, *with good-will; εὖν. ἔχειν, be well disposed, affectionate.*

εὔνοος, *-ον,* contr. to **εὔνους,** *-ουν, of good mind* or *feeling, well disposed.*

εὑρίσκω, *find.* **533,** 5; 340.

εὖρος, *-ους, τό, width, breadth.*

εὐταξίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, good order, arrangement, discipline.*

εὔ-τολμος, *-ον, bold, courageous.*

εὐ-τυχέω, *be successful.*

Εὐφράτης, *the Euphrates.*

εὐχή, *-ῆς, ἡ, prayer, wish.*

εὔχομαι, *pray, wish earnestly.*

εὐ-ώδης, *-ες, fragrant.*

εὐ-ώνυμος, *-ον, left, left side, left wing* of an army.

ἐφάνην. See **φαίνω.**

ἔφασαν. See **φημί.**

Ἔφεσος, *Ephĕsus;* in Asia Minor at the mouth of the Caÿster.

ἐφ-εστήκεσαν. See **ἐφ-ίστημι.**

ἔφην, ἔφη. See **φημί.**

ἐφ-ίστημι, *ἐπι-στήσω, place* or *set upon* or *in; ἐ. τὸν ἵππον, check,* etc.; mid., *stand by* or *over.*

ἔφυγον. See **φεύγω.**

ἐχθρός, *-οῦ, ὁ,* personal *enemy, foe.*

ἔχω, impf. **εἶχον,** ἕξω, 2 aor. **ἔσχον,** *have, hold; εὐνοϊκῶς ἐ., be kindly disposed; οὕτως ἐ., be so, be in the same condition; κακῶς ἐ., be in a bad condition, go badly; ἐχόμενος,* mid., *hold one's self to, come next.* **508,** 16; 340.

ἕψομαι. See **ἕπομαι.**

ἑώρων, ἑώρᾱ. See **ὁράω.**

ἕως, ἕω, Attic decl., *dawn.*

ἕως, conj., *while.*

Z.

ζάω, *ζήσω, live.* **412**; 341.

ζεύγνῡμι, *ζεύξω, join.* Lat. **jungo.** **528,** 5; 341.

Ζεύς, *Διός, Zeus,* the king of gods and men.

ζῆν. See **ζάω.**

ζηλωτός, *-ή, -όν, enviable, one to be envied.*

ζώνη, *-ης, ἡ, zone, girdle, belt; εἰς ζώνην, for pin-money.*

Digitized by Google

H.

ἤ . . . ἤ, *either . . . or.*
ἤ, *than.*
ἦ, *verily, certainly.*
ἡ. See **ὁ, ἡ, τό.**
ᾗ. See **ὅς, ἥ, ὅ.**
ᾖ. See **εἰμί.**
ἠγάσθην. See **ἄγαμαι.**
ἡγεμών, *-όνος, ὁ, leader, guide; commander.*
ἡγέομαι, *-ήσομαι, lead, command; think, deem.*
ᾔδειν. See **οἶδα.**
ἡδέως, *sweetly, gladly.*
ἤδη, *now, already, at length.*
ἡδύς, *-εῖα, -ύ,* comp. *ἡδίων, sweet.*
ἥδομαι, *ἡδήσομαι, ἥσθην; am pleased.*
ᾖειν, ᾖεσαν. See **εἶμι,** *go.*
ἤθελον. See **ἐθέλω.**
ἥκιστα, adv., *least, least of all.*
ἥκω, *ἥξω, am come, have arrived.*
ἤλασα, ἤλαυνον. See **ἐλαύνω.**
ἦλθον. See **ἔρχομαι.**
ἡλί-βατος, *-ον, impassible, precipitous.*
ἡλικίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, time of life, age.*
ἡλικιώτης, *-ου, ὁ, an equal in years; companion.*
ἥλιος, *-ου, ὁ, sun.*
ἡμεῖς, plur. of *ἐγώ, we.*
ἡμελημένως, *carelessly.*
ἡμέρᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, day.*
ἡμέτερος, *-ᾱ, -ον, our.*
ἡμί-βρωτος, *-ον, half-eaten.*
ἡμι-δᾶρεικόν, *-οῦ, τό, half-daric.*
ἡμι-δεής, *-ές, half-empty, half-full.*
ἡμι-όλιος, *-ᾱ, -ον,* as substant., *one and one-half, a half more.*
ἥμισυς, *-εια, -υ, half;* as substant., *a half.*
ἡμι-ωβόλιον, *-ου, τό, a half obol.*
ἤν, = *ἐάν, if,* with subjunct.
ἦν. See **εἰμί.**
ἠνεσχόμην. See **ἀνέχω.**
ἡνίκα, conj., *when.*
ἡνί-οχος, *-ου, ὁ, driver* of a wagon or chariot.
ἥξειν, ἥξομαι. See **ἥκω.**
ᾗπερ. See **ὅσπερ.**
ἠρξάμην, ἠρχόμην. See **ἄρχω.**
ἠρόμην, ἠρώτων. See **ἐρωτάω.**
ἦσαν. See **εἰμί.**
ᾐσθανόμην, ᾐσθόμην. See **αἰσθάνομαι.**
ἥσθην. See **ἥδομαι.**
ἡσυχῇ, *quietly, noiselessly.*
ἡττάομαι, *-ήσομαι, be conquered.*
ηὐχόμην. See **εὔχομαι.**
ηὗρον. See **εὑρίσκω.**

Θ.

θ', for *τέ,* by elision before an initial rough vowel.
θάλαττα, *-ης, ἡ, sea.*
θάνατος, *-ου, ὁ, death.*
θαρραλέως, *boldly, fearlessly.*
θαρρέω, *am of good courage, have no fear.*
θαρρύνω, *give encouragement, cheer.*
θάττων, comp. of *ταχύς,* which see.
θαυμάζω, *-άσομαι, wonder, admire.*
θαυμαστός, *-ή, -όν, wonderful.*
Θαψακηνός, *-οῦ, ὁ, inhabitant of Thapsacus.*
θεάομαι, *-άσομαι, behold, see, view.*
θεῖν. See **θέω,** *run.*
θεῖος, *-ᾱ, -ον, miraculous, marvellous.*
θέμενος, θέντες. See **τίθημι.**
θεός, *-οῦ, ὁ, deity, god.*
θεραπεύω, *serve, provide* or *care for.*
θεράπων, *-οντος, ὁ, servant.*
θέσθαι. See **τίθημι.**
Θέτταλος, *-ου, ὁ, Thessalian.*
θέω, *run.*
θεωρέω, *view, review, e. g.* an army.
θηράω, *-άσω, hunt* wild animals.
θηρεύω, *go on a hunt, hunt.*
θηρίον, *-ου, τό, wild animal.*
θνήσκω, *die.* 530, 4; 342.

Digitized by Google

θόρυβος, -ου, ὁ, *noise.*
Θρᾷξ, Θρᾳκός, ὁ, *Thracian.*
θύρᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *gate, door.*
θύω, θύσω, *sacrifice.* 504, 2; 342.
θώρᾱξ, -ᾱκος, ὁ, *breastplate.*

I.

ἰάομαι, -άσομαι, *dress* or *heal* a wound.
ἰᾱτρός, -οῦ, ὁ, *physician.*
ἰδεῖν, **ἰδών**. See **ὁράω**, *see.*
ἴδιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *private; εἰς τὸ ἴδιον, for private use.*
ἰδιώτης, -ου, ὁ, *a private person, private soldier.*
ἱδρόω, *sweat.*
ἕεμαι, **ἕεντο**. See **ἵημι**.
ἰέναι, **ἴω**, **ἰών**. See **εἶμι**.
ἱερός, -ά, -όν, *sacred; τὰ ἱερά, the omens* indicated by the sacrifices.
ἵημι, *send, throw;* mid., *send one's self, rush.* 534, 3; 342.
ἱκανός, -ή, -όν, *enough, able.*
Ἰκόνιον, -ου, *Iconium,* a city of Phrygia.
ἴλη, -ης, ἡ, *troop,* chiefly of horse, probably sixteen front and four deep.
ἵνα, conj., with subj. or opt., *in order that.*
ἰόντος, **ἰόντων**, etc. See **εἶμι**.
ἱππεύς, -έως, ὁ, *horseman;* plur., *cavalry.*
ἱππικός, -ή, -όν, *of cavalry; τὸ ἱππικόν, the cavalry.*
ἱππό-δρομος, -ου, ἡ, *horse-race.*
ἵππος, -ου, ὁ, *horse; ἀπὸ ἵππου, on horseback.*
ἴσος, -η, -ον, *equal; ἐν ἴσῳ, in an even line, with equal step.*
Ἰσσοί, -ῶν, οἱ, *Issus,* in eastern Cilicia, at the northeast corner of the Mediterranean.
ἴστε. See **οἶδα**.
ἵστημι, *set, make stand, halt, stop;* mid. and 2 aor. act., *stand.* 534, 5; 342.
ἱστίον, -ου, τό, *sail.*
ἰσχῠρός, -ά, -όν, *strong.*
ἰσχῠρῶς, *mightily, very.*
ἰσχύς, -ύος, ἡ, **νίς**, *strength.*
ἰχθύς, -ύος, ὁ, *fish.*
ἴχνος, -ους, τό, *trace, track.*
Ἰωνίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *Ionia,* the most central part of Asia Minor.
Ἰωνικός, -ή, -όν, *Ionian.*

K.

καθ', by elision for **κατά**, before a rough vowel.
καθ-έζομαι, impf. **ἐκαθεζόμην**, *sit down, halt, rest.*
καθ-εύδω, *lie down, sleep.* 510, 8; 343.
καθ-ηδυ-παθέω, *squander* or *waste* in luxury.
καθ-ήκω, *come down, extend down; belong to* as a duty.
κάθ-ημαι, *sit down, sit;* of an army, *am stationed.* 537, 2; 341 (**ἧμαι**).
καθ-ίστημι, *set down, place, arrange,* of forces; mid., with 2 aor. act., *take one's place, be established, be settled.* 534, 5; 342.
καθ-οράω, **κατ-είδον**, *see* fully, *examine.* 539, 4; 350.
καί, **que**, *and, even, also;* with partic., *although; καὶ . . . καί, τέ . . . καί, both . . . and.*
καί-περ, with partic., *although.*
καιρός, -οῦ, ὁ, *occasion,* particular *moment.*
καί-τοι, conj., *and assuredly, and yet.*
καίω, **κάω**, *burn.* 520, 1; 343.
κακός, -ή, -όν, *bad, base, cowardly.*

Digitized by Google

κακοῦργος, -ου, ὁ, *evil-doer.*

κακῶς, *badly, ill; κ. ποιέω, harm, wrong; κ. ἔχω, am in a bad condition; κ. πράττω, fare badly.*

κάλαμος, -ου, ὁ, *reed.*

καλέω, *call, name, call to one's self, summon.* **504**, 5; 343.

καλλωπισμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *ornament, adornment.*

καλός, -ή, -όν, *beautiful;* of omens, *favorable.*

καλῶς, *beautifully, well; κ. πράττω, succeed; κ. ἔχω, am all right.*

κἄν, by crasis for καὶ ἄν.

κάνδυς, -υος, ὁ, a Persian *coat*, of wool or silk, purple-colored, buttoning over the breast, and furnished with loose sleeves, reaching to the fingers.

καπηλεῖον, -ου, τό, *booth, shop.*

καπίθη, -ης, ἡ, *capithe*, a Persian measure, equal to $2\frac{1}{3}$ *choenics* or 2.3 litres.

Καππαδοκία, -ᾱς, ἡ, *Cappadocia*, a province of eastern Asia Minor, north of the Taurus mountains.

κάρφη, -ης, ἡ, *hay.*

κατά, with gen., *down from, down;* with acc., *down along, along, against; κατὰ γῆν, by land; κατ' ἔθνη, nation by nation; κατὰ χώρᾱν, in the proper place.*

κατα-βαίνω, *come* or *go down, descend, dismount.* **519**, 7; 333.

κατ-αγάγοι. See **κατ-άγω.**

κατα-γελάω, *laugh at, mock; exult.*

κατ-άγω, 2 aor. *κατ-ήγαγον, lead* or *bring down* or *back.* **508**, 6; 330.

κατα-δύω, *sink* (trans.). **507**, 3; 337.

κατα-θεάομαι, -άσομαι, *gaze down upon, look out towards.*

κατα-καίνω, -κανῶ, *slay, put to death.* **518**, 7; 343.

κατα-καίω or **-κάω**, *burn down, destroy* by fire. **520**, 1; 343.

κατα-κεκόψεσθαι. See **κατα-κόπτω.**

κατα-κόπτω, *cut down, cut to pieces.* **513**, 9; 344.

κατα-λαμβάνω, *seize, take possession of, catch.* **523**, 5; 346.

κατα-λείπω, *leave behind, leave.* **511**, 7; 346.

κατα-λεύω, *stone to death.*

κατα-ληφ-, -ληψ-. See **κατα-λαμβάνω.**

κατα-λιπών. See **κατα-λείπω.**

κατ-αλλάττω, *reconcile;* pass., *am reconciled.* **514**, 1; 331.

κατα-λύω, of an army, *break ranks, rest, halt; κ. πρός, break up hostilities, make peace with.*

κατα-μανθάνω, *learn well.* **523**, 7; 347.

κατα-νοέω, *consider* or *watch* carefully.

κατα-πέμπω, *send down*, i. e. from the interior to the sea-coast.

κατα-πετρόω, *stone to death.*

κατα-πηδάω, -ήσομαι, *leap down.*

κατα-πράττω, *do well, accomplish.* **514**, 6; 353.

κατα-σκέπτομαι, *view, examine.* **513**, 15; 354.

κατα-σκευάζω, *fit out, equip, improve.*

κατα-σπάω, -σπάσω, *draw down.*

κατα-στήσομαι, -σω. See **καθ-ίστημι.**

κατα-στρέφω, *over-turn, subdue.* **508**, 26; 355.

κατα-τίθημι, *lay down, deposit, put away, e. g.* a treasure.

κατα-φανής, -ές, gen. -οῦς, *visible.*

κατα-φεύγω, *flee for refuge.* **511**, 15; 358.

κατ-έβην. See **κατα-βαίνω.**

κατ-εθέμην. See **κατα-τίθημι.**

κατ-ελήφθην. See **κατα-λαμβάνω.**

κατ-εργάζομαι, *do thoroughly, accomplish.* **359**; 339.

κατ-έστην. See **καθ-ίστημι.**

κατ-ιδεῖν. See **καθ-οράω.**

Digitized by Google

καῦμα, -ατος, τό (καίω), *heat.*
Καΰστρου πεδίον, *plain of the Caÿster*, a populous spot in Phrygia.
κάω. See **καίω.**
κέγχρος, -ου, ὁ, *panic*, a small grain valued as a food.
κεῖμαι, *lie, lie fallen.* **482**; 178.
κέκτημαι. See **κτάομαι.**
Κελαιναί, -ῶν, αἱ, *Celænæ*, in Phrygia.
κελεύω, *order, bid, command.*
κενός, -ή, -όν, *empty;* foll. by gen., *without.*
Κεράμων ἀγορά, -ᾶς, ἡ, *Ceramon agora*, a market-town in Phrygia.
κεράννῡμι, *mix*, usually wine and water. **525**, 1; 343.
κέρας, -ᾰτος, or -ως, τό, *horn, wing* of an army.
κερδαλέος, -ᾱ, -ον, *gainful.*
κέρδος, -ους, τό, *gain; pay, wages.*
κεφαλή, -ῆς, ἡ, *head.*
Κιλικίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *Cilicia*, the south-eastern province of Asia Minor.
Κίλιξ, -ικος, ὁ, *a Cilician.*
Κίλισσα, -ης, ἡ, *Cilician woman.*
κινδῡνεύω, *incur danger.*
κίνδῡνος, -ου, ὁ, *danger.*
κνημίς, -ῖδος, ἡ, *greave, leggin*, worn to protect the lower part of the leg, and made usually of metal lined with some soft material.
Κολοσσαί, -ῶν, αἱ, *Colossæ*, in Phrygia, seat of the church to which Paul wrote the "Epistle to the Colossians."
κονι-ορτός, -οῦ, ὁ, *cloud of dust.*
κόπρος, -ου, ὁ, *dung.*
κοσμέω, -ήσω, *arrange, adorn.*
κόσμος, -ου, ὁ, *arrangement, adornment.*
κοῦφος, -η, -ον, *light, i. e.* not heavy.
κράνος, -ους, τό, *helmet.*
κρατέω, -ήσω, *am superior, conquer.*
κράτιστος. See **κρείττων.**
κράτος, -ους, τό, *strength, power; κατὰ κράτος, with all one's strength.*
κραυγή, -ῆς, ἡ, *shout.*
κρέας, κρέως, τό, *flesh, meat.*
κρείττων, κράτιστος, comp. and sup. of ἀγαθός, *superior, better, stronger, higher in rank.*
κρεμάννῡμι, *hang up, suspend.* **525**, 2; 345.
κρήνη, -ης, ἡ, *spring* of water; *fountain.*
Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ, *a Cretan.*
κρῖθή, -ῆς, ἡ, usually plur., *barley.*
κρίνω, *judge.* **519**, 2; 345.
κρίσις, -εως, ἡ, *trial.*
κρύπτω, *hide, conceal.* **513**, 10; 345.
κτάομαι, *acquire.* **465**, *a*; 345.
κύκλος, -ου, ὁ, *circle.*
κυκλόω, *encircle, surround.*
κύκλωσις, -εως, ἡ, *a surrounding, an encircling.*
Κύρειος, -α, -ον, *Cyrean, belonging to Cyrus.*
κωλύω, *prevent, hinder.*
κώμη, -ης, ἡ, *village.*

Λ.

λαβεῖν, -οι, -ών. See **λαμβάνω.**
λαθεῖν. See **λανθάνω.**
λάθρᾱ or **λάθρᾳ**, *secretly, without the knowledge of.*
Λακεδαιμόνιος, -ου, ὁ, *Spartan.*
λαμβάνω, *take, capture, obtain.* **523**, 5; 346.
λαμπρότης, -ητος, ἡ, *brightness, splendor.*
λανθάνω, *escape the knowledge* or *notice of;* foll. by suppl. partic. **523**, 6; 346.
λέγω, *say, speak.* **508**, 19 *b*; 346.
λείπω, *leave.* **511**, 7; 346.
λέξων, fut. act. part. of λέγω.

Digitized by Google

λευκο-θώρᾱξ, -ᾱκος, ὁ, *having a white breast-armor* or *corselet.*
λευκός, -ή, -όν, *bright, white.*
ληφθῆναι, λήψομαι. See **λαμβάνω.**
λίθος, -ου, ὁ, *stone.*
λῑμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *hunger.*
λόγος, -ου, ὁ, *word, rumor, argument.*
λόγχη, -ης, ἡ, *spear-head, spear.*
λόφος, -ου, ὁ, *hill, height.*
λοχᾱγίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *a captaincy.*
λοχ-ᾱγός, -οῦ, ὁ, *captain.*
λόχος, -ου, ὁ, *company* of soldiers, consisting of 100 men.
Λῡδίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *Lydia*, the west central province of Asia Minor.
Λύδιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *Lydian.*
Λύκαια (ἱερά), *the Lycæan rites*, celebrated by the Arcadians each spring in honor of Zeus, on the Lycæan range.
λῡμαίνομαι, λῡμανοῦμαι, *ruin, spoil.*
λῡπέω, *pain, grieve.*

M.

μά, *nay, surely; μὰ τοὺς θεούς, nay, surely, by the gods.*
Μαίανδρος, -ου, ὁ, *the Mæander river.*
μακαριστός, -ή, -όν, *made happy; enviable.*
μακρός, -ά, -όν, *long.*
μάλα, comp. μᾶλλον, sup. μάλιστα, *very, exceedingly;* comp. *rather;* sup. *most especially, most, best.*
μανθάνω, *learn.*
μάντις, -εως, ὁ, *prophet, soothsayer.*
Μαρσύᾱς, -ου, ὁ, *Marsyas, the Marsyas river.*
μαστός, -οῦ, ὁ, *the breast.*
μάχαιρα, -ᾱς, ἡ, *dagger*, with only one edge sharp, the dull edge being straight, the sharp one curved; this weapon was worn at the belt.
μάχη, -ης, ἡ, *battle, fight.*
μάχομαι, *fight, fight with.* 510, 11; 347.
μέ, μ', μοῦ, μοί. See **ἐγώ.**
μεγάλη. See **μέγας.**
μεγαλο-πρεπῶς, *in a courtly* or *magnificent way.*
Μεγαρεύς, -έως, ὁ, *a Megarian.*
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, *great, large;* τὸ μέγιστον, *chiefly.*
μεθ', by elision for **μετά**, before a rough vowel.
μείζων, *larger, greater;* comp. of **μέγας.**
μεῖναι, aor. inf. act. of **μένω.**
μείων, comp. of **μῑκρός**, *less, worse;* μεῖον ἔχειν, *be worsted.*
μελανίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *blackness, black object.*
μέλει, fut. μελήσει, *it is a care, it concerns;* ἐμοὶ μελήσει, *it will be my care.*
μελετηρός, -ά, -όν, *assiduous* or *studious in practising.*
μελίνη, -ης, ἡ, *millet, panic*, usually plur.
μέλλω, *intend, am likely, am about to.*
μέν, postpos. particle, *on the one hand, indeed;* reg. foll. by an adversative **δέ.**
μέν-τοι, *but yet, however.*
μένω, aor. ἔμεινα, *remain.*
μέρος, -ους, τό, *part, portion.*
μεσ-ημβρίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *mid-day; south.*
μέσος, -η, -ον, *middle;* τὸ μέσον, *the middle.*
μεστός, -ή, -όν, *full.*
μετά, with gen. or acc.; with gen., *with;* μετὰ ἀδικίᾱς, *with, by means of, injustice;* with acc., *after.*
μετα-μέλει, poenitet, *it repents;* μ. σοι, *you repent.*
μεταξύ, *between.*
μετά-πεμπτος, *sent after.*
μετα-πέμπω, *send after;* mid., *send after* to come to myself. 508, 21; 351.

Digitized by Google

μετέωρος, -ον, *in mid air, raised* from the ground.
μέχρι, *up to, as far as, until.*
μή, as conj., with subj. or opt., *that not, lest;* as adv., *not;* ὅποι μή, *except where;* εἰ μή, *unless.*
μηδέ, *nor,* **ne . . . quidem**, *not even.*
μηδείς, *not even one, no one.*
Μηδία, -ᾱς, ἡ, *Media,* the country lying north and east of the Tigris river.
μη-κ-έτι, *not again, no longer.*
μῆκος, -ους, τό, *length.*
μήν, adv., **vero**, *in truth, however, yet.*
μήν, μηνός, ὁ, *month.*
μή-ποτε, *n-ever.*
μήτε, *and not;* μήτε . . . μήτε, *neither . . . nor.*
μήτηρ, -τρός, ἡ, *mother.*
Μίδᾱς, -ου, ὁ, *Midas.*
μῑκρός, -ά, -όν, *small;* μῑκρόν, adv. acc., *narrowly.*
Μιλήσιος, -ία, -ον, *Milesian.*
Μίλητος, -ου, ἡ, *Miletus,* an Ionian city.
μιμνήσκω, *remind;* perf. mid., *remember.* **530**, 6; 348.
μισθο-δότης, -ου, ὁ, *pay-giver, paymaster.*
μισθός, -οῦ, ὁ, *pay, wages.*
μισθο-φόρος, -ου, ὁ, *serving for pay, mercenary.*
μισθόω, *hire.*
μνᾶ, -ᾶς, ἡ, *mina,* = 100 *drachmae,* $\frac{1}{60}$ of a *talent,* a little less than $20.
μόνος, -η, -ον, *alone, only.*
μῡριάς, -άδος, ἡ, *myriad,* 10,000.
μύριος, -ᾱ, -ον, 10,000.
Μύσιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *Mysian.* Mysia lay in the northwest part of Asia Minor.
Μῡσός, -οῦ, ὁ, same as the preceding.

N.

ναύ-αρχος, -ου, ὁ, *ship commander, admiral.*
ναῦς, νε-ώς, ἡ, **navis**, *ship.*
ναυτικός, -ή, -όν, *naval.*
νέος, -ᾱ, -ον, **novus**, *young.*
νεφέλη, -ης, ἡ, *cloud.*
νεώς, **νεῶν**. See **ναῦς**.
νή, adv., of swearing, *yea by;* νὴ Δία, *yea, by Zeus.*
νῆ-ες. See **ναῦς**.
νῑκάω, *conquer.*
νίκη, -ης, ἡ, *victory.*
νομίζω, *suppose, believe, think.* **348.**
νόμος, -ου, ὁ, *custom.*
νόος (νοῦς), -όου (-οῦ), ὁ, *mind.*
νύκτ-ες, etc. See **νύξ**.
νῦν, **nunc**, *now.*
νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ, *night;* μέσαι νύκτες, *midnight.*

Ξ.

Ξενίᾱς, -ου, ὁ, *Xenias.*
ξενικός, -ή, -όν, *of mercenaries;* τὸ ξ., *the mercenary army.*
ξένος, -ου, ὁ, *guest-friend, mercenary.*
Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος, ὁ, *Xenophon.*
ξύλινος, -η, -ον, *wooden.*
ξύλον, -ου, τό, *wood, piece of wood.*

O.

ὁ, ἡ, τό, the article, *the;* ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ, *he (this) on the one hand . . . he (that) on the other;* ὁ δέ, *he, however;* freq. poss., *e.g.* πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν, *before his brother;* freq. = *those who, e.g.* τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας, THOSE WHO *had been exiled.*
ὅ. See **ὅς**. **ὅτι.** See **ὅστις**.
ὀβολός, -ου, ὁ, *obol,* about 3½ cents.

Digitized by Google

ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, *this.*

ὁδός, -οῦ, ἡ, *way, route, journey.*

ὅθεν, *whence.*

οἱ, *the;* see **ὁ**. **οἵ**, see **ὅς**. **οἷ**, encl., see **οὗ**.

οἶδα, *I know;* perf. with a pres. meaning; χάριν οἶδα, *am grateful.* 491; 178.

οἴκαδε, *homeward.*

οἰκέω, *inhabit;* πόλις οἰκουμένη, *a city well-inhabited.*

οἰκο-δομέω, *build* (house, palace, etc.).

οἴκοι, *at home;* οἱ οἴκοι, *those at home.*

οἰκο-νόμος, -ου, ὁ, *housekeeper, steward.*

οἰκτείρω, *pity.*

οἶμαι, *think;* often parenthetic, *methinks.*

οἶνος, -ου, ὁ, **vinum**, WINE.

οἴομαι, *think, suppose.* 510, 16; 349.

οἷος, -ᾱ, -ον, **qualis**, *of what* or *which kind* or *nature.*

οἷοσ-περ, -ᾱ-περ, -ον-περ, *of just which kind* or *nature.*

οἵτινες. See **ὅστις**.

οἴχομαι, *am gone.* 510, 17; 349.

ὀκνέω, *hesitate, am reluctant.*

ὀκτακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *eight hundred.*

ὀκτώ, *eight.*

ὄλεθρος, -ου, ὁ, *destruction.*

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον, *small, little* (in quantity); plur., *few;* ὀλίγου (δεῖ), *almost.*

ὁλκάς, -άδος, ἡ, *freight-vessel, merchantman.*

ὅλος, -η, -ον, *whole, entire.*

ὁμο-τράπεζος, adj. used as noun, -ου, ὁ, *table-companion.*

ὁμοῦ, *together.*

ὅμως, *at the same time, nevertheless.*

ὄν. See **ὅς**.

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό, *name.*

ὄνος, -ου, ὁ, *ass;* ὄ. ἀλέτης, *millstone.*

ὄντ-ος, -ες, etc. See **εἰμί**.

ὅ-πῃ, *whither, in what way* or *direction.*

ὄπισθεν, *from behind, in the rear.*

ὁπλίζω, *arm, put on armor.*

ὁπλίτης, -ου, ὁ, *heavy-armed soldier, hoplite.*

ὅπλον, -ου, τό, plur. τὰ ὅπλα, *armor, arms.*

ὁπόσος, -η, -ον, *how large soever;* plur., *how many soever.*

ὁπότε, *whenever, when* (indefinite).

ὅπου, *wherever;* ὅπου μή, *except where.*

ὅπως, conj., *in order that;* adv., *in whatever way.*

ὁράω, *see.* 539, 4; 350.

ὀργή, -ῆς, ἡ, *anger.*

ὀργίζω, *make angry.*

ὀργυιά, -ᾶς, ἡ, *fathom, six feet.*

ὄρθιος, -ία, -ον, *steep.*

ὀρθῶς, *rightly.*

ὁρμάω, *start, rush;* mid., *start, set out from.*

ὁρμέω, *lie at anchor.*

ὄρος, -ους, τό, *mountain.*

ὀρυκτός, -ή, -όν, *dug.*

ὀρύττω, *dig.* 514, 4; 350.

Ὀρχεμένιος, -ου, ὁ, *Orchomenian.* Orchomenos was located in the east part of Arcadia.

ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, *who, which;* οὗ, as adv., *where;* ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, *as well* or *strictly as possible.*

ὅσος, -η, -ον, **quantus**, *how much* or *great;* plur., as many *as;* πάντες ὅσοι, *all who;* with numerals, ὅσον, *just about.*

ὅσοσ-περ, -η-περ, -ον-περ, *just as much* or *many as.*

ὅσ-τις, ἥ-τις, ὅ-τι, *whoever, whichever, whatever.*

ὅταν, *whenever.*

ὅτε, *when.*

ὅτι, conj. *that, because;* with the superlat., intensive, *e. g.* ὅτι πλεῖστους, *as many as possible.*

Digitized by Google

ὅ τι, ὅτου, ὅτῳ. See **ὅστις.**
οὐ, *οὐκ, οὐχ, not* (denying a fact); *οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, they refused to go.*
οὗ. See **ὅς.**
οὗ, οἷ, ἕ, encl., **sui, sibi, se,** *of himself* or *herself,* etc.
οὐδαμοῦ, *nowhere.*
οὐδέ, *οὐδ', and not, nor;* = **ne . . . quidem,** *not even.*
οὐδ-είς, *οὐδε-μιᾶ, nobody, no* (adj.); *οὐδ-έν, nothing.*
οὐκ. See **οὐ.**
οὐκ-έτι, *no longer.*
οὐκοῦν, nonne, *not therefore?*
οὖν, *accordingly, however, be that as it may.*
οὔ-ποτε, *n-ever.*
οὔ-πω, *not yet.*
οὐ-πώ-ποτε, *not yet at any time, never before.*
οὓς. See **ὅς.**
οὖσα, οὖσιν. See **εἰμί.**
οὔτε, *nor; οὔτε . . . οὔτε, neither . . . nor.*
οὑτινος. See **ὅστις.**
οὗτος, *αὕτη, τοῦτο, this, that; καὶ ταῦτα, and that too.*
οὑτοσ-ί, *this . . . here.*
οὕτω(ς), *thus.*
ὀφείλω, *owe;* pass., *owed, due.* **518,** 12; 350.
ὄφελος, *τό, use, advantage.*
ὀφθαλμός, *-οῦ, ὁ, eye.*
ὀχυρός, *-ά, -όν* (*ἔχω*), *tenable;* of a stronghold, *fortified.*

Π.

παθεῖν. See **πάσχω.**
πάθος, *-ους, τό, treatment.*
παιᾱνίζω, *sing a paean* or *war-song.*
παιδεύω, *educate.*
παῖς, *παιδός,* ὁ or ἡ, *child; boy, girl.*
παίω, *strike.* **505,** 12; 350.
πάλαι, *long ago.*
πάλιν, *back, again.*
παλλακίς, *-ίδος, ἡ, mistress.*
παλτόν, *-οῦ, τό, javelin,* Persian *spear,* light and easily handled
πᾶν. See **πᾶς.**
παντά-πᾶσι(ν), *wholly.*
πάντῃ, *on all sides, altogether.*
παντοδαπός, *-ή, -όν, of every kind.*
παντοῖος, *-α, -ον, of every kind, various, manifold.*
πάνυ, *wholly, very.*
παρά, BESIDE: (*a*) with gen., *from* (beside); (*b*) with dat., *beside, at;* (*c*) with acc., *to* (the side of); *against, i. e. contrary to, e. g. περὶ τὰς σπονδάς.*
παρ-αγγέλλω, *pass the word along, order, summon.*
παρα-γίγνομαι, become by the side of, *arrive.*
παράδεισος, *-ου, ὁ, park* (Persian).
παρ-αινέω, *advise; exhort.*
παρα-καλέω, *call to my side, invite.*
παρα-κελεύομαι, *bid, urge, encourage.*
παρ-αμείβω, *change;* mid., *change* (a line of battle) for one's self.
παρα-μηρίδιον, *-ου, τό,* adj. used subst., *thigh-piece* (of armor).
παρα-πλήσιος, *-ίᾱ, -ον,* or *-ος, -ον, similar.*
παρασάγγης, *-ου, ὁ, parasang* (Pers.), = 30 stadia, 5½ kilometers, a little more than 3 miles, *league.*
παρα-σκευάζω, mid., *prepare, make ready.*
παρασκευή, *-ῆς, ἡ, preparation.*
παρα-τάττω, *arrange in line* (for battle).
παρα-τείνω, *stretch along, extend.*
παρ-εγενόμην, *-ετο.* See **παραγίγνομαι.**
πάρ-ειμι, *am by* or *on hand, am present; arrive.*

Digitized by Google

παρ-ελαύνω, *march* or *drive by* or *past*.
παρ-έρχομαι, *go along*, *past* or *through*.
παρ-ετέτατο. See **παρα-τείνω**.
παρ-έχω, *furnish*; *cause*.
παρ-ήλασα. See **παρ-ελαύνω**.
παρ-ῆλθον. See **παρ-έρχομαι**.
παρ-ῆν. See **πάρ-ειμι**.
πάρ-οδος, -ου, ἡ, *way by passage*, *pass*.
Παρράσιος, -ου, ὁ, *Parrhasian*. Parrhasia was in southwest Arcadia.
παρ-ών. See **πάρ-ειμι**.
πᾶς, *every*, *all*.
πάσχω, *suffer*; **εὖ π.**, *enjoy*. 533, 11; 351.
πατήρ, -τρός, ὁ, *father*.
πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *father'land*.
πατρῷος, -ᾱ, -ον, *paternal*, *hereditary*.
παύω, *stop*; mid., *cease*. 505, 17.
πεδίον, -ου, τό, *plain*.
πεζός, -ή, -όν, *of infantry*; subst. *foot-soldier*, plur. *infantry*; **πεζῇ**, *on foot*.
πείθω, *persuade*; mid. and pass., *believe*, *obey*. 511, 8; 351.
πεινάω, *am hungry*.
πεῖρα, -ᾱς, ἡ, *experience*, *acquaintance*.
πειράω, -άσω, mid., *try*.
πείσᾱς, **πεισθείς**. See **πείθω**.
πείσομαι. See **πάσχω** and **πείθω**.
πελάζω, *draw near*, *approach*.
Πελοποννήσιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *Peloponnesian*.
Πελοπόννησος, -ου, ἡ, *Peloponnese*, that part of Greece which is south of the Isthmus of Corinth.
πελταστής, -ου, ὁ, *peltast*, a soldier armed with a spear (**ἀκόντιον**) about 4½ feet long, a sword, and a small wooden shield (**πέλτη**) covered with leather.
πελταστικός, -ή, -όν, *of peltasts*; subst., *force of peltasts*, *targeteers*.
πέλτη, -ης, ἡ, *pelta*. See **πελταστής**.
πέμπω, *send*. 508, 21; 351.
πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *five hundred*.
πέντε, *five*.
πεντε-καί-δεκα, *fifteen*.
πεντήκοντα, *fifty*.
πέπτωκα, **-κώς**. See **πίπτω**.
πέρᾱν, *on the other side*, *across*.
πέρδιξ, -ῑκος, ὁ, *partridge*.
περί, *around*; with gen., *about*, *concerning*; **π. παντός** (or **πολλοῦ**) **ποιεῖσθαι**, *to consider as all* (or *very*) *important*; with dat., *about*, with the idea of *place where*; with acc., *about*, *concerning*.
περι-γίγνομαι, become around, *prevail over*.
περί-ειμι, *get the upper hand*, *surpass*.
περι-έχω, *surround*.
περι-ῆν. See **περί-ειμι**.
περι-πεσεῖν. See **περι-πίπτω**.
περι-πίπτω, *fall round about*, *embrace*.
περι-πλέω, *sail around*.
περι-πτύσσω, *fold round about*, *surround*, *enfold*.
περι-ρ-ρέω, *flow round about*.
περιστερά, -ᾶς, ἡ, *dove*.
Πέρσης, -ου, ὁ, *a Persian*.
Περσικός, -ή, -όν, *Persian*.
πέτομαι, *fly*. 508, 23; 351.
πέτρᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *rock*, *rocky cliff*.
πηγή, -ῆς, ἡ, *source*, of a river.
πηλός, -οῦ, ὁ, *mud*.
πιέζω, *press*, *bring into distress*.
πίμπλημι, **pleo**, *fill*. 534, 7; 352.
πίπτω, *fall*. 506, 4; 352.
Πισίδης, -ου, ὁ, *a Pisidian*. Pisidia was a district of Asia Minor, south of Phrygia, and bordering on the Mediterranean.
πιστεύω, *trust*, *have confidence in*.
πίστις, -εως, ἡ, *trust*, *confidence*, *pledge*.
πιστός, -ή, -όν, *trusty*; **τὰ πιστά**, *pledges*.

Digitized by Google

πιστότης, -ητος, ἡ, *faithfulness.*
πλάγιος, -ιᾱ, -ον, *oblique;* εἰς πλάγιον, *obliquely, sideways.*
πλαίσιον, -ου, τό, *rectangle; square.*
πλανάομαι, *wander.*
πλεθριαῖος, -ίᾱ, -ον, *of a plethrum* (100 feet) in length or width.
πλέθρον, -ου, τό, *plethrum*, 30.83 meters, a little more than 101 feet.
πλείων, πλέων, πλεῖστος. See **πολύς.**
πλέω, *sail.* **512**, 3; 352.
πλέων, πλέον. See **πολύς.**
πληγή, -ῆς, ἡ, **plaga**, *blow.*
πλῆθος, -ους, τό, *multitude, extent, number.*
πλήθω, *am full;* ἀγορᾶ πλήθουσα, *market-time.* **534**, 7.
πλήν, prep., *except;* conj., *except that.*
πλήρης, -ες, *full.*
πλησιάζω, *come near, approach.*
πλησίον, adv., *near.*
πλοῖον, -ου, τό, *boat*, large or small; the larger boat propelled by banks of oars is called ναῦς or τριήρης.
πλούσιος, -ίᾱ, -ον, *rich.*
πλουτέω, *am rich.*
ποδ-ήρης, -ες, *reaching to the feet.*
ποδός, ποδῶν. See **πούς.**
ποιέω, *make, do.* See **εὖ, κακῶς, περί.**
ποιητέος, -ᾱ, -ον, **faciendus**, *must be made* or *done.*
ποικίλος, -η, -ον, *many-colored, embroidered.*
πολεμέω, *make* or *carry on war.*
πολέμιος, -ίᾱ, -ον, *hostile;* subst., *an enemy;* τὰ πολέμια, *military affairs.*
πόλεμος, -ου, ὁ, *war.*
πολι-ορκέω, *besiege.*
πόλις, -εως, ἡ, *city.*
πολλάκις, *often.*
πολλα-πλάσιος, -ίᾱ, -ον, *manifold, many more.*
πολύς, comp. πλείων, sup. πλεῖστος, *much*, plur. *many;* τὸ πολύ, *the greater part;* διὰ πολλά, *for many reasons;* πλεῖον, πλέον, **plus**, *more.*
πολυ-τελής, -ές, *costly.*
πονέω, *labor, toil.*
πορείᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *journey.*
πορεύω, mid., *proceed, march, journey.*
πόρρω, *far away, far from.*
πορφύρεος (-οῦς), -έᾱ (-ᾶ), -εον (-οῦν), *purple.*
ποσί. See **πούς.**
ποταμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *river.*
ποτέ, *at some time, once.*
πότερον, **utrum**, *whether.*
ποτός, -ή, -όν, *drinkable;* τὶ ποτόν, *anything to drink.*
πού, *anywhere, perhaps.*
πούς, ποδός, ὁ, *foot.*
πρᾶγμα, -ατος, τό, *affair, deed;* plur. *business: trouble.*
πρᾱέων. See **πρᾶος.**
πρᾱνής, -ές, *steep.*
πρᾶξις, -εως, ἡ, *business, undertaking.*
πρᾶος, -εῖα, -ον, *mild, tame.*
πράττω, *do, perform;* κακῶς π., *fare badly, am unsuccessful.* **514**, 6; 353.
πρᾴως, *mildly.*
πρέπω, *become, suit.*
πρέσβυς, -εως, comp. -ύτερος, *old.*
πρίωσθαι (see **ὠνέομαι**), *buy*, **539**, 7; 164, 165.
πρίν, conj., *before*, freq. with πρόσθεν preceding.
πρό, *before*, with gen.; *in front of, before* (temporal); *in behalf of.*
προ-αισθάνομαι, *perceive in advance* or *beforehand.*
προ-βάλλω, *throw before;* mid., *throw before one's self;* προβάλλεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, *present arms.*
προ-δίδωμι, **prodo**, *give up, betray.*
προ-δούς, προ-δόντα. See **προ-δίδωμι.**
προ-δραμών. See **προ-τρέχω.**

Digitized by Google

προ-εῖπον, *announce beforehand* or *in the presence of* others.
προ-εστήκειν. From **προ-ἵστημι**.
προ-ελαύνω, *ride forward.*
προ-ἧειν. From **πρό-ειμι**.
προ-θῡμέομαι, *am eager* or *zealous.*
προ-θῡμίᾱ, -ᾶς, ἡ, *eagerness, zeal.*
πρό-θῡμος, -ον, *eager.*
προ-θῡμως, *eagerly.*
προ-ἰδοιμι. From **προ-οράω**.
προ-ιέναι. From **πρό-ειμι**.
προ-ἵημι, *throw away, desert, abandon.*
προ-ἵστημι, *place in command, set in charge.*
προ-κατα-κάω, *burn in advance of* or *before* others.
προ-κατα-λαμβάνω, *seize in advance of* or *before* others.
προ-μετωπίδιον, -ου, τό, *protection for the head, head-piece.*
πρό-οιτο. See **προ-ἵημι**.
προ-οράω, *see beforehand* or *in front.*
πρός, *at, by;* with gen., *in front of; προς θεῶν, in the sight of the gods; πρὸς τοῦ τρόπου, in accord with the character;* with dat., *at, in addition to;* with acc., *to, towards; with reference to.*
προσ-άγω, *lead on* or *forward, advance.*
προσ-αιτέω, *ask in addition, ask besides.*
προσ-δίδωμι, *give in addition, give besides.*
προσ-έλαβον. See **προσ-λαμβάνω**.
πρόσ-ειμι, *come towards, advance.*
προσ-ελαύνω, *ride* or *march towards, advance.*
προσ-έρχομαι, *come towards, approach.*
προσ-ετάχθη. See **προσ-τάττω**.
προσ-έχω, *hold to, apply; τὸν νοῦν προσέχω, give attention.*
προσ-ἧειν. See **πρόσ-ειμι**.
προσ-ἥκω, *come* or *extend towards, pertain to, am related to.*
προσ-ἦσαν. See **πρόσ-ειμι**.
πρόσθεν, *before;* **π. . . . πρίν**, *before that;* **ὁ πρόσθεν**, *the previous.*
προσ-θέσθαι. See **προσ-τίθημι**.
προσ-ιών. See **πρόσ-ειμι**.
προσ-καλέω, *call towards, summon.*
προσ-κυνέω, *do reverence, bow down before.*
προσ-λαμβάνω, *take in addition* or *besides.*
πρόσ-οδος, -ου, ἡ, *return, revenue, gain.*
προσ-ποιέω, *pretend.*
προσ-πολεμέω, *make war against.*
προσ-τάττω, *lay a command* or *duty upon, command.*
προ-στερνίδιον, -ου, τό, *breast-protector, breastplate.*
προσ-τίθημι, *place by* or *beside, add;* mid., *concur.*
πρόσω, *forward.*
πρότερος, -ᾱ, -ον, **prior**, *before, sooner.*
προ-τῑμάω, *honor* or *esteem before* others.
προ-τρέχω, *run before, outrun.*
προ-φαίνω, mid., *appear in front* or *in the distance.*
πρό-φασις, -εως, ἡ, *pretext.*
προ-χωρέω, *advance, help, be for one's convenience.*
πρῶτος, -η, -ον, *first;* **πρῶτον**, adv., **primum**, *first.*
πτέρυξ, -υγος, ἡ, *wing.*
πύλη, -ης, ἡ, *gate.*
πυνθάνομαι, *inquire, learn by inquiry.* 523, 8; 353.
πῡρός, -οῦ, ὁ, chiefly plur., *wheat.*
πώ, *yet, up to this* or *that time.*
πωλέω, *sell.*
πώποτε, *ever yet, ever, up to this* or *that time.*
πῶς, *how?*
πώς, encl., *somehow;* **ὧδέ πως**, *about as follows.*

Digitized by Google

P.

ῥέω, *flow.* **512**, 5 ; 353.
ῥίπτω, *throw.* **513**, 13 ; 354.

Σ.

σαλπίζω, *blow the trumpet.* **398**, *b* ; 354.
Σάμιος, -ου, ὁ, *Samian.* Samos was a very important island, lying off the west central part of Asia Minor.
Σάρδεις, -εων, αἱ, *Sardis*, on the river Pactōlus ; the capital of Lydia.
σατραπεύω, *am satrap* or *ruler over.*
σαφῶς, *clearly.*
σεαυτοῦ, σαυτοῦ, *of thyself.* **266** ; 80.
σημεῖον, -ου, τό, *sign, standard.*
σήσαμον, -ου, τό, *sesame*, a seed largely cultivated in Persia for the oil it furnishes, and for its excellence as a food.
σῖγή, -ῆς, ἡ, *silence.*
σίγλος, -ου, ὁ, *shekel*, = 7½ obols, 25 cents.
σῖτ-αγωγός, -όν, *grain-carrying.*
σῖτίον, -ου, τό, *bread, food.*
σῖτος, -ου, ὁ, *grain.*
σιωπάω, *am silent.*
σκεπτέος, -ᾱ, -ον, *to be considered.*
σκέπτομαι, **specio**, *look at, examine, consider.* **513**, 15 ; 354.
σκευο-φόρος, -ον, *baggage-carrying* ; subs., neut. plur., *pack-animals.*
σκηνέω, *encamp.*
σκηνή, -ῆς, ἡ, *tent.*
σκηπτοῦχος, -ου, ὁ, *sceptre-bearer.*
σκοπέω. See **σκέπτομαι.**
σοφίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *wisdom*, (musical) *skill.*
σοφός, -ή, -όν, *wise, accomplished, skilful.*
σπάνιος, -ίᾱ, -ον, *scarce, rare.*
σπάω, *draw.* **503**, 4 ; 355.
σπένδω, *pour, make a libation* ; mid., *make a libation* (hence *treaty*), with some one. **463**, *c* ; 355.
σπεύδω, *hasten.*
σπονδή, -ῆς, ἡ, *libation* ; plur. *treaty.*
σπουδαιο-λογέω, *talk earnestly* or *on weighty topics.*
σπουδή, -ῆς, ἡ, *haste.*
στάδιον, -ου, τό, plur. τὰ *στάδια* or οἱ *στάδιοι*, *stadium*, little less than a *furlong*, = about 606 feet.
σταθμός, -οῦ, ὁ, *stopping place, station, day's journey*, about five parasangs, or fifteen miles.
στέγασμα, -ατος, τό, *covering.*
στείβω, **stīpo**, *tread, press* ; ὁδὸς *στειβομένη*, *trodden way, highway.* **511**, 9 ; 355.
στενός, -ή, -όν, *narrow.*
στενο-χωρίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *narrow place.*
στερέω, *deprive* ; pass., *στέρομαι.* **533**, 6 ; 355.
στέρνον, -ου, τό, *breast.*
στέφανος, -ου, ὁ, *crown.*
στῆναι, στήσᾱς. See **ἵστημι.**
στίβος, -ου, ὁ, *path, track.*
στῖφος, -ους, τό, (dense) *mass* or *body.*
στλεγγίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *strigil, flesh-comb, scraper.*
στολή, -ῆς, ἡ, *dress, robe.*
στόλος, -ου, ὁ, *military preparation, expedition.*
στράτευμα, -ατος, τό, *army.*
στρατεύω, *engage in war, am in the field.*
στρατηγέω, *am general, command, lead.*
στρατηγίᾱ, -ας, ἡ, *military command.*
στρατηγός, -οῦ, ὁ, *general.*
στρατιά, -ᾶς, ἡ, *army.*
στρατιώτης, -ου, ὁ, *soldier.*
στρατο-πεδεύω, mid., *encamp.*
στρατό-πεδον, -ου, τό, *camp.*
στρατός, -οῦ, ὁ, *army.*

Digitized by Google

στραφείς. See **στρέφω.**

στρεπτός, *-ή, -όν, twisted;* **ὁ στρεπτός,** *necklace.*

στρέφω, *turn;* mid., *turn* or *face about.* **508,** 26; 355.

στρουθός, *-οῦ, ὁ, ἡ, ostrich.*

σύ, *thou.* **261**; 79.

συγ-γενής, *-ές, akin;* subst., *relative, kinsman.*

συγ-γίγνομαι, *come into intercourse* or *acquaintance with, associate with.*

συγ-καλέω, *convoke, call together.*

συλ-λαμβάνω, *apprehend, arrest.*

συλ-λέγω, *collect.*

συλ-λογή, *-ῆς, ἡ, collection, levy* (of soldiers).

συμ-βάλλω, mid., *contribute.*

συμ-βουλεύω, *counsel with, advise;* mid., *confer with.*

σύμ-βουλος, *-ου, ὁ, counsellor.*

σύμ-μαχος, *-ου, ὁ, ally.*

σύμ-πᾶς, *-ᾶσα, -αν, altogether.*

συμ-πέμπω, *send with* some one.

συμ-πίπτω, *fall in with, grapple with.*

σύμ-πλεως, *-ων, filled with, abounding in.*

συμ-πολεμέω, *fight with* (as an ally).

συμ-πορεύομαι, *proceed with.*

συμ-πράττω, *work with* another, *co-operate.*

σύν, *with;* with dat.

συν-αγείρω, *gather together, collect.*

συν-άγω, *bring together, collect.*

συν-αλλάττω, *change together, reconcile.*

συν-ανα-βαίνω, *go up with.*

συν-αντάω, *meet with.*

συν-άπτω, *join together, join.*

συν-εγενόμην. See **συγ-γίγνομαι.**

σύν-ειμι, *come together, meet, encounter.*

συν-εκ-βιβάζω, *join in bringing out.*

συν-έλεξα, συν-ελέγετο. See **συλ-λέγω.**

συν-επι-σπεύδω, *join in hastening on.*

συν-έπομαι, *follow with, accompany.*

συν-εργός, *-οῦ, ὁ, fellow-worker, helper.*

συν-έσπων. See **συ-σπάω.**

συν-ήγαγον. See **συν-άγω.**

συν-ῆειν, συν-ῆεσαν. See **σύν-ειμι.**

σύν-θημα, *-ατος, τό, agreement, watch-word.*

συν-θοῖτο. See **συν-τίθημι.**

συν-ιδεῖν. See **συν-οράω.**

σύν-οδος, *-ου, ἡ, meeting, encounter.*

σύν-οιδα, *am conscious, realize.*

συν-οράω, *see together* or *in one view.*

συν-τάττω, *arrange together, draw up* (forces).

συν-τίθημι, *put together;* mid., *agree.*

συν-τράπεζος, *-ου, ὁ, table companion, messmate.*

συν-τυγχάνω, *fall in with, meet, find.*

Συρᾰκούσιος, *Syracusan.* Syracuse was the largest city of Sicily, and located in its southeastern part.

Συρίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, Syria,* that part of western Asia lying east of the Mediterranean and north of Arabia.

Σύριος, *-ίᾱ, -ον, Syrian.*

Σύρος, *-ου, ὁ, Syrian.*

συ-σκευάζω, *make ready; pack up.*

συ-σπάω, *draw together.*

συ-σπειράω, *roll* or *draw closely together.*

συ-στρατεύω, mid., *join in an expedition.*

συ-στρατιώτης, *-ου, ὁ, fellow-soldier.*

συχνός, *-ή, -όν, considerable;* **συχνόν** (numerous in chap. viii. § 10), *at a considerable distance.*

σφάγιον, *-ου, τό, sacrificial victim;* plur., *omens* from sacrifices.

σφεῖς, σφίσι. See **οὗ, οἵ, ἕ.**

σχεδίᾱ, *-ᾱς, ἡ, frame, raft.*

σχεδόν, *nearly, almost.*

σχῆμα, *-ατος, τό, form, figure.*

σχίζω, *split.*

σχολαίως, *leisurely.*

σχολή, *-ῆς, ἡ, leisure.*

Digitized by Google

σώζω, *save.* **517**, 5 ; 355.
σῶμα, *-ατος, τό, body.*
σωτήρ, *-ῆρος, ὁ, savior.*
σωφροσύνη, *-ης, ἡ, temperance, self-control.*

T.

τάλαντον, *-ου, τό, talent,* about $1125.
τἄλλα, = τὰ ἄλλα.
τάξις, *-εως, ἡ, order, discipline; line* or *body of soldiers.*
τάραχος, *-ου, ὁ, confusion.*
Ταρσοί, *-ῶν, οἱ, Tarsus,* the capital of Cilicia.
τάττω, *arrange, order.* **514**, 9 ; 356.
ταύτῃ, *in this* or *that way* or *direction.*
τάφος, *-ου, ὁ, burial, grave.*
τάφρος, *-ου, ἡ, ditch, trench.*
ταχθῆναι, ταχθείς. See **τάττω.**
τάχα, *quickly.*
ταχέως, *θᾶττον, τάχιστα, quickly.*
ταχύς, *θάττων, τάχιστος, quick.*
τέ, *both ; and,* encl.
τεθνηκώς. See *θνήσκω.*
τεῖχος, *-ους, τό, wall.*
τεκμήριον, *-ου, τό, evidence, proof.*
τέκνον, *-ου, τό, child.*
τελευτάω, *finish ; die.*
τελευτή, *ῆς, ἡ, end.*
τέλος, *-ους, τό, end ;* adv. acc., *finally.*
τετρ-, τεττ-. See the list of numerals in the grammar.
τεύξεσθε, τεύξομαι. See *τυγχάνω.*
τήμερον, *to-day.*
Τίγρης, *-ητος, ὁ,* river *Tigris ;* its course is southerly through the countries southeast of the Euxine ; it unites with the Euphrates, near Babylon, before entering the Persian Gulf.
τίθημι, *put, place ;* mid., *τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, stand under arms* or *halt in line.* **534**, 1 ; 356.
τῑμάω, *esteem, honor.*
τῑμή, *-ῆς, ἡ, honor.*
τίμιος, *-ῑᾱ, -ιον, honorable, honored.*
τῑμωρέω, *punish.*
τὶς, τἰ, *some one, any one, some person* or *thing.*
τίς, τί, *who ? what ?*
τιτρώσκω, *wound.* **531**, 6 ; 357.
τοι-γαρ-οὖν, *therefore, so then, accordingly.*
τοιόσ-δε, *-άδε, -όνδε, of the kind* mentioned or about to be mentioned ; *λέγειν τοιάδε, to speak as follows.*
τοιοῦτος, *-αύτη -οὐτο(ν), such,* usually referring to what precedes.
τόξευμα, *-ατος, τό, arrow.*
τοξεύω, *shoot the bow ;* pass., *am struck with an arrow.*
τοξικός, *-ή, -όν, relating to the bow ; ἡ τοξική, archery.*
τοξότης, *-ου, ὁ, bowman.*
τόπος, *-ου, ὁ, place.*
τοσοῦτος, *-αύτη, -οὐτο(ν), so great, so much* (plur. *so many*).
τότε, *then.*
τραῦμα, *-ατος, τό, wound.*
τράχηλος, *-ου, ὁ, neck.*
τρεῖς, τρία, three.
τρέπω, *turn.* **508**, 28 ; 357.
τρέφω, *feed, support, nourish.* **508**, 29 ; 357.
τρέχω, *run.* **539**, 5 ; 357.
τρέω, *tremble ; flee.* **503**, 15 ; 357.
τρία. See **τρεῖς ; τριάκοντα, τριᾱκόσιοι.** See list of numerals in the Grammar. **288** ; 76.
τριήρης, *-ους, ἡ, trireme,* the Greek war-vessel.
τρισ-. See list of numerals in Grammar. **288** ; 76.
τρίτος, *-η, -ον, third.*
τροπή, *-ῆς, ἡ, a turning, defeat, rout.*
τρόπος, *-ου, ὁ, turn, way, manner.*
τροφή, *-ῆς, ἡ, support, nurture.*
τυγχάνω, *happen, chance, happen* or *chance upon.* **523**, 9 ; 357.

Digitized by Google

Υ.

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό, *water.*
ὕλη, -ης, ἡ, *wood, bush, shrubbery.*
ὑμεῖς, ὑμῶν, ὑμῖν, ὑμᾶς. See **σύ.**
ὑπ-αρχος, -ου, ὁ, *officer, lieutenant.*
ὑπ-άρχω, *begin, am on hand, aid.*
ὑπ-ελαύνω, *ride up to.*
ὑπέρ, super, OVER ; with gen., *over, in behalf of, on account of, concerning ;* with acc., *over, beyond.*
ὑπερ-βολή, -ῆς, ἡ, *passage over* (*e. g.* mountains).
ὕπερθεν, *from over, over, above.*
ὑπ-εσχόμην. See **ὑπ-ισχνέομαι.**
ὑπ-ήκοος, -ον, *obedient, subject.*
ὑπ-ηρετέω, *render aid.*
ὑπ-ισχνέομαι, *promise.* **524**, 5 ; 358.
ὑπό, sub, *under ;* with gen., *under, by* (of agency, with passive verbs); with dat. *under, at the foot of ;* with acc., *to* (a position) *under.*
ὑπο-δεέστερος, *of inferior origin* or *station, inferior.*
ὑπο-δέχομαι, *take* or *receive under protection.*
ὑπο-ζύγιον, -ου, τό, *yoke-animal, beast of burden.*
ὑπο-κρύπτω, mid., *secrete, hide away.*
ὑπο-λαμβάνω, *take under protection.*
ὑπο-λείπω, *leave behind.*
ὑπόμνημα, -ατος, τό, *reminder, remembrance.*
ὑπ-οπτεύω, *suspect.*
ὑπο-χωρέω, *withdraw, retreat.*
ὑποψίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *suspicion.*
ὑστεραῖος, -ᾱ, -ον, *next* (in time), *following.*
ὑστερέω, *am behind, later than, too late for.*
ὕστερος, -ᾱ, -ον, *later, behind.*
ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν, *high.*

Φ.

φαίην. See **φημί.**
φαίνω, *show,* mid., *show myself, appear.* **518**, 19 ; 358.
φάλαγξ, -αγγος, ἡ, *line* or *order of battle, phalanx.*
φανερός, -ά, -όν, *apparent, evident.*
φανερῶς, *apparently, evidently, openly.*
φασί(ν). See **φημί.**
φέρω, *bear, bear away, receive ;* **χαλεπῶς φ.**, *am troubled.* **539**, 6 ; 358.
φεύγω, *flee ;* **ὁ φεύγων**, *fugitive.* **511**, 15 ; 358.
φημί, *say ;* **οὔ φημι**, *refuse.* **535**, 1, **481** ; 358.
φθάνω, *anticipate.* **521**, 2 ; 358.
φθέγγομαι, *utter* or *make a sound, shout.*
φθονέω, *begrudge, envy.*
φιλέω, *love.*
φιλίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *love, friendship.*
φίλιος, -ίᾱ, -ον, *friendly.*
φίλ-ιππος, -ον, *fond of horses.*
φιλό-θηρος, -ον, *fond of hunting.*
φιλο-κερδέω, *am fond of gain.*
φιλο-κίνδῡνος, -ον, *fond of danger.*
φιλο-μαθής, -ές, *fond of learning.*
φίλος, -ου, ὁ, *friend.*
φιλο-τῑμέομαι, *am piqued* or *jealous.* **497**, *a.*
φίλτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, comp. of **φίλος.**
φλυᾰρίᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *folly, nonsense.*
φοβέω, *frighten ;* mid., *fear.*
φόβος, -ου, ὁ, *fear.*
φοινίκεος(οῦς), -έᾱ (ῆ), -εον (-οῦν), *purple.*
Φοινίκη, -ης, ἡ, *Phoenicia.*
φοινῑκιστής, -οῦ, ὁ, *wearer of the purple, courtier.*
φοῖνιξ, -ῑκος, ὁ, *palm-tree,* espec. *date-palm.*
φορέω, *wear.*
φράζω, *tell, declare.* **514**, 17 ; 359.
φρόνιμος, -ον, *temperate, cool-headed.*

Digitized by Google

φρούρ-αρχος, -ου, ὁ, *commander of a garrison.*
φρουρέω, *guard, watch.*
φρούριον, -ου, τό, *guard, garrison.*
Φρυγία, -ᾱς, ἡ, *Phrygia.*
Φρύξ, Φρυγός, ὁ, *a Phrygian.*
φυγάς, -άδος, ὁ, *fugitive, exile.*
φυγή, -ῆς, ἡ, *flight.*
φυλακή, -ῆς, ἡ, **vigilia**, *a guard* (collective).
φύλαξ, -κος, ὁ, *guardsman.*
φυλάττω, *guard.* **514**, 11; 359.
φύω, *produce.* **507**, 4; 359.
Φωκαΐς, -ίδος, ἡ, *Phocæan woman.*

Χ.

χαλεπαίνω, *am angry.*
χαλεπός, -ή, -όν, *hard, difficult.*
χαλεπῶς, *hardly, grievously;* **χαλεπῶς φέρω**, *am troubled, am grieved.*
χάλκεος(οῦς), -έᾱ(ῆ), -εον(οῦν), *brazen, of bronze.*
χαλκός, -οῦ, ὁ, *bronze.*
χαρίζομαι, *gratify.*
χάρις, -ιτος, ἡ, *grace, favor;* **χ. εἰδέναι**, *recognize a favor, feel grateful.*
χειμών, -ῶνος, ὁ, *winter, cold.*
χείρ, χειρός, ἡ, *hand.*
χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *one thousand.*
χιλός, -οῦ, ὁ, *hay, fodder.*
χιτών, -ῶνος, ὁ, *tunic,* the linen garment worn next the body.
χοῖνιξ, -κος, ἡ, *choenix,* about a *litre* or *quart.*
χόρτος, -ου, ὁ, *dry grass, fodder.*
χράομαι, *use.* **412**; 360.
χρή, *it is necessary, one must.* **535**, 3, **486**; 360.
χρῄζω, *desire, wish.*
χρῆμα, -ατος, τό, *thing;* plur., espec. *goods, means, wealth.*
χρῆναι, see **χρή**; **χρῆσθαι**, see **χράομαι.**
χρήσιμος, -η, -ον, *useful.*
χρόνος, -ου, ὁ, *time.*
χρύσεος(οῦς), -έᾱ(ῆ), -εον(οῦν), *golden.*
χρῡσίον, -ου, τό, *gold piece, gold money.*
χρῡσο-χάλῑνος, -ον, *golden-bridled.*
χώρᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, *a country.*
χωρέω, *make room, advance;* of a measure, *contain, hold.*
χωρίον, -ου, τό, *stronghold.*
χωρίς, *apart from.*

Ψ.

ψέλιον, -ου, τό, *bracelet.*
ψεύδω, *deceive;* pass., *am mistaken;* mid., *deceive, lie.* 360.
ψηφίζω, *vote.*
ψῑλός, -ή, -όν, *bare, unprotected.*
ψῑλόω, *make bare;* pass., *am cleared of.*

Ω.

ὧδε, *thus* (as follows).
ᾠετο. See **οἴομαι.**
ᾤκτειρον. See **οἰκτείρω.**
ὠνέομαι, *buy, traffic.* **539**, 7; 360.
ὥρᾱ, -ᾱς, ἡ, **hora**, *season, suitable time, hour.*
ὡς, *as:* (*a*) with numerals, *about;* (*b*) strengthening the superl. **ὡς τάχιστα**, *as quickly as possible;* (*c*) as a prep., *to;* (*d*) with the partic., *as, on the ground that;* (*e*) *how, in what manner;* (*f*) as conj., *that, in order that.*
ὥς, *thus.*
ὥσ-περ, *just as, just as if.*
ὥστε, *so that* (as a result).
ὠτειλή, -ῆς, ἡ, *scar.*
ὠτίς, -ίδος, ἡ, *bustard.*
ὠφελέω, *benefit, assist, aid.*
ὠφέλιμος, -η, -ον, *beneficial.*

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google